

LBP352x / LBP351x

User's Guide

USRMA-0699-01 2019-09 en

Copyright CANON INC. 2019

Contents

Important Safety Instructions	
- Installation	
Power Supply	
Handling	
Maintenance and Inspections	
Consumables	
Basic Operations	
Parts and Their Functions	
Front Side	
Back Side	
Interior	
Multi-Purpose Tray	
Paper Drawer	
Operation Panel	24
Display	27
Using the Operation Panel	
Entering Text	
Turning ON/OFF the Power	
Performing a Quick Start of the Machine	
Loading Paper	
Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer	
Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray	
Loading Paper in the Paper Deck (Option)	
Loading Envelopes in the Envelope Feeder (Option)	50
Loading Envelopes	
Loading Preprinted Paper	
Specifying Paper Size and Type	60
Specifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Drawer	61
Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-Purpose Tray	
Specifying Paper Size and Type for the Envelope Feeder (Option)	
Saving Energy	
Entering Sleep Mode	69
Setting Auto Shutdown Time	

Printing a Document	
Printing from a Computer	
Basic Printing Operations	
Canceling Prints	83
Various Print Settings	85
Enlarging or Reducing	

Switching 1-Sided and 2-Sided Printing	
Collating Printouts by Page	
Printing Multiple Pages onto One Sheet	
Printing Posters	
Printing Booklet	
Printing Borders	
Printing Dates and Page Numbers	
Printing Watermarks	101
Printing Specific Pages onto Different Paper	103
Selecting Document Type	105
Saving Toner	107
Combining and Printing Multiple Documents	109
Configuring Print Settings to Your Needs	113
Registering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Settings	114
Changing Default Settings	116
Using Useful Print Functions	118
Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)	120
Changing Default USB Print Settings	129
Printing a Document Secured by a PIN (Secured Print)	131
Using the Encrypted Print	136
Printing a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)	137
Deleting a Document Stored in the Machine	
Setting a Name or PIN to a Box	144
Printing without Opening a File (Direct Print)	146
Print Settings for Direct Print	150
Printing Received E-mail (E-Mail Print)	157
Can Be Used Conveniently with a Mobile Device	165
Connecting to a Mobile Device	166
Making the Best Use of the Machine by Utilizing Applications	
Using AirPrint	169
Printing with AirPrint	173
If AirPrint Cannot Be Used	175
Using Google Cloud Print	176
Managing the Machine Remotely	180
Network	182
Connecting to a Network	
Connecting to a Wired LAN	
-	
Setting IP Addresses	

Setting IPv4 Address	. 188
Setting IPv6 Addresses	. 192
Configuring the Machine for Printing from a Computer	. 196
Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions	. 197
Enabling IPP/IPPS	. 203
Setting Up Print Server	. 212

Confi	Configuring the Machine for Your Network Environment	
C	onfiguring Ethernet Settings	217
S	etting a Wait Time for Connecting to a Network	219
C	onfiguring DNS	220
C	onfiguring WINS	226
C	onfiguring SNTP	229
N	Ionitoring and Controlling the Machine with SNMP	232
C	onfiguring Settings for Device Management Software	238
C	onfiguring SMB	242
	Configuring Settings on the Computer for Printing	245

S	Security	248
	Protecting the Machine from Unauthorized Access	249
	Preventing Unauthorized Access	250
	Setting Access Privileges	252
	Setting the System Manager Password	253
	Setting the Department ID Management	256
	Setting a Remote UI PIN	263
	Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls	264
	Specifying IP Addresses for Firewall Rules	265
	Specifying MAC Addresses for Firewall Rules	271
	Setting a Proxy	274
	Restricting the Machine's Functions	277
	Restricting the Printing Operations	278
	Restricting USB Functions	282
	Restricting Operation Panel Functions	285
	Disabling HTTP Communication	288
	Disabling Remote UI	289
	Disabling the LAN Port	290
	Hiding the Print Job History	291
	Implementing Robust Security Features	293
	Using TLS for Encrypted Communications	294
	Configuring IPSec Settings	298
	Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication	309
	Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates	315
	Generating Key Pairs	317
	Using CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates	326
	Verifying Key Pairs and Digital Certificates	329

U	sing Remote UI	332
	Starting Remote UI	333
	Remote UI Screens	
	Managing Documents and Checking the Machine Status	
	Enabling End Users to Operate Documents	348
	Setting Up Menu Options from Remote UI	351

Saving/Loading Registered Data		353
	Saving Registered Data	354
	Loading Registered Data	356

tting Menu List	359
Setup Menu	360
Control Menu	361
Paper Source	374
Network	375
Layout	395
Print Quality	
Interface	403
User Maintenance	406
Print Mode	415
Settings Specific to Print Mode	417
UFR II	
PCL	419
Imaging	425
XPS	431
PDF	435
PS	439
MEAP Settings	442
Check Counter	443
Initialize Menu	444
Utility Menu	445
Job Menu	449
Reset Menu	451
Select Feeder Menu	453

Clearing Jams	463
When an Error Message Appears	480
Common Problems	497
Installation/Settings Problems	498
Printing Problems	501
When You Cannot Print Properly	
Printing Results Are Not Satisfactory	505
Paper Creases or Curls	511
Paper Is Fed Incorrectly	513
When a Problem Cannot Be Solved	. 514

Maintenance	. 516
Cleaning the Machine	. 518
Exterior	. 519

Fixing Unit	520
Replacing Toner Cartridges	521
How to Replace Toner Cartridges	524
Relocating the Machine	527
Maintaining and Improving Print Quality	529
Adjusting Print Density	530
Adjusting Print Position	532
Printing Reports and Lists	536
Viewing the Counter Value	545
Checking Consumables	548
Initializing Settings	
Initializing Menu	551
Initializing the Network Settings	552

Appendix	
Third Party Software	555
Feature Highlights	556
Going Green and Saving Money	
Improving Efficiency	559
So Much More	
Specifications	
Machine Specifications	
Paper	
Consumables	
Consumable Parts	
Optional Items	
Installing the ROM	
Installing an SD Card	
Manuals Included with the Machine	
Using e-Manual	
Installing e-Manual	
Uninstalling e-Manual	591
Screen Layout of e-Manual	
Viewing e-Manual	
Managing MEAP Applications	
Using FTP Clients	
Preparing for Using the FTP Server	
Printing via FTP Client (FTP Print)	
Specifying Settings via FTP Client	
Others	
Basic Windows Operations	
For Mac OS Users	
Font Samples	
Notice	

fice Locations

Important Safety Instructions

Important Safety Instructions	2
Installation	
Power Supply	5
Handling	6
Maintenance and Inspections	9
Consumables	. 10

Important Safety Instructions

0X7U-000

The content described in this chapter is for the prevention of damage to property and injury to users of the machine and others. Before using this machine, read this chapter and follow the instructions to properly use this machine. Do not perform any operations not described in this manual. Canon will not be responsible for any damages resulting from use not described in this manual, improper use, or repair/changes not performed by Canon or a third party authorized by Canon.

Installation

0X7U-001

To use this machine safely and comfortably, carefully read the following precautions and install the machine in an appropriate location.

Do not install in a location that may result in a fire or electrical shock

- A location where the ventilation slots are blocked (too close to walls, beds, rugs, or similar objects)
- A damp or dusty location
- A location exposed to direct sunlight or outdoors
- A location subject to high temperatures
- A location exposed to open flames
- Near alcohol, paint thinners or other flammable substances

Other warnings

- Do not connect unapproved cables to this machine. Doing so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not place necklaces and other metal objects or containers filled with liquid on the machine. If foreign substances come in contact with electrical parts inside the machine, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- When installing and removing the optional accessories, be sure to turn OFF the power, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables and power cord from the machine. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- If any foreign substance falls into this machine, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

Do not install in the following locations

The machine may drop or fall, resulting in injury.

- Unstable location
- Location exposed to vibrations



Other cautions

- When carrying this machine, follow the instructions in this manual. If carried improperly, it may fall, resulting in injury.
- When installing this machine, be careful not to get your hands caught between the machine and the floor or walls, or between the paper drawers. Doing so may result in injury.

IMPORTANT

Do not install in the following locations that may result in damage

- A location subject to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity
- A location near equipment that generates magnetic or electromagnetic waves
- A laboratory or location where chemical reactions occur
- A location exposed to corrosive or toxic gases
- A location that may warp from the weight of the machine or where the machine is liable to sink (a carpet, etc.)



Avoid poorly ventilated locations

• This machine generates a slight amount of ozone, etc. during normal use. Although sensitivity to ozone, etc. may vary, this amount is not harmful. Ozone, etc. may be more noticeable during extended use or long production runs, especially in poorly ventilated rooms. It is recommended that the room where the machine operates be appropriately ventilated to maintain a comfortable working environment. Also avoid locations where people would be exposed to emissions from the machine.

Do not install in a location where condensation occurs

• Water droplets (condensation) may form inside the machine when the room where the machine is installed is heated rapidly, and when the machine is moved from a cool or dry location to a hot or humid location. Using the machine under these conditions may result in paper jams, poor print quality, or damage to the machine. Let the machine adjust to the ambient temperature and humidity for at least 2 hours before use.

In altitudes of 3,000 m or above sea level

• Machines with a hard disk may not operate properly when used at high altitudes of about 3,000 meters above sea level, or higher.

Power Supply

This machine is compatible with voltages of 220 to 240 V, and electrical frequency of 50/60 Hz.

- Use only a power supply that meets the specified voltage requirements. Failure to do so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use power cords other than the one provided, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- The provided power cord is intended for use with this machine. Do not connect the power cord to other devices.
- Do not modify, pull, forcibly bend, or perform any other act that may damage the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on the power cord. Damaging the power cord may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not plug in or unplug the power plug with wet hands, as this may result in an electrical shock.
- Do not use extension cords or multi-plug power strips with the machine. Doing so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not wrap the power cord or tie it in a knot, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Insert the power plug completely into the AC power outlet. Failure to do so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Remove the power plug completely from the AC power outlet during a thunder storm. Failure to do so may result in a fire, electrical shock, or damage to the machine.

• Install this machine near the power outlet and leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily in an emergency.

IMPORTANT

When connecting power

- Do not connect the machine to an uninterruptible power source.
- If plugging this machine into an AC power outlet with multiple sockets, do not use the remaining sockets to connect other devices.
- Do not connect the power cord into the auxiliary outlet on a computer.

Other precautions

• Electrical noise may cause this machine to malfunction or lose data.

Handling

0X7U-003

- Immediately unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact an authorized Canon dealer if the machine makes an unusual noise, emits an unusual smell, or emits smoke or excessive heat. Continued use may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not disassemble or modify this machine. There are highvoltage and high-temperature components inside the machine which may result in a fire or electrical shock.

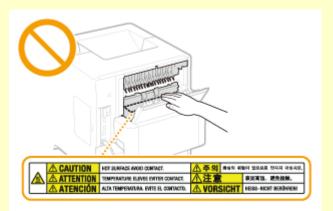


- Place the machine where children will not come in contact with the power cord and other cables or internal and electrical parts. Failure to do so may result in unexpected accidents.
- Do not use flammable sprays near this machine. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside this machine, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- When moving this machine, be sure to turn OFF the power of this machine and your computer, and then unplug the power plug and interface cables. Failure to do so may damage the power cord or interface cables, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- When plugging or unplugging a USB cable when the power plug is plugged into an AC power outlet, do not touch the metal part of the connector, as this may result in an electrical shock.

If you are using a cardiac pacemaker

• This machine generates a low level magnetic flux. If you use a cardiac pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from this machine and consult your physician immediately.

- Do not place heavy objects on this machine as they may fall, resulting in injury.
- For your safety, please unplug the power cord if the machine will not be used for a long period of time.
- Use caution when opening and closing covers to avoid injury to your hands.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the rollers in the output area. If the rollers catch your hands or clothing, this may result in personal injury.
- The inside of the machine and the output slot are very hot during and immediately after use. Avoid contact with these areas to prevent burns. Also, printed paper may be hot immediately after being output, so use caution when handling it. Failure to do so may result in burns.



 Do not carry the machine with any of the paper drawer, optional paper feeder, optional paper deck or optional envelope feeder installed. Otherwise, they may fall, resulting in injury.



Laser beam

- This machine is classified as a Class 1 Laser Product under IEC60825-1:2007 and EN60825-1:2007. The laser beam can be harmful to the human body. The laser beam is confined within protective housings and external covers, so there is no danger of the laser beam escaping during normal machine operation. For safety, never open covers other than those indicated in this manual.
- If you operate the machine in manners other than the control, adjustment, and operating procedures prescribed in this manual, this may result in hazardous radiation exposure. If the laser beam should escape and enter your eyes, exposure may cause damage to your eyes.

IMPORTANT

When transporting the machine

To prevent damage to the machine during transport, perform the following.

- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Securely pack the machine in the original box with packing materials.

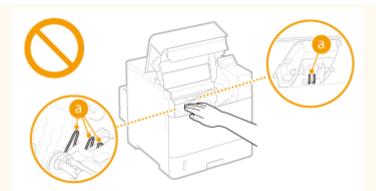
If the operating noise concerns you

• Depending on the use environment and operating mode, if the operating noise is of concern, it is recommended that the machine be installed in a place other than the office.

Other precautions

- Follow the instructions in the caution label attached to this machine.
- Avoid shaking or applying shock to this machine.
- Do not forcibly open and close doors, covers, and other parts. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.
- Do not touch the contacts (🙃) inside the machine. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.

Important Safety Instructions



• To prevent a paper jam, do not turn OFF the power, open/close the covers, and load/unload the paper when printing.

Maintenance and Inspections

0X7U-004

Clean this machine periodically. If dust accumulates, the machine may not operate properly. When cleaning, be sure to observe the following. If a problem occurs during operation, see **Troubleshooting(P. 461)**. If the problem cannot be resolved or you feel the machine requires an inspection, see **When a Problem Cannot Be Solved(P. 514)**.

- Before cleaning, turn OFF the power and unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet. Failure to do so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Unplug the power plug periodically and clean with a dry cloth to remove dust and grime. Accumulated dust may absorb humidity in the air and may result in a fire if it comes into contact with electricity.
- Use a damp, well wrung-out cloth to clean the machine. Dampen cleaning cloths with water only. Do not use alcohol, benzenes, paint thinners, or other flammable substances. Do not use tissue paper or paper towels. If these substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the machine, they may generate static electricity or result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Check the power cord and plug periodically for damage. Check the machine for rust, dents, scratches, cracks, or excessive heat generation. Use of poorly-maintained equipment may result in a fire or electrical shock.

- The inside of the machine has high-temperature and high-voltage components. Touching these components may result in burns. Do not touch any part of the machine that is not indicated in the manual.
- When loading paper or removing jammed paper, be careful not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

IMPORTANT

• When removing jammed paper or replacing toner cartridges, be careful not to get any toner on your hands or clothing. If toner gets on your hands or clothing, wash them immediately with cold water.

Consumables

0X7U-005

- Do not dispose of used toner cartridges in open flames. Also, do not store toner cartridges or paper in a location exposed to open flames. This may cause the toner to ignite, and result in burns or fire.
- If you accidentally spill or scatter toner, carefully wipe up the loose toner with a damp, soft cloth and avoid inhaling any toner dust. Do not use a vacuum cleaner that is not equipped with safety measures to prevent dust explosions to clean up loose toner. Doing so may cause damage to the vacuum cleaner or result in a dust explosion due to static discharge.

If you are using a cardiac pacemaker

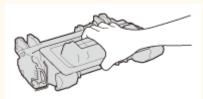
• The toner cartridge generates a low level magnetic flux. If you are using a cardiac pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from the toner cartridge and consult your physician immediately.

- Use caution not to inhale any toner. If you should inhale toner, consult a physician immediately.
- Use caution so that toner does not get into your eyes or mouth. If toner should get into your eyes or mouth, immediately wash with cold water and consult a physician.
- Use caution so that toner does not come into contact with your skin. If it should, wash with soap and cold water. If there is any irritation on your skin, consult a physician immediately.
- Keep the toner cartridges and other consumables out of the reach of small children. If toner is ingested, consult a physician or poison control center immediately.
- Do not disassemble or modify the toner cartridge. Doing so may cause the toner to scatter.
- Remove the sealing tape of the toner cartridge completely without using excessive force. Doing otherwise may cause the toner to scatter.

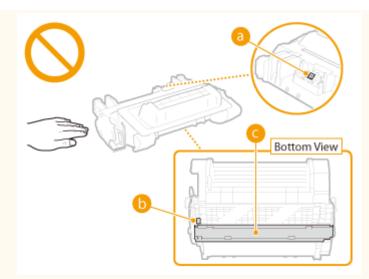
IMPORTANT

Handling the toner cartridge

• Be sure to hold the toner cartridge using the handle.



Do not touch the toner cartridge memory (2) or the electrical contacts (5). To avoid scratching the surface of the drum inside the machine or exposing it to light, do not open the drum protective shutter (C).



- Do not remove the toner cartridge from this machine or from the protective bag unnecessarily.
- The toner cartridge is a magnetic product. Do not move it close to products susceptible to magnetism including floppy disks and disk drives. Doing so may result in data corruption.

Storing the toner cartridge

- Store in the following environment to ensure safe and satisfactory use.
 Storage temperature range: 0 to 35 °C
 Storage humidity range: 35 to 85% RH (relative humidity/no condensation)*
- Store without opening until the toner cartridge is to be used.
- When removing the toner cartridge from this machine for storage, place the removed toner cartridge into the original protective bag or wrap it with a thick cloth.
- When storing the toner cartridge, do not store it upright or upside down. The toner will solidify and may not return to its original condition even if it is shaken.

^{*} Even within the storable humidity range, water droplets (condensation) may develop inside the toner cartridge if there is a difference of temperature inside and outside the toner cartridge. Condensation will adversely affect the print quality of toner cartridges.

Do not store the toner cartridge in the following locations

- Locations exposed to open flames
- Locations exposed to direct sunlight or bright light for five minutes or more
- Locations exposed to excessive salty air
- Locations where there are corrosive gases (i.e. aerosol sprays and ammonia)
- Locations subject to high temperature and high humidity
- Locations subject to dramatic changes in temperature and humidity where condensation may easily occur
- Locations with a large amount of dust
- Locations within the reach of children

Be careful of counterfeit toner cartridges

Please be aware that there are counterfeit Canon toner cartridges in the marketplace. Use of counterfeit toner cartridge may result in poor print quality or machine performance. Canon is not responsible for any malfunction, accident or damage caused by the use of counterfeit toner cartridge.
 For more information, see canon.com/counterfeit.

Availability period of repairing parts and toner cartridges

• The repairing parts and toner cartridges for the machine will be available for at least seven (7) years after production of this machine model has been discontinued.

Toner cartridge packing materials

• Save the protective bag for the toner cartridge. They are required when transporting this machine.

Important Safety Instructions

- The packing materials may be changed in form or placement, or may be added or removed without notice.
- Dispose of the removed sealing tape according to local regulations.

When disposing of a used toner cartridge

• Place the toner cartridge into its protective bag to prevent the toner from scattering, and then dispose of the toner cartridge according to local regulations.

Basic Operations	14
Parts and Their Functions	
Front Side	17
Back Side	19
Interior	21
Multi-Purpose Tray	22
Paper Drawer	23
Operation Panel	24
Display	27
Using the Operation Panel	29
Entering Text	31
Turning ON/OFF the Power	33
Performing a Quick Start of the Machine	35
Loading Paper	37
Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer	39
Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray	44
Loading Paper in the Paper Deck (Option)	47
Loading Envelopes in the Envelope Feeder (Option)	50
Loading Envelopes	54
Loading Preprinted Paper	56
Specifying Paper Size and Type	60
Specifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Drawer	61
Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-Purpose Tray	
Specifying Paper Size and Type for the Envelope Feeder (Option)	66
Saving Energy	68
Entering Sleep Mode	69
Setting Auto Shutdown Time	71

This chapter describes basic operations, such as how to use the operation panel or how to load the paper, that are frequently performed to use the functions of the machine.

Parts and Their Functions

This section describes the exterior and interior parts of the machine and their functions, as well as how to use the keys on the operation panel and how to view the display. **Parts and Their Functions(P. 16)**



■ Using the Operation Panel

This section describes how to use the keys on the operation panel to perform various operations, such as adjusting and checking the settings. **Ousing the Operation Panel(P. 29)**



Turning ON/OFF the Power

This section describes how to turn ON/OFF the power. **OTurning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)**



Loading Paper

This section describes how to load the paper into the paper drawer, multi-purpose tray, optional paper deck, and optional envelope feeder. **Coloring Paper(P. 37)**



Saving Energy

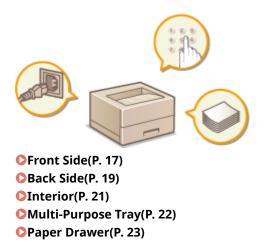
This section describes how to reduce power consumption. **Saving Energy(P. 68)**



Parts and Their Functions

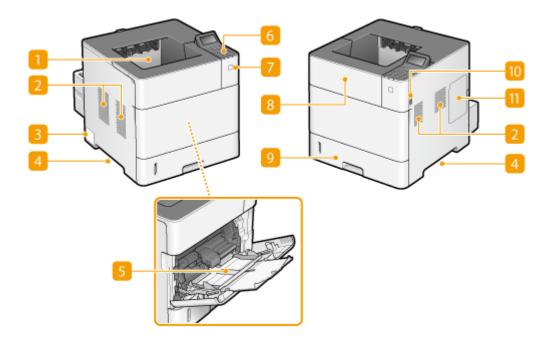
0X7U-007

This section describes the parts of the machine (exterior, front and back side, and interior) and how they function. In addition to describing the parts of the machine used for such basic operations as loading paper and replacing the toner cartridges, this section also describes the keys on the operation panel and display. Read this section for tips on how to use the machine properly.



Operation Panel(P. 24)

Front Side



Output tray

Printed paper is output to the output tray.

2 Ventilation slots

Air from inside the machine is vented out to cool down the inside of the machine. Note that placing objects in front of the ventilation slots prevents ventilation. **SInstallation(P. 3)**

8 Rating label

The label shows the serial number, which is needed when making inquiries about the machine. **OWhen a Problem Cannot Be Solved(P. 514)**

4 Lift handles

Hold the lift handles when carrying the machine. **©Relocating the Machine(P. 527)**

5 Multi-purpose tray

Load the paper into the multi-purpose tray when you want to temporarily use a type of paper different from that which is loaded in the paper drawer. **Coloring Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 44)**

6 Operation panel

The operation panel consists of numeric keys, a display, status indicators, etc. You can perform all the operations and specify settings from the operation panel. **Operation Panel(P. 24) Obisplay(P. 27)**

Power switch

Press the power switch to turn ON the power. When turning OFF the power, do not use this switch, but follow the procedures shown in **OTurning OFF the Power (Performing a Shutdown)(P. 33)**.

8 Top cover

Open the top cover when replacing the toner cartridge or clearing paper jams. **Ohow to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524) Oclearing Jams(P. 463)**

🧿 Paper drawer

Load the type of paper you frequently use into the paper drawer. **OLOADING Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 39)**

USB memory port (For USB memory)

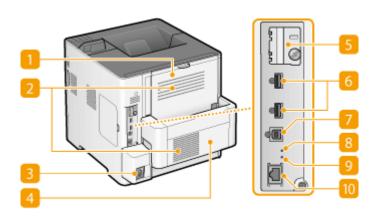
You can connect a USB memory device to the machine and directly print the data from the USB memory device. You can directly print the data in the USB memory device without using a computer. (**Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)(P. 120)**). Also, connect a USB memory device when exporting or importing the settings of the machine (**Import/Export Set.(P. 413)**).

<u>1</u> Right cover

Open the right cover to install the optional ROM. **OInstalling the ROM(P. 579)**

Back Side

0X7U-009



Sub-output tray (Back cover)

Open the sub-output tray when printing on the envelopes. When using a paper type that easily curls such as labels, you can reduce curl by opening this tray (**Paper Curls(P. 511)**).

2 Ventilation slots

Air from inside the machine is vented out to cool down the inside of the machine. Note that placing objects in front of the ventilation slots prevents ventilation. **SInstallation(P. 3)**

Power socket

Connect the power cord.

4 Duplex unit

If paper has jammed during 2-sided printing, remove this.

5 SD card slot cover

Open the SD card slot cover when installing the optional SD card. **OInstalling an SD Card(P. 583)**

6 USB port (for USB device connection)

Connect a USB device that is used with MEAP applications.

7 USB port (for computer connection)

Connect a USB cable when connecting the machine and a computer.

8 ACT indicator

The ACT indicator blinks while data is being sent or received.

9 LNK indicator

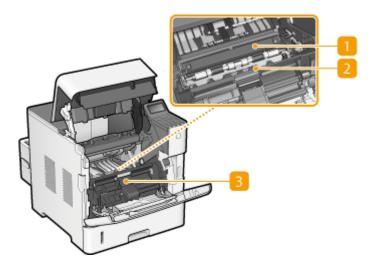
The LNK indicator blinks green when the machine is properly connected to a network.

🔟 LAN port

Connect a LAN cable when connecting the machine to a wired LAN router, etc. **Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 185)**

Interior

0X7U-00A



1 Transport guide (at the back)

If there is a paper jam inside the machine, raise the transport guide to remove the jammed paper. **Clearing Jams(P. 463)**

Paransport guide (at the front)

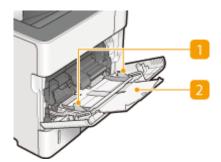
If paper has jammed inside the machine, remove the envelope feeder cover and then raise this to remove the jammed paper. **Clearing Jams(P. 463)**

Envelope feeder cover

To install the optional envelope feeder, remove this.

Multi-Purpose Tray

0X7U-00C





Adjust the paper guides to exactly the width of the loaded paper to ensure that paper is fed straight into the machine.

🔁 Paper tray

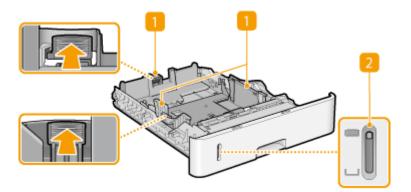
Pull out the paper tray when loading paper.

LINKS

Colored Colore

Paper Drawer

0X7U-00E



1 Paper guides

Adjust the paper guides to exactly the size of the loaded paper to ensure that paper is fed straight into the machine. Press the lock release levers that are marked with arrows in the illustrations to release the locks and slide the paper guides.

2 Paper level indicator

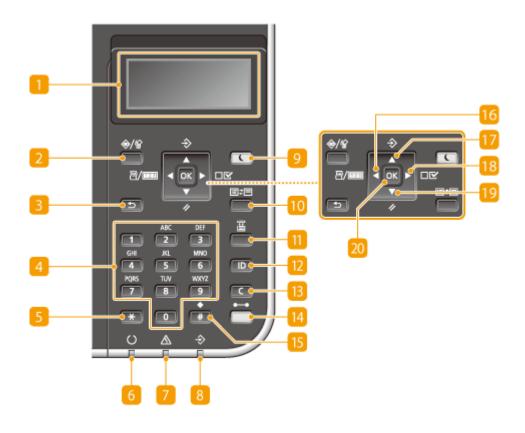
Indicates the remaining amount of paper. The mark moves downward as the remaining amount of paper decreases.

LINKS

OLoading Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 39)

Operation Panel

0X7U-00F



🚹 Display

Displays the current printing or other operation status, error information, amount remaining in the toner cartridge, etc. **Display(P. 27)**

2 Job Status/Cancel key

If you press this key when the [] indicator is lit or blinking, a document being printed and documents waiting to be printed are listed. You can select the document from the list and cancel printing of the document. **C**From the Operation Panel(P. 84)

Back key

Press to return to the previous screen. If you press this key when specifying settings, for example, the settings are not applied and the display returns to the previous screen.

4 Numeric keys ([0]-[9] keys)

Press to enter numbers and text. **CEntering Text(P. 31)**

5 [*] key

Press to switch the type of text that is entered.

6 Ready indicator

Lights up when the machine is ready for printing or otherwise blinks.

7 Message indicator

- Lights up when a problem occurs to disable printing. OTroubleshooting(P. 461)
- Lights up if the machine enters sleep mode while being off line.

8 Job indicator

Lights up when the machine is receiving print data or any print data remains in the memory of the machine. Blinks when print data is being processed.

<u> 9</u> Energy Saver key

Press to put the machine into sleep mode. This key lights up in green when the machine is in sleep mode. Press the key again to exit sleep mode. **Dentering Sleep Mode(P. 69)**

🔟 Application key

Each press of this key cycles through the functions in the order of: Print Screen > MEAP1 > MEAP2 > ... > MEAP8 > USB Direct Print > Print Screen. Select the function you want to use. If you press this key without logging on when department ID management is enabled, the authentication screen is displayed.

Feeder Selection key

Press to select the paper source or specify the paper size. **Select Feeder Menu(P. 453)**

🔃 [ID] key

Displays the login screen for using the MEAP function. After you finish using the machine, press this key again to log off.

<u> 13</u> Clear key

Press to delete the entered numbers and text.

🚹 Online key

Switches between online mode (printing jobs are accepted) and offline mode (no printing job is accepted). This key lights up green when the machine is online and goes off when the machine is offline. Usually, keep the machine online, but set it to offline when specifying settings of **Ouser Maintenance(P. 406)** in the setting menu.

NOTE:

If you do not operate the key for 2 minutes when the machine is offline and the OMain Screen(P. 27) is displayed, the machine automatically becomes online. You can select <Auto Reset Time> to change this time value (OAuto Reset Time(P. 363)).

15 [#] key

Press to enter symbols such as "@" or "/".

🔟 Utility key/[🖪] key

- Displays the Utility menu. You can display the total number of printed pages and print internal system information for checking. **OUtility Menu(P. 445)**
- When specifying settings, press to return to the previous screen. When entering text, press to move the cursor to the left.

🔞 Job key/[🔺] key

- Displays the Job menu. You can check the print logs. **Job Menu(P. 449)**
- When specifying settings, press to select the item immediately above the currently selected item. When changing setting values, press to increase a value.

1 Settings key/[🕨] key

- Displays the Setup menu. You can specify settings of the machine. **Setup Menu(P. 360)**
- When specifying settings, press to proceed to the next screen. When entering text, press to move the cursor to the right.

腹 Reset key/[🔻] key

- Displays the Reset menu. You can cancel all processes, delete data in memory, and turn OFF the power.
 Reset Menu(P. 451)
- When specifying settings, press to select the item immediately below the currently selected item. When changing setting values, press to decrease a value.

20 [OK] key

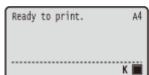
Press to apply settings or specified details.

LINKS

Ousing the Operation Panel(P. 29)

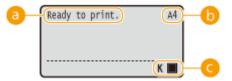
Display

0X7U-00H



The display shows the printing status and the screens for specifying settings. It also shows error messages and the amount remaining in the toner cartridge.

Main Screen



Status indication

Displays the current status or operation mode of the machine.

Paper size indication

Displays the currently selected paper size.

NOTE:

The following paper sizes are shown in an abbreviated form.

- Legal: LG
- Envelope No.10: CO

• Envelope ISO-C5: EC5

- Letter:LT
- Executive: EX
 Envelope Monarch: MO
- Statement: ST
- Index Card: IC
- Foolscap: FC
- Free Size: FR
- 16K: 16K
- Custom Paper Size Landscape: 80
- Envelope DL: DL Custom Paper Size Portrait: 80

G Remaining toner cartridge indication

The amount of remaining toner cartridge is indicated.

Menu Screen

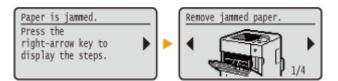
Press \blacktriangleleft ($\blacksquare/\blacksquare$), \blacktriangle (\Rightarrow), \blacktriangleright ($\square \blacksquare'$), \lor (\checkmark), or \blacksquare (\blacksquare) to display the corresponding menu screen. The screen displayed when \triangleright ($\square \blacksquare'$) is pressed is shown below as an example.

Setup	
Control Menu	П
Paper Source	
Network	
Layout	IJ

Setting Menu List(P. 359)

When an Error Occurs

In some cases when an error occurs, instructions on how to respond to the error are displayed. Follow the onscreen instructions to solve the problem. The screen displayed when a paper jam occurs is shown below as an example. **OWhen an Error Message Appears(P. 480)**



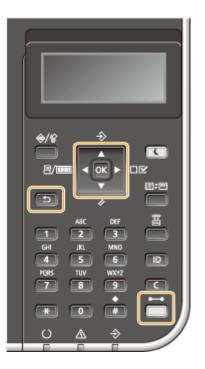
LINKS

Ousing the Operation Panel(P. 29)

Using the Operation Panel

0X7U-00J

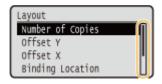
Use the keys shown below to specify settings and adjust values.



Using 🔺 / 🔻

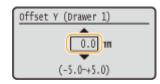
Scrolling the Screen

The scroll bar is displayed on the right side of the screen when not all of the information fits on one screen. If the scroll bar is displayed, use \blacktriangle / \checkmark to scroll up or down. The text and background colors of an item are inverted when it is selected.



Changing a Setting Value

Use 🔺 / 🔻 to enter values.



NOTE:

• Values in () displayed below the entry box are the enterable value range.

Using $\triangleleft / ightarrow$

Proceeding to the Next Screen/Returning to the Previous Screen

Press **b** to proceed to the next screen. Press **d** to return to the previous screen.

Basic Operations

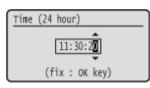
Halftones Text Graphics Image Tage Text Gradation Color Tone High Resolution
--

NOTE:

• You can also proceed to the next screen by pressing and return to the previous screen by pressing .

Moving the Cursor

Use **4** / **b** to enter text and values. **C**Entering Text(P. 31)



Using 🔤

Execute?	
NO	-
Yes	

Press 🚾 to apply a setting.

Using ()

To return to the main screen after exiting the setting menu, press ().

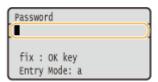
д4

κI



Using the Numeric Keys

Use the numeric keys to enter text and values. **DEntering Text(P. 31)**



NOTE:

Depending on the screen, you cannot use the numeric keys to enter values. In that case, enter with ▲ /
 ▼.

TIPS

• You can specify a variety of display-related settings, such as the screen adjustment and display language, by using <Control Menu> in the setting menu of the operation panel. **Control Menu(P. 361)**

Entering Text

0X7U-00K

Use the numeric keys to enter text and values.



Switching the Type of Text

Press 🔝 to switch the type of text that is entered.

Password	
fix : OK key Entry Mode: 12	

Types of Text That Can Be Entered

Text that can be entered is listed below.

Кеу	A	а	12
	(Not available)		1
2	ABC	abc	2
3	DEF	def	3
4	GHI	ghi	4
5	JKL	jkl	5
6	MNO	mno	6
7	PQRS	pqrs	7
8	TUV	tuv	8

Basic Operations

9	WXYZ	wxyz	9
	(Not available)		0
#	(space) @./!?&\$%#()[]{}<>*+=",;:'^` \		(Not available)

NOTE

Deleting Text

One character is deleted each time **(i**) is pressed. Press and hold **(i**) to delete all of the entered text.

Moving the Cursor

Press \blacktriangleleft or \blacktriangleright to move the cursor.

Entering a Space

Press 📻 , and press 💽 .

Example of Entering Text and Numbers

Example: "Canon 1"

- 1 Press 📻 repeatedly until <A> is selected.
- 2 Press **Press** repeatedly until the letter "C" is selected.
- **3** Press **F** repeatedly until <a> is selected.
- **4** Press **2** repeatedly until the letter "a" is selected.
- 5 Press **[6]** repeatedly until the letter "n" is selected.
- 6 Press **m** repeatedly until the letter "o" is selected.
- 7 Press **f** repeatedly until the letter "n" is selected.
- 8 Press 📻, and press 💽.
- 9 Press 📻 repeatedly until <12> is selected.
- **10** Press **10**.
- 11 Press 🚾.

Turning ON/OFF the Power

0X7U-00L

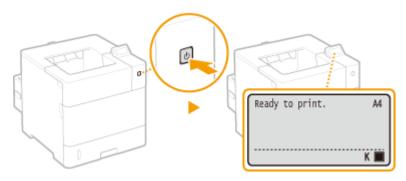
The power switch is used to turn ON the machine. However, when turning OFF the machine, be sure to shut down the machine from the operation panel without using the power switch. This procedure is the same as that for turning ON/OFF a computer.

OTurning ON the Power(P. 33)

OTurning OFF the Power (Performing a Shutdown)(P. 33)

Turning ON the Power

Press the power switch of the machine. When the main screen appears on the display of the operation panel after selfdiagnosis is performed, the machine is ready for printing.



NOTE

- If a message is displayed after the self-diagnosis **OWhen an Error Message Appears(P. 480)**
- If you specify the quick startup settings, you can reduce a waiting time after the power is turned on. **Performing a Quick Start of the Machine(P. 35)**

Turning OFF the Power (Performing a Shutdown)

When turning OFF the machine, shut down the machine from the operation panel.

IMPORTANT

Performing a Shutdown without Using the Power Switch

• If you press the power switch to turn OFF the power, an unexpected error may occur. Follow the procedure below to properly turn OFF the power.

NOTE

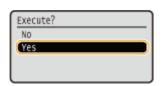
If you have enabled the quick start function, you can press the power switch to turn OFF the power.
 Performing a Quick Start of the Machine(P. 35)

Press 🔻 (1/2).

🤰 Use 🔺 / ▼ to select <Shut Down>, and press 🔤.

Reset		
Soft	Reset	
Form	Feed	
Shut	Down	

3 Select <Yes>, and press **a**.



After the message below appears, the power is automatically turned OFF.



IMPORTANT:

When <Could not execute.> appears

There is remaining print data. Delete the data (**CReset Menu(P. 451)**), and retry the operation. To cancel the operation, press ().

NOTE:

• It may take a maximum of 10 minutes until the power is turned OFF, but it is not a failure.

IMPORTANT

Do not turn ON the power immediately after turning OFF the power

• Wait for 10 seconds or more, and then turn ON the power.

NOTE

• The machine slightly consumes power even after the power is turned OFF. To completely eliminate power consumption, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

LINKS

Performing a Quick Start of the Machine(P. 35)

Performing a Quick Start of the Machine

0X7U-00R

If you specify the quick startup settings, you can reduce the time from when the power switch is pressed until the screens become operable. The way of turning OFF the power to perform a quick start of the machine is called "quick turn-OFF."

Configuring Quick Startup Settings(P. 35) Turning OFF the Power (Performing a Quick Turn-OFF)(P. 36)

Before Configuring Quick Startup Settings

When you are using a network

If any of the settings below is <On>, the quick start function is disabled.

- RARP, BOOTP, IPv6 **Network(P. 182)**
- IPSec **Configuring IPSec Settings(P. 298)**

When you are using the MEAP function

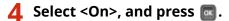
Check whether the currently installed MEAP applications support the quick start function.

Configuring Quick Startup Settings

1 Press ▶ (□☑).

2 Use ▲ / ▼ to select <Control Menu>, and press .

🔒 Select <Main Pwr Quick Start>, and press 🔤 .





0ff> (0

Disables the Quick Start function.

🜔 <0n>

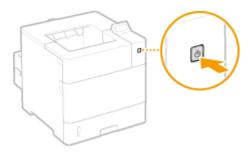
Enables the Quick Start function.



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

Turning OFF the Power (Performing a Quick Turn-OFF)

If you press the power switch to turn OFF the power when the quick start function is enabled, a quick start of the machine is performed when the machine is turned ON next time (quick turn-OFF).



IMPORTANT

Do not unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet after performing a quick turn-OFF

 Do not unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet after turning OFF the power by performing a quick turn-OFF. Doing so may damage the internal components of the machine. Before you unplug the power plug when relocating the machine, turn ON the power, and then perform a shutdown. **Turning OFF the Power** (Performing a Shutdown)(P. 33)

NOTE

- When the machine is performing a job or is in an error state or after you change any setting using the operation panel or Remote UI, pressing the power switch does not trigger a quick turn-OFF, but triggers a shutdown instead.
- If the power is turned OFF by a shutdown operation even when the quick start function is enabled, the machine starts as usual when it is turned ON next time.
- If you perform the auto shutdown timer function when the quick start function is enabled, a quick turn-OFF is performed. Setting Auto Shutdown Time(P. 71)
- If you turn ON the power immediately after performing a quick turn-OFF, it may take some time for the machine to start up.

Loading Paper

You can load paper into the paper drawer, multi-purpose tray, optional paper deck, and optional envelope feeder. Load the paper you usually use into the paper drawer. The paper drawer is convenient when using large amounts of paper. Use the multi-purpose tray when you temporarily use size or type of paper that is not loaded in the paper drawer. See **Paper(P. 569)** for available paper sizes.



Paper Type and Setting for the Machine

See the table below to specify the paper settings according to the type and weight of the paper to load into the paper source. For more information about how to specify the paper settings on the machine, see **Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 60)**. For the amount of paper that can be loaded in each paper source, see **Paper(P. 569)**.

Paper Type	Paper Weight	Paper Setting on the Machine
	60 g/m²	<plain l2=""></plain>
Plain paper ^{*1}	61 to 70 g/m²	<plain l=""> *2</plain>
	71 to 89 g/m²	<plain></plain>
	90 to 120 g/m²	<heavy 1=""></heavy>
Heavy paper	121 to 135 g/m ²	<heavy 2=""></heavy>
	136 to 199 g/m²	<heavy 3=""></heavy>
Bond paper	60 to 75 g/m²	<heavy 1=""></heavy>
	76 to 90 g/m²	<heavy 2=""></heavy>
Envelope	—	<envelope> <envelope h=""> *3</envelope></envelope>
Label	—	<labels></labels>

*1 Recycled paper is also available.

^{*2} Specify <Plain L> as the paper type if printouts come out curled with <Plain> specified.

 *3 Specify <Envelope H> as the paper type if printouts come out faded due to poor toner fixing with <Envelope> specified.

IMPORTANT

Do not use the following types of paper:

- Wrinkled or creased paper
- Curled or rolled paper
- Torn paper
- Damp paper
- Very thin paper

- Paper printed by a thermal transfer printer
- Highly textured paper
- Glossy paper
- Paper with low stiffness

Paper handling and storage

- Store the paper on a flat surface.
- Keep the paper wrapped in its original package to protect the paper from moisture or dryness.
- Do not store the paper in such a way that may cause it to curl or fold.
- Do not store the paper vertically or stack too much paper.
- Do not store the paper in direct sunlight, or in a place subject to high humidity, dryness, or drastic changes in temperature or humidity.

NOTE

When printing on paper that has absorbed moisture

• Steam may emit from the paper output area, or water droplets may form on and around the paper output area. There is nothing unusual about any of these occurrences, which occur when the heat generated from fixing toner on the paper causes moisture in the paper to evaporate (most likely to occur at low room temperatures).

Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer

0X7U-00U

Load the paper that you usually use in the paper drawer. When you want to print on paper that is not loaded in the paper drawer, load the paper in the multi-purpose tray. **Cloading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 44)**

Loading Standard Size Paper(P. 39) Loading a Custom Size Paper(P. 41)

Paper Orientation

See the table below to load available paper in correct orientation.

Paper	Orientation
A4, A5 (portrait), A6 *1 , B5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement ^{*1} , Foolscap, 16K, Custom (portrait)	
A5 (landscape) ^{*2} , Custom (landscape)	

^{*1} Can be loaded only in the optional custom media cassette.

^{*2} Can be loaded only in the optional A5 cassette.

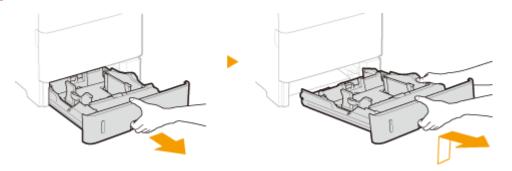
NOTE

• Follow the procedure below when loading paper into the optional paper feeder.

Loading Standard Size Paper

To load paper whose size is found in the paper size markings on the paper drawer, use the following procedure. For paper whose size is not found in the paper size markings, see **D**LOADING a CUSTON Size Paper(P. 41).

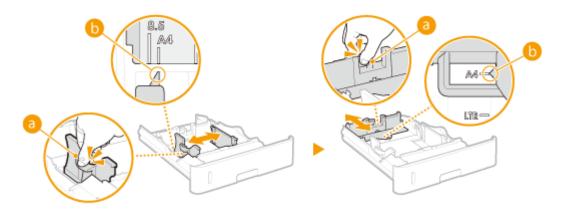
Pull out the paper drawer until it stops, and remove it while lifting the front side.



2 Adjust the positions of the paper guides to the paper size you want to use.

• Press the lock release lever (👩) to align the projection (🚯) to the appropriate paper size marking.

Basic Operations



3 Load the paper so that the edge of the paper stack is aligned against the paper guide on the rear side of the paper drawer.

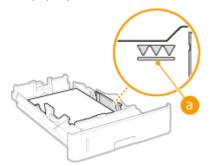
- Insert the paper with the print side face down.
- Fan the paper stack well, and tap it on a flat surface to align the edges.



IMPORTANT:

Do not exceed the load limit line when loading paper

• Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit line (²). Loading too much paper can cause paper jams.



NOTE:

• When loading paper with a logo, see **OLoading Preprinted Paper(P. 56)**.

4 Set the paper drawer.

>>> Continue to OSpecifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 61)

IMPORTANT:

When changing the paper size or type

• If the paper size setting is other than <Auto> or if you load a different type of paper into the machine, make sure to change the settings. If you do not change the paper size or type setting, the machine cannot print properly.

Printing on the Back Side of Printed Paper (Manual 2-Sided Printing)

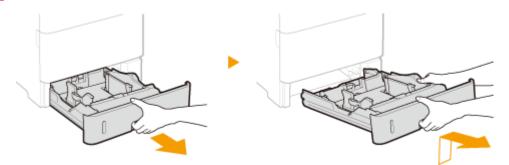
You can print on the back side of printed paper. Flatten any curls on the printed paper and insert it into the multi-purpose tray (**Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 44)**), with the side to print face up (previously printed side face down).

- When you want to print on the back side of the paper that is already printed, set <Manual 2-Sided (MP)> to <2nd Side> in the setting menu of the operation panel. **Manual 2-Sided (MP)(P. 458)**
- Load one sheet of paper each time you print.
- You can use only the paper printed with this machine.
- You cannot print on the side that has previously been printed on.

Loading a Custom Size Paper

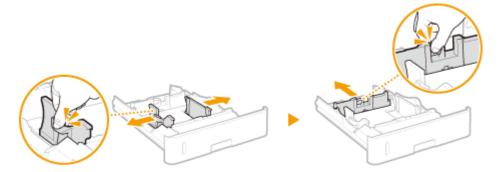
To load custom size paper or other paper whose size is not found in the paper size markings on the paper drawer, use the following procedure.

1 Pull out the paper drawer until it stops, and remove it while lifting the front side.



2 Slide the paper guides apart.

• Press the lock release lever to slide the paper guides outward.



3 Load the paper so that the edge of the paper stack is aligned against the front side of the paper drawer.

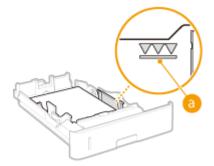
- Place the paper stack with the print side face down.
- Fan the paper stack well, and tap it on a flat surface to align the edges.



IMPORTANT:

Do not exceed the load limit line when loading paper

• Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit line (^(a)). Loading too much paper can cause paper jams.



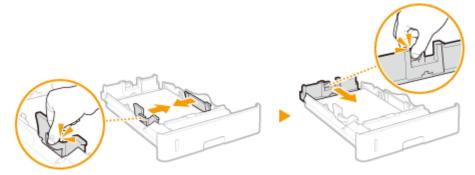
NOTE:

• When loading paper with a logo, see **OLoading Preprinted Paper(P. 56)** .



Align the paper guides against the edges of the paper.

• Press the lock release lever and slide the paper guides inward until they are aligned securely against the edges of the paper.



IMPORTANT:

Align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper

- Paper guides that are too loose or too tight can cause misfeeds or paper jams.
- Insert the paper drawer into the machine.

>>> Continue to OSpecifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 61)

IMPORTANT:

When changing the paper size or type

• If you load custom size paper or a different type of paper into the machine, make sure to change the settings. If you do not change the paper size or type setting, the machine cannot print properly.

NOTE

 When you want to print a document from an environment not allowing you to make settings for paper size and paper type, such as from a computer running an operating system or a mobile device that does not support any printer driver, set <Standard Paper Size> and <Default Paper Type>. Select Feeder Menu(P. 453)

Printing on the Back Side of Printed Paper (Manual 2-Sided Printing)

You can print on the back side of printed paper. Flatten any curls on the printed paper and insert it into the multi-purpose tray (**Coloring Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 44)**), with the side to print face up (previously printed side face down).

- When you want to print on the back side of the paper that is already printed, set <Manual 2-Sided (MP)> to <2nd Side> in the setting menu of the operation panel. **Manual 2-Sided (MP)(P. 458)**
- Load one sheet of paper each time you print.
- You can use only the paper printed with this machine.
- You cannot print on the side that has previously been printed on.

LINKS

Paper(P. 569)

Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray

0X7U-00W

When you want to print on paper that is not loaded in the paper drawer, load the paper in the multi-purpose tray. Load the paper that you usually use in the paper drawer. **OLOADING Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 39)**

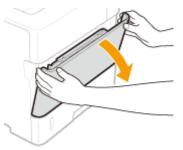
Paper Orientation

See the table below to load available paper in correct orientation.

Paper	Orientation
A4, A5 (portrait), A6, B5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, Foolscap, 16K, Index Card, Custom (portrait), Envelope	
A5 (landscape), Custom (landscape)	

Open the cover.

• Hold the left and right side handles, and open the cover.

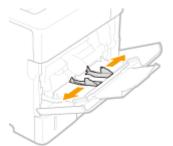






3 Spread the paper guides apart.

• Slide the paper guides outward.



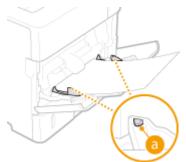
4 Insert the paper into the multi-purpose tray until the paper stops.

- Insert the paper with the print side face up.
- Fan the paper stack well, and tap it on a flat surface to align the edges.



IMPORTANT:

Do not exceed the load limit guide when loading paper



NOTE:

 When loading envelopes or paper with a logo, see OLOading Envelopes(P. 54) or OLOading Preprinted Paper(P. 56).

5 Align the paper guides against the edges of the paper.

• Slide the paper guides inward until they are aligned securely against the edges of the paper.



IMPORTANT: Align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper

• Paper guides that are too loose or too tight can cause misfeeds or paper jams.

>>> Continue to OSpecifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 64)

IMPORTANT: When changing the paper size or type

• The factory default setting for paper size is <A4>. If you load a different size or type of paper into the machine, make sure to change the settings. If you do not change the settings, a paper jam or printing error may occur.

NOTE

 When you want to print a document from an environment not allowing you to make settings for paper size and paper type, such as from a computer running an operating system or a mobile device that does not support any printer driver, set <Standard Paper Size> and <Default Paper Type>. Select Feeder Menu(P. 453)

Printing on the Back Side of Printed Paper (Manual 2-Sided Printing)

You can print on the back side of printed paper. Flatten any curls on the printed paper and insert it into the multi-purpose tray, with the side to print face up (previously printed side face down).

- When you want to print on the back side of the paper that is already printed, set <Manual 2-Sided (MP)> to <2nd Side> in the setting menu of the operation panel. **Manual 2-Sided (MP)(P. 458)**
- Load one sheet of paper each time you print.
- You can use only the paper printed with this machine.
- You cannot print on the side that has previously been printed on.

LINKS

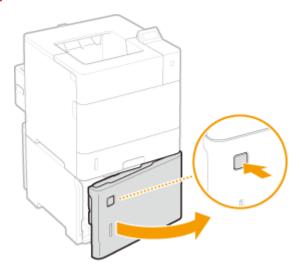
Paper(P. 569)

Loading Paper in the Paper Deck (Option)

0X7U-00X

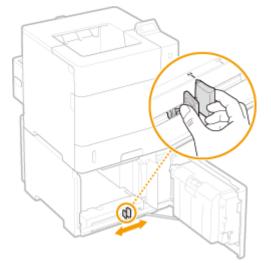
You can load a large amount of A4, Letter or Legal size paper in the paper deck. It will be convenient if you use the paper deck to hold paper you use frequently.

1 Press the button to open the door.



2 Slide the paper guide.

• Adjust the paper guide to the position for the paper size you are using.



IMPORTANT:

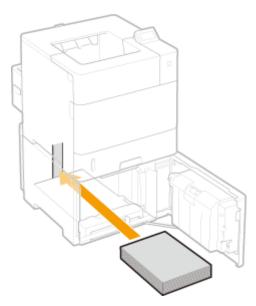
Adjust the paper guide to the exact position for the paper size

• If the guide position adjustment is not exact, it may cause paper misfeeds or paper jams.

3 Load the paper so that the far edge of the paper stack is in close contact with the rear side of the paper deck.

- Insert the paper with the print side face down.
- Fan the paper stack well, and tap it on a flat surface to align the edges.

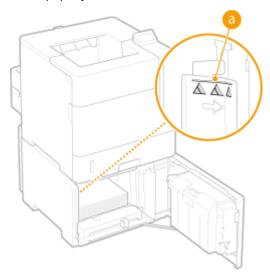
Basic Operations



IMPORTANT:

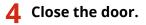
Do not exceed the load limit line when loading paper

• Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit line (²). Loading too much paper can cause paper jams.



NOTE:

• When loading paper with a logo, see **OLoading Preprinted Paper(P. 56)** .



>>> Continue to OSpecifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 61)

IMPORTANT:

When changing the paper size or type

• If the paper size setting is other than <Auto> or if you load a different type of paper into the machine, make sure to change the settings. If you do not change the paper size or type setting, the machine cannot print properly.

NOTE

 When you want to print a document from an environment not allowing you to make settings for paper size and paper type, such as from a computer running an operating system or a mobile device that does not support any printer driver, set <Standard Paper Size> and <Default Paper Type>. Select Feeder Menu(P. 453)

Printing on the Back Side of Printed Paper (Manual 2-Sided Printing)

You can print on the back side of printed paper. Flatten any curls on the printed paper and insert it into the multi-purpose tray (**Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 44)**), with the side to print face up (previously printed side face down).

- When you want to print on the back side of the paper that is already printed, set <Manual 2-Sided (MP)> to <2nd Side> in the setting menu of the operation panel.
 Manual 2-Sided (MP)(P. 458)
- Load one sheet of paper each time you print.
- You can use only the paper printed with this machine.
- You cannot print on the side that has previously been printed on.

LINKS

Paper(P. 569)Optional Items(P. 575)

Loading Envelopes in the Envelope Feeder (Option)

0X7U-00Y

You can load a large number of envelopes in the envelope feeder. This provides you convenience when you are printing on many envelopes at a time.

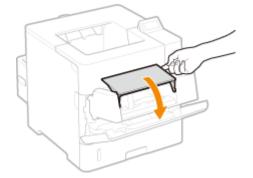
Paper Orientation

See the table below to load available paper in correct orientation.

Paper	Orientation
custom (portrait), envelope	
custom (landscape)	

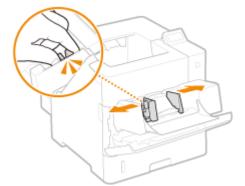
Open the cover.

• Hold the handle on the right side, and open the cover.

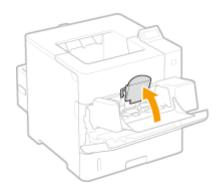




• Press the lock release lever to slide the paper guides outward.

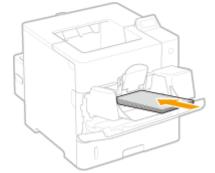


3 Raise the envelope pressure plate.



4 Insert the envelopes into the envelope feeder until they stop.

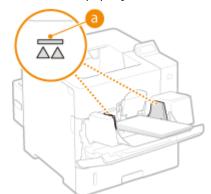
- Insert the envelopes with the print side face up.
- Fan the envelope stack well, and tap it on a flat surface to align the edges.



IMPORTANT:

Do not exceed the load limit line when loading envelopes

• Make sure that the envelope stack does not exceed the load limit line (a). Loading too much envelopes can cause paper jams.

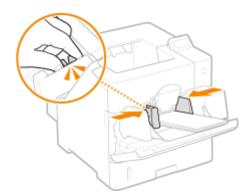


NOTE:

• When loading envelopes, see **CLoading Envelopes(P. 54)** .

5 Align the paper guides against the edges of the envelopes.

• Press the lock release lever and slide the paper guides inward until they are aligned securely against the edges of the envelopes.

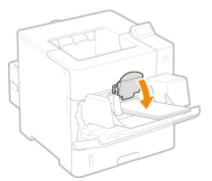


IMPORTANT:

Align the paper guides securely against the edges of the envelopes

• Paper guides that are too loose or too tight can cause paper misfeeds or paper jams.

5 Lower the envelope pressure plate.



Continue to Specifying Paper Size and Type for the Envelope Feeder (Option) (P. 66)

IMPORTANT:

When changing the paper size or type

• The factory default setting for paper size is <Env. DL>. If you load a different size or type of paper into the machine, make sure to change the settings. If you do not change the settings, a paper jam or printing error may occur.

Printing on the Back Side of Printed Paper (Manual 2-Sided Printing)

You can print on the back side of printed paper. Flatten any curls on the printed paper and insert it into the multi-purpose tray (**Coloring Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 44)**), with the side to print face up (previously printed side face down).

- When you want to print on the back side of the paper that is already printed, set <Manual 2-Sided (MP)> to <2nd Side> in the setting menu of the operation panel. Manual 2-Sided (MP)(P. 458)
- Load one sheet of paper each time you print.
- You can use only the paper printed with this machine.
- You cannot print on the side that has previously been printed on.

LINKS

Loading Preprinted Paper(P. 56)Paper(P. 569)

Basic Operations

Optional Items(P. 575)

Loading Envelopes

0X7U-010

Make sure to flatten any curls on envelopes before loading them. Also pay attention to the orientation of envelopes and which side is face up. Note that envelopes cannot be loaded in the paper drawer.

Before Loading Envelopes(P. 54) Loading Envelopes in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 55)

NOTE

• This section describes how to load envelopes in the orientation you want, as well as procedures that you need to complete before loading envelopes. For the general procedure for loading envelopes in the multipurpose tray or optional envelope feeder, see the following.

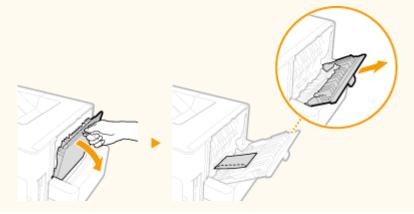
Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 44)
 Loading Envelopes in the Envelope Feeder (Option)(P. 50)

Before Loading Envelopes

Follow the procedure below to prepare the envelopes before loading.

IMPORTANT

• Envelopes cannot be ejected into the output tray. Make sure to open the sub-output tray.



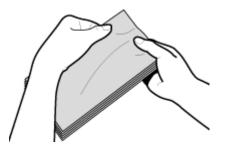
1 Close the flap of each envelope.



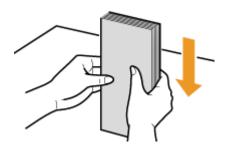
2 Flatten them to release any remaining air, and make sure that the edges are pressed tightly.



3 Loosen any stiff corners of the envelopes and flatten any curls.



4 Align the edges of the envelope on a flat surface.

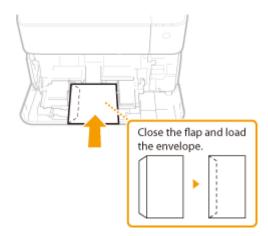


Loading Envelopes in the Multi-Purpose Tray

Load the envelopes Monarch, COM10, DL, or ISO-C5 in portrait orientation (with the short edge toward the machine), with the non-glued side (front side) face up. You cannot print on the reverse side of envelopes. Use the same way to load envelopes in the envelope feeder.

NOTE

• Load the envelopes so that the edge with the flap is toward the left side as shown in the illustration.



Loading Preprinted Paper

0X7U-011

When you use paper that has been preprinted with a logo, pay attention to the orientation of the paper when loading. Load the paper properly so that printing is performed on the correct side of the paper with a logo.



Making 1-Sided Printouts on Paper with Logos(P. 56)
 Making 2-Sided Printouts on Paper with Logos(P. 58)

NOTE

- This section mainly describes how to load preprinted paper with the proper facing and orientation. For the general procedure for loading paper in the paper drawer, multi-purpose tray, optional paper deck, or optional envelope feeder, see the following.
 - Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 39)
 Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 44)
 Loading Paper in the Paper Deck (Option)(P. 47)
 Loading Envelopes in the Envelope Feeder (Option)(P. 50)

Making 1-Sided Printouts on Paper with Logos

Printing on Paper with Logos in Portrait Orientation

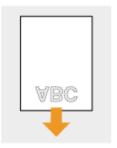


When loading paper in the paper drawer or paper deck

Load the paper with the logo side (the side to print the document) face down.

Loading Orientation

Portrait

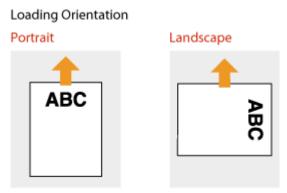




Basic Operations

When loading paper in the multi-purpose tray or envelope feeder

Load the paper with the logo side (the side to print the document) face up.



Printing on Paper with Logos in Landscape Orientation



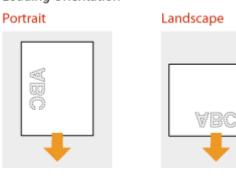
Print Result



When loading paper in the paper drawer or paper deck

Load the paper with the logo side (the side to print the document) face down.

Loading Orientation



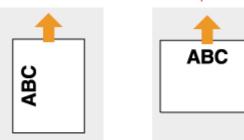
When loading paper in the multi-purpose tray or envelope feeder

Load the paper with the logo side (the side to print the document) face up.

Loading Orientation

Portrait

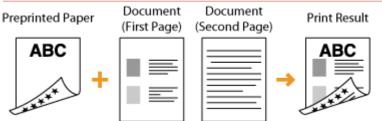




Making 2-Sided Printouts on Paper with Logos

When a document to print consists of an odd number of pages, set <Alternative Method> to <Off> in the setting menu of the operation panel. **OAlternative Method(P. 398)**

Printing on Paper with Logos in Portrait Orientation



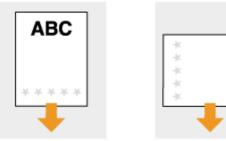
When loading paper in the paper drawer or paper deck

Load the paper with the front logo side (the side to print the first page of the document) face up.

Loading Orientation

Portrait

Landscape

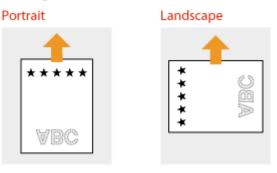


ABC BC

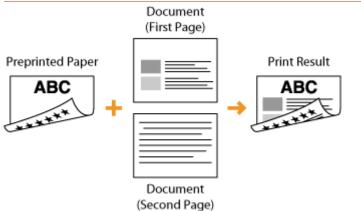
When loading paper in the multi-purpose tray

Load the paper with the front logo side (the side to print the first page of the document) face down.

Loading Orientation

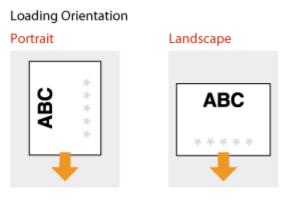


Printing on Paper with Logos in Landscape Orientation



When loading paper in the paper drawer or paper deck

Load the paper with the front logo side (the side to print the first page of the document) face up.



When loading paper in the multi-purpose tray

Load the paper with the front logo side (the side to print the first page of the document) face down.

Loading Orientation

Portrait



NOTE

The <Paper Feed Method> setting

When you print on preprinted paper, you need to change the facing of the paper to load each time you switch between 1-sided and 2-sided printing. However, if <Paper Feed Method> is set to <Print Side Priority>, the facing that you use for loading preprinted paper for 2-sided printing (logo side face up for paper drawer or down for multi-purpose tray) can also be used for 1-sided printing. This setting is especially useful if you frequently perform both 1-sided and 2-sided printing. OPaper Feed Method(P. 412)

Specifying Paper Size and Type

0X7U-012

You must specify the paper size and type settings to match the paper that is loaded. Make sure to change the paper settings when you load the paper that is different from the previously loaded paper.

IMPORTANT

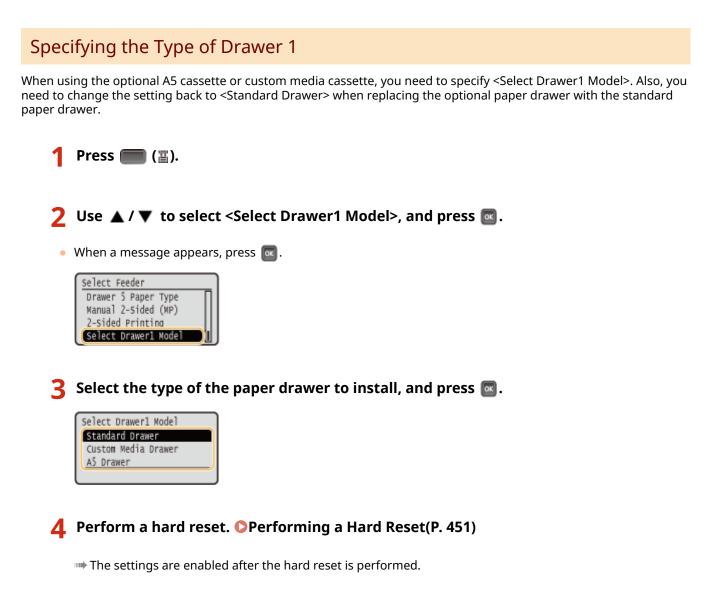
• If the setting does not match the size and type of loaded paper, a paper jam or printing error may occur.

Specifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Drawer

0X7U-013

Specify the paper size and type as necessary depending on the paper you load in the paper drawer. When you use an optional paper drawer, you need to specify the type of that paper drawer before specifying the paper size.

Specifying the Type of Drawer 1(P. 61)
 Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 61)



Specifying Paper Size and Type

The factory default setting for paper size is <Auto>. With this setting, the machine automatically recognizes the size of the loaded paper and therefore you need not change the paper size setting in most cases. You only need to set the paper type. However, you need to set the paper size in the following cases.

- When using the A5 cassette or custom media cassette
- When using custom size paper
- When printing with paper size set to <Free Size>

NOTE

- When using <Free Size> as the paper size setting, ensure that the settings in the printer driver match the paper that is loaded in the paper drawer.
- When using paper of a standard size after changing <Auto> to a different paper size setting, return the setting to <Auto>.

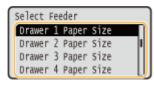


NOTE:

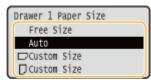
• If you do not need to change the paper size setting, proceed to step 4.

2 Use ▲ / ▼ to select one of <Drawer 1 Paper Size> to <Drawer 5 Paper Size>, and press .

 <Drawer 2 Paper Size> to <Drawer 5 Paper Size> are displayed when the optional paper feeder or paper deck is installed.



3 Select the paper size, and press



NOTE:

For custom size paper

• Custom size paper can be loaded in either portrait or landscape orientation. See the table below to select the setting according to the orientation of the paper.

Paper size	Orientation	Setting
Custom size paper	*	< [] Custom Size>
		< 🖵 Custom Size>

* Before printing, select the [Feed Custom Paper Vertically] check box in the [Paper Source] tab of the printer driver.

About <Free Size>

- If you frequently change sizes of paper to load, you can specify <Free Size>, which saves you the trouble of changing the paper size setting each time you print. However, note that the paper size specified on the printer driver is not checked before printing in this case.
- If you select <Free Size>, the print speed will be slower.



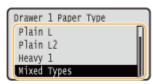
4 Select one of <Drawer 1 Paper Type> to <Drawer 5 Paper Type>, and press **a**.

• <Drawer 2 Paper Type> to <Drawer 5 Paper Type> are displayed when the paper feeder or paper deck is installed.

ſ	Select I	Fee	eder		
	Drawer	1	Paper	Туре	
	Drawer	2	Paper	Туре	- 11
	Drawer	3	Paper	Туре	- II
	Drawer	4	Paper	Туре	[]



5 Select the paper type, and press **a**.



LINKS

OLoading Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 39) **Paper(P. 569)**

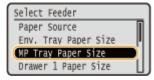
Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-Purpose Tray

0X7U-014

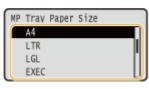


2 Us

Use \blacktriangle / \blacksquare to select <MP Tray Paper Size>, and press \blacksquare .



3 Select the paper size, and press **a**.



NOTE:

For A5 size/custom size paper

• A5 size or custom size paper can be loaded in either portrait or landscape orientation. See the table below to select the setting according to the orientation of the paper.

Paper size	Orientation	Setting
A5	*1	< [] A5>
		< 🖵 A5>
Custom size paper	*2	< [] Custom Size>
		< 🖵 Custom Size>

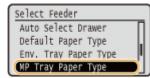
^{*1} Before printing, select the [Feed A5 Vertically] check box in the [Paper Source] tab of the printer driver.

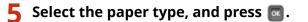
^{*2} Before printing, select the [Feed Custom Paper Vertically] check box in the [Paper Source] tab of the printer driver.

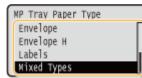
About <Free Size>

- If you frequently change sizes of paper to load, you can specify <Free Size>, which saves you the trouble of changing the paper size setting each time you print. However, note that the paper size specified on the printer driver is not checked before printing in this case.
- If you select <Free Size>, the print speed will be slower.









LINKS

Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 44)Paper(P. 569)

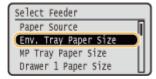
Specifying Paper Size and Type for the Envelope Feeder (Option)

0X7U-015

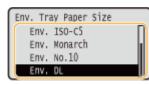


2ι

Use \blacktriangle / \blacksquare to select <Env. Tray Paper Size>, and press \blacksquare .



3 Select the paper size, and press **a**.



NOTE:

For custom size paper

• Custom size paper can be loaded in either portrait or landscape orientation. See the table below to select the setting according to the orientation of the paper.

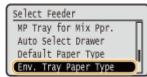
Paper size	Orientation	Setting
Custom size paper	*	< [] Custom Size>
		< 🖵 Custom Size>

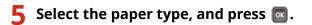
* Before printing, select the [Feed Custom Paper Vertically] check box in the [Paper Source] tab of the printer driver.

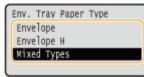
About <Free Size>

- If you frequently change sizes of paper to load, you can specify <Free Size>, which saves you the trouble of changing the paper size setting each time you print. However, note that the paper size specified on the printer driver is not checked before printing in this case.
- If you select <Free Size>, the print speed will be slower.

Select <Env. Tray Paper Type>, and press 💽 .







LINKS

Loading Envelopes in the Envelope Feeder (Option)(P. 50)
 Paper(P. 569)

Saving Energy

0X7U-016

You can save energy by making a setting so that the machine automatically enters the power saving state (sleep mode) or automatically turns OFF if no operation is performed for a certain period of time or that the machine is automatically turned OFF at a fixed time on each day of the week.



Entering Sleep Mode(P. 69)Setting Auto Shutdown Time(P. 71)

Entering Sleep Mode

0X7U-017

The sleep mode function reduces the amount of power consumed by the machine by disabling power flow to the operation panel. If no operations will be performed on the machine for a while, such as during a lunch break, you can save power simply by pressing in on the operation panel. You can also use the Auto Sleep Time setting to automatically put the machine into sleep mode if it remains idle for a specified length of time. You can specify settings to change the interval at which the auto sleep function is performed or put the machine in sleep mode at a specified time.



NOTE

When in sleep mode

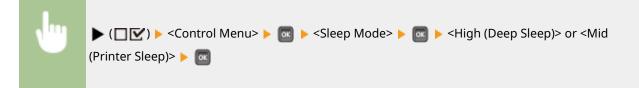
• When the machine is in sleep mode, 🔼 lights in green.

Situations in which the machine does not enter sleep mode

• The machine does not enter sleep mode when it is receiving data from or sending data to a computer, any of the covers is opened, or no toner cartridge is installed.

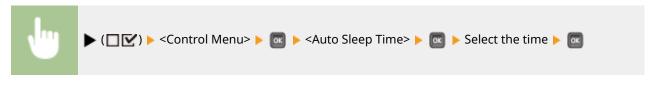
Selecting the Sleep Mode Level

The degree of energy consumption reduction effect of sleep mode differs with the selected level of the mode (**Sleep Mode(P. 361)**). To effectively save the power, we recommend that you use the machine with the factory default setting for sleep mode level. If you want to change the setting, follow the procedure below.



Changing Auto Sleep Time

The machine automatically enters sleep mode if it remains idle for a specified length of time. We recommend using the factory default settings (**>Auto Sleep Time(P. 362)**) to save the most power. If you want to change the amount of time that elapses before Auto Sleep is performed, follow the procedure below.



NOTE

• Immediately after the machine is turned ON, the length of time to elapse before the machine enters sleep mode may be longer than specified in the menu.

Automatically Entering/Exiting Sleep Mode at Specified Time

You can set the machine to enter sleep mode at a specified time. You can also set the machine to exit sleep mode at a specified time.



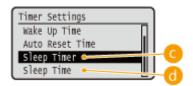


60 <Wake Up Timer>

Select <On> to automatically exit sleep mode at a specified time.

🕞 <Wake Up Time>

Set the time to automatically exit sleep mode.



Sleep Timer>

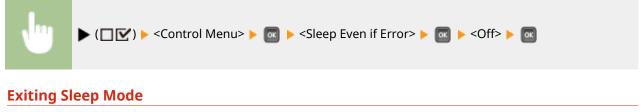
Select <On> to automatically enter sleep mode at a specified time.

📵 <Sleep Time>

Set the time to automatically enter sleep mode.

When You Want to Prevent the Machine from Entering Sleep Mode if an Error Occurs

You can specify settings so that the machine will not enter sleep mode when an error occurs. **Sleep Even if Error(P. 361)**



Press 💽 .

Setting Auto Shutdown Time

0X7U-018

You can configure the machine to be automatically turned OFF when it is not operated for a long time. You can also configure the machine to be turned OFF at a specified time. These functions allow you to avoid useless power consumption that occurs due to failure to turn OFF the power. By factory default, this function is enabled.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

🔁 🕄 http://1824	68.1.81.0000/ipo/porta	ogiPCSUT-138	9076020			Р - П	ex 0 1
		Device Nat Product Na Location:	ne: me (Sorial No.):			Login User: System	Manager Log
👌 Remote UI: Po	etal			Ling	inge: English	· D Mails	o System Man
				Lant Updated: 06/07 2015-01:	91-40 🛃	Status Monitor/Cancel	10
Device Basic Informa	tion						6
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	6
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						2
Error Information					`		
There is no error.						Basic Tools	
consumables inform	ation					Bax	0
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	4
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

3 Click [Control Menu] ▶ [Edit].



4 Configure auto shutdown timer settings.

Basic Operations

Paper Source Settings Network Leyout Leyout Outer Maintenanco Ste Output/Control Ditty Mene Denice Control Menagement Settings Department (D Management Security Security Security	Connol Masso In settings will be changed as follows. Ap Settings ex Noda: Steep Even if Enor Provision Energy Saving When in	P = B C X () 12 () Last Located 2016 Bit 10 15 Some changes are effective after the main power is turned OFF and ON) (CK Cancel High (Deep Steep) • Deep Steep) •
Paper Source Settings Network Layout Duer Martineanco Stee Duer Martineanco Utility Mene Denice Control Management Settings Department ID Management Security Security Department	e settings will be changed as follows. ep Settings ep Nodo: Step Even if Enor Provision Energy Saving When in	Some changes are effective after the main power is turned OFF and ON) OK Cancel High (Deep Steep)
Print Quality Use: Maintenance Quiput/Control Ubity Menu Denice Control Management Settings Department ID Management Security UnportExport	ep Node: Steep Even if Error Prioritize Energy Saving When in	High (Deep Sleep)
User Maintenanco Ster Output/Control Utility Mene Denice Control Management Settings Department ID Management Security Dimpon/Export	ep Node: Steep Even if Error Prioritize Energy Saving When in	
Deer Martenance Dekput/Control Dekput/Control Derice Control Management Settings Security Singent/Expent	ep Node: Steep Even if Error Prioritize Energy Saving When in	
OutputControl = Utility Menou = Device Control Management Settings = Department ID Management = Security = ImpertExport	Sleep Even if Error Prioritize Energy Saving When in	
Device Control Monagement Settings Department ID Management Security DisportExport	Prioritize Energy Saving When in	Dans Gana
Denot Carron Management Settings Department ID Management Security DimportExport		
Department ID Management Security ImportExport		bran.
= Security = Import/Export	Auto Bleep Time:	Do Not Allow
© Import/Export	Sleep When Using USB:	 Alow
	her Settings	
	Use Wake Up Timer	
	Wake Up Time:	12 00
	Change Auto Reset Time	
	Auto Reset Time:	lan. •
8	Use Sleep Timer	
	Sleep Time:	12 00
	Use Auto Shutdown Timer	
	Auto Shutdown Time:	Alter 4 hr. m
13	Set Auto Shutdown Weekly Timer	
	Sunday:	
	Monday:	
	Tuesday:	
	Wednesday:	
	Thursday:	
	Friday:	
_	Saturday:	1

[Use Auto Shutdown Timer]

Select the check box to turn OFF the power when the time set in [Auto Shutdown Time] elapses.

[Auto Shutdown Time]

Specify after how many hours the machine should be turned OFF since it has entered sleep mode. You can select in the range from [After 1 hr.] to [After 8 hr.] in units of hours.

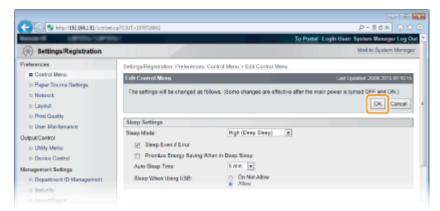
[Set Auto Shutdown Weekly Timer]

Select the check box to set the auto shutdown time for each day of the week.

[Sunday] to [Saturday]

Enter the time to turn OFF the power for each day of the week. If no time is specified, the auto shutdown time is not set for the day of the week.

5 Click [OK].



NOTE

If shutdown does not seem to be finished

• It may take a maximum of 10 minutes until the power is turned OFF, but it is not a failure.

Situations that may be responsible for failure to turn OFF the power automatically at the specified time

- You are making some operation on the machine.
- The machine is in the process of printing, cleaning, or some other operation.
- An error message is displayed.

If the power cannot be turned OFF automatically at the specified time, a retry will be performed up to 10 times at intervals of 1 minute. If the power cannot be turned OFF even after ten retries, auto shutdown will be impossible for that day.

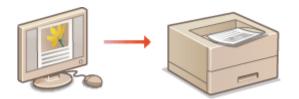
Printing a Document	
Printing from a Computer	
Basic Printing Operations	
Canceling Prints	83
Various Print Settings	85
Enlarging or Reducing	
Switching 1-Sided and 2-Sided Printing	
Collating Printouts by Page	
Printing Multiple Pages onto One Sheet	
Printing Posters	
Printing Booklet	
Printing Borders	
Printing Dates and Page Numbers	
Printing Watermarks	101
Printing Specific Pages onto Different Paper	103
Selecting Document Type	105
Saving Toner	107
Combining and Printing Multiple Documents	109
Configuring Print Settings to Your Needs	113
Registering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Settings	114
Changing Default Settings	116
Using Useful Print Functions	118
Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)	120
Changing Default USB Print Settings	129
Printing a Document Secured by a PIN (Secured Print)	131
Using the Encrypted Print	136
Printing a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)	137
Deleting a Document Stored in the Machine	141
Setting a Name or PIN to a Box	144
Printing without Opening a File (Direct Print)	146
Print Settings for Direct Print	150
Printing Received E-mail (E-Mail Print)	157

0X7U-019

This section describes how to print documents made on your computer, print files saved in a USB memory device, and print documents by entering a PIN from the operation panel.

Printing from a Computer

You can print a document made on your computer by using the printer driver. **OPrinting from a Computer(P. 76)**



■ Using Useful Print Functions

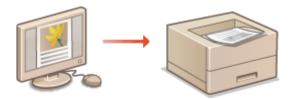
You can use the print functions to print files stored in a USB memory device by connecting it directly to the machine without using a computer and to set a requirement that a PIN must be entered before any printing can start. **OUsing Useful Print Functions(P. 118)**



Printing from a Computer

0X7U-01A

You can print a document made with an application on your computer by using the printer driver. There are useful settings on the printer driver, such as enlarging/reducing and 2-sided printing, that enable you to print your documents in various ways. Before you can use this function, you need to complete some procedures, such as installing the printer driver on your computer. For more information, see Printer Driver Installation Guide.



NOTE

- If you are a Mac user, see Canon UFR II/UFRII LT Printer Driver Guide for installing the printer drivers and Printer Driver's Help for using print functions (**○For Mac OS Users(P. 622)**).
- Depending on the operating system and the type or version of the printer driver you are using, the printer driver screens in this manual may differ from your screens.
- You can use the PCL6 printer driver as well as the UFR II printer driver. The available print settings vary depending on the printer driver. For more information, click [Help] on each printer driver screen.

About the Printer Driver Help

• Clicking [Help] on the printer driver screen displays the Help screen. On this screen, you can see the detailed descriptions that are not in the e-Manual.

- Off	-	
	_	

To Use Optional Accessories

If the optional paper feeder, paper deck, envelope feeder, or SD card is installed on the machine, perform the following operation on the printer driver before using these accessories.

IMPORTANT

• To perform the following procedure, log on to your computer with an administrator account.



Open the printer folder (**○Displaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)**) ► Right-click your printer icon ► [Printer Properties] or [Properties] ► [Device Settings] tab ► Make settings for the option you want to use ► [OK]

Canon UFR II Properties			
General Shaling Pots Advanced	Color Management Securit Devic	ce Settings Vullie	
Device Settings: Manual			
	Paper Source Options:	500 Sheet Cassette x 3	•
	Envelope Feeder	Paper Deck Unit	
	Duplex Unit		
	SD Card Installed		
7	Spooling at Host:	Auto	•
	Use Department ID Managem	nent(J)	Settings
	Set User Information(L)		Settings(W)
	Specify Box Number When S	toring	
		Details(G)	form to Tray Assignment
		Get Device Status	About
		OK Cancel	Apply Help

Basic Printing Operations

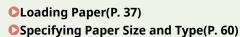
0X7U-01C

This section describes how to print a document on your computer by using the printer driver.



NOTE

• Before printing, specify the paper size and type for the paper loaded in the paper source.

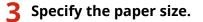


- **1** Open a document in an application and display the print dialog box.
- How to display the print dialog box differs for each application. For more information, see the instruction manual for the application you are using.

2 Select your printer, and click [Preferences] or [Properties].

Select Plinter	
Stin Andel Thelester	Hicrosoft XPS Documen
R Canon UFRI	
(1) / AL	
	,
	Print to file Preferences

• The screen that is displayed differs depending on the application you are using.



Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings Page Setup Rnishi	g Paper Source Quality	
Profile:	Default Settings - Add(1)	Edx(2)
Output Method:	Pirit -	
	Page Size:	a_2i: 1⊕ [1 to 9999]
	Output Sze: Match Page Sze	Potrat A Landscape
	Page Layout:	Manual Scaling
	1 1on 1 -	Scaling: 100 x (25 to 200)
	1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing:	
	1 eided Piriting -	
J/P	Binding Location:	
A4 [Scaling: Auto]	Long Edge [Left]	Gutter
	Collate/Group(H):	
Vew Settings Restore Defaults	or -	
	-	
		OK Cancel Help

อ [Page Size]

Select the size of a document made in the application.

🜔 [Output Size]

Select the size of paper on which the document will be actually printed. If the selected size differs from the one specified in [Page Size], the document is printed enlarged/reduced automatically according to the size specified in [Output Size]. **Denlarging or Reducing(P. 87)**

TIPS

Clickable UI

• You can easily specify the page layout, binding position, etc. intuitively on the preview image. For more information, click [Help] on the printer driver screen.



4 Click the [Paper Source] tab, and specify the paper source and paper type.

References Basic Settings Page Setup Rhishin	Paper Source Jualty			
Proble:	Change» Default Settings Edit and Preview	Add(T) Edt(2)		
	Paper Selection:	Same Paper for Al Pages	-	
	rape aveve:	Multi-purpose Tray Draver 1 Draver 2 Draver 3 Draver 3 Draver 4	•	
	Paper Type:	Printer Default	0 6	
A4 [Scaing: A.to] Vew Settings	Print on the Other Side			
		Restore Defaults		
		OK Cancel I	Help	

[Paper Source]

Select the paper source from which paper is fed.

Setting Value	Paper Source
Auto	The paper source is automatically selected according to the specified size and type of the paper to print on and the settings configured in the machine.
Multi-Purpose Tray	Paper is fed from the multi-purpose tray.
Drawer 1	Paper is fed from the paper drawer of the machine.
Drawer N (N=2 to 5)	Paper is fed from the optional paper feeder.
Envelope Feeder	Paper is fed from the optional envelope feeder.

NOTE:

• When the optional paper deck is installed, it constitutes the lowest paper feeder.

🜔 [Paper Type]

Specify the setting according to the type and basis weight of the paper to print on. **CLoading Paper(P. 37)**

NOTE:

 If [Printer Default] is selected, the paper type specified for <Default Paper Type> in the setting menu of the operation panel is applied. Default Paper Type(P. 457)

NOTE:

• If paper is loaded in portrait orientation, select the [Feed A5 Vertically] or [Feed Custom Paper Vertically] check box.

5 Specify other print settings as necessary. Various Print Settings(P. 85)

NOTE:

You can register the settings you specified in this step as a "profile" and use the profile whenever you print. You can eliminate the need to specify the same settings every time you print. ORegistering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Settings(P. 114)



Autput Method:		
	Pint Pint	-
	Page Stor: At Output Stor: Match Page Stor Page Layout: 1 I on 1 1 elded /2 elded /Social Printing: 1 elded Printing	Copies[0]: 1 1 1 1 5999] Otentation A ● Potnat A ● Landacape Manual Scaling Scaling Scaling 100 1 1 (25 to 200)
Al (Scaling: Auto)	Binding Location:	• Guter
Vew Settings Restore Defaults	Collate-Group(H):	•

7 Click [Print] or [OK].

🖶 Print	
General	
Select Plinter	
NAdd Printer Scanon UFR I Stat	Hicrosoft XPS Documen
×	
Status: Ready Location: Comment:	Print to file Preferences
Page Range	
Selection Current Page	Number of copies: 1
Pages: 1-65535	Ecolate - Co-Co-Co
Enter either a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12	11 22 33
Pr	int Cancel Apply

• Printing starts. On some applications, a screen like shown below appears.



• To cancel printing, click [Cancel] when the screen shown above is displayed. After the screen disappears or if the screen is not displayed, you can cancel printing in other ways. **Canceling Prints(P. 83)**

NOTE

When printing from the Windows Store app in Windows 8/Server 2012

Display the charms on the right side of the screen and use the procedure shown below.

Windows 8/Server 2012

[Devices] > the printer driver for this machine tap or click [Print]

Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2

[Devices] > [Print] > the printer driver for this machine tap or click [Print]

• If you print using this method, only a limited number of print settings are available.

• If the message [The printer requires your attention. Go to the desktop to take care of it.] is displayed, go to the desktop and follow the instructions in the displayed dialog box. This message appears when the machine is set to display the user name during printing and similar instances.

LINKS

OManaging Documents and Checking the Machine Status(P. 342)

Canceling Prints

0X7U-01E

You can cancel printing from your computer or on the operation panel of the machine.

From a Computer(P. 83)From the Operation Panel(P. 84)

From a Computer

You can cancel printing from the printer icon displayed on the system tray on the desktop.

1 Double-click the printer icon.



NOTE:

When the printer icon is not displayed

- Open the printer folder (**Displaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)**), right-click your printer icon, and click [See what's printing] (or double-click the icon of the printer driver for the machine).
- 2 Select the document you want to cancel, and click [Document] > [Cancel].

Printe D	ocument 2					
Documi	Pause	Status	Owner	Pages	Size	Sut
Deci	Resume	Printing	1044	1	10.6 KB	4:4
	Restart					
UC	Cancel	33				
	Properties					

3 Click [Yes].



• Printing of the selected document is canceled.

NOTE

• Several pages may be output after you cancel printing.

TIPS

Canceling from the Remote UI

• You can cancel printing from the [Job Status] page on the Remote UI: Checking Current Status of Print Documents(P. 342)

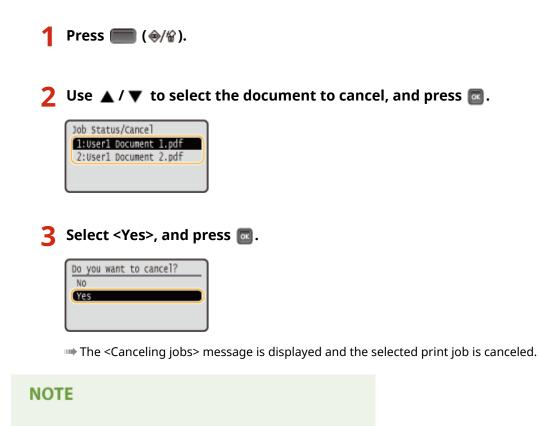
Canceling from an application

• On some applications, a screen like shown below appears. You can cancel printing by clicking [Cancel].



From the Operation Panel

When the print data is sent to the machine from a computer, the $[\]$ indicator lights up (or blinks). You can cancel printing from the operation panel while the indicator is lit or blinking.



Several pages may be output after you cancel printing.

LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)
 Managing Documents and Checking the Machine Status(P. 342)

Various Print Settings

0X7U-01F

There are a variety of settings to suit your needs, such as Enlarged/Reduced and 2-sided Printing.



CEnlarging or Reducing(P. 87)



Switching 1-Sided and 2-Sided Printing(P. 89)



Collating Printouts by Page(P. 91)





Printing Multiple Pages onto One Sheet(P. 93) Printing Posters(P. 95)



OPrinting Booklet(P. 96)



Printing Borders(P. 98)



OPrinting Dates and Page Numbers(P. 99)

OPrinting Watermarks(P. 101)







Printing Specific Pages onto Different Paper(P. 103)

Selecting Document Type(P. 105) Saving Toner(P. 107)



Combining and Printing Multiple Documents(P. 109)

Enlarging or Reducing

0X7U-01H



You can make enlarged or reduced printouts by using a preset print ratio, such as A5 to A4, or a custom print ratio that you set in increments of 1%.

Setting Print Ratio by Specifying the Original Document and Paper Size (Preset Ratio)

The print ratio is automatically set based on the document and paper size you have specified.



[Basic Settings] tab > Select the document size in [Page Size] > Select the paper size in [Output Size] > [OK]

🖶 Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings age Setup Rnishin	g Paper Source Quality	
	Change> Default Settings - Add(1)	Edb(2)
Dutput Method: 🚊 p	wit -	
	Page Sze: A4 Output Sze: A4 Page Layout: 1 1 an 1 1-sided/2-sided/flookiet Preting: 1-sided Preting	Copies(Q): 1 (1 to 9999) Otertation A @ Potest A Landscope Manual Scaling Scaling. 100 (2 to 200)
A4 > A4 [Scaling: Auto]	Binding Location:	Guter
Vew Settings Restore Defaults	Collate Group(H):	
		OK Cancel Help

Specifying Print Ratio in Increments of 1%



[Basic Settings] tab > Select the [Manual Scaling] check box > Enter the print ratio in [Scaling] > [OK]

Profile: 	
Image: State Copies(Q): 1 () () () () () () () () () () () () ()	
Ad Oterizion Oter	
Image: Size Image: Size Image: Size Image: Size Image: Size <td< td=""><td>99999</td></td<>	99999
Match Page Size Image Size Page Layout: Image Manual Scoling 1 to 1 Scoling: 1 stided/2-stided/flookiet Printing: 1 stided/2-stided/flookiet Printing: 1 stided Printing Image Location: Binding Location: At [Scaling: 1207.]	
Page Layout: If Monual Scaling 1 1 on 1 • 1-sided/2-sided/Bookiet Printing • 1 1-sided Printing	andacape
1 1 on 1 • Scaling: 120 (a) % (25) 1-sided/2-sided/Bookiet Printing • • • 1 1-sided /2-sided/Bookiet Printing • • 1 1-sided Printing • • 1 1-sided Printing • • •	
1-sided/2-sided/Bookiet Printing. 1-sided/2-sided/Bookiet Printing. 1-sided Printing 1-sided Prining	
1-sided Preting • Binding Location: Binding Location: A4 [Scaling: 1207.] Long Edge (Left) •	to 200]
A4 [Scaling: 1207:] Binding Location: Gutter Gutter	
A4 [Scaling: 120%] Gutter	
A4 [Scaling: 120%] Gutter	
Collate/Group(H):	
View Settings C# +	

NOTE

- Depending on the selected paper size, you may not be able to set the optimum enlarging/reducing ratio. For example, there may be large blank spaces on your printout, or portions of the document that are missing.
- The enlarging/reducing settings on some applications have priority over those on the printer driver.

LINKS

OBasic Printing Operations(P. 78)

Switching 1-Sided and 2-Sided Printing

0X7U-01J



You can make both 1-sided and 2-sided printouts. The default setting is [2-sided Printing]. Change the setting as necessary.

IMPORTANT

• When the sub-output tray is open, you cannot perform 2-sided printing. When performing 2-sided printing, always make sure that the sub-output tray is closed. **DBack Side(P. 19)**

NOTE

• 2-sided printing may not be available with some sizes and types of paper. **Paper(P. 569)**



[Basic Settings] tab > Select [1-sided Printing] or [2-sided Printing] in [1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing] > Select the position to bind in [Binding Location] > [OK]

asic Settings age Setup	Rnishing Paper Source Quality	
volle:	🖋 «Change» Default Settings	 Add(1) Edit(2)
Sutput Method:	📇 Pivit	•
	Page Size:	Copies (2): 1 () () to 9999) Constation A @ Potest A C Landsce
	Match Page Size Page Layout: 1 1 on 1 1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Pinting:	■ Manual Scaling Scaling 100
	2 2-sided Printing	-
A4 [Scaling: Auto]	b Long Edge (Lett)	- Outer
View Settings Restore Defaults	Collection Carolina Collection	-

[1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing]

Select [1-sided Printing] or [2-sided Printing].

NOTE:

For [Booklet Printing], see **Printing Booklet(P. 96)**.

[Binding Location]

Specify the position to bind the printouts with a binding tool such as a stapler. Printing orientation will be changed depending on the specified binding position. To specify the margin width for the binding position, click [Gutter].

[Long Edge [Left]]	Prints a document in such a way that the printed pages are opened to the left when bound.
[Short Edge [Top]]	Prints a document in such a way that the printed pages are opened to the top when bound.
[Long Edge [Top]]	Prints a document in such a way that the printed pages are opened to the top when bound.
[Short Edge [Left]]	Prints a document in such a way that the printed pages are opened to the left when bound.

[Gutter]

Specify a binding margin.



LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)

Printing Multiple Pages onto One Sheet(P. 93)
 Printing Booklet(P. 96)

Collating Printouts by Page

0X7U-01K



When printing copies of multi-page documents, select [Collate] to print complete sets in sequential page order. This function is useful when preparing handouts for meetings or presentations.



[Basic Settings] tab > Select [Collate] or [Group] in [Collate/Group] > [OK]

_			
1	Printing Preferences		
ſ	Basic Settings age Setup Rhishin	Paper Source Quality	
Ì	Profile:	Change> Default Settings Add(1)	Eds(2)
	Output Method: 🚔 🕫	-	
		Page Sze: A4 Cutput Size: Match Page Sze	Copies(Q): 1 (1 to 9999) Otentation A @ Potrat A C Landscape
		Page Layout:	Manual Scaling Scaling: 100 🖉 % (25 to 200)
		1-sided./2-sided./Bookiet Printing:	
	A4 [Scaling: Auto]	Binding Location:	Guter
	Vew Settings Restore Defaults	Colate Group(H):	0
			OK Cancel Help

[Collate/Group]

Specify the sorting method of the printouts when printing multiple-page documents.

[Off]	If you select [Off], whether the printouts are collated or not depends on the setting made on the application.
[Collate]	The printouts are grouped into complete sets in sequential page order. For example, if you are printing three copies of a four-page document, the printouts will be arranged in the following page order: 1, 2, 3, 4, 1, 2, 3, 4, 1, 2, 3, 4.
[Group]	The printouts are not collated. The specified number of copies are printed for each page. For example, if you are printing three copies of a four-page document, the printouts will be arranged in the following page order: 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 3, 3, 3, 4, 4, 4.



LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)

Printing Multiple Pages onto One Sheet

0X7U-01L



You can print multiple pages onto a single sheet. For example, you can print four or nine pages onto a single sheet by using [4 on 1] or [9 on 1]. Use this function if you want to save paper or to view your document in thumbnails.

NOTE

• To save more paper, combine this setting with 2-sided printing. Switching 1-Sided and 2-Sided Printing(P. 89)



[Basic Settings] tab > In [Page Layout], select the number of pages to print onto a single sheet > In [Page Order], select the page distribution layout > [OK]

Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings age Setup Rnishing	Paper Source Quality	
Profile: /d	Drange> Default Settings - Add(1).	Edit (2)
Output Method: 📄 P	int -	
	Page Size: A4 • Match Page Size Page Layout: 4 4 on 1 • 1 edded/2 edded/Booklet Printing	Copies(Q): 1 (1 to 9999) Orientation A @ Potnet A @ Landscape Page Order: Arress from Left
At [Scaling: Auto]	India Location:	Gutter
View Settings Restore Defaults	Colate Group (4):	
		OK Cancel Help

อ [Page Layout]

Select the number of pages to print onto a single sheet from [1 on 1] to [16 on 1]. For example, to print 16 pages onto a single sheet, select [16 on 1].



NOTE:

- For options such as [Poster [2 x 2]], see **Printing Posters(P. 95)**.
- Printing may not be performed properly if you combine this setting with an application setting for collating printouts.



Select a page distribution layout. For example, if you select [Across from Left], the first page is printed on the top left, and then the rest of the pages are arranged rightward.

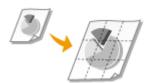


LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)
 Switching 1-Sided and 2-Sided Printing(P. 89)

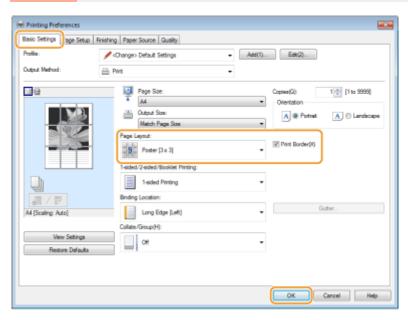
Printing Posters

0X7U-01R



You can print one page of a document onto multiple pages. For example, if you make a one-page A4-size document nine times larger, you will have a poster 3x3 A4 size sheets large after you print the document and paste it together.

[Basic Settings] tab > In [Page Layout], select the dimensions of your poster (for example, [Poster [2 x 2]]) > [OK]



• There are four size settings: [Poster [1 x 2]], [Poster [2 x 2]], [Poster [3 x 3]], and [Poster [4 x 4]].

NOTE:

Poster size settings cannot be selected when 2-sided printing is enabled. Select [1-sided Printing] in [1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing], and then select a poster size setting.

• Select the [Print Border] check box to add borders on your printouts. The borders are helpful if you want to paste the printouts together or cut off the margins.

LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)Enlarging or Reducing(P. 87)

Printing Booklet

0X7U-01S



You can print two pages of a document on both sides of paper and then fold your printed pages in half to make a booklet. The printer driver controls the print order in such a way that the page numbers are correctly arranged.

IMPORTANT

• When the sub-output tray is open, you cannot perform booklet printing. When performing booklet printing, always make sure that the sub-output tray is closed. **©Back Side(P. 19)**

NOTE

• Booklet printing may not be available with some sizes and types of paper. The paper that is available for 2sided printing is also available for booklet printing. See **Paper(P. 569)**.



[Basic Settings] tab > Select [Booklet Printing] in [1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing] > Click [Booklet] to specify detailed settings as necessary > [OK] > [OK]

asic Settings age Se	tup Rnishing Paper Source Quality	Add(1) Edt(2)
Output Method:	🗎 Pint	•
.	Page Size:	Copies(Q): 1 1 1 1 1 50 99999
	A4	 Orientation
	Output Size:	A @ Potrat A C Landscape
	Match Page Size	• -
	Page Layout:	Manual Scaling
	1 1on 1	
	1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing:	Booklet
	Booklet Printing	
	enong cocesor.	
A4x2 ⇒ A4	Long Edge (Left)	a Guter
	Collate/Group(H):	
Vew Setting	Colate	-
Restore Defa	da internet interne	

[1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing]

Select [Booklet Printing].

NOTE:

• For [1-sided Printing] and [2-sided Printing], see **Switching 1-Sided and 2-Sided Printing(P. 89)**.

🜔 [Booklet]

The screen below is displayed.

etailed Settings for Booklet	-
Booklet Printing Method	
Al Pages at Once Divide into Sata Sheets per Set:	15 👷 Sheets [1 to 15]
Specify Booklet Gutter	
Booklet Gutter: 5 🔅 mm (0 to 50)	
	OK Cancel Help

[Booklet Printing Method]

- [All Pages at Once]: Prints all of the pages at once as a single bundle so that you can make a booklet just by folding the printed pages in half.
- [Divide into Sets]: Prints as multiple bundles divided by the number of the pages specified on [Sheets per Set]. Bind each bundle, and then combine them as one booklet. Select this option when the document has so many pages that you cannot bind them all into a single booklet.



[Specify Booklet Gutter]

If you are using a stapler or other binding tools, specify the margin width for binding your booklet. Select the [Specify Booklet Gutter] check box and specify the margin width in [Booklet Gutter].

LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)

Printing Borders

0X7U-01U



You can add borders, such as broken lines or double lines, in the margins of printouts.



[Page Setup] tab > Click [Page Options] > Select the border type in [Edging] > [OK] > [OK]

Profiles Cohon Dodput Method: Image: Profiles Image: Profiles Image: Profiles Image: Output Method: Image: Profiles Image: Profiles Image: Profiles Image: Output Method: Image: Profiles Image: Profiles Image: Profiles Image: Output Method: Image: Profiles Image: Output Method: </th <th>Page Options Lapout Options Edging: Sold Lns First Date: Off Part User Name: Off Famat Setings Redore Defaults OK Cancel Help</th>	Page Options Lapout Options Edging: Sold Lns First Date: Off Part User Name: Off Famat Setings Redore Defaults OK Cancel Help
	Edit Watermalk Paper Size Page Options Restore Defaults

[Edging]

Select the border type.

Preview

Displays a preview with the selected border.

LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)
 Printing Dates and Page Numbers(P. 99)
 Printing Watermarks(P. 101)

Printing Dates and Page Numbers

0X7U-01W



You can print the information such as dates or page numbers, and you can specify where to print this information on the document (upper-left, lower-right, etc.).



[Page Setup] tab ▶ Click [Page Options] ▶ Select the print position of the print date, user name or page number ▶ [OK] ▶ [OK]

(_
Hinting Preferences	Page Options
Basic Setting Page Setup Inishing Pa	Layout Options
Profile: "Defaul	Edging:
Dutput Method:	None -
	a Pirt Date:
	Upper Left Prit User Name:
e 1	Upper Right •
	Print Page Number:
	Lower Mdde -
Dh Pag	
	Format Settings Peatore Defaults
01/1/	Format Seconds
A4 [Scaing: Auto]	OK Cancel Help
Vew Setings	
	Edt Wittervak
Custom P	aper See Page Options Restore Defaults
	OK Cancel Help

[Print Date]

Specify the position to print the print date.

[Print User Name]

Specify the position to print the user name (logon name) for the computer used to print the document.

[Print Page Number]

Specify the position to print the page number.

Changing the Print Format of Dates and Page Numbers

• You can change formatting details such as font and font size when printing dates, logon names, or page numbers. Click [Format Settings] on the Page Options screen shown above to specify the details.

LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)
Printing Borders(P. 98)
Printing Watermarks(P. 101)

Printing Watermarks

0X7U-01X



You can print watermarks such as "COPY" or "CONFIDENTIAL" over the document. You can create new watermarks or use pre-registered watermarks.



[Page Setup] tab > Select the [Watermark] check box > Select a watermark from the drop-down list > [OK]

Printing Preferences					×
Basic Setting Page Setup Inishi	ng Paper Source Quality				
Profile:	🖊 «Change» Default Settings 🔹 🔹		Add(1) Edit(2)		
Output Method:	Pwit	•			
0 8	Page Sae:		A4		
	Copies:		Match Page Size		
			1 (1 to 9999)		
	Orientation	A @ Potrat	A 01	andscape	
	Page Layout:		1 1 on 1		•
A4 [Scaling: Auto]	Manual Scaling Scaling		100 💭 🌫 (25 to 200)		
					0
Vew Settings	Watemark Vistemark		CONFIDENTIAL		_
				Edt Watersark	
	Custom Paper Size	Page 0	options	Restore Defaults	b
			OK	Cancel H	lelp 🛛

[Watermark]

Select the [Watermark] check box to display the list of the watermarks in the drop-down list. Select a watermark from the menu.

[Edit Watermark]

Displays the screen to create or edit watermarks.

Edit Watermark		
	Waterwerk Lut: *FILE COPY *FINAL *PRELMINARY *PROOF *TOP SECRET SAMPLE	E Add Delete
Name:	SAMPLE	
Attributes Alignment Print Style	SAMPLE	
Fort:	Atal	
Style:	Regular	- (
Size:	72 📄 Points [1 to 500]	
Calar:	Medum Gray	•
ر		OK Cancel Help

🕒 [Add] 📀

Click to create a new watermark. Up to 50 watermarks can be registered.

📵 [Name]

Enter the created watermark name.

[Attributes]/[Alignment]/[Print Style]

Click each tab to specify the text, color, or print position of the watermark. For more information, click [Help] on the printer driver screen.

LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)
Printing Borders(P. 98)
Printing Dates and Page Numbers(P. 99)

Printing Specific Pages onto Different Paper

0X7U-01Y



You can print specific pages of a document, such as when you want to print the cover of a booklet on colored paper. In this case, load colored paper for the cover in the multi-purpose tray and load plain paper for the body pages in the paper drawer, and then specify the paper settings on the printer driver.



[Paper Source] tab > Select the pages to print on different paper and the paper source loaded with the paper from [Paper Selection] > [OK]

He Printing Preferences Basic Settings Page Setup F	inishing Paper Source Judity		
Proble: Output: Method:	🖌 «Change» Default Settings 🗎 Plint	- Add(1) Edx(2)	
	Paper Selectors:	Different for First, Others, and Last	- 0
	First Page: Other Pages: Lest Page:	Multipupose Tray Auto Multipupose Tray	•
-	Paper Type:	Pinter Default	•
A4 [Sceing: Auto]	Feed A5 Vetically Feed Custom Paper Vetically		
Vew Settings			
		Restore Defaults	
		OK Cancel H	elp

[Paper Selection]

Specify which pages should be printed on different paper, and select which paper source should be used to feed paper for each page.

[Same Paper for All Pages]	Prints all of the pages on the same paper, and does not print any specific pages on different paper. All the pages are printed on paper specified in [Paper Source].
[Different for First, Others, and Last]	You can use different paper for the first page, body pages, and last page, respectively. For example, you can specify the paper in the multi-purpose tray for [First Page], the paper in the paper drawer for [Other Pages] (body pages), and the paper in the multi-purpose tray for [Last Page]. You can also print by specifying the paper type in [Paper Type].
[Different for First, Second, Others, and Last]	You can also specify the paper for the following page of the cover as well as specifying the paper in [Different for First, Others, and Last]. You can also print by specifying the paper type in [Paper Type].
[Different for Cover and Others]	Specify the settings for booklet printing (Printing Booklet(P. 96)). You can specify different paper for the cover and body pages, respectively. For example, you can specify the paper in the multi-purpose tray for [Cover Page] and the paper in the paper drawer for [Other Pages] (body pages).

LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)

Selecting Document Type

0X7U-020



You can specify the document type to ensure optimal image quality. There are different settings for photo documents, documents that have charts or graphs, and documents that have design drawings with fine lines.



[Quality] tab > Select the document type in [Objective] > [OK]

Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings Page Setup Rnishin	ng Paper Source Quality	
Profile:	Default Settings	Add(1) Edb(2)
Output Method: 📄	Print -	
	Objective:	Character Publications Graphica Protes Designs [CAD] High Definition Text This mode is used when printing documents in general.
Vew Settings	Manual Grayscale Settings	Advanced Satings Grayscale Settings Next Restore Defaults
		OK Cancel Help

[Objective]

Select an option that suits the document type or purpose of printing. For example, select [General] for general use, or select [Photos] when you want to print photo images in optimal print quality.

[General]

A versatile option that is suitable when printing most documents.

[Publications]

Suitable when printing documents that have a mix of photo images, charts, and graphs.

[Graphics]

Suitable when printing documents that have charts or graphs.

[Photos]

Suitable when printing photo images.

[Designs [CAD]]

Suitable when printing design drawings that have many fine lines.

[High Definition Text]

Suitable when printing documents that have small characters.

NOTE:

Printing a Document

• To specify detailed settings for each item selected on [Objective], click [Advanced Settings]. For more information, click [Help] on the printer driver screen.

LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)

Saving Toner

0X7U-021



You can set the printer driver to print documents using less toner.

IMPORTANT

• When the toner save setting is enabled, fine lines and portions with lighter print density may become blurred.



[Quality] tab > Select the document type in [Objective] > Click [Advanced Settings] > Select [Toner Save] in the [Advanced Settings] screen > Select [On] from the drop-down list > [OK] > [OK]

Printing Preferences			
Basic Settings Page Setup F	inishing Paper Souro Quality		
Profile :	Default Settings	- Add(1)	. Edit/2)
Output Method:	🚔 Pint	-	
ananan anan Mananan anan Likkuti	a Objective:	Ennemi Publication Graphica Photos Designa (C High Defini	(AD)
		This mode is	s used when printing documents in general.
		b	Advanced Settings
Vev Setings			
tan sange	Manual Grayscale Settin	ça	Grayscale Settings
		About	Restore Defaults
			OK Cancel Help
Advanced Settings			
List of Settings:			
Setting ben	Contents		
Graphics Mode Rendering Rate Resolution	UFR II Mode 24 BPP 600 dpi		
Halftones	Pattern 2		
Host Gida Rasterization Toner Save	8-th On		
Ioner Denaty	Lio Not Adjust		
Champion (Bhota) Toner Save:	~ ~	-	
On		•	
	OK	Cancel Help	

[Objective] Selecting Document Type(P. 105)

Select the document type for which you want to enable the toner save setting.

[Advanced Settings]

A screen with settings is displayed. Click [Toner Save] and select [On] from the drop-down list on the bottom of the screen.

NOTE:

- You can specify whether to enable the toner save setting for each document type. Specify the toner save setting for each document type listed in [Objective].
- In the [Advanced Settings] screen, you can specify various print settings other than toner save settings. For more information, click [Help] on the printer driver screen.

LINKS

OBasic Printing Operations(P. 78)

Printing a Document

Combining and Printing Multiple Documents

0X7U-022



By using Canon PageComposer, you can combine multiple documents into one print job and print the job with specified print settings. This function, for example, enables you to combine documents made with different applications and print all of the pages in the same paper size.

1 Open a document in an application and display the print dialog box.

• How to display the print dialog box differs for each application. For more information, see the instruction manual for the application you are using.

2 Select your printer, and click [Preferences] or [Properties].

neral		
Select Plinter	r	
1. A.4.4 P.		Microsoft XPS Documen
R Canon	UFRI	
- 7 AK		
- 7 AK		Print to the Preferences

3 Select [Edit and Preview] in [Output Method].

- Click [OK] on the [Information] pop-up screen.
- Click [OK] at the bottom of the screen.

Basic Settings Page Set	Knishing Paper Source Quality Point Setings Add(1). Edit(2)
Output Method:	Edit and Preview -
	Page Ster: A4 Output Ster: Information Copies(Q): 1 © [1 to 9999] Otertation Copies(Q): A @ Potent A @ Copies(Q): 1 © [1 to 9999] A @ Copies(Q): A
	The output method will be switched to [Edit and Preview].
M (Scaing: Auto)	The output method will be switched to [Edit and Preview]. The output method will be switched to [Edit and Preview]. Cotton Co

4 Click [Print] or [OK].

eneral	
Select Pinter Add Printer Scanon UFR I Fax	Hicrosoft XPS Documen
< II.	÷
Status: Ready Location: Comment:	Print to file Preferences Find Panter
Page Range @ Al Selection © Current Page	Number of copies: 1
Pages: 165535 Enter either a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12	Colate 11 22 33

• The Canon PageComposer starts. Printing does not start in this step.

5 Repeat steps 1 to 4 for the documents you want to combine.

• The documents are added to the Canon PageComposer.

물질 한 다		IF I, IF II	
Document Name		Lavout Informati. Commenta	
Document01.rtf	1	1 on 1	
	1		
Document03.rtf	1	1 pn 1	

$\mathbf{6}~$ From the [Document Name] list, select the documents to combine, and click $\mathbf{I}_{\mathbf{a}}$.

• To select multiple documents, click the documents while holding down [SHIFT] key or [CTRL] key.

🚰 Canon PageComposer -	Canon	UFR D - March	
File Edit Move to Hel			
ar 🛛 🔁	• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	1 1 1 1	
Document Name	Pages	Layout Informati. Comments	
Document01.ntf	1	1 on 1	
Document02.rtf	1	1 on 1	
Document03.ntf	1	1 on 1	
1			
For Help, press F1.			

7 Change the settings as necessary, and click [Combine].

• The documents selected in step 6 are combined.

Printing a Document

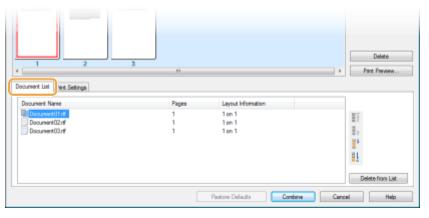
Combine			
Document Name: Combined Documents 1			
Sheets: 2			
1 2		Delete	
*[1	Pint Parvier	a
Document List Plint Settings			
Copies: 1 [1 to 9999]	Output Size Consistency:	A4	•
Pint Style: 1-Sided Plinting *	Layout Consistency:	2 on 1	- 6
	Page Order:	Left to Right	•
	Plint Next Document from:	Same Side	•
		Details	
	Restore Defaults Con	bine Cancel He	łp

[Print Preview]

Displays a preview of the document to be printed.

[Document List]/[Print Settings]

• Click the [Document List] tab to display the documents added in steps 1 to 4. You can remove documents by selecting them in the list and clicking [Delete from List].



• Click the [Print Settings] tab to display the screen for specifying print settings such as the number of copies or 1-sided/2-sided printing. The settings specified here are applied to the whole print job.

4 1 2 Document Lis Pint Settings	#		Delete Preview
Copies: 1 0 [1 to 9999]	Output Size Consistency:	Al	•
Print Style: 1-Sided Printing +	Z Layout Consistency:	2 on 1	-
	Page Order:	Left to Right	•
	Print: Next Document from:	Same Side	•
		D	etais
	Restore Defaults	Combine Cancel	Help

NOTE:

• For more information, click [Help] on the Canon PageComposer screen.

🕒 [Details]

Displays the print setting screen of the printer driver. There are fewer settings available than when using the ordinary printing method.

8 On the [Document Name] list, select the combined-document print job you want to print, and click 🔄.

⊈ Canon PageComposer - Car File Edit Move to Help		UFR D -		
🕘 🔁 🖪 🖷	h 🖓 🖵	肝長肥肥		
Document Name	Parses	Levout Informati	Comments	
Combined Documents 3	3	2 on 1		
<u>_</u>				
U				
U				
U				
U				
U				
U				
U				

- Printing starts.
- For instructions on how to cancel printing, see **Canceling Prints(P. 83)** .

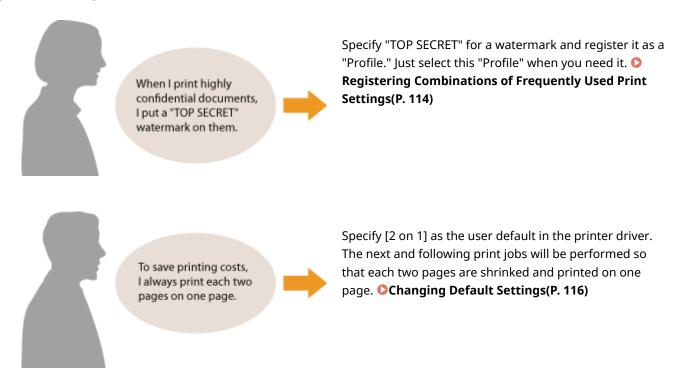
LINKS

OBasic Printing Operations(P. 78)

Configuring Print Settings to Your Needs

0X7U-023

You can register combinations of settings as "Profiles" to suit your different printing needs. Also, you can register the settings that you frequently use as the default setting. Once the default setting is set, the registered settings are automatically displayed on the printer driver screen, and you can skip the operations to specify the print settings and print immediately.



Registering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Settings

0X7U-024

Specifying combinations of settings such as "1-sided landscape orientation on A4 size paper" every time you print may be time consuming. If you register these frequently used combinations of print settings as "profiles," you can specify printing settings simply by selecting one of these profiles from the list. This section describes how to register profiles and how to print using them.

Registering a Profile(P. 114)Selecting a Profile(P. 115)

Registering a Profile



Change the settings that you want to register as a profile, and click [Add].

• Click the [Basic Settings], [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], or [Quality] tabs to specify the print settings on each screen as necessary. **Various Print Settings(P. 85)**

Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings Page Setup Rni	shing Paper Source Quality	
Profile:	Default Settings + Add	(1) Eds(2)
Dutput Method:	Edit and Preview •	
	At At At At At At At At At At	Copies(2): 1 (1 to 9999) Otentation A @ Potrat A © Landscape
	Page Layout:	Manual Scaling
	1 1 on 1	 Scaling: 100 (*) % (25 to 200)
	1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing:	
	1 eided Pinting	-

2 Enter a profile name in [Name], select an icon, and then click [OK].

- Enter comments on the profile in [Comment] as necessary.
- Click [View Settings] to see the settings to register.

Add Profile	
Name:	SANPLE
loon:	
	<
Conment:	SAMPLE
	~ View Settings
	OK Cercel Help
	OK Cancel Help

NOTE

Editing a profile

• By clicking [Edit] on the right side of [Add] on the screen shown in step 1, you can change the name, icon, or comment of the profiles you have previously registered. You cannot edit the pre-registered profiles.

Selecting a Profile

Select the profile that suits your needs, and click [OK].

Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings Page Setup Rnishin	g Paper Source Quality	
Prolie:	con 1 (1-sided) - Add(1)	Edtr(2)
Output Method: 📰 (Edit and Preview -	
	Page Size: A4 • Output Size: Match Page Size • Page Layout: 2 on 1 • 1-eided/2-eided/Booklet Printing: 1-eided Printing •	Coperação: Construitor A @ Potrat Page Order: Left to Right Use 1 on 1 for single-page data()
A4 [Scaling: Auto] View Settings Restore Defaults	linding Location: Long Edge (Tap) Collate/Group(1): Collate/Group(1): Collate/Group(1):	Outer
		OK Cancel Help

NOTE

Changing the settings of the selected profile

• You can change the settings of a selected profile. In addition, the changed settings can be registered as another profile.

LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)Changing Default Settings(P. 116)

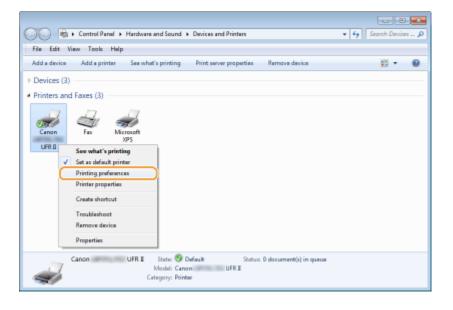
Changing Default Settings

0X7U-025

The default settings are the settings that are first displayed whenever you open the print settings screen of the printer driver, but you can change them. For example, if you want to print all documents in such manner that each two pages are shrinked and printed on one page, specify [2 on 1] as the user default of page layout. From next time on, the printer driver will be opened with [2 on 1] specified as page layout setting and you will not have to change settings each time you print.

IMPORTANT

- To perform the following procedure, log on to your computer with an administrator account.
- **1** Open the printer folder. **O**Displaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)
- 2 Right-click your printer icon and click [Printing preferences].



- 3 Change the settings on the print setting screen, and click [OK].
- Click the [Basic Settings], [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], or [Quality] tabs to specify the print settings on each screen as necessary. **Various Print Settings(P. 85)**

Printing a Document

holle:	Default Settings	← Add(1) Edt(2)
Output Method:	🚔 Pirt	-
]e	Page Size:	Copiece(Q): 1 (1 to 9999)
	Match Page Size	A @ Potrat A © Landscape
	Page Layout:	Manual Scaling
	1 1 on 1	 Scaling: 100 (*) (*) 2 (25 to 200)
	1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing:	
	1 sided Pinting	
J/P	Binding Location:	
A4 [Scaling: Auto]	Long Edge [Left]	- Gutter
	Collate/Group(H):	
Vew Settings Restore Defaults	or	•

LINKS

Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)

ORegistering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Settings(P. 114)

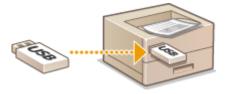
Using Useful Print Functions

0X7U-026

You can use a variety of useful print functions as well as performing the basic print operations with the printer driver.

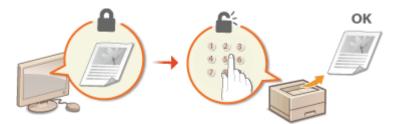
Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)

You can print PDF files and image files stored in a USB memory device by connecting it directly to the machine. Using this function, you can print without using a computer. **Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)(P. 120)**



Printing a Document Secured by a PIN (Secured Print)

By setting a PIN to data that is sent to the machine from a computer, the data is not printed until the correct PIN is entered on the operation panel of the machine. This function is useful when printing confidential documents. **Printing a Document Secured by a PIN (Secured Print)(P. 131)**



Printing a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)

You can save print data sent from a computer onto an SD card. The stored data can be printed as many times as you want. **Printing a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)(P. 137)**



Printing without Opening a File (Direct Print)

You can print files (PDF, JPEG, etc.) stored in your computer by sending them to the machine via a Web browser. No specific application is needed. **OPrinting without Opening a File (Direct Print)(P. 146)**



Printing Received E-mail (E-Mail Print)

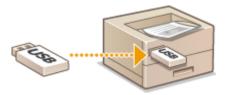
You can directly print e-mail messages and their attached files received in the machine without using a computer. **Printing Received E-mail (E-Mail Print)(P. 157)**



Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)

0X7U-027

You can print image files (PDF, TIFF, JPEG, and XPS) stored in a USB memory device by connecting it directly to the machine. Using this function, you can print without using a computer.



Available File Formats

You can print the following types of image files. However, some files cannot be printed depending on the file structure.

- PDF file *
- JPEG file
- TIFF file
- XPS file
- * Version 1.7 is supported.

IMPORTANT

• The maximum size of a printable file is 2 GB.

Available USB Memory Devices

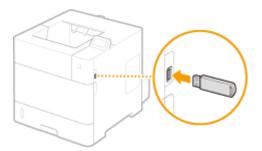
You can use FAT32 formatted USB memory devices (memory capacity: up to 32 GB).

IMPORTANT

- Do not use non-standard USB memory devices. You may not be able to print the files properly depending on the USB memory device.
- Do not connect anything other than a USB memory device. USB memory devices cannot be connected via a USB hub or an extension cable.
- Do not use USB memory devices with special functions such as built-in security functions.

NOTE

- The USB port of the machine supports USB 2.0.
- If a folder in a USB memory device has many files, scanning image files to print will take some considerable time. Use your computer to delete unnecessary files on your USB memory device or move them to a different folder.
- Connect a USB memory device to the USB port on the right side of the machine.



The following screen is automatically displayed.



If the screen is not displayed, press ().

IMPORTANT:

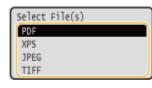
• Do not shock or shake the USB memory device or the machine while the device is connected to the machine.

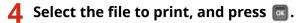


Use \blacktriangle / \blacktriangledown to select <Select File(s)>, and press \blacksquare .

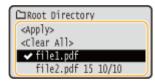


3 Select the type of the file to print, and press a.





• You can select up to 10 files.



- To clear a selection, select the file you have selected (marked with ✔), and press . To clear all selections, select <Clear All>, and press .
- To display the contents of a folder, select a folder, and press or ▶. To return to the folder in the upper level, press or ◀.

NOTE:

- Folders and files in lower levels or with longer names may not be displayed.
- When you move to another folder, the previous file selections will be cleared.

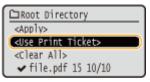


CRoot Directory	
(<apply></apply>	
<clear all=""></clear>	
✓ file1.pdf 15 10/10	
file2.pdf 15 10/10	

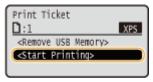
When printing an XPS Document Using a Print Ticket

When a file to print is in XPS format, it can be printed according to the print ticket (print settings) attached to the file.

1 Select <Use Print Ticket>, and press 🚾.



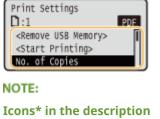
2 Select <Start Printing>, and press 🔤.



Printing starts. When the printing is finished, remove the USB memory device from the machine. Disconnect the USB memory device.(P. 128)

6 Specify the print settings as necessary.

• Select the desired setting item, press 🚾 , and specify the setting.



100113	in the description
PDF	Settings for printing PDF files
XPS	Settings for printing XPS files
JPEG	Settings for printing JPEG files
TIFF	Settings for printing TIFF files

^{*} Icons are omitted for the settings that are displayed regardless of the file format.

<No. of Copies>

Specify the number of copies from 1 to 9999. Use the numeric keys to enter a quantity, and press 🕅 .

NO.	of	Copies	
		(1-9999)	

<Print Range>/<Print Range (TIFF)>

PDF XPS TIFF

Specify the range (pages) to print. Use \blacktriangle / \bigtriangledown to select <Designation Method> \triangleright 🚾 \triangleright select the method to designate the print range \triangleright \boxdot .

Designati	ion Met	thod)
A11		•	† 🕘
Specify	Pages	•	
			I 🔍

<11> (0)

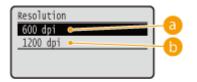
Prints all pages.

Specify Pages>

Prints only the specified pages. To specify the pages, select <Page Range> > 🔤 > enter <First Page> and <Last Page> using the numeric keys > select <Apply> > 📾 .

<Resolution>

Specify the resolution for processing print data. Use \blacktriangle / \checkmark to select the resolution, and press \square .



<u></u> <600 dpi>

This print mode is suitable for printing at a high speed.

🜔 <1200 dpi>

Edges of characters and graphics can be clearly reproduced at high resolution. This print mode is suitable for printing data that contains many small characters.

<2-Sided Printing>

Select whether to print on both sides of paper. Use \blacktriangle / \blacktriangledown to select the setting, and press \square .

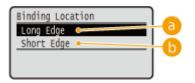
2-Sided	Printing
off	
On	

NOTE:

• <2-Sided Printing> may not be available with some sizes or types of paper. **Paper(P. 569)**

<Binding Location>

Specify whether to bind the long edge or short edge of the 2-sided printouts with a binding tool such as a stapler. Use \blacktriangle / \checkmark to select the binding position, and press $\boxed{}$.



60 <Long Edge>

Binds the printouts on the long edge.





Short Edge>

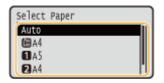
Binds the printouts on the short edge.





<Select Paper>

Select the paper source in which the paper to print is already loaded. Use \blacktriangle / \checkmark to select the paper source, and press $\boxed{\alpha}$.



NOTE:

- When you want to print a PDF file or XPS file, specify <Auto> to automatically select the optimum paper source.
- A paper source with custom size paper loaded cannot be selected.

<Halftones>

You can select the method to reproduce halftones (the intermediate range between the lighter and darker areas of an image).

PDF files and XPS files

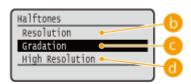
Halftones can be specified for each image data type in a single document. Use $\blacktriangle / \blacksquare / \blacksquare$ to select the image data type \triangleright and \triangleright select the method to reproduce halftones \triangleright and \bullet .

Printing a Document

Halftones Text Graphics Image	Text Resolution Gradation High Resolution d
a	

■JPEG files and TIFF files

Use \blacktriangle / $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to select the method to reproduce halftones, and press $\mathbf{\Box}$.



👩 Image data type

Select the image data type for which you want to change the settings. Select <Text> for characters, <Graphics> for lines and figures, or <Image> for images such as photos.

<Resolution>

Prints gradation and lines with a smooth finish. This print mode is suitable for printing figures and charts with gradation.

Gradation>

Prints vivid images with a tonal contrast effect. This print mode is suitable for printing image data such as photos.

Control

Performs fine printing by sharply reproducing the edges of characters. This print mode is suitable for printing data of characters and thin lines with a clear finish.

<Match Paper Size>

PDF XPS

Automatically makes enlarged or reduced printouts according to the \bigcirc Printable Area(P. 572) of the paper. The printouts are enlarged or reduced with the original's aspect ratio kept. Use $\blacktriangle / \checkmark$ to select the setting, and press $\boxed{\alpha}$.

Match	Paper	Size	
off			
On			

NOTE:

• This setting is not available if <Auto> is set in <Select Paper>.

<Zoom>

JPEG TIFF

Enable or disable enlarging/reducing images. The printouts are enlarged or reduced with the image's aspect ratio kept. Use \blacktriangle / \checkmark to select the setting, and press $\boxed{\mathbf{x}}$.



When the image is within the **OPrintable Area(P. 572)** of the paper, it is printed with the size as is. When an image is larger than the printable area, printouts are reduced.

🜔 <Auto>

Makes enlarged or reduced printouts according to the **Printable Area(P. 572)** .

<Enlarge Print Area>

Specify whether or not to print the image by extending the \bigcirc Printable Area(P. 572) fully to the paper size. Use \land / \checkmark to select the setting, and press $\boxed{\square}$.

Enlarge	Print	Area	
off			1
On			J

NOTE:

• If you select <On>, some portions of the image may be missing near the edge of the paper or the paper may be partly tainted depending on the original.

<N on 1>

PDF XPS

Select whether to print multiple pages onto a single sheet by sequentially allocating them from the top left. For example, to print four pages onto a single sheet, select <4 on 1>. Use \blacktriangle / \heartsuit to select the setting, and press \frown .

N on 1	
off	n
2 on 1	
4 on 1	[·]]
6 on 1	IJ

NOTE:

• This setting is not available if <Auto> is set in <Select Paper>.

<Finishing>

PDF XPS

Specify the method to collate the printouts when printing multiple-page documents. Use \blacktriangle / \bigtriangledown to select whether or not to collate the printouts, and press \boxed{m} .



60 < 0 ff >

The printouts are not collated. The specified number of copies are printed for each page. For example, if you are printing three copies of a four-page document, the printouts will be arranged in the following page order: 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 3, 3, 3, 4, 4, 4.



🜔 <Collate>

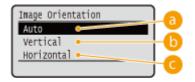
The printouts are grouped into complete sets in sequential page order. For example, if you are printing three copies of a four-page document, the printouts will be arranged in the following page order: 1, 2, 3, 4, 1, 2, 3, 4, 1, 2, 3, 4.



<Image Orientation>

JPEG TIFF

Specify the print orientation of an image. Use \blacktriangle / \blacktriangledown to select the print orientation, and press \square .



🔁 <Auto>

Automatically determines the print orientation based on the width and height of the image.

Output: Continue of the second sec

Select when printing a vertically-long image.

October States October States

Select when printing a horizontally-long image.

NOTE:

• If the specified setting of <Vertical> or <Horizontal> does not match the orientation of the image, the reduced image is printed.

<Print Position>

JPEG TIFF

Specify the position to print the image. Use \blacktriangle / \blacktriangledown to select the print position, and press \square .

Print Position	6
Auto 🖌	
Center •	-b
Top Left	

🔁 <Auto>

If the TIFF data contains the information that specifies the print position, the image is printed according to the information, otherwise, it is printed at the center of paper. JPEG data is always printed at the center of paper.

🜔 <Center>

Images are printed at the center of paper.

Content - Con

Images are printed at the top left.



Print Settings	1
D :1	PDF
<remove memory="" usb=""></remove>	
<pre>(<start printing=""></start></pre>	
No. of Copies	U)

Printing starts.

• To cancel printing, use the operation panel. **Canceling Prints(P. 83)**

8 Disconnect the USB memory device.

- 1 Select <Remove USB Memory>, and press <a>[m].
- 2 Select <Yes>, and press 🚾.
 - whit until the message shown below appears.



3 Disconnect the USB memory device.

NOTE

• If you select <Sort Files> on the screen in step 1, you can change the order of displaying files when you select the file to print.

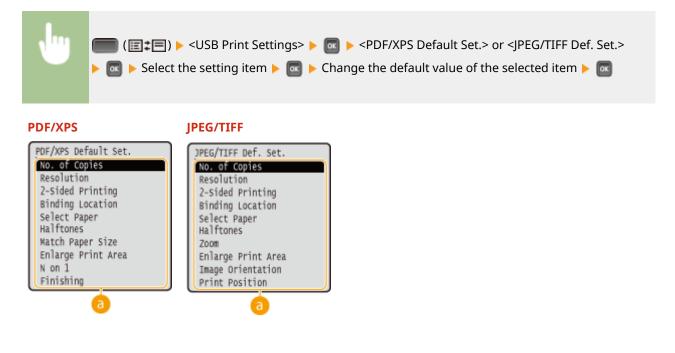
TIPS

If you always want to print with the same settings: **Ochanging Default Settings(P. 116)**

Changing Default USB Print Settings

0X7U-028

The settings that are initially displayed for specifying print settings are called the default settings. If you change these default settings to match the operations that you perform frequently, you can eliminate the need to specify the same settings every time you make prints.

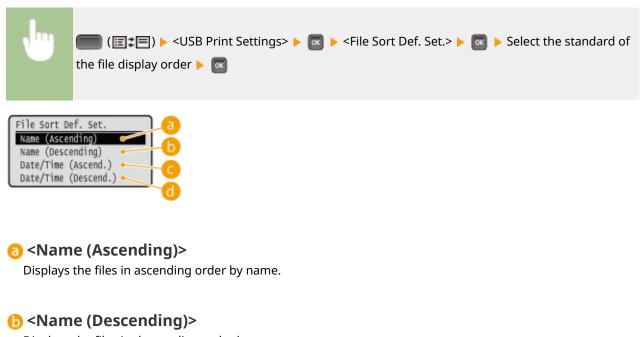


60 Setting items

Select the item you want to set, and change the default value.

Setting the Order of Displaying Files to Print

You can set the order in which files to print from a USB memory device are displayed for selection.



Displays the files in descending order by name.

Oate/Time (Ascend.)>

Displays the files in ascending order by date/time.

d <Date/Time (Descend.)>

Displays the files in descending order by date/time.

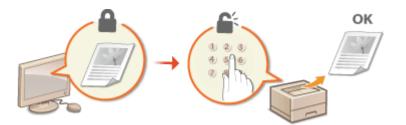
LINKS

Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)(P. 120)

Printing a Document Secured by a PIN (Secured Print)

0X7U-029

By setting a PIN to a document when printing from a computer, the document is held in an optional SD card installed on the machine, and is not printed until the correct PIN is entered on the operation panel of the machine. This function is called "Secured Print," and the document that is protected by a PIN is called a "secured document." Using Secured Print keeps printouts of confidential documents from being left unattended. Before you can use this function, you need to install an optional SD card on the machine (**©Installing an SD Card(P. 583)**).



Sending a Secured Document from a Computer to the Machine(P. 131)
 Printing Out Secured Documents(P. 133)
 Changing the Valid Time Period for Secured Documents(P. 134)

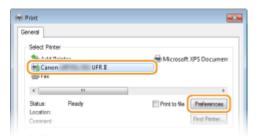
Sending a Secured Document from a Computer to the Machine

Follow the procedure below. You can send a document protected by a PIN.

1 Open a document in an application and display the print dialog box.

• How to display the print dialog box differs for each application. For more information, see the instruction manual for the application you are using.

Select this machine, and click [Preferences] or [Properties].



• The screen that is displayed differs depending on the application you are using.

3 Select [Secured Print] in [Output Method].

- Click [Yes] or [No] on the [Information] pop-up screen.
- If you want to use the same user name and PIN every time, click [Yes]. To change the user name and PIN every time, click [No].

Printing a Document

Basic Settings Page Se	up Finishing Paper Source Quality	1
Profile:	Default Settings	 Add(1) Edit(2)
Output: Method:	🕒 Secured Print	- Detain(3)
9	Page Size:	Copiee(Q): 1 (1 to 9999)
	Information	23 trat 🔥 🖯 Landscape
A4 [Scaling: Auto]		Yes No Guter
us foreigt unst	Collate/Group(H):	
Vew Setting		
Restore Defau	to Of	•
		OK Cancel Help

■If you selected [Yes]

Enter the user name for [User Name] and PIN for [PIN], and click [OK].

- The computer name (logon name) of your computer is displayed in [User Name]. If you want to change it, enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for a new computer name.
- Enter a number of up to seven digits to [PIN].

Uper Name:	
User	[Max. 32 oheracters]
PIN:	
•••••	[1 to 9999999]

4 Specify the print settings, and click [OK].

 Click the [Basic Settings], [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], or [Quality] tab to specify the print settings on each screen as necessary. Various Print Settings(P. 85)

Basic Settings Page Setue Add(1) Edd(2) Prefile: * * Default Settings • Output Method: * Default Settings • Default(2) ************************************	Printing Preferences		
Duput Mathod: Image Size: Copies[D]: 1 [1 to 9999] Image Size: Add Otentalizion Image Size: Match Page Size: Otentalizion Image Size: Image Size: Image Size: Image Size: Image Size: Image Size:	Basic Settings Page Setup Rnishin	g Paper Source Quality	
Page Stat: Copies(0): 10: [1 to 5959] Output Stat: Output Stat: Overtation Match Page State Match Page State Match Page State Page Layout: Image State Marchall Scaling Scaling 1 to 1 Scaling Indied Preting Image State Scaling Indied Preting Image State Scaling Indied Caded Societ Preting Image State Scaling Indied Caded Societ Preting Image State Scaling Indied Location: Image State Scaling Image State Image State Scaling Image State Image State Scaling	Profile:	Default Settings -	 Add(1) Edb(2)
Image State Image State	Dutput Method:	Secured Plint.	Details(3)
Page Layout: Marual Scaling 1 on 1 Scaling 1 eided/2eided/Booklet Printing: Scaling 1 eided Printing Binding Location: At [Scaling Auto] Long Edge [Left] Vew Settings Off		Output Size:	Orientation Al @ Potnat Al @ Landscape
Vew Settings		Page Layout: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	 ■ Manual Scaling ■ Scaling: 100 (25 to 200) ■
OK Cancel Hep			•

5 Click [Print] or [OK].

🖶 Print	
General	
Select Plinter	
Sando Printer Canon UFR I Sando Fax	Hicrosoft XPS Document
×	÷
Status: Ready Location: Comment:	Print to file Preferences
Page Range @ N	Number of copies: 1
Selection Current Page Pages: 165535	Golde - G-G-G
Enter either a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12	Colate 11 22 33
Pri	nt Cancel Apply

After the secured document is sent to the machine, it is held in the SD card waiting to be printed.

■If you selected [No] at step 3

Enter the [Document Name], [User Name], and [PIN] and click [OK].

- The document name is automatically set based on the information from the application. If you want to change the document name, enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for a new document name.
- The computer name (logon name) of your computer is displayed in [User Name]. If you want to change the user name, enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for a new user name.
- Enter the [PIN] of up to seven digits.

Confirm	n PIN Document will be printed in the Secured Pint mode. Confirm document name, user name, and PIN.		
	Document Name: Monantifility [Max. 32 characters]		
	User Name: PIN:	Uner	[Max: 32 characters] [1 to 9999999]
		Ск	Cancel Help

NOTE

 If you install the "Encrypted Print Driver Add-in" that comes with the optional SD CARD-C1 kit on the machine, you can use the encrypted print function with enhanced security. Using the Encrypted Print(P. 136)

Printing Out Secured Documents

After you send the secured document to the machine, print it out within one hour. After that, the secured document will be deleted from the SD card and can no longer be printed.

NOTE

• You can change the valid time period for secured documents. Changing the Valid Time Period for Secured Documents(P. 134)

1 Press 🔺 (⇒).

🤰 Use 🔺 / ▼ to select <Secured Print>, and press 🔤.

Job	
Encrypted Print	1
(Secured Print	L
Stored Job List	L
Stored Job Print	

3 Select the secured document to print, and press **a**.

• If the SD card contains only one secured document, this screen is not displayed.

Job
Document_1.pdf
Document_2.pdf

NOTE:

If the user name is displayed

• If secured documents from two or more users are being held in the SD card, the user selection screen as shown below is displayed prior to the screen shown above. Select your user name, and press a.

Job	
User 1	
User 2	
User 3	

💶 Enter the PIN, and press 🔤.



Printing starts.

• To cancel print jobs, use the operation panel. **Canceling Prints(P. 83)**

Changing the Valid Time Period for Secured Documents

By default, the machine is set to delete secured documents one hour after receiving them unless they are printed. You can change this time value within a defined range.

Press ► (□♥).
 Use ▲ / ▼ select <Control Menu>, and press .
 Select <Sec. Print Del. Time>, and press .

4 Select how long the SD card holds secured documents, and press **a**.

• The secured document is erased from the SD card when the time selected here elapses.

Sec.	Print	Del.	Time	
1 h	r.			n
2 h	r.			
3 h	r.			
6 h	r.			j

LINKS

OUsing the Encrypted Print(P. 136) Installing an SD Card(P. 583)

Using the Encrypted Print

0X7U-02A

Print data is encrypted before being sent to the machine, enhancing security more than the regular secured print function. To use this function, install the "Encrypted Print Driver Add-in" that comes with the optional "SD CARD-C1" kit. A document that is printed by the Encrypted Print function is called an "encrypted document."

NOTE

To install "Encrypted Print Driver Add-in"

• See "Readme.txt" contained in the CD-ROM supplied with the "SD CARD-C1" kit.

Sending an Encrypted Document from a Computer to the Machine

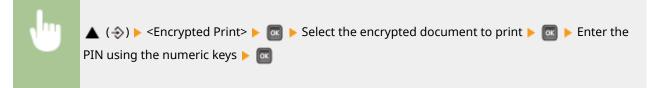
See Help. You can view Help from the printer driver.



Open the printer folder (**Displaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)**) machine [Printer properties] or [Properties] [Encrypted-P] tab [Help]

Printing Out Encrypted Documents

After you send the secured document to the machine, print it out within one hour. After that, the secured document will be deleted from the SD card and can no longer be printed.



NOTE

About the valid time period for encrypted documents

 You can change the valid time period for encrypted documents. You can use the same changing method as for secured documents. Changing the Valid Time Period for Secured Documents(P. 134)

If you are using alphanumeric characters or symbols in your PIN

 The Encrypted Print function allows you to use alphabetic characters and symbols as well as numbers when specifying a PIN in the printer driver. However, if you use an alphabetic character or symbol in the PIN, you cannot print an encrypted document from the operation panel of the machine. Use [Job Status] of the Remote UI to print an encrypted document. Checking Current Status of Print Documents(P. 342)

Printing a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)

0X7U-02C

The data printed from a computer can be saved on the SD card installed on the machine. Since the saved data can be directly printed from the machine, you can eliminate the need to operate the computer every time you print. It is convenient to save a document that will be printed many times such as a fax cover sheet. **Installing an SD Card(P. 583)**



Storing a Document in the Machine(P. 137)
 Printing a Document Stored in the Machine(P. 139)

NOTE

- Up to 1,000 documents can be stored in the machine.
- The data saved on the SD card is not deleted even when the power is turned OFF, but the machine is set to automatically delete the data three days later. When you want to change the data storage period or prevent the data from being automatically deleted, change the applicable settings from the Remote UI (Changing the Storage Period for Documents(P. 141)). The saved data can also be deleted manually (Manually Deleting Documents(P. 142)).

Storing a Document in the Machine

Open a document in an application and display the print dialog box.

• How to display the print dialog box differs for each application. For more information, see the instruction manual for the application you are using.

2 Select this machine, and click [Preferences] or [Properties].



- The screen that is displayed differs depending on the application you are using.
- **3** Select [Store] in [Output Method], and click [Yes].

Printing Preferences Basic Settings Page Set	up Rnishing Paper Source Quality
Profile :	Add(1) Eds(2)
Output Method:	<ji datala(3)<="" store="" td="" •=""></ji>
9	
	Information 83
	The output method will be switched to [Store]. Specify items such as the inbox (or mail box) number by clicking the [Details] button. Do you want to set the details now?
A4 (Scaing: Auto)	Yes No
	Collate/Group(H):
Vew Settings Restore Default	
	OK Cancal Help

4 Specify the settings for storing documents, and click [OK].

Store Details			
Deta Name © Enter Name			
Name		a	
Clee File Nar	ie .		
Box:		<u> </u>	
Box Number	Box Name	*	
0			
1			-
2			b
3			~
4			
3 4 5 6 *			
	81		
<u> </u>		<u> </u>	
	CK Cancel	Help	

👩 [Data Name]

Assign a name to print data to store in the SD card.

[Enter Name]	Manually set a name. Enter up to 24 characters for the name of the print data. Specify a friendly name that can be easily identified on the display of the machine.
[Use File Name]	A name is automatically set based on the file name of print data to store and the information of an application that you are using.

🜔 [Box]

A place used to store print data in the SD card is called a box. Select the number of the box to store the document. You can assign a name to the box to facilitate identification of the box. Setting a Name or PIN to a Box(P. 144)

5 Specify the print settings, and click [OK].

- Click the [Basic Settings], [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], or [Quality] tab to specify the print settings on each screen as necessary. Various Print Settings(P. 85)
- The settings changed here are stored with the document. When the document is printed next time, it is printed with the stored settings.

Hel Printing Preferences Basic Settings Page Setup Ri	ishing Paper Source Quality	
Profile:	Default Settings	- Add(1) Edit(2)
Output Method:	ý Spe	Details(3)
	Page Size: A4 Output Size: Match Page Size Page Layout: 1 1 on 1 Traided/2 sided/ Booklist Printing: 1 sided Printing Indiand Printing Briding Location:	Copies(2): 1 (1 to 5959) Colentation Manual Scaling Scaling 100 (1 to 2000) (1 to 5959) (1
A4 [Scaling: Auto]	Calate/Group(H):	• Gutter
Verv Settings Restore Defaults	or	•
		OK Cancel Hep

6 Click [Print] or [OK].

🖶 Print	
General	
Select Plinter	
Add Printer	Hicrosoft XPS Document
#S Canon UFR II	
× [
Status: Ready	Print to file Preferences
Location: Convent:	Find Pinter
Comment.	
Page Range	
@ AI	Number of copies: 1 💼
Selection Current Page	
Pages: 1-65535	Colate - Ch-Ch-Ch
Enter either a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12	Colate 11 22 33
Pa	nt Cancel Acoly

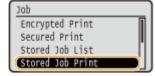
The document is sent to the machine and stored in the specified box.

Printing a Document Stored in the Machine

1 Press 🛦 (⊕).

When the machine is offline, it does not operate even if you press ▲ (->). Set the machine to Online. ○
 Online key(P. 25)





3 Select the box number of the document to print, and press **a**.

Stored 3	lob Print
BOX NO.	0
BOX NO.	1
BOX NO.	2
BOX NO.	3

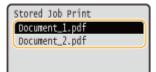
NOTE:

If the box is protected by a PIN

• When the PIN input screen is displayed, enter the PIN and press 🔤. If you are unsure of the PIN, contact the administrator of the machine.



4 Select the document to print, and press **a**.



Printing starts.

• To cancel printing, use the operation panel. **Canceling Prints(P. 83)**

NOTE

Documents saved on the SD card can also be printed from the [Box] page of the Remote UI ([Box] Page(P. 339)). Open the box in which documents are saved, select the check box for a document to print, and click [Print].

LINKS

Deleting a Document Stored in the Machine(P. 141)
Setting a Name or PIN to a Box(P. 144)
Installing an SD Card(P. 583)

Deleting a Document Stored in the Machine

0X7U-02E

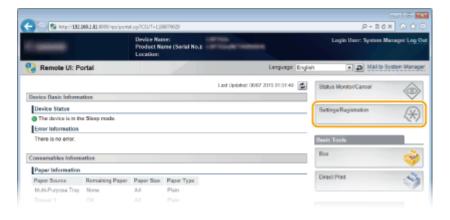
The data saved on the SD card is set to be automatically deleted three days later by default. If you want to change how long the SD card holds documents or prevent the documents from being automatically deleted, change the settings from the Remote UI. The saved documents can also be deleted manually.

Changing the Storage Period for Documents(P. 141) Manually Deleting Documents(P. 142)

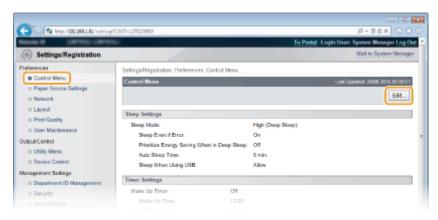
Changing the Storage Period for Documents

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].



3 Click [Control Menu] > [Edit].



Change the storage period.

• To prevent documents from being automatically deleted, select [Off].

	Others
	Set Quick Statup for Main Power
	"When enabled, standby electricity is needed even after the main power is turned OFF. Do not disconnect the power cat
	😰 Use SD Card
	Alow Interrupt Print
	Secure Print Deletion Time: 1hr. 💌
	Stored Job Deletion Time. 3 days
	E Secure Job Log
	USB Advanced Functions
	Advanced Punction Settings: Prioritize Meap Prioritize USB Over Network
	Use MEAP Driver for USB Storage Device
	×
	Copyright CANON INC. 2015 -
*	

5 Click [OK].

 Kitp://192.068.1.81/octrioet/ 			P-16X 0 ☆
	e e		To Postal Login User: System Menager Log Ov Mail to System Menager
(+) Settings/Registration			naa o ogseen sarage
Control Menu	Settings/Registration, Preferences, I Edit Control Monu	Control Menu > Edit Control Menu	Last Lipdatest: 2006-2015-01:30:34
Paper Source Settings Notwork Layout	The settings will be changed as fo	lovs. (Some changes are effective al	ter the main power is turned OFF and ON.)
E Print Quality E User Maintesance	Sleep Settings		
User Markenance Dutput/Control Utility Menu Device Centrol	Skep Mode: Skep Even & Error Prioritize Energy Saving W	High (Deep Sleep)	
Varagement Settings	Auto Sleep Tirre: Sleep When Using USB:	5 min. 📼	

Manually Deleting Documents

Start the Remote UI and log on. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

NOTE:

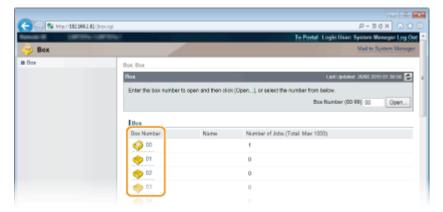
If you logged on in General User Mode

- By default, the machine is configured so that no users (general users) other than the administrator can delete the documents. To allow end users to operate documents, you must change the settings.
 Enabling End Users to Operate Documents(P. 348)
- You can delete only the document of which user name matches the one that was used to log on to the Remote UI.

2 Click [Box].

100 B here (182)	ALLEI AND Developments	f.cg/1C5UT=1196076029					0.	20X 0 0
		Device Nome:						tem Manager Log (
诸 Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: E	delige	• 2 4	ai to System Manag
				Last Updated: 00072	815 01:51:40	\$	Status Monitor/Cancel	
Device Basic Informa	tion							()
Device Status							Settings/Registration	(V)
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.					_		47
Error Information								
There is no error.						E	asic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					-6	Вся	2
Paper Information						- U		
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size Pape	г Туре				Direct Print	-
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4 Plain						
	OK							

3 Click the number of the box where the document to delete is stored.



NOTE:

If the box is protected by a PIN

• When the screen shown below is displayed, enter the PIN and click [OK].

Enter PIN		
This bax is PIN-protected.	Enter the PIN and click [OK].	2 OK Cancel
Enter PIN		
Box Number:	00	
Name:		
PIN:	1	

4 Select the check box of the document to delete, and click [Delete].

	starms:		ToP	ortel Login User: System Ma	nager Log (
👂 Box				Mail to Sg	steen Manag
Bax	Box: Box > Box				
	🤹 Bax 🌾 10			Last Updated: 25/05 2015	014157
					Settings
	Files in Box '99'	_			
	Pvint. Delote	2			
	Select type	File Name	Pages	Time	
		Document01.rtf	1	26/06 2015 01:41	
	2				

The selected document is deleted.

NOTE:

• You can click the text link under [File Name] to check the details of the document.

NOTE

• It may take some time until the free space of the SD card is increased because the stored data is erased in the background.

Setting a Name or PIN to a Box

0X7U-02F

You can set a name for a box and a PIN to open the box. If you set a friendly name for the box, you can easily identify the box when selecting the place to store documents by using the printer driver. If you set a PIN, the stored documents can be accessed by only limited users, enhancing the security.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Box].

		Device Nor Product Ne Location:				Login User: System	Manager Log C
🔓 Remote UI: Po	ortal			L	anguage: Engli	a Mai to	System Manag
				Last Updated: 05/07 2015	01:51:40	Status Monitor/Cancel	
Device Basic Informa	tion						V
Device Status						Satings/Registration	N
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						47
Error Information							
There is no error.						Basic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Вол	<u></u>
Paper Information							-
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	5
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

3 Click the number of the box for which you want to specify the settings.

			and the lite
🗲 💿 🚱 http://132.268.1.81/(bes.og)			,P+86X ()습()
terms in the second	a sama a sa		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
🏓 Box			Mail to System Manager
Box	Box Box		
	Box		Land Updated: 2000 2015 01 38-58 🛃
	Enter the box number	to open and then elisi	(Open), or select the number from below.
			Box Number (00-99) 00 Open
	Box Number	Name	Number of Jobs (Total: Max 1000)
		Parte	
	🥥 D0		1
	🧇 D1		0
	🤝 12		0
	eine 10		0

NOTE:

If the box is protected by a PIN

• When the screen shown below is displayed, enter the PIN and click [OK].

Enter PIN		
This box is PIN-protected	I. Enter the PIN and click [OK].	2 OK Cancel
Enter PIN		
Box Number:	00	
Name:		
PIN:	1	



C	L/bdecs.cg/f8erNe=11474836484rCSUT=-3	67121597		P-26X 0 00
Sector Streets	COMPANY AND A DESCRIPTION OF		ToP	ortel Login User: System Manager Log Out
💝 Box				Mail to System Manager
@ Box	Box: Box > Box			
	🤞 Bax 🥠 14		3	Last Updated: 04/07 2045 02:09 04 🛃
				Setings .
	Files in Box '99'			
	Print Delete			
	Select Type	File Name	Pages	Time
	= <u></u>	Document01.rtf	1	33/06 2015 01:01
	×			
				Copyright CANCIN INC. 2015

5 Set a name and PIN.

C	#1/bprop.og/f0erNe-21474836488c507-36477664	9	P	0 0 0 × 0 =
			To Portel Login User: Sy	
👙 Box			Ņ	fail to System Manager
Box .	Box: Box > Box > SetRegister B	looces		
	SetRegister Bears			
	The settings will be changed a	e follows.		OK Cancel
	SetRegister Boses			
	Box Number: Box Name:	00		
	E Set PIN PIN		(Max 7 digits)	
	Confirm:		(Max 7 digits)	

[Box Name]

To specify the box name, you can enter up to 96 characters depending on the character type.

[Set PIN]

To set a PIN, select the [Set PIN] check box and enter a number of up to seven digits for the PIN in the [PIN] text box. For confirmation, enter the same number in the [Confirm] text box.

NOTE:

• You cannot use "0" as the first digit of the PIN. A number with "0" removed from the first digit will be set as the PIN.

6 Click [OK].

	L/bprop.cg/f8erNe=21474836488/CSUT=36477664	P+ECX 🕥	食日	
Assessed 1007070	and the second se		To Portal Login User: System Manager L	og Out
👙 Box			Mail to System M	anager.
e Box	Box: Box > Box > Set/Register I	Boxes		
	SetRegister Boxes			
	The settings will be changed as follows.			scul
	SetWegister Boass			
	Bax Number:	00		
	Box Name:	box00		
	😥 Set PIN			
	PIN	•••••	(Max 7 digits)	
	Confirm:		(Max 7 digits)	
	X			

Printing without Opening a File (Direct Print)

0X7U-02H

You can print a file from a Web browser (Remote UI) without opening the file. In addition, you can also print a PDF file on the Web by only specifying the URL.



Available File Formats

You can print the following types of files by Direct Print. However, Direct Print may be unavailable depending on the file structure.

- PDF file *1
- PS file
- EPS file
- IPEG file
- TIFF file
- XPS file

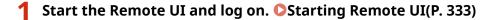
*1 Version 1.7 is supported.

IMPORTANT

The maximum printable file size is as shown below.

•	PDF/XPS files	(with SD card installed)	: 2	2 GB
		(without SD card installed)	: 2	20 MB
•	PS/EPS/JPEG files	(with SD card installed)	: 2	2 GB
		(without SD card installed)	: 2	2 GB
•	TIFF files ^{*2}	(with SD card installed)	: 2	2 GB
		(without SD card installed)	: 2	2 GB

^{*2}Even TIFF files not exceeding the upper limit of size may not be printed depending on the file structure. In this case, set <TIFF Spooler> to <On> and try printing again. **OTIFF Spooler(P. 427)**



2 Click [Direct Print].

		Device Nar Product Na Location:	ue: Ime (Serial No.):	LATION COMPANY		Login User: System Man	ager Leg
👌 Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: English	• D Maito Sys	teen Man
				Last Updated: 06/07 2	HS-02-17:14 🛃	Status Monitos/Cancel	là
levice Basic Informa	tion						10
Device Status						Settings/Registration	6
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						2
Error information							
There is no error.						Basic Tools	
onsumables inform	ation					Bax	0
Paper Information							_
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	1
Multi-Purpose Tray		A4	Plain				
Drawer 1	OK	A4	Plain			Management Tools	
Toner Cartridge Inf	ormation						
Color Remaining						Service Management Service	1
Black							
Jessage Board							
Message from Syste	or Manager						

3 Click the type of the file to print.

(-) (2) http://182.068.1.81/insgs/into	p7C9V7+1416840791		P-86X 🗋 🗘 🖯
Research Lawrence and the		To P	ontal Login User: System Menager Log Out 🐣
Oirect Print			Mail to System Manager
= PDF File	Direct Print: Print Image Files		
I PS File	Print Image Files		Last Updated: 2006 2015 01:40:25
■ Image File □ XPS Files	Enter the TIFF or JPEG tie to Click [Browse] to select a file. Forwarding the file may take a Do not click [Start Printing] mo	ome time.	
			Start Printing Restore Defaults
	Salect Imaga File		
	Specify File:		Browco
	Specify Print Range		
	Print Range:	R Al	
		O Specify Pages First Page	t I ant Page:

[PDF File]

Click to print a PDF file.

[PS File]

Click to print a PS or EPS file.

[Image File] Click to print a JPEG or TIFF file.

[XPS Files] Click to print an XPS file.

4 Click [Browse].

- When the dialog box for selecting the file appears, select the file to print and click [Open].
- When you print a PDF file, select [File Path].

-			
C () () () () () () () () () () () () ()	diprint egil CSUT = -31429223		0 🖄 🚯 X58+9.
Service Strength	PON .		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Oirect Print			Mail to System Manager
B PDF File	Direct Print: Print PDF Files		
PS File Image File	Print PDF Files		Last Updated: 2006 2015 01:40:51
: XPS Plas	Enter the PDF file path or t Click (Browsa) to select a 6 F Enveroing the file may tak Do not click (Start Printing)	le. o some time.	Start Pinting Restore Defaults 7
	Select PDF File		
	Specify File:	Pie Path URL (TTEX) User Nam	e Passeré

NOTE:

When you print a PDF file on the Web

• Select [URL], and enter the URL of the PDF file. If the user authentication is performed, enter the user name and password.

When the PDF file is password-protected

• Enter the password in [Document Password].

When you print a PDF file linked to a policy server

• Specify the [Policy Server User Name] and [Policy Server Password] settings.

5 Specify the print settings as necessary. **O**Print Settings for Direct Print(P. 150)

6 Click [Start Printing].

-				
(-) (312.068.1.81/)	offprint.cpi1CSUT=632486582			P-86X 🕥 🏠 🖯
Research Statistics	areas .		To Portal Lo	gin User: System Menager Log Out
Direct Print				Mail to System Manager
B PDF File	Direct Print: Print PDF Files			
ID PS File ID Image File	Print PDF Files			Last Updated: 01/07 2015 82-09-38
:: XPS Plas	Enter the PDF file path or the Click (Browsia) to select a file Forwarding the file may take Do not click (Start Printing) in	same tine.		Start Printing Restore Defaults r
	Select PDF File			
	Specify File:	Pie Path	C. Example/example.pdf	Drowco
		URL	http://	
			User Name:	Password:

The screen shown below is displayed and printing starts.

	/pdfprint.cpil?lage=OK	P+16× 0 0
Research Latronau	UP Divi	To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Oirect Print		Mail to System Manager
 PDF File PS File Intege File XPS Files 		Sending the direct print job is complete. Check this job in the job let To Job List Back to Previous Page
		Creyngel CANON INC. 2015

• If you click [To Job List], the [Job Status] page is displayed to show the print status. Checking Current Status of Print Documents(P. 342)

IMPORTANT:

• It may take some time until printing starts.

LINKS

OUsing Remote UI(P. 332)

Print Settings for Direct Print

0X7U-02J

When you want to change the settings for Direct Print according to the document to print, specify the following settings.

Specify File:		
Specify Print Range		
Print Range:	■ AI	
	Specily Pages First Page: []	Last Page:
Quality Sottings		
Resolution:	600 dpi 📼	
Halftones:	Resolution Gradation High Resolution	
Color Settings		
Grayscale Conversion.	 ■ RGB ■ NTSC Uniform RGB 	
Print Sottings		
Copies:	1 (1-9999)	
Paper Size:	Al	
Paper Type:	Plain In	
Image Orientation:	Auto •	
Print Position:	Auto =	
Zoom:	C# m	
📋 Enlarge Print Area		
Print 2-Sided		
Binding Location:		

IMPORTANT

When you specify the print settings for XPS files

• Clear the [Prioritize Print Ticket] check box. If the check box is selected, some items are unavailable.



NOTE

Icons^{*} in the description

- PDF Settings for printing PDF files
- PS Settings for printing PS/EPS files
- JPEG Settings for printing JPEG files
- TIFF Settings for printing TIFF files
- Settings for printing XPS files

^{*} Icons are omitted for the settings that are displayed regardless of the file format.

[Specify Print Range]

Specify Print Range				
Print Range:	(a) All			
	 Specify Pages 	First Page:	Last Page: 1	

	Print Range] PDF DF C	
[All]		Select to print all pages.
[Specify Pages] Select to specify the print range. This setting is unavailable for		Select to specify the print range. This setting is unavailable for JPEG files.

[Quality Settings]

PDF XPS		JPEG TIFF	
Quality Settings		Quality Settings	
Resolution:	600 dpi 💌	a Resolution:	600 dpi 💌
Halftones		Haltones:	 Resolution Gradation
Text:	 Resolution Gradation High Resolution 		High Resolutio
Graphics:	 Resolution Gradation High Resolution 		
Image:	 Resolution Gradation High Resolution 		

[Resolution]

Specify the resolution of data to print.

	Edges of characters and graphics can be clearly reproduced at high resolution. This print mode is suitable for printing data that contains many small characters.
[600 dpi]	This print mode is suitable for printing at a high speed.

[Halftones] PDF JPEG TIFF XPS

You can select the printing method to reproduce halftones (the intermediate range between the lighter and darker areas of an image). For PDF files and XPS files, you can specify the halftones for each image data type: [Text], [Graphics], and [Image].

[Resolution]	Prints gradation and lines with a smooth finish. This print mode is suitable for printing figures and charts with gradation.
[Gradation]	Prints vivid images with a tonal contrast effect. This print mode is suitable for printing image data such as photos.
[High Resolution]	Performs fine printing by sharply reproducing the edges of characters. This print mode is suitable for printing data of characters and thin lines with a clear finish.

[C	olor Settings]				
	PDF JPEG TIFF			XPS	
	Color Settings			Color Settings	
6	Grayscale Conversion:	 sRGB NTSC 		Grayscale Conversion	
a		Uniform RGB	J	Text:	© sRG8 ⊛ NTSC ⊙ Uniform RG8
			a –	Graphics:	 SRGB NTSC Uniform RGB
				Image:	 SRGB NTSC Uniform RGB

[Grayscale Conversion]

You can select the method to convert color pint data to black-and-white data. For XPS files, you can specify the conversion method for each image data type: [Text], [Graphics], and [Image].

[sRGB]	Color data is converted to black-and-white data to generate color-conscious smooth gradation.
[NTSC]	Color data is converted to black-and-white data to generate appearances equivalent to television pictures (NTSC).
[Uniform RGB]	Color data is converted to black-and-white data to equalize all RGB levels based on the brightness only.

[Print Settings]

	PDF XPS				JPEG TIFF		
_	Print Settings				Print Settings		
a –	- Copies:	1	(1-9999)	a –	- Copies:	1	(1-9999)
b -	Paper Size:	Auto		_	Paper Size:	A4	
0-	– Paper Type:	Plain 💌		Ō-	- Paper Type:	Plain 💌	
d -	Manual Feed			-Õ-	Image Orientation:	Auto	
e –	Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Paper Size			<u> </u>	- Print Position:	Auto 💌	
0-	Enlarge Print Area			- Ō -	Zoom:	Off •	
	2-Sided Printing			-Õ-	Enlarge Print Area		
0-	Print 2-Sided			- Õ-	Print 2-Sided		
k–	Binding Location:	Long Edge 💌		k-	Binding Location:	Long Edge 💌	
	N on 1			Ŏ-	Show Warnings:	Print 💌	
—	N on 1:	Off +					
0-	- Page Order:	Left to Right 💌					
	Finishing						
0-	Finishing:	Off 🔹					
	Comment Print						
P–	- Comment Print:	Auto -					
	Store in Box						
Q –	Store in Box						
	Box Number (00-99):	00 *					

[Copies]

Specify the number of copies.



Specify the size of the paper to print on.

NOTE:

When you want to print a PDF file or XPS file, specify [Auto] to automatically select the optimum paper size.
 If no optimum size is found, the paper size set in <Standard Paper Size> is selected (Standard Paper Size(P. 455)).



Specify the type of the paper to print on.

📵 [Manual Feed] 🛛 🛛 🔂 🔂 🔂 🔂

If you select the check box, a document is printed only on the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

😢 [Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Paper Size] 🛛 🛛 🖉 🖉 🔅

If you select the check box, printouts are enlarged or reduced printouts according to the **Printable Area(P. 572)** of the paper. The printouts are enlarged or reduced with the original aspect ratio kept.

NOTE:

• If [Paper Size] is set to [Auto], this item is unavailable.

🚹 [Image Orientation] 💵 🛯 🖬

Specify the print orientation of an image.

[Auto]	Automatically determines the print orientation based on the width and height of the image.
[Vertical]	Select when printing a vertically-long image.
[Horizontal]	Select when printing a horizontally-long image.

NOTE:

• If the specified setting of [Vertical] or [Horizontal] does not match the orientation of the image, the reduced image is printed.

[Print Position] [JPEG] [TIFF]

Specify the position to print the image.

[Auto]	If the TIFF data contains the information that specifies the print position, the image is printed according to the information, otherwise, it is printed at the center of paper. JPEG data is always printed at the center of paper.
[Center]	Images are printed at the center of paper.
[Top Left]	Images are printed at the top left.

[] [Zoom] JPEG TIFF

Enable or disable enlarging/reducing images. The printouts are enlarged or reduced with the image aspect ratio kept.

[Off]	When the image is within the Printable Area(P. 572) of the paper, it is printed wit the size as is. When an image is larger than the printable area, printouts are reduced
[Auto]	Makes enlarged or reduced printouts according to the printable area of the paper.

[Enlarge Print Area] PDF JPEG TIFF XPS

If you select the check box, the image is printed by extending the **Printable Area(P. 572)** fully to the paper size. However, a part of the image may be missing near the edge of the paper or the paper may be partly tainted depending on the original.

[Print 2-Sided]

Select the check box to print on both sides of the paper.

[Binding Location]

Select whether to bind the long edge or short edge of the printouts with a binding tool such as a stapler. Printing orientation will be changed depending on the specified binding position. You can also specify the binding margin (**©Gutter(P. 397)**).

[Long Edge]	Binds the printouts on the long edge.
[Short Edge]	Binds the printouts on the short edge.

[Show Warnings] JPEG TIFF

You can specify how the machine should behave if an error occurs.

[Print]	Error information is printed and no image is printed.
[Panel]	No image is printed and an error message is displayed on the operation panel.
[Off]	No image is printed and no error is displayed.



Specify whether or not to print multiple pages onto a single sheet by sequentially allocating them. For example, to print four pages onto a single sheet, select [4 on 1].



NOTE:

• If [Paper Size] is set to [Auto], this item is unavailable.



Select a page distribution layout.



[Finishing] [PDF] [XPS]

Specify the method to collate the printouts when printing multiple-page documents. This item is displayed when the SD card is installed.

[Off]	The printouts are not collated. The specified number of copies are printed for each page. For example, if you are printing three copies of a four-page document, the printouts will be arranged in the following page order: 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 3, 3, 3, 4, 4, 4.
[Collate]	The printouts are grouped into complete sets in sequential page order. For example, if you are printing three copies of a four-page document, the printouts will be arranged in the following page order: 1, 2, 3, 4, 1, 2, 3, 4, 1, 2, 3, 4.

🕑 [Comment Print] 🛛 💵

Select whether to print comments.

[Auto]	Prints comments in the PDF file.
[Off]	Prints no comments.

[Store in Box] PDF PS XPS

You can store a document in the SD card installed on the machine without making printouts. Select the check box to store the document in a box specified in [Box Number (00-99)]. You can print the documents in the box from the operation panel as many times as you want. For how to print a document, see **Printing a Document Stored in the Machine(P. 139)**. This item is displayed when the SD card is installed.

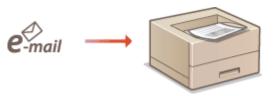
LINKS

Printing without Opening a File (Direct Print)(P. 146)

Printing Received E-mail (E-Mail Print)

0X7U-02K

E-Mail Print allows you to print the message and attached JPEG or TIFF image files of an e-mail received from the POP3 mail server without using a computer. E-mails can be manually received as well as being automatically received at regular intervals. When the SMTP protocol is used, e-mails directly sent to the machine via no mail server are printed.



Configuring E-Mail Print Settings(P. 158) Manually Receiving E-Mails(P. 162)

NOTE

• When you set <TIFF Spooler> in the Setup menu to <On>, the received data is temporarily stored in the machine or SD card before printed. This reduces the occurrence of errors. **CTIFF Spooler(P. 427)**

Outline of E-Mail Print

General

- An e-mail message is printed with e-mail header information.
- An HTML e-mail message is printed as a plain text.
- If a line (without line feed) in an e-mail message contains more than 1,000 characters, excessive characters are placed on a new line and may not be correctly printed.
- An e-mail message cannot be printed on paper loaded in the optional envelope feeder.

When <TIFF Spooler> is set to <On>

- If the e-mail message size exceeds 25 MB or the e-mail size exceeds 1.5 GB, the e-mail message is not printed.
- If the e-mail header data exceeds 20 KB, the excessive data is not printed.
- If no SD card is installed, TIFF files exceeding 40 MB in size may not be printed.
- If the SD card has no sufficient free space, E-Mail Print is not available.

IMPORTANT

• When the toner cartridge is nearly empty, no e-mails can be received.

NOTE

Supported e-mail encoding formats

- 7bit uuencode base64
- 8bit x-uuencode quoted-printable
- binary

Supported e-mail character sets

• us-ascii • iso-8859-1 • iso-8859-15

(If any character set is not specified, "us-ascii" is applied.)

Printable Formats of Attached Image Files

The E-Mail Print function supports the following types of image files.

- JPEG file
- TIFF file

NOTE

- Some files are unavailable depending on the file structure.
- You can print up to three attached files for each e-mail. (Excessive attached files are not printed.)
- If the SD card is installed, the printable file size is 100 MB or less per file.

Configuring E-Mail Print Settings

This section describes how to specify the settings for receiving and printing e-mails on this machine. Use a computer to specify the settings for receiving e-mails and the operation panel of the machine to specify the settings for printing e-mails.

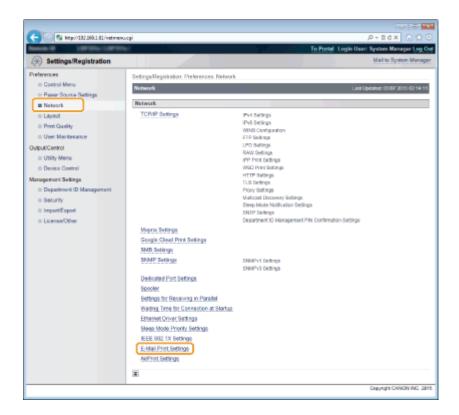


Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

		Device Nar Product Na Location:	re: me (Seriel No.):			Login User: System M	anager Log (
Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: English	· D Maito S	ysten Manag
				Last Updated: 05/07 20	15 01 51 40 🛃	Status Monitor/Canoel	6
Device Basic Informa	ation						V
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	(V)
The device is in th	e Sleep mode.						47
Error Information							
There is no error.					1	Besic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	ં જે
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

Click [Network] > [E-Mail Print Settings].



4 Click [Edit].

< 😪 🚱 🚱 http://182.068.1.81/neterns			P+86× 0 0€
MARKET LEVISLATION	64 C		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Or
(*) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration Preferences Netv	ork > E-Mail Print Settings	
III Control Menu	E-Mail Print Settings		Last Updated: 01/07 2015 (2:14:34
II Paper Source Settings			Received E-Mail Edit.
Network			THAT ANY DE COMMENTE
= Layout	E-Mail Print Settings		
Print Quality	POP3 Server Name:		
User Maintenance	POP3 User Name:		
Output/Centrol	Paueward	Not ust.	
 Utility Menu 	POP3 RX Interval:	0 min.	
II Device Control	POP3 RX:	OF	
Management Sellings	POP3 Server Port Number:	110	
II Department ID Management	SMTP RX	08	
in Security	SMTP Server Port Number:	25	

5 Specify the settings for E-Mail Print.

When performing E-Mail Print from POP3 mail server

When the e-mail receiving starts, all e-mails stored in the mailbox of the mail server are printed. If you send emails that you want to print to the machine in advance, you can automatically print the e-mails at regular time intervals or print all stored e-mails in an arbitrary timing.



IMPORTANT:

• We recommend using the mail address exclusively for E-Mail Print because all e-mails received into the machine are deleted from the mail server.

Conditions of use for POP3 protocol

• The POP3 mail server must support the UIDL command. For details, contact your network administrator or server administrator.

POP3 Server Name:		
POP3 User Name:		
Set/Change Password		
Password:		(Max 32 characters)
Confirm:		(Max 32 characters)
POP3 RX Interval:	0 minutes (0-90)	
POP3 RX		
POP3 Server Port Number:	110 (0-65535)	

[POP3 Server Name]

Enter the mail server name or IP address for receiving e-mails.

[POP3 User Name]

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the user name used to connect to the mail server.

[Set/Change Password]

To set the password for connecting to the mail server, select the check box and enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the password in the [Password] text box. For confirmation, enter the same password in the [Confirm] text box.

[POP3 RX Interval]

Specify the interval for automatically connecting to the mail server in minutes. New e-mails in the mailbox of the mail server are automatically received and printed at the specified time intervals. You can also specify this setting by using <POP3 RX Interval> in the setting menu of the operation panel (**OPOP3 RX** Interval(P. 393)).

NOTE:

Preventing E-mails from Being Automatically Received

 Set [POP3 RX Interval] to [0]. If you set [0], you must manually receive e-mails. Manually Receiving E-Mails(P. 162)

[POP3 RX]

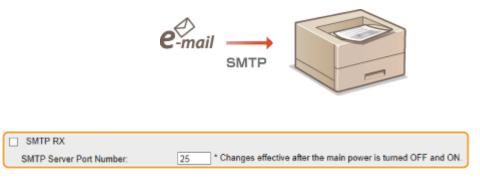
Select the check box to enable E-Mail Print from the POP3 mail server. You can also specify this setting by using <POP3 RX> in the setting menu of the operation panel (**POP3 RX(P. 393)**).

[POP3 Server Port Number]

Specify the port number of the mail server that receives e-mails.

When performing E-Mail Print by using SMTP protocol

If e-mails are sent to the machine via SMTP, the machine prints the e-mails immediately after receiving them. Enable this function when you want to forward fax documents from Canon multifunction printers to this machine and print them on the machine (**To forward fax documents from Canon multifunction printers(P. 162)**).



[SMTP RX]

Select the check box to enable E-Mail Print by using the SMTP protocol. You can also specify this setting by using <SMTP RX> in the setting menu of the operation panel (**SMTP RX(P. 394)**).

[SMTP Server Port Number]

Specify the port number of the SMTP server for receiving e-mails.

6 Click [OK].

	A cpil/vetion=0E1_EMAIL&ICSU1=-690257442		P-86× 0 ℃
Anna Arthurston			To Postal Login User: System Manager Log 0
(H) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manag
Preferences	Settings/Registration Preferences I	vetwork > E-Mail Print Settings >	Edit E-Mail Print Settings
Costrol Menu	Edit E-Mail Print Settings		Last Updated: 01/07 2015 02-14 50
Paper Source Settings Network	The settings will be changed as fo	lovs.	
			OK Cancel
E Layout E Print Quality			
User Maintenance	E-Mail Print Settings		
Dutout/Centrol	POP3 Server Name:	mailcoccoc	
Utility Menu	POP3 User Name:	example	
II Device Control	SetChange Password		
Vanagement Settings	Password:	•••••	(Max 32 characters)
Department ID Management	Confirm		(Max 32 characters)
= Security	POP3 RX Interval:	0 min. (0-00)	

7 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].

C	telezi	P-10 X 0 0
Restance of Lawrence - Lawrence		To Postel Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Output/Control: Device Control	
III Costrol Menu	Device Control	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 00:40:46
© Paper Source Settings © Network © Layout	Select the device control from the below options, and click [Executa],	3 Exc.18
Print Quality User Maintenance	Device Control	
Utility Menu	Device Control Options: Office Control Big Hand Reset	
Management Settings is Department ID Management is Security	*	

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.



Specify other settings for E-Mail Print as necessary.

Specify whether or not to print the e-mail message.
 Print E-Mail Text(P. 428)

You can limit the number of pages to print the e-mail message.
 Limit E-Mail Print(P. 428)

You can specify the settings for printing attached image files.Image Orientation(P. 425)

Czoom(P. 426)

Print Position(P. 426)
TIFF Spooler(P. 427)
Show Warnings(P. 427)
Enlarge Print Area(P. 429)
Halftones(P. 429)
Grayscale Conversion(P. 430)

Specify whether or not to display an E-Mail Print error.

Show Warnings(P. 365)

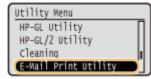
Manually Receiving E-Mails

If e-mail printing from the POP3 mail server is enabled, you can manually receive and print e-mails as well. When you want to connect to the mail server before automatically receiving e-mails or the machine is configured to prevent e-mails from being automatically received, follow the procedure below to manually receive the e-mails.

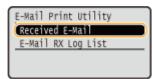
Press ◀ (🗄/).

When the machine is offline, it does not operate even if
 (P/IDD) is pressed. Set the machine to Online.
 Online key(P. 25)

2 Use ▲ / ▼ to select <E-Mail Print Utility>, and press .







Select <Yes>, and press



The machine is connected to the mail server. E-Mail Print is started for new e-mails in the mailbox of the mail server if any.

To forward fax documents from Canon multifunction printers

Enable SMTP RX on this machine, and then specify the IP address of the machine as the Internet Fax (I Fax) Address on the source multifunction printer. Forwarded fax documents are printed immediately when received.

• Attached files can only be printed if they are in TIFF format. Only one TIFF file can be printed for each fax document.

- When the toner cartridge is nearly empty, no fax documents can be received. The fax documents that could not be received on this machine are printed on the source multifunction printer.
- When the optional SD card is installed on the machine, the maximum size of a printable TIFF file is limited to 100 MB.

LINKS

Checking History of Documents(P. 343) E-Mail RX Log List(P. 538)

Can Be Used Conveniently with a Mobile Device

Can Be Used Conveniently with a Mobile Device	165
Connecting to a Mobile Device	166
Making the Best Use of the Machine by Utilizing Applications	167
Using AirPrint	169
Printing with AirPrint	173
If AirPrint Cannot Be Used	175
Using Google Cloud Print	176
Managing the Machine Remotely	180

Can Be Used Conveniently with a Mobile Device

0X7U-02L

Combining the machine with a mobile device such as a smartphone or tablet enables you to use an appropriate application to perform printing with ease. You can also use a mobile device to operate the machine remotely, check the printing status, and change machine's settings.



Connecting to a Mobile Device(P. 166)
Making the Best Use of the Machine by Utilizing Applications(P. 167)
Managing the Machine Remotely(P. 180)

Connecting to a Mobile Device

0X7U-02R

Connect a mobile device and the machine via a wireless LAN router. For how to set and operate your wireless LAN router and mobile devices, see the instruction manuals for the devices or contact your manufacturers.



NOTE

• The machine does not come with a wireless LAN router. Have one ready as necessary.

Making the Best Use of the Machine by Utilizing Applications

0X7U-02S

You can use an appropriate application that enables you to print by operating the machine from your mobile device. The machine supports a dedicated application from Canon and various other applications. You can select the most appropriate application to your mobile device, the purpose, the situation, and so on.

Printing through Canon Mobile Application or a Plug-In

You can perform printing from a mobile device. For compatible operating systems, the detailed setting procedure and operating procedure, please see the Canon website at: **http://www.canon.com/**.

Using Google Cloud Print

You can print from an application or service that supports Google Cloud Print. You can print by remotely operating the machine at any time and from anywhere, for example even while you are on the go. **Using Google Cloud Print(P. 176)**



■ Printing with Mopria[™]

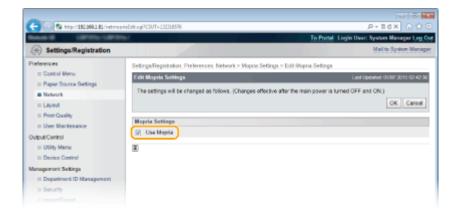
This machine also supports Mopria[™]. Using Mopria[™] allows you to print with printers of different models from different manufacturers by using common operations and common settings. For example, assume that Mopria[™] compatible printers of different models from different manufacturers are installed in your office, at your place, or at places you are visiting. You can then print with any of those printers by using Mopria[™] without the need to install the respective dedicated applications on them. For details about the models supporting Mopria[™] and the system requirements, see **http://www.mopria.org**.



Viewing Mopria[™] Settings

Log on to the Remote UI in Management Mode (**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**) [Settings/ Registration] [Network] [Mopria Settings] [Edit] Check that the [Use Mopria] check box is selected [OK]

Can Be Used Conveniently with a Mobile Device



Using AirPrint

0X7U-07W

You can print without using printer driver by sending print data from Apple devices.



AirPrint settings

Configuring AirPrint Settings(P. 169)Displaying the Screen for AirPrint(P. 171)

Functions of the AirPrint

OPrinting with AirPrint(P. 173)

Troubleshooting

OIf AirPrint Cannot Be Used(P. 175)

Configuring AirPrint Settings

You can register information, including the name of the machine and installation location, that is used for identifying the machine. You can also disable the AirPrint function of the machine. Use the Remote UI to change these settings.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**

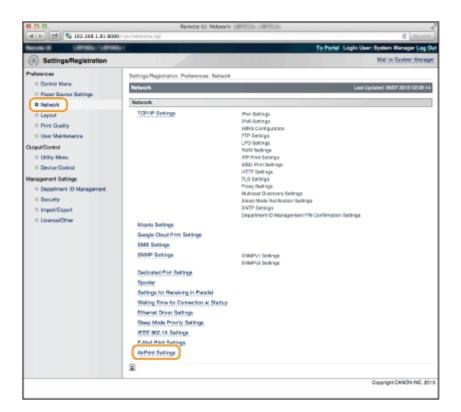
2 Click [Settings/Registration].

• If you are using a mobile device, such as iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch, read "click" as "tap" in this section.

		Device Na Product N Location:	me: ame (Serial No.):			Login Usor: Sy	sion Manager Log C
👌 Remote UI: Pr	ortel				Language: English	• • • • •	Aai to Bystem Manag
				Last Updated: 06/07 20	15 02:06:41 👰	Status Monitor/Cancel	6
Device Dasic Informa	tion						\forall
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	N
The printer is read	y.						47
Error Information							
There is no error.						Basic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	<u> </u>
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				
Doawar 1	OK	3.4	Plain				

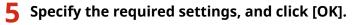
3 Click [Network] > [AirPrint Settings].

Can Be Used Conveniently with a Mobile Device



Click [Edit].

800	Remote UI: Al	intrint Settings:	/
(4) [22] 192.168.1.81.8	000/rgs/netairprint.cg/PCSUT=5337582	14	Č Reather
NAME OF TAXABLE OF	m./		To Partel Login User: System Manager Log Out
(*) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preference	s: Network > AirPrint Settings	
Control Manu Paper Source Settings	AirPrint Setlings		Last Updated: 05/07 2015 02:00:42
Network			Edt
II Layout III Print Quality III Usar Maintanance	AirPvint Settings Upa AirPrint:	Dn	
Output/Control	Printer Name: Location:	Canon in the second	
Device Control	Lathude: Longhude:	N 0*0*0* E 0*0*0*	
Management Settings Department ID Management Security ElimportDepart	×		



800	Remote UI: Ed	k AirPrint Settings: #
🔺 🖂 🔯 😵 192-168-1.81 8000	/rgs/webarrprintbd/Log/PCSUT=994	048587 C Reader
Second Contractories	R.	To Partel Login User: System Hanager Log Ou
() Settings/Registration		Naji to System Manager
Settings/Registration Pelevence Costrol Meru Costrol Meru Costrol Meru Cuput Pere Coultry Cuput Control Cuput Control Management Settings Depriver: ID Management Setting ImpostSpapet ImpostSpapet ImpostSpapet ImpostSpapet ImpostSpapet ImpostSpapet ImpostSpapet ImpostSpapet ImpostSpapet	Edit AirPrint Bettings The setlings will be charged AirPrint Setlings If you charge the [Printer Na	Nel to System: Manager see: Network > AirPort Settings > Edit AirPort Settings Lant Updated: 0507 2015 02:0021 as follows: (Changes offoctive after the main power is turned OFF and OF1 2 (CK) Cancel me], the (mONS Name) is (IPv4 Settings) will also be changed. fm[Location] in (Management Settings) will also be changed. Garon
C License/Other	Latitude: Longitude:	
		Copyright CANDN (MC. 2011

[Use AirPrint]

Select the check box to enable AirPrint. To disable AirPrint, clear the check box.

[Printer Name]/[Location]/[Latitude]/[Longitude]

Enter the name and the installation location information to help you identify this machine when operating your Apple device. This information is useful if you have more than one AirPrint printer.

NOTE:

If you select the [Use AirPrint] check box

The following items are also set to <On> automatically.

- <mDNS Settings> in IPv4 and IPv6 Configuring DNS(P. 220)
- <HTTP> ODisabling HTTP Communication(P. 288)
- <IPP Print> **Oconfiguring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions(P. 197)**

If you change [Printer Name]

If you change [Printer Name] that you have once specified, you may be unable to print any more from the Mac that has been able to be used for printing so far. This phenomenon occurs because <mDNS Name> (Oconfiguring DNS(P. 220)) of IPv4 is also changed automatically. In this case, add the machine to the Mac again.

NOTE

Using the operation panel

• You can also enable or disable AirPrint from the setting menu of the operation panel.



Displaying the Screen for AirPrint

You can display the screen for AirPrint, on which you can not only access the AirPrint Settings but also view information about consumables, such as paper and toner cartridge. Further, you can configure security function settings (**Ousing TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)**).

Click [System Preferences] in the Dock on the desktop > [Printers & Scanners].

- 2 Select your printer and click [Options & Supplies].
- **3** Click [Show Printer Webpage].

Log on to the Remote UI.

• To change AirPrint settings, log on in Management Mode.

The page dedicated for AirPrint is displayed.

Can Be Used Conveniently with a Mobile Device

O Forrote UI: Portal O Forrote UI: Portal O Forrote UI: Portal					C Reader
		-			<u>To Partal System Manager Log Out</u>
AirPrint				9	
AirPrint Settings					
					Edt
Use AirPrint: O	n				
Printer Name: C	2700				
Location:					
	0"0"0"				
Longitudo: E	0.0.0.				
Other Bettings					
Print Security Set TLS Bottings Key and Cettificat	o Sotings				
Consumables infor	mation				
Paper Informatio	n				
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type		
Multi-Purpose Tra	y None	A4	Plain		
Drawer 1	OK	A4	Plain		
Toner Cartridge	niormation				
Color Rema	ining Toner				
Black	100%				
					Copyright CANON INC. 2015

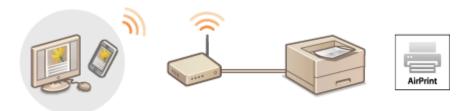
Trademarks

Apple, Bonjour, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, Mac OS, Mac OS X, AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Printing with AirPrint

0X7U-07X

You do not necessarily need to use a computer for printing e-mails, photos, Web pages, and other documents. AirPrint enables you to print directly from Apple devices such as iPad, iPhone, and iPod touch.



Printing from iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch(P. 173) Printing from Mac(P. 174)

System Requirements

To print with AirPrint, you need one of the following Apple devices.

- iPad (all models)
- iPhone (3GS or later)
- iPod touch (3rd generation or later)
- Mac (Mac OS X 10.7 or later)*

* Mac OS X 10.9 or later when you use USB connection.

Network Environment

You need one of the following environments.

- The Apple device and the machine are connected to the same LAN.
- The Mac and the machine are connected via USB.

NOTE:

When using USB connection

• Set <USB-Connected PC OS> to <Mac OS>. **OUSB-Connected PC OS(P. 370)**

Printing from iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch

- Make sure that the machine is turned ON and that it is connected to your Apple device.
- For how to make sure of this, see "Getting Started." **OManuals Included with the Machine(P. 587)**
- 2 From the application on your Apple device, tap 🖾 to display the menu options.
- **From the drop-down list, tap [Print]**.

4 Select this machine from [Printer] in [Printer Options].

• The printers connected to the network are displayed. Select this machine in this step.

IMPORTANT:

• [Printer Options] is not displayed on applications that do not support AirPrint. You cannot print by using those applications.

5 Specify the print settings as necessary.

NOTE:

• The available settings and paper sizes differ depending on the application you are using.

6 Tap [Print].

Printing starts.

NOTE:

Checking the print status

• During printing, press the Home button of the Apple device twice > tap [Print].

Printing from Mac

- Make sure that the machine is turned ON and that it is connected to your Mac.
- For how to make sure of this, see "Getting Started." OManuals Included with the Machine(P. 587)
- 2 Add the machine to the Mac from [System Preferences] > [Printers & Scanners].
- **3** Open a document in an application and display the print dialog box.
- How to display the print dialog box differs for each application. For more information, see the instruction manual for the application you are using.

Select this machine in the print dialog box.

• The printers connected to the Mac are displayed. Select this machine in this step.

5 Specify the print settings as necessary.

NOTE:

• The available settings and paper sizes differ depending on the application you are using.

6 Click [Print].

Printing starts.

If AirPrint Cannot Be Used

0X7U-07Y

If AirPrint cannot be used, try taking the following solutions.

- Make sure that the machine is turned ON. If the machine is turned ON, first turn it OFF, then wait for at least 10 seconds and then turn it back ON to check if the problem is solved.
- Make sure that no error messages are displayed on the machine.
- Make sure that Apple devices and the machine are connected to the same LAN. If the machine is turned ON, it may take several minutes before the machine is ready for communication.
- Make sure that Bonjour on your Apple device is enabled.
- Make sure that the machine is configured to enable printing from a computer even when no department ID and password are entered. **Department ID Is Unknown(P. 261)**
- Make sure that the paper is loaded in the machine and the machine has sufficient toner cartridge remaining.
 Displaying the Screen for AirPrint(P. 171)

Using Google Cloud Print

0X7U-080

Google Cloud Print is a service that enables a user who has a Google account to print from applications such as Google Docs[™] or Gmail[™] via a smartphone, tablet, or computer connected to the Internet. Unlike conventional printing from a computer, Google Cloud Print enables you to print without using a printer driver. For example, if you want to print an e-mail or files that are attached to an e-mail, you can print just by using Gmail for mobile. You will find your printouts when you go to the machine.



Checking the Machine Settings(P. 176)
 Changing Google Cloud Print Settings(P. 176)
 Registering the Machine with Google Cloud Print(P. 177)

IMPORTANT

- When registering the machine or when using Google Cloud Print to print documents, you must be able to connect the machine to the Internet. You are also responsible for paying all Internet connection fees.
- You may not be able to use this function in some countries or regions.
- Google Cloud Print does not support printing from IPv6 addresses.

NOTE

• To use Google Cloud Print, a Google account is required. If you do not have one, access Google Web site to create your account.

Checking the Machine Settings

Before setting up Google Cloud Print, check the following:

- Make sure that the machine is assigned an IPv4 address and connected to a computer over a network.
 Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 185)
- Make sure that the date and time settings are correct. **Date/Time Settings(P. 367)**
- If the Department ID Management is enabled, make sure that the machine is configured to enable printing from a computer even when no Department ID and PIN are entered.
 Blocking Jobs When Department ID Is Unknown(P. 261)

Changing Google Cloud Print Settings

Enable the Google Cloud Print function of the machine. You can also disable the Google Cloud Print function of the machine.



2 Use ▲ / ▼ to select <Network>, and press .

- When a message appears, press 💽.
- **3** Select <Google Cloud Print>, and press **a**.

4 Select <Use Cloud Print>, and press

Google Cloud Print	
(Use Cloud Print	
Registration Status	

5 Select <Off> or <On>, and press **a**.

Use	Cloud	Print	
off	F		
On			

Registering the Machine with Google Cloud Print

Registering the machine with Google Cloud Print allows you to print from anywhere.

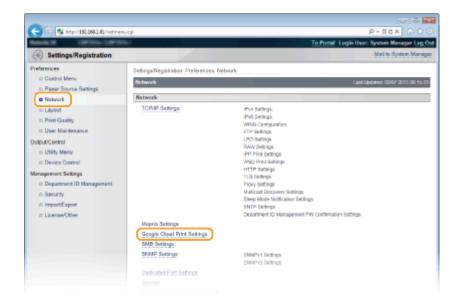
1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

Last Updated 00007 2015 81:51:48 Status Monitor/Cancel Device Status The device is in the Sizep mode. Enser Information There is no enor. Basic Tools Rev.	and a set of the	68.1.81.000/pc/pc4a	e oblicantivitation	178129			,P + 11 (SX 01
Last Lipidete: 0007 2015 81:51:49	Common of the		Product Ner		CHINA COMPANY		Login User: System	Manager Lo
Device State Information Device State There is no error. Conversation Paper Information Paper State Paper State Paper Type Direct Pinet Paper State Paper Type Direct Pinet Paper State Paper Type Direct Pinet Paper State Paper Type Direct Pinet Paper State Paper Type Direct Pinet Paper State Paper Type Direct Pinet Paper State Paper Type Direct Pinet Paper State Paper Type Direct Pinet Paper State Paper Type Paper State Paper S	🚷 Remote UI: Po	ortal			L	ingungs: English	- D Mail to	System Mar
Device Status Settings/Registration The device is in the Sizep mode. Settings/Registration Enser Information Ensel Information There is no ense. Ensel Information Consensations information Box Paper Information Orrect Print					Last Updated: 06/07 2015	01:51:40	Status Moniton/Cancel	la
The device is in the Sizep mode. Enser Information There is no error. Consemptives Information Paper Information Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Stor Paper Type Orrect Print	Device Basic Informa	tion						6
Error Information There is no error. Consemables information Paper Information Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Sour Paper Type Orent Print	Device Status					(Settings/Registration	6
There is no enor. Consempties Information Paper Information Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Stars Paper Type Direct Print	The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						12
Consumables Information Consumables Information Paper Information Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Sour Paper Type Orrect Print	Error information							
Consumatives Information Paper Information Paper Score Remaining Paper Paper Score Paper Type Direct Print	There is no error.						Basic Tools	
Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Size Paper Type Direct Print	Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	é
Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Size Paper Type	Paper Information							_
Multi-Purpose Tray Nona A4 Plain	Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	
	Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

3 Click [Network] > [Google Cloud Print Settings].

Can Be Used Conveniently with a Mobile Device



4 Click [Register] in [Registration Status].

-			
C-100 8 http://182.068.1.81/netcloudy	nint.cgi7C5UT=2089608082		0 û û xer-q
Manage of Contract of State	B. Contraction of the second se		To Portel Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration, Preferences, Network a	Google Cloud Print Settings	
Costrol Menu	Google Cloud Print Settings	315	Last Updated: 01/07 2015 02:42:55
Paper Source Settings	Real Pails		
Network	Basic Sottings		
= Layout			Edit.
Print Quality	Use Google Cloud Printing:	On	
User Maintenance	Local Print	On	
Output/Centrol	Server Connection Checking Interval:	300 665.	
Utility Menu	Verify Server Certificate:	On	
© Device Control	Add CN to Verification items:	On	
Management Settings	Error Information:	None	
 Department ID Management Security 	Registration Status		
il security il ImportiExport	Click [Register] and register the device usin	where the initial for maintening	
= LicenseOther	Care fordered are release on online one	g die ord, for regionatori.	Register
	Registration Status:	Confirming Registration	
	X		
			Copyright CANON INC. 2015

NOTE:

If [Register] is unavailable

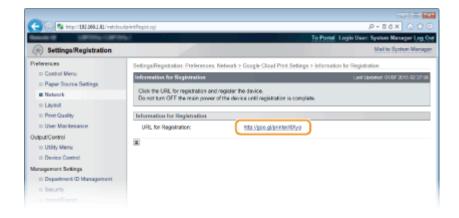
• You need to enable Google Cloud Print. Click [Edit], select the [Use Google Cloud Print] check box, and then click [OK].

To reregister the machine

• To reregister the machine if the owner of the machine has changed or for other reasons, unregister the machine and register it again.

5 Click the link of the URL displayed for [URL for Registration].

Can Be Used Conveniently with a Mobile Device



6 Follow the on-screen instructions to register the machine.

→ You can print from a Google Cloud Print compatible application such as Google Chrome[™], Gmail, or Google Docs.

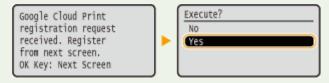
NOTE:

• Access the Google Cloud Print Web site for information about the latest applications that support Google Cloud Print.

NOTE

Registering from a mobile device or Google Chrome

You can also register the machine from a mobile device or Google Chrome. The machine's display shows the following confirmation screen before completion of the registration. Perform 💽 > <Yes> > 💽 to complete the registration.



- To perform the registration, the main screen need to be displayed. Press () to display the main screen and then proceed to the registration.
- For the registration procedure, see the instruction manual for your mobile device or the Google Cloud Print Web site.

Managing the Machine Remotely

0X7U-02U

You can use the Remote UI from a Web browser installed on your mobile device. This allows you to check the machine's status and specify machine's settings from your mobile device. Note that the Remote UI screen may not be displayed properly for some devices and environments.



Starting Remote UI with a Mobile Device

Enter the IP address of the machine into the Web browser and start the Remote UI. Check the IP address set to the machine in advance (**Network Status Print(P. 536)**). If you have any questions, ask your Network Administrator.

1 Start the Web browser on your mobile device.

- **2** Enter "http://(the IP address of the machine)/" in the address field.
- If you want to use an IPv6 address, enclose the IPv6 address with brackets (example: http:// [fe80::2e9e:fcff:fe4e:dbce]/).

LINKS

Ousing Remote UI(P. 332)

182
183
185
187
188
192
196
197
203
212
216
217
219
220
226
229
232
238
242
245

0X7U-02W

The machine has been designed for flexibility of use across a variety of environments, and it includes advanced technologies in addition to basic network features. Do not worry if you are not a network expert, because the machine has also been designed for convenience and ease of use. Relax and proceed with the network setup one step at a time.

Connecting to a Computer/Viewing the Machine's Network Settings



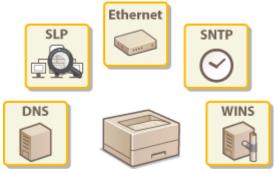
Connecting to a Network(P. 183)

Configuring for Printing



Configuring the Machine for Printing from a Computer(P. 196)

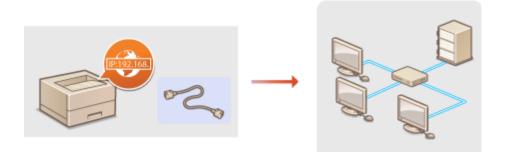
Customizing the Machine for More Convenient Network Experience



Configuring the Machine for Your Network Environment(P. 216)

Connecting to a Network

The machine can be connected to a network via wired LAN, requiring a unique network IP address. For specific IP address settings, contact your Internet service provider or network administrator.



IMPORTANT

• If the machine is connected to an unsecured network, your personal information might be leaked to a third party.

NOTE

• The machine does not come with a LAN cable or router. Have them ready as necessary.

Before You Start

Follow these steps to connect the machine to a network.



Check your computer settings.

- Make sure that the computer is correctly connected to the network. For more information, see the instruction manuals for the devices you are using, or contact the device manufacturers.
- Make sure that the network settings have been completed on the computer. If the
 network has not been set up properly, you will not be able to use the machine on the
 network, even if you perform the rest of the procedure below.

NOTE:

- Depending on the network, you may need to change settings for the communication method (half-duplex/full-duplex) or the Ethernet type (10BASE-T/ 100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) (Configuring Ethernet Settings(P. 217)). For more information, contact your Internet service provider or Network Administrator.
- To check the MAC address of the machine.
 MAC Address(P. 393)
- To connect to an IEEE 802.1X network, see Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication(P. 309).



Connect to a wired LAN. OConnecting to a Wired LAN(P. 185)



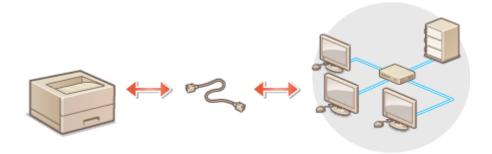
Set the IP address.

- At the time of purchase, the machine is set to automatically acquire an IP address. Change this setting if you want to use a specific IP address.
- Setting IP Addresses(P. 187)

Connecting to a Wired LAN

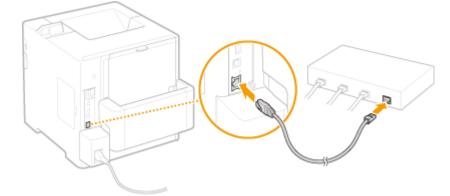
0X7U-02Y

Connect the machine to a computer via a router. Use a LAN cable to connect the machine to the router.

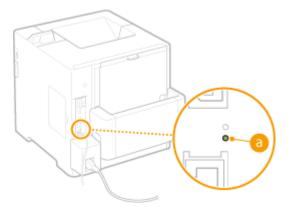


1 Connect a LAN cable.

- Connect the machine to a router by using a LAN cable.
- Push the connector in until it clicks into place.



2 Check that the LNK indicator (**6**) is lit.



NOTE:

• When the LNK indicator does not light up. **Problems with the Wired LAN Connection(P. 498)**

3 Wait approximately 2 minutes.

• While you wait, the IP address is set automatically.

NOTE:

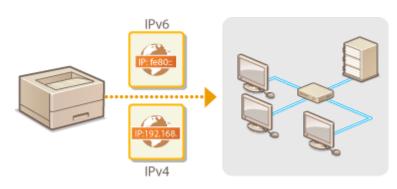
• You can set the IP address manually. **Setting IP Addresses(P. 187)**

LINKS

Connecting to a Network(P. 183)

Setting IP Addresses

Connecting the machine to a network requires a unique network IP address. Two versions of IP addresses are available: IPv4 and IPv6. Configure these settings depending on the network environment. To use IPv6 addresses, you need to properly configure the IPv4 address settings.



Setting IPv4 Address

IP:192.168.

The machine's IPv4 address can be either assigned automatically by a dynamic IP addressing protocol, such as DHCP, or entered manually. When connecting the machine to a wired LAN, make sure that the connectors of the LAN cable are firmly inserted into the ports (**©Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 185)**).

0X7U-031

Setting IPv4 Address

1 Press ▶ (□☑).

🤰 Use 🔺 / ▼ to select <Network>, and press 🔤.

• When a message appears, press 🕅.

3 Select <TCP/IP Settings> > <IPv4 Settings> > <IP Mode>.

4 Configure IP address settings.



🔁 <Auto>

Select to automatically assign an IP address via a protocol such as DHCP.

🜔 <Manual>

Select to configure the IP address settings by manually entering an IP address.

Automatically assigning an IP address

1 Select <Auto>, and press 🚾.

IP Mode	
Auto	
Manual	

2 Select <Protocol>, and press 🔤.

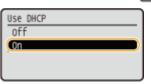
IPv4 Settings	
IPv4	
IP Mode	
(Protocol	
Auto IP	L)

3 Select <Use DHCP>, <Use BOOTP>, or <Use RARP>, and press **a**.

• You can use only one of the protocols DHCP, BOOTP, and RARP. If the selected protocol is set to <On>, the other two protocols are automatically set to <Off>.

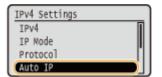
Prote	ocol	
Use	DHCP	
Use	BOOTP	
Use	RARP	

4 Select <On>, and press **a**.



5 Press 🕤.

6 Select <Auto IP>, and press 🚾.



7 Select <On>, and press 🚾.

Auto	IP		
off			
On			

NOTE:

When using DHCP

If you turn OFF the power and ON again, an IP address differing from the current one will be assigned. This may disable printing. To use DHCP, specify one of the following settings after consulting the network administrator.

- Configuring the DNS Dynamic Update Function **Configuring DNS(P. 220)**
- Specifying Settings for the DHCP Server to Constantly Assign the Same IP Address

If you do not want to use DHCP/BOOTP/RARP to assign an IP address

 Set all the protocols to <Off>. If you set <Use DHCP>, <Use BOOTP>, or <Use RARP> to <On> when the DHCP/BOOTP/RARP servers are unavailable, the machine will waste time and communication resources in searching the network for available services.

IP addresses that are given precedence

• IP addresses assigned via DHCP/BOOTP/RARP override the address obtained via Auto IP.

Manually entering an IP address

1 Select <Manual>, and press 🔤.

IP Mode	
Auto	
Manual	

2 Select <IP Address Settings>, and press

IPv4 Settings	
IPv4	П
IP Mode	
(IP Address Settings	
DNS	

- 3 Specify the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address (or default gateway).
 - Select the item to set, press 🚾 , enter an address, and press 🚾 .

IP Address Settings	IP Address 192.168.123.12
Subnet Mask	192,100,123,14
Gateway Address	(fix : OK key)

NOTE:

How to enter addresses

Use
 to move to the target field (a period-delimited input area), and use the numeric keys to increase/decrease the value.

When you are unsure of the IP address to input

• The IP address can be determined from the router settings of the network. **Determining the IP** Address to Assign to the Machine(P. 190)

5 Perform a hard reset. **O**Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Checking whether the settings are correct

• Make sure that the Remote UI screen can be displayed with your computer. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**

If you have changed the IP address after installing the printer driver

• By following the procedure for changing the standard TCP/IP port described in the "Printer Driver Installation Guide", specify the port to use again.

Determining the IP Address to Assign to the Machine

When you want to use a fixed IP address for the machine, you can determine the IP address as shown below.

To Determine the IP Address

An IP address consists of four numbers delimited by a period (.) (example: 192.168.1.45). Each number must be in the range from 0 to 255. In general, set the first three numbers to be the same as those for the router because they are common in the network. Determine the last number (for example, 45 in 192.168.1.45) that is different from that for other devices.



Numbers that are common in the network Nmuber that is unique to each device

Checking the Router Settings

When you want to use a fixed IP address, check the settings of the DHCP that functions to automatically assign an IP address in a network. To avoid duplication of the IP address, you need to set an IP address outside the range of IP addresses assigned by DHCP. Since a router often functions as a DHCP server, check the router settings.

NOTE

- For how to display the setting screen of the router, see the instruction manual of your router.
- Display the setting screen of the router.

2 Check the range of IP addresses assigned by DHCP.

• The range of IP addresses assigned by DHCP is set according to your router.

Example DHCP setting screen of the router:

Router
HOME LAN
LAN Settings
Dynamic IP Address 192.168.11.2 up to 64 Addresses
Configure

3 Determine the IP address of the machine.

• In the example screen shown in step 2, assign an IP address in the range of 192.168.11.66 to 192.168.11.254 to the machine because an IP address that the router assigns by DHCP is in the range of 192.168.11.2 to 192.168.11.65.

LINKS

Setting IPv6 Addresses(P. 192)
Network Status Print(P. 536)
Configuring WINS(P. 226)

Setting IPv6 Addresses



The IPv6 addresses of the machine can be configured via the Remote UI. Before setting IPv6 addresses, check the IPv4 address settings (**Setting IPv4 Address(P. 188)**). You need to set the correct IPv4 settings to use IPv6 addresses. The machine can use up to seven of the following IPv6 addresses:

0X7U-032

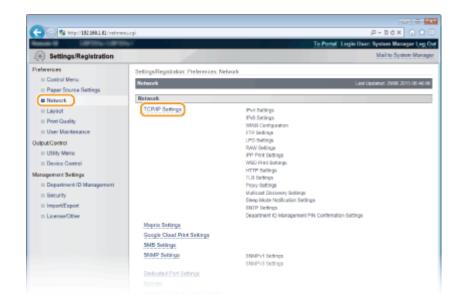
Туре	Maximum number available	Description
Link-local address	1	An address that is only valid within a subnet or link and cannot be used to communicate with devices beyond a router. A link-local address is automatically set when the IPv6 function of the machine is enabled.
Manual address	1	An address that is entered manually. When using this address, specify the prefix length and default router address.
Stateless address	4	An address that is generated automatically using the MAC address of the machine and the network prefix that is advertised by the router. Stateless addresses are discarded when the machine is restarted (or turned ON).
Stateful address	1	An address obtained from a DHCP server using DHCPv6.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

		Device Nat Product Na Location:	ne (Serial No.):	Carried and Constants		Login User: System N	anager Log
👌 Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: English	 P Mail to S 	ysten Mana
				Lant Updatest: 06/07 20	HS-01:51:40 🙇	Status Monitos/Cancel	6
Device Basic Informa	tion						\vee
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	(V
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						50
Error Information							
There is no error.						Besic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				





4 Click [Edit] in [IPv6 Settings].

-			
CO Skip//182.068.1.81/vettopip.cs	pi		P-16X 0 008
Research Lawrence Converse			To Portal Login User: System Menager Log Out
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration Preferences Netw	ork > TCP/IP Settings	
Control Menu	TCPIP Settings		Last Updated: 29/06 2015 00:40:42
B Paper Source Settings	IPvI Settings		
Network	irve seconde		
= Layout			Edt
Print Quality	P Address Settings		
User Maintenance	Use Pot	On	
Output/Control	Select Protocol:	07	
= Utility Mens	Use Auto IP	07	
III Device Control	P Address	192, 168, 1, 81	
Management Sellings	Subnet Mask:	255,255,255,0	
Department ID Management	Gateway Address	192.168.1.1	
= Security	DNS Settings		
E ImportiExport E License/Other	Primary DNS Server Address:	192, 168, 1, 5	
D License Other	Secondary DNS Server Address	202.234.232.6	
	Host Name:	CanonDDCD34	
	Domain Name:	modern.local	
	DNS Dynamic Update:	01	
	mDNS Settings		
	Use mDNS:	On	
	mDNS Name:	Canon	
	DHCP Option Settings		
	Acquire Host Name:	On	
	DNS Dynamic Update:	07	
	IPv6 Settings		
			Est.
	IP Address Settings		
	Use IPv6:	Off	

5 Select the [Use IPv6] check box and configure the required settings.

			8
🗲 💿 😵 http://182.068.1.81/vetipv6	cg/PCSUT+ (1311795228	X 51 - Q	
haded implying	6/	To Portal Login User: System Manager L	
(+) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Me	ringer
relerences	Settings/Registration Preferences: Ne	hvork > TCP/IP Settings > Edit IPv6 Settings	
ID Control Menu	Edit IPv6 Settings	Last Updated: 23/06 2015 00-4	47:17
© Paper Source Settings	The settings will be changed as follo	ws. (Changes effective after the main power is turned OFF and ON.)	
Network		OK Car	-
 Layout Print Quality 			_
User Maintenance	IPv6 Settings		
dout/Control	IP Address Settings		
Utility Menu	Use IPv6		
II Device Control	Link-Local Address:		
anagement Settings	Prefix Length:		
II Department ID Management	Use Stateless Address		
Security	Use Manual Address		
© ImportiExport	IP Address:		
III License/Other	Prefix Length:	64 (0-128)	
	Default Router Address:		
	E Use DHCPv6		
	Statetul Address:		
	Prefix Longth:		
	DNS Settings		
	Primary DNS Server Address:		

[Use IPv6]

Select the check box to enable IPv6 on the machine. When not using IPv6, clear the check box.

[Use Stateless Address]

Select the check box when using a stateless address. When not using a stateless address, clear the check box.

[Use Manual Address]

When you want to manually enter an IPv6 address, select the check box and enter the IP address, prefix length, and default router address in the corresponding text boxes.

[IP Address]

Enter an IPv6 address. You cannot enter an address that starts with "ff" (or multicast address), the address of "0000::0000" (all zeros), or an address that starts with "0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0."

[Prefix Length]

Enter a number that indicates how many bits are available for the network address.

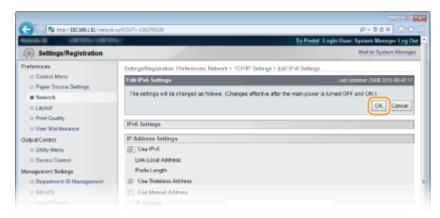
[Default Router Address]

Specify the IPv6 address of the default router as necessary. You cannot enter an address that starts with "ff" (or multicast address), the address of "0000::0000" (all zeros), or an address that starts with "0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0;0;0] "0:0:0:0:0:0:0."

[Use DHCPv6]

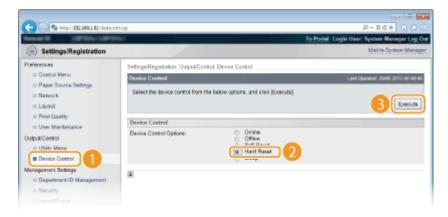
Select the check box when using a stateful address. When not using DHCPv6, clear the check box.

6 Click [OK].



7 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Checking whether the settings are correct

 Make sure that the Remote UI screen can be displayed with your computer by using the IPv6 address of the machine. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

Selecting settings from the operation panel

• You can also enable or disable IPv6 addresses from the setting menu of the operation panel. **©IPv6** Settings(P. 378)

If you changed the IP address after installing the printer driver

• By following the procedure for changing the standard TCP/IP port described in the "Printer Driver Installation Guide", specify the port to use again.

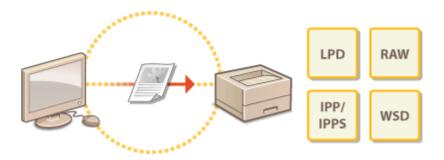
LINKS

Setting IPv4 Address(P. 188)
 Network Status Print(P. 536)

Configuring the Machine for Printing from a Computer

0X7U-033

When using the machine as a network printer, you can configure the protocols and ports used for printing and create a print server for the machine. Before configuring the machine for printing from a computer, perform the basic setup procedures, including the printer driver installation.For more information, see the Printer Driver Installation Guide.



NOTE

- Printing protocols are rules for delivering document data created on a computer to the machine, and can be selected according to the printing purpose or the network environment.
- Ports are gateways for passing document data from a computer to the printer. Incorrect port settings are often the cause when documents cannot be printed from a network computer.

Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions

0X7U-034

Configure the protocols that are used for printing documents from a networked computer. The protocols supported by the machine include LPD, RAW, IPP/IPPS, WSD (Web Services on Devices), and FTP. This section describes the settings of LPD, RAW, IPP/IPPS, and WSD. To use FTP, see **Ousing FTP Clients(P. 601)**.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

Click [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings].

3

0 8 http://1824	68.1.81.0000/pp/ports	egiPCSUT-138	8078029			,P + 1	idx n tr
		Device Nat Product Na Location:	re: me (Soriel No.):			Login User: System	n Manager Log
🔒 Remote UI: Po	etal			L	ingunger English	• @ Mai	to System Mana
				Last Updated: 06/07 2015	0K15130	Status Monitor/Cancel	6
Device Basic Informa	tion						V
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	(V
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						47
Error Information							
There is no error.						Beak: Toola	
Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

1.83 < 3 ktp://182.068.1.81/netw P-Idx (Settings/Registration Preferences Settings/Registration: Preferences: Network II Control Menu Network Paper Source Setti Network B Network TCP/IP Settings Pvi Setings Pvi Setings I Layout B Print Quality WINSI Configurat FTP Sodings LPD Bellings = User Maintenance Output/Centrol RAW Settings IPP Print Detlings = Utility Menu II Device Control WSD Print Setting HTTP: Settings Management Settings US Settings Depart nt ID M hory Settings Valicant Discovery Settings Sleep Mode Notification Settings = Security ii ImportiExport NTP Settings Department ID Management PIN Confirmation Settings In License/Other Mopria Settings Google Cloud Print Settings SNB Settings SNMP Settings SNMPV1 Settings SNMPV3 Settings Dedicated Part Settings

4 Configure printing protocols.

Configuring LPD settings

1 Click [Edit] in [LPD Settings].

Display Settings for FTP Print Jo	ob Narne	
Use UTF-8 to Display Name of FT	Print Job: Off	
FTP Settings		
Allow Setting via FTP.	on	
LPD Settings		
C O Mango		[64L.]
Use LPD Printing:	0n	
Print LPD Banner Page:	08	
RX Timeout	60 min.	
RAW Settings		
		Edt
Due RAW Printing:		

2 Configure the settings as necessary.

-				
C 8 http://182.068.1.81/vet/pd-	g/PCSU/T=-429388018			P+86X 0 ☆ 0
Restaux Literature	60 C		To Postal Login U	ser: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manager
Preferences	SettingsRegistration: Preferences: Ne	twork > TCPVIP Setting	s > Edit UPD Settings	
Control Menu Paper Source Settings	Edit LPD Settings			1 Updated: 29/06 2015 06 51 00
B Network	The settings will be changed as follo	vs. (Changes effective	after the main power is turned OFF	OK Cancel
Elayout Print Quality User Maintesance Output/Control	LPD Settings			OK Canta
III Utility Menu III Device Control	Print LPD Banner Page RX Timeout:	60	min. (1-60)	
Management Settings © Department ID Maxagement © Security	×			

[Use LPD Printing]

When using LPD for printing, select the check box. When not using, clear the check box.

[Print LPD Banner Page]

Select the check box to include the information such as user names and file names on printouts. When not printing the information, clear the check box.

[RX Timeout]

Set the time period after which the print job automatically ends when print data cannot be received due to a communication error or some other problem.

Click [OK].

Configuring RAW settings

1 Click [Edit] in [RAW Settings].

		Edt.
Use LPD Printing:	On	
Print LPD Banner Page:	Off	
RX Timoout	60 min.	
RAW Settings		Edt
Use RAW Printing	On	<u> </u>
Use Bidirectional Communication	on	
RX Timeout	60 min.	
IPP Print Sottings		
		Edit

2 Configure the settings as necessary.

-				
C 8 http://182.068.1.81/netros/	cp?CSU?=-189457103			P-86× 0 0 0 8
Bank (INTELLET	ner.		To Postal Log	in User: System Manager Log Ou
(Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration Preferences I	Vetwork > TCPVIP Setting	s > Edit RAW Settings	
Control Menu	Edit RAW Settings			Lant Updated: 29/06 2015 06 52:00
Paper Source Settings Network	The settings will be changed as fo	lows. (Changes offective	after the main power is turned	OFF and ON.)
= Layout				OK Cancel
E Print Quality	RAW Settings			
III User Maintenance	Use RAW Printing			
Output/Centrol				
Utility Menu	Use Bidirectional Community			
II Device Control	ROC Timeout:	60 60)	min. (1-	
Management Settings				
II Department ID Management	×			
= Security				

[Use RAW Printing]

When using RAW for printing, select the check box. When not using, clear the check box.

[Use Bidirectional Communication]

When using bidirectional communication to notify the computer of machine status and print completion, select the check box. When not using, clear the check box.

[RX Timeout]

Set the time period after which the print job automatically ends when print data cannot be received due to a communication error or some other problem.

3 Click [OK].

Configuring IPP/IPPS settings

1 Click [Edit] in [IPP Print Settings].

RX Timeout	60 min.	
IPP Print Sottings		
		Edt.
Use IPP Printing:	On	
TLS:	0#	
IPP Authentication:	0#	
User Name:	guest	
Paraword	Bet	
WSD Print Settings		
		Edit
Use WSD Printing:	08	
Use WSD Browsing	0//	
Use Multicast Discovery:	0/7	

2 Configure the settings as necessary.

Settings/Registration	aginCSUT=78204882		P = B C X P = B C X To Postel Login User: System Monager L Mailto Spatem M
Preferences © Costol Menu © Paper Source Settings ■ Network © Layout © Pref Quality	Sellings/Registration: Pheterences, Netwo Edit IPP Print Settings The settings will be changed as follows The settings in this screen will also be a	. (Changes offective after the mai	Last Updated 25406 2015 00
User Mantenance Output/Control Utility Mene Device Control Management Settings Department ID Management Settings Userport	IPP Print Settings Use IPP Panting Use TLS Use IPP Aufwritization User Name Set/Change Password Password:	puest	(Mas 24 characters)
□ License/Other	Confere:		(Max 24 charanters) Desynght CANCIN IN

[Use IPP Printing]

When using IPP/IPPS for printing, select the check box. When not using, clear the check box.

[Use TLS]

When using IPPS (IPP Print with TLS encrypted communication), select the check box. When not using, clear the check box.

IMPORTANT:

When using IPPS, enable the TLS encrypted communication function. **Ousing TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)**

[Use IPP Authentication]

When using the user authentication function for IPP Print, select the check box and set the user name and password. When not using, clear the check box.

[User Name]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the user name used in IPP authentication.

[Set/Change Password]

To set or change the password, select the check box and enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the password in the [Password] text box. For confirmation, enter the same password in the [Confirm] text box.

Click [OK].

Configuring WSD settings

1 Click [Edit] in [WSD Print Settings].

IPP Authentication:	07		
User Name:	guest		
Pareword	Set.		
WSD Print Settings			a 11
The stand stands		Edu	5
		Lar	J
Use WSD Printing:	08		
Use WSD Browsing:	08		
Use Multicast Discovery:	08		
HTTP Settings			1 2
		Edit	7
			-
Use HTTP:	On		

2 Configure the settings as necessary.

C 8 http://182.068.1.81/network	cg/FC9UT=-1001739788	,P+86X 6 습 🕀
Bank B STOLET	¥	To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preferences: Network >	TCP/IP Settings > Edit WSD Print Settings
Costrol Menu Paper Source Settings	Edit WSD Print Settings	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 00 54 33
Network	The settings will be changed as follows. (Ch	anges offective after the main power is turned OFF and ON.)
III Layout		OK Caneel
Print Quality User Maintenance	WSD Print Sottings	
Output/Centrol	Use WSD Printing	
= Utility Menu	Use WSD Browsing	
II Device Control	Use Multicast Discovery	
Management Settings	a la	
Department ID Management		
= Security		

[Use WSD Printing]

When using WSD for printing, select the check box. When not using, clear the check box.

[Use WSD Browsing]

Select the check box to obtain information about the machine from a computer via WSD. This check box is automatically selected when the [Use WSD Printing] check box is selected.

[Use Multicast Discovery]

Select the check box to set the machine to reply to multicast discovery messages. If the check box is cleared, the machine stays in sleep mode even when multicast discovery messages are flowing on the network.

Click [OK].

5 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].

C 84 http://182.068.1.81/federet	rlegi	P+26X 0 ☆ 0
Research Lawrence Conversion		To Postel Login User: System Manager Log Out
(A) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Output/Control: Device Control	
Control Menu	Device Control	Lant Updated: 25/06 2015 00:48:46
II Paper Source Settings II Network II Layout	Select the device control from the below options, and click [Execute].	3 Entre
Print Quality	Device Control	
User Maintenance Output/Control Utility Mene Denics Control	Device Control Options: Online Control)
Management Settings © Department ID Management © Security	ж	

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Using the operation panel

• You can also enable or disable LPD print, RAW print, and IPP print from the setting menu of the operation panel.

LPD Settings(P. 380)
RAW Settings(P. 380)
IPP Print(P. 381)

• WSD settings can also be accessed from the setting menu of the operation panel. **OWSD(P. 381)**

Setup procedures on your computer

After the setting in the machine is completed, you may need to configure settings or install applications on your computer as well. Configure settings in your computer as necessary.

• Configuring printer ports

Printing errors can occur when the IP address of the machine has been changed, or when a printer has been added via the Windows printer folder. These errors are typically caused by incorrect printer port settings. For example, an incorrect port number or port type may have been specified in the computer. To fix this type of problem, configure the printer port settings by following the procedure for changing the standard TCP/IP port described in the "Printer Driver Installation Guide".

• Setting up WSD network devices on Windows Vista/7/8

Install the printer driver by following the procedure for installation with the WSD port described in the "Printer Driver Installation Guide".

• Enabling IPP/IPPS Install the printer drivers by specifying the IPP port. **CEnabling IPP/IPPS(P. 203)**

LINKS

Setting Up Print Server(P. 212)

Enabling IPP/IPPS

0X7U-035

To set the printing protocol to IPP or IPPS, install the printer driver by using the procedure shown below that suits the operating system of your computer.

If Using Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012(P. 203)
 If Using Windows Server 2003(P. 209)

IMPORTANT

• To perform the following procedure, log on to your computer with an administrator account.

NOTE

Configure the IPP print settings by using the Remote UI before staring the procedure.
 Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions(P. 197)

If Using Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012

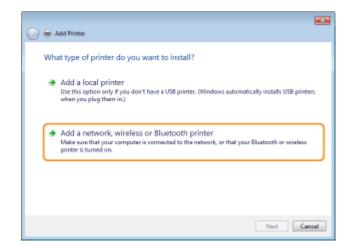
Installing the printer driver requires the User Software DVD-ROM. Insert the User Software DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer before starting the procedure.

NOTE

• Close the setup screen that is displayed when the DVD-ROM is inserted.

1 Open the Printer Folder. **O**Displaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)

- **2** Click [Add a printer].
- **3** Click [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer].



4 Click [The printer that I want isn't listed].

🄰 🖶 Add Printer	
Searching for available pri	inters
Printer Name	Address
	Stop
The printer that I wan	t isn't listed
	Next Cancel

- **5** Select [Select a shared printer by name], enter a connection destination, and click [Next].
 - To use IPP, enter "http://<IP address of the machine>/ipp" for the connection destination. **Example:** http://192.168.1.81/ipp
 - To use IPPS, enter "https://<IP address of the machine>/ipp" for the connection destination. **Example:** https://192.168.1.81/ipp

@	
🚱 🖶 Add Printer	
Find a printer by name or TCP/IP address	
Browse for a printer	
Select a shared printer by name	
http://192.168.1.81/ipp	Browse
Example: \\computername\printername or http://computername/printers/printername/.printer	
Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname	
	Nest Cancel

IMPORTANT:

• When you are using a DNS server, enter "<host name of the machine>.<domain name>" instead of "IP address of the machine" (example: https://my_printer.example.com/ipp).

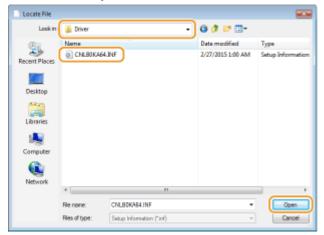
6 Click [Have Disk].

an installation	sufacturer and model of your printer. If your p disk, olick Have Disk, if your printer is not lie intation for a compatible printer.	
Manufacturer	* Printers	
Bother	Bother DCP-119C	
Canon	Bother DCP-117C	
Epeon	Bother DCP-128C	
Fuji Xerox	Bother DCP-129C	
Genetic	* Rother DCP-110C	-
👔 This driver is digital		Have Disk
Tell me why driver of	ionino is important	There eren

7 Click [Browse].



8 Specify the folder where the printer drivers are contained, select the INF file, and then click [Open].



 Specify the folder as shown below according to the operating system of your computer. If you are not sure whether the operating system of your computer is a 32-bit or 64-bit version, see Checking the Bit Architecture(P. 618).

32-bit operating systems
Select [UFR II]-your language-[32BIT]-[Driver] folder on the User Software DVD-ROM.
64-bit operating systems

Select [UFR II]-your language-[x64]-[Driver] folder on the User Software DVD-ROM.

NOTE:

If using the IPP authentication function

When you are prompted to enter the password, enter the user name and password, and click [OK].
 Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions(P. 197)

9 Proceed with the setting procedure by following the on-screen instructions.

The printer driver is installed. To use IPPS, install public keys of the machine in the computer.

Installing Public Keys of the Machine

Using IPPS additionally requires installing the public keys of the machine on the computer.

IMPORTANT

The [Common Name] of key pairs must be set in advance to be the "IP address" or "<host name>.<domain name>" used when connecting to the machine. SGenerating Key Pairs(P. 317)

1 Start the Web browser.

2 Enter "https://<IP address of the machine>/" in the address field, and press the [ENTER] key.

• Example: https://192.168.1.81/

IMPORTANT:

• When you are using a DNS server, enter "<host name of the machine>.<domain name>" instead of "IP address of the machine" (example: https://my_printer.example.com/).

3 Click [Continue to this website (not recommended).].

4 Click [Tools] ► [Internet options].

							- B 💼
(-) (-) (-) (-) (-) (-) (-) (-) (-) (-)	4/3/sps/topin.ogi			Q	- 🔷 Certificate	ener E G X	
Bit Lift You Sports To	A Belg						
In In 2m point	Delete treveling history Individual Execution Actival Retrieved Diagnose connection pethiems Recept late trevel Add Setes Det menu View downlands	Cerl+Shite=Del Cerl+Shite=P Cerl+S	English				
	Pop-up Blocker SmartSoven Filter Manage etht-om Competibility View Competibility View settings Subscribe to this feed			Copyright CA	Log In NON INC. 2015		
C	Feed distovery Windows Update F12 developer took Internet options						

5 Select [Trusted Sites] in the [Security] tab, and click [Sites].



6 Make sure that "https://<IP address of the machine> or <host name of the machine>.<domain name>/" is displayed, and click [Add] ▶ [Close].



7 Clear the [Enable Protected Mode (requires restarting Internet Explorer)] check box when it is selected.



8 Click [OK].

The screen returns to the Remote UI screen.

9 Exit the Web browser.

10 Repeat steps 1 to 3 to start the Remote UI.

11 Click [Certificate error] > [View certificates] in the right of the address field.

🔿 💁 Masil 1812/84148134-3) ya Toginogi		P Cettilicate Invalid
Санон	Login Language: Management Mode Persvord	The pecuality cettificate presented by this website has errors. This problem might indicate an attempt to find the provident might indicate an attempt to the provident and the provident and the provident and the provident attempt to be atte
P	General User Mode Remote ULAzcess PIN:	View cetificite Log In Copyright CANON INC. 2015

12 Click [Install Certificate].

13 Click [Next].

14 Select [Place all certificates in the following store] and click [Browse].



- **15** Select [Trusted Root Certification Authorities], and follow the on-screen instructions to complete the certificate import wizard.
- **16** If you have cleared the [Enable Protected Mode (requires restarting Internet Explorer)] check box in step 7, select the check box.



If Using Windows Server 2003

Installing the printer drivers requires the User Software DVD-ROM. Insert the User Software DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer before starting the procedure.

NOTE

• Close the setup screen that is displayed when the DVD-ROM is inserted.

1 Open the Printer Folder. **O**Displaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)

2 Double-click [Add Printer].

3 Click [Next].



4 Select [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer] and click [Next].



5 Select [Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:], enter the connection destination, and click [Next].

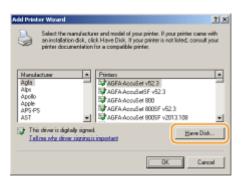
- To use IPP, enter "http://<IP address of the machine>/ipp" for the connection destination. **Example:** http://192.168.1.81/ipp
- To use IPPS, enter "https://<IP address of the machine>/ipp" for the connection destination. **Example:** https://192.168.1.81/ipp



IMPORTANT:

• When you are using a DNS server, enter "<host name of the machine>.<domain name>" instead of "IP address of the machine" (example: https://my_printer.example.com/ipp).

6 Click [Have Disk].



7 Click [Browse].



8 Specify the folder where the printer drivers are contained, select the INF file, and then click [Open].

Locate File					? ×
Look ja 🜔) Driver		••••	t 🗈 🗔 🕯	
(MONBOK 3	VF)				
					_
					_
					_
					_
					_
File pare:			-		
	CNLBOKJNF	 	•		_
Files of type:	Setup Information (".ini)		y.	Lan	

• Specify the folder as shown below according to the operating system of your computer.

32-bit operating systems
Select [UFR II]-your language-[32BIT]-[Driver] folder on the User Software DVD-ROM.
64-bit operating systems
Select [UFR II]-your language-[x64]-[Driver] folder on the User Software DVD-ROM.

NOTE:

If using the IPP authentication function

When you are prompted to enter the password, enter the user name and password, and click [OK].
 Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions(P. 197)

9 Proceed with the setting procedure by following the on-screen instructions.

The printer driver is installed and you can print via IPP/IPPS.

LINKS

Setting Up Print Server(P. 212)

Setting Up Print Server

0X7U-036

With a print server, you can reduce the load on the computer that you print from. The print server also enables each computer to install printer drivers over the network, which saves you the trouble of installing printer drivers on each computer by using the DVD-ROM. To set up a computer on the network as a print server, configure the settings for sharing the printer.

IMPORTANT

- To perform the following procedure, log on to your computer with an administrator account.
- You may be unable to install printer drivers over the network depending on the operating system and the bit architecture (32-bit or 64-bit) of the print server and client computers.
- When implementing a print server in a domain environment, consult your Network Administrator.

NOTE

To carry out Department ID Management when using a print server

• Canon Driver Information Assist Service must be added during the printer driver installation. For more information, see the Printer Driver Installation Guide.

1 Open the printer folder. ODisplaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)

2 Right-click your printer icon and click [Printer properties] or [Properties].

COO to Control Panel + Hardware and Sound + Devices and Printers + 4	 Search Devices P
File Edit View Tools Help	
Add a device Add a printer See what's printing Print server properties Remove device	2 · 0
> Devices (3)	
Printers and Faxes (3)	
the the second	
Canon Fax Microsoft 305	
UFR B See what's printing	
Set as default printer	
Printing preferences	
Printer properties	
Create shortcut	
Troubleshoot	
Remove device	
Properties	
Canon UFR I State: 🧐 Default Statu: 0 document(s) in queue	
Model: Canon UFR II Category: Printer	
Chirgon, Pitter	

3 Click the [Sharing] tab, select [Share this printer], and enter the share name of the machine.

Genes Profig ets. Advanced Calor Management. Security Device Settings Profile Image: Security of the securety of the security of the security of the
and password for this computer can print to it. The printer will not be available when the computer sleeps. To change these settings, use the <u>Network and Sharing Center</u> .
Render print jobs on client computers
Drivers If this printer is shared with users running different versions of Windows, you may want to install additional drivers, so that the users do not have to find the print driver when they connect to the shared printer.

NOTE:

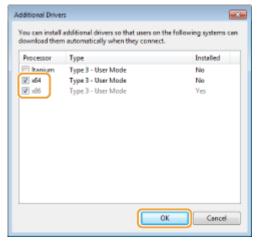
When [Change Sharing Options] is displayed

• Click [Change Sharing Options].

👼 Canon UFR II Propert	ies				
General Sharing Ports Advance	d Color Management Security Dev				
If you share this printer, only users on your network with a and password for this computer can print to it. The printer be available when the computer sleeps. To change these so use the <u>Network and Sharing Center</u>					
😵 Change Sharing Options]				
Share this printer	•				
Share name:					
Render print jobs on client	computers				

4 Install additional drivers as necessary.

- This operation is required if you want to install printer drivers in other computers running a different bit architecture via the print server.
- 1 Click [Additional Drivers].
- 2 Select the check box for the bit architecture that other computers are running, and click [OK].



• Select additional drivers from the following, according to the operating system of the print server.

Print server	Select the check box for
32-bit operating systems	[x64]
64-bit operating systems	 Windows Server 2003 [Windows 2000, Windows XP and Windows Server 2003] under [Version] Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012 [x86] under [Processor]

NOTE:

- If you do not know whether your Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012 is a 32-bit or 64-bit operating system, see **Checking the Bit Architecture(P. 618)**.
- 3 Insert the User Software DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer, and click [Browse].
- 4 Specify the folder that contains additional drivers, select the INF file, and then click [Open].

🦏 Locate File					
Look in	🕌 Driver		•	G 👂 📂 📴 -	
(Fig.	Neme		_	Dete modified	Туре
Recent Places	CNLBOKA64	INF		2/27/2015 1:00 AM	Setup Information
Desktop					
Libraries					
Market Computer					
Network					
	*		11		•
	Rename:	CNLB0KA64.INF		•	Open
	Files of type:	*ad;tan_		*	Cancel

• Select the folder as shown below according to the operating system of the print server.

If the print server runs a 32-bit operating system

Select [UFR II]-your language-[x64]-[Driver] folder on the User Software DVD-ROM.

If the print server runs a 64-bit operating system

Select [UFR II]-your language-[32BIT]-[Driver] folder on the User Software DVD-ROM.

5 Click [OK].

Installation of the additional drivers starts. Wait until the [Sharing] tab is displayed back.

NOTE:

When [User Account Control] is displayed

• Click [Yes].



Installing Printer Drivers on a Computer via the Print Server

- **1** Locate the shared printer in the print server. ODisplaying Shared Printers in the Print Server(P. 616)
- **2** Double-click the shared printer.
- **3** Follow the on-screen instructions to install the printer drivers.

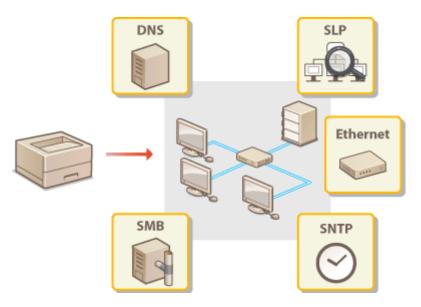
LINKS

OPrinting from a Computer(P. 76)

Configuring the Machine for Your Network Environment

0X7U-037

The configuration of a network varies depending on the purpose of the network. The machine has been designed to be compatible with as many network configurations as possible, and it is equipped with a variety of technologies. Consult your Network Administrator and set a configuration to suit your network environment.



Configuring Ethernet Settings

Ethernet

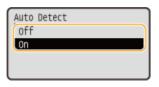
Ethernet is a standard for communicating data in a local area network (LAN). You can set the communication mode (half-duplex/full-duplex) and the Ethernet type (10BASE-T/ 100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T). In general, the machine can be used without changing the defaults (**Cethernet Driver(P. 391)**), but you can change these settings to suit your network environment.

0X7U-038

1 Press ▶ (□☑).

- 🤰 Use 🔺 / ▼ to select <Network>, and press 🔤.
- When a message appears, press 🔯.
- 3 Select <Ethernet Driver> > <Auto Detect>.

4 Select whether to configure Ethernet settings automatically or manually.



Configuring Ethernet settings automatically

Select <On> and press and press and automatically sets the communication mode and the Ethernet type that can be used.

Configuring Ethernet settings manually

- 1 Select <Off>, and press 💽.
- 2 Select the communication mode.
 - Select <Communication Mode> > main > Select <Half Duplex> or <Full Duplex> > main and select <Half Duplex> > main and select > main and

Ethernet Driver Auto Detect Communication Node Ethernet Type		Communication Mode Half Duplex C Full Duplex C	- 0
---	--	--	------------

60 <Half Duplex>

Alternately sends and receives communication data. Select when the machine is connected to a networking device using half duplex.

🜔 <Full Duplex>

Simultaneously sends and receives communication data. Use this setting for most environments.

3 Select the Ethernet type.

Select <Ethernet Type> ► ■ ► Select the Ethernet type ► ■
Ethernet Driver
Auto Detect
Communication Mode
Ethernet Type

NOTE:

• When you select <1000 Base-T>, the setting for <Communication Mode> is changed to <Full Duplex>.

5 Perform a hard reset. **O**Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

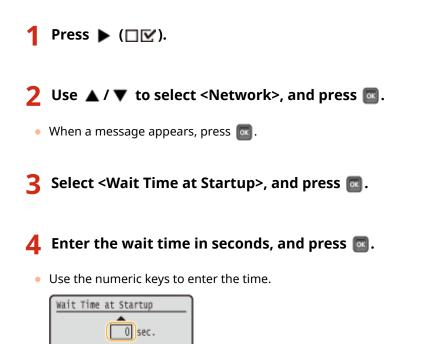
LINKS

Setting a Wait Time for Connecting to a Network(P. 219)

Setting a Wait Time for Connecting to a Network

0X7U-039

When a network is designed to enjoy redundant connectivity with multiple switching hubs or bridges, it must have a mechanism to prevent packets from looping. One effective solution is to define the role of each switch port. However, communication may still be disrupted for several tens of seconds immediately after you change the way that network devices are connected, or if you add a new device. If this type of problem occurs, set a wait time for connecting to the network.



5 Perform a hard reset. **O**Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

LINKS

Configuring Ethernet Settings(P. 217)

(0 - 300)

Configuring DNS

0X7U-03A

DNS (Domain Name System) provides a service for name resolution that associates a host (or domain) name with an IP address. Configure the DNS, mDNS or DHCP option settings as necessary. Note that the procedures for configuring DNS are different for IPv4 and IPv6.

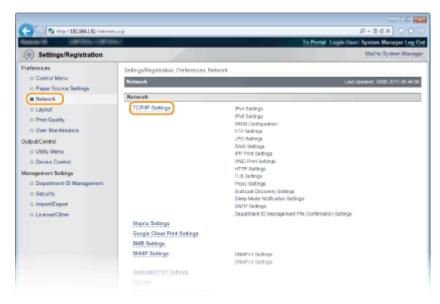


1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

		Device Nar		Larada		Login User: System	Manager Log
		Product Na Location:	me (Seriel No.):				
👌 Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: English	- D Mail to	System Mana
				Lanf Updated: 06/07 20	15-01:51:40 📓	Status Monitos/Cancel	6
levice Basic Informa	ation						V
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	(V
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						5
Error information							
There is no error.						Besic Tools	
onsumables inform	ation					Вак	3
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

3 Click [Network] ► [TCP/IP Settings].



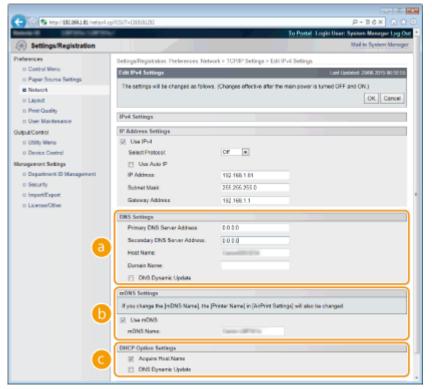
4 Configure DNS settings.

Configuring IPv4 DNS

1 Click [Edit] in [IPv4 Settings].

-			
🗲 💿 😵 http://182.068.1.81/vettopis	P-86X 0 ℃ 3		
Annald Internation	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out		
(A) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preferences: Net	work > TCP/IP Settings	
 Control Menu Paper Source Settings 	TCPIP Settings		Last Lipitatech 2906 2015 05:50:24
B Network	IPv4 Settings		
I Layout			Eat
 Print Quality User Maintenance 	P Address Settings		
	Use Pvt	On	
Output/Control	Select Protocol:	08	
Utility Menu	Use Auto IP	08	
El Device Control	IP Address:	192.168.1.81	
Management Sellings	Subnet Mask:	256 255 255 0	
Department ID Management	Gateway Address	192,168,1,1	
a Security	DNS Settings		
	and the second second second		

2 Configure IPv4 DNS settings.



[DNS Settings]

[Primary DNS Server Address]

Enter the IP address of a DNS server. You can also set the IP address from the operation panel (**D IPv4 Settings(P. 375)**).

[Secondary DNS Server Address]

Enter the IP address of a secondary DNS server, if any. You can also set the IP address from the operation panel (**>IPv4 Settings(P. 375)**).

[Host Name]

Enter up to 47 alphanumeric characters for the host name of the machine that is to be registered to the DNS server.

[Domain Name]

Enter up to 47 alphanumeric characters for the name of the domain the machine belongs to, such as "example.com."

[DNS Dynamic Update]

Select the check box to dynamically update the DNS records whenever the machine's IP address is changed.

[mDNS Settings]

[Use mDNS]

Adopted by Bonjour, mDNS (multicast DNS) is a protocol for associating a host name with an IP address without using DNS. Select the check box to enable mDNS and enter the mDNS name in the [mDNS Name] text box using up to 63 characters. This check box can only be selected when the [Use IPv4] check box is selected.

[DHCP Option Settings]

[Acquire Host Name]

Select the check box to enable Option 12 to obtain the host name from the DHCP server. You can also specify whether to obtain a host name from the operation panel (**OIPv4 Settings(P. 375)**).

[DNS Dynamic Update]

Select the check box to enable Option 81 to dynamically update the DNS records through the DHCP server. You can also specify whether to perform DNS dynamic update from the operation panel (**Pv4 Settings(P. 375)**).

[Acquire DNS Server Address]

Select the check box to enable Option 6 to obtain a DNS server address from the DHCP server.

[Acquire Domain Name]

Select the check box to enable Option 15 to obtain a domain name from the DHCP server.

[Acquire WINS Server Address]

Select the check box to enable Option 44 to obtain a WINS server address from the DHCP server.

Click [OK].

-		
🗲 🛞 🚱 http://182.068.1.81/vetipv4	cg/PCSV7+1310381252	P+86× 0 ☆:
Research Streetwooders	1e7	To Postal Login User: System Meneger Log Out
(A) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preference	s. Network > TCP/IP Settings > Edit IPv4 Settings
 Costrol Menu Paper Source Settings 	Edit IPv4 Settings	Last Lipsinted: 25/06 2015 60:50:55
Network	The settings will be changed a	follows. (Changes effective after the main power is turned OFF and ON.)
= Layout		OK Cancel
Print Quality User Maintenance	IPv4 Settings	
Output/Control	IP Address Settings	
 Utility Menu 	Use IPv4	
II Device Control	Select Protocol:	Of x
Management Settings	Use Auto IP	
II Department ID Management	IP Address:	192.100.1.01
a Security	Subnet Mask:	255 255 255 D

Configuring IPv6 DNS

1 Click [Edit] in [IPv6 Settings].

			U 6 8
C- 8 http://182.068.1.81/vettopip.	ngi		P-16× 0 ☆ 0
Research Lawrence Converses	el.		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration Preferences Netw	ork > TCP/IP Settings	
III Control Menu	TCPIP Settings		Last Lipdated: 79406 2015 00:40:42
Paper Source Settings	IPv4 Settings		
Network	ir ve anninge		
= Layout			Edit.
Print Quality	P Address Settings		
User Maintenance	Use Pr4	On	
Output/Control	Select Protocol:	07	
 Utility Menu 	Use Auto IP	07	
II Device Control	IP Address:	192.168.1.81	
Management Settings	Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0	
II Department ID Management	Gateway Address:	192.168.1.1	
 Security 	DNS Settings		
E ImportiExport E License/Other	Primary DNS Server Address:	192, 198, 1, 5	
In Livense Cener	Secondary DNS Server Address	202.234.232.6	
	Host Name:	CanonDDCD34	
	Domain Name:	modern.local	
	DNS Dynamic Update:	017	
	mDNS Settings		
	Use mDNS:	On	
	nDNS Name:	Canon	
	DHCP Option Settings		
	Acquire Host Name:	On	
	DNS Dynamic Update:	017	
	IPv6 Settings		
			Edit
	IP Address Settings		
	Use IPv6:	or	

- 2 Configure IPv6 DNS settings.
 - The [Use IPv6] check box must be selected to configure the settings. Setting IPv6 Addresses(P. 192)

C 0 0 ktp://182.068.1.81/vetipv6.cg	riCSUT=-088445409		P-86× 0 ℃ 8
Print Quality	IPv6 Settings		
User Maintenance	irve settings		
Output/Centrol	IP Address Settings		
= Utility Menu	Use IPv6		
II Device Control	Link-Local Address:		
Management Settings	Prefix Length:		
Department ID Management	Use Stateless Address		
= Security	Use Manual Address		
import/Export	IP Address:		
License/Other	Prefix Longth:	64 (0-128)	
	Default Router Address:		
	Use DHCPv6		
	Stateful Address		
	Prefix Length:		
	DNS Settings		
	Primary DNS Server Address		
	Secondary DNS Server Address		
	Use IPvi Host/Damain Names		
	Host Name	Canadian Can	1
a)			
_	Domain Name:		
	DNS Dynamic Update		
	Register Manual Address		
	Register Stateful Address		
	Register Stateless Address		
	mDNS Settings		
	Use mDNS		
•	Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4		
	mDNS Name:	Carrier (1971) In	
	×		
			Copyright CANON INC. 2015 +

[DNS Settings]

[Primary DNS Server Address]

Enter the IP address of a DNS server. You cannot enter an address that starts with "ff" (or multicast address), the address of "0000::0000" (all zeros), or an address that starts with "0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0".

[Secondary DNS Server Address]

Enter the IP address of a secondary DNS server, if any. You cannot enter an address that starts with "ff" (or multicast address), the address of "0000::0000" (all zeros), or an address that starts with "0:0:0:0:0:0:0ffff" or "0:0:0:0:0:0".

[Use IPv4 Host/Domain Names]

Select the check box to use the same host and domain names as in IPv4.

[Host Name]

Enter up to 47 alphanumeric characters for the host name of the machine that is to be registered to the DNS server.

[Domain Name]

Enter up to 47 alphanumeric characters for the name of the domain the machine belongs to, such as "example.com."

[DNS Dynamic Update]

Select the check box to dynamically update the DNS records whenever the machine's IP address is changed. To specify the type(s) of addresses you want to register to the DNS server, select the check box for [Register Manual Address], [Register Stateful Address], or [Register Stateless Address].

[mDNS Settings]/[DHCP Option Settings]

[Use mDNS]

Adopted by Bonjour, mDNS (multicast DNS) is a protocol for associating a host name with an IP address without using DNS. Select the check box to enable mDNS. This check box can only be selected when the [Use IPv6] check box is selected.

[Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4]

Select the check box to use the same mDNS name as that set in IPv4. To set a different name, clear the check box and enter the mDNS name in the [mDNS Name] text box using up to 63 characters.

[Acquire DNS Server Address]

Select the check box to enable Option 23 to obtain a DNS server address from the DHCP server.

[Acquire Domain Name]

Select the check box to enable Option 24 to obtain a domain name from the DHCP server.

3 Click [OK].



5 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].

0		
C 8 http://182.068.1.81/dodeve	tilogi	P-26X 0 0 0
Reads II		To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Output/Control: Device Control	
ID Costrol Menu ID Paper Source Settings	Device Control	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 05:48 45
III Network III Layout	Select the device control from the below options, and click (Execute),	3 Execute
Print Quality User Maintenance	Device Control	
UtiputControl	Device Control Options: Option CHillion State Down Device CHillion State Down)
Management Settings Bepartment ID Management Becurity Becurity	×	

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

LINKS

Setting IPv4 Address(P. 188)
 Setting IPv6 Addresses(P. 192)
 Network Status Print(P. 536)

Configuring WINS

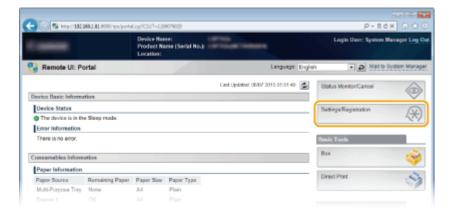
Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) is a name resolution service that associates a NetBIOS name (a computer or printer name in an SMB network) with an IP address. To enable WINS, the WINS server must be specified.

IMPORTANT

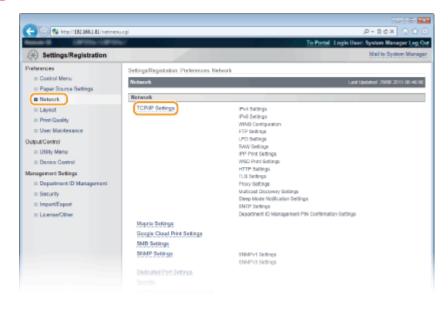
• The function is not available in an IPv6 network.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].



3 Click [Network] ▶ [TCP/IP Settings].



4 Click [Edit] in [WINS Configuration].

C 😪 🕲 http://182.068.1.81/vettcpip.c	pi		P+86× 0 ☆ 0
	WINS Configuration		Edt
	WINS Resolution	08	
	Node Type:	None	
	SMB Server Name:		
	SMB Workgroup Name.	WORKGROUP	
	FTP Settings		
			64L.
	Use FTP Print	on	
	FTP Print User Name:	guest	
	Paueword:	Set	
	Display Settings for FTP Print J	ob Name	

5 Select the [WINS Resolution] check box, specify the required settings, and click [OK].

A		
C 00 http://132.168.1.81/netwine	1	D + B C X ∩ ☆ C To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences Costrol Menu Papar Source Settings Network Layout	Edit WINS Configuration	ietwork > TCP/IP Settings > Edit WINS Configuration Lant Updated 2000 2010 07 00 24 long. (Changes effective after the main power is turned OFF and OK.) OK. Cancel
E Print Gashiy = User Maintenance Output Control = Utility Mone = Denice Control Management SvEings	WINS Configuration WINS Resolution WINS Server Address Node Type: Scape ID.	0.0.0.0 Mane
© Department ID Management © Security © Import/Export © License/Other	SMB Server Name: SMB Workgroup Name:	WORKDROUP
		Copyright CANON INC. 2915

[WINS Resolution]

Select the check box to use WINS for name resolution. When not using WINS, clear the check box.

[WINS Server Address]

Enter the IP address of the WINS server.

IMPORTANT:

• If the IP address of the WINS server is obtained from a DHCP server, the obtained IP address overrides the IP address entered in the [WINS Server Address] text box.

[Scope ID]

When dividing the network into several groups with scope IDs (identifiers for groups of devices in the network), you can enter up to 64 characters depending on the character type. Leave the text box blank if there is no scope ID set for your computer.

[SMB Server Name]

When registering the machine in the WINS server, you can specify the server name in the SMB network by entering up to 16 characters depending on the character type.

NOTE:

- You cannot use spaces.
- A server name set in [Server Name] under [SMB Settings] is automatically used for [SMB Server Name], if any. A change to the server name in [SMB Server Name] is also applied to [Server Name] under [SMB Settings].

[SMB Workgroup Name]

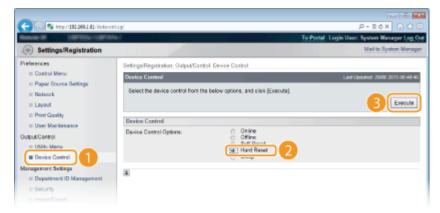
When registering the machine in the WINS server, you can specify the name of the work group to which the machine belongs by entering up to 16 characters depending on the character type.

NOTE:

- You cannot use spaces.
- A workgroup name set in [Workgroup Name] under [SMB Settings] is automatically used for [SMB Workgroup Name], if any. A change to the workgroup name in [SMB Workgroup Name] is also applied to [Workgroup Name] under [SMB Settings].

6 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Selecting settings from the operation panel

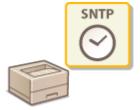
• You can also enable or disable the WINS settings from the setting menu of the operation panel. **WINS Resolution(P. 379)**

LINKS

Configuring SMB(P. 242)

Configuring SNTP

0X7U-03E



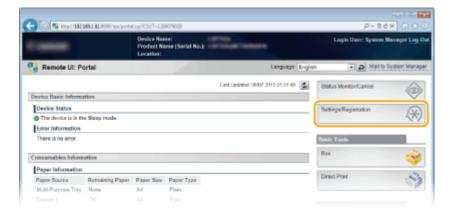
Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) enables you to adjust the system clock by using the time server on the network. When you use SNTP, the system checks the time server periodically, so that the system clock is always accurate.

NOTE

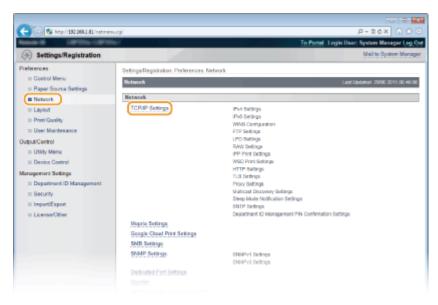
• The SNTP of the machine supports both NTP (version 3) and SNTP (versions 3 and 4) servers.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

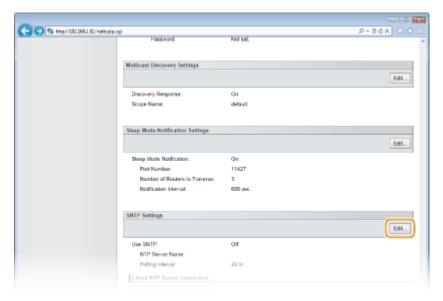
2 Click [Settings/Registration].



3 Click [Network] ► [TCP/IP Settings].



4 Click [Edit] in [SNTP Settings].



5 Select the [Use SNTP] check box and specify the required settings.

-			
(-) (2) http://182.068.1.81/retorts	o.ogi1CSUT=-807878550		р-вск () ф 🖯
NAME OF TAXABLE	Ref.		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration Preferences	Network > TCPVIP Settings >	Edit SNTP Settings
Control Menu Paper Source Settings	Edit SNTP Settings		Last Updated: 29/00 2015 07:01:58
Paper courte centrgs Network	The settings will be changed as	follows. (Changes effective after	r the main power is turned OFF and ON.)
II Layout			OK Cancel
E Print Quality	SMTP Settings		
User Maintenance Output/Control	SE Use SNTP		
= Utility Menu	NTP Server Name:		
II Device Control	Poling Intervel	24	hr. (1-48)
Management Settings	×		
 Department ID Management Security 			
il becurity il brood/Export			

[Use SNTP]

Select the check box to use SNTP for synchronization. If you do not want to use SNTP, clear the check box.

[NTP Server Name]

Enter the IP address of the NTP or the SNTP server. If DNS is available on the network, you can enter "<host name>.<domain name>" (or FQDN) of up to 255 alphanumeric characters instead (example: ntp.example.com).

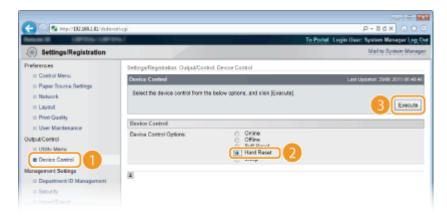
[Polling Interval]

Specify the interval between one synchronization and the next. Specify an interval from 1 to 48 hours.

6 Click [OK].

7 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Testing communication with the NTP/SNTP server

You can view communication status with the registered server by clicking [Settings/Registration] >
 [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] and then clicking [Check NTP Server Connection] in [SNTP Settings] that appears. If a proper connection has been established, the result is displayed as shown below. Note that this operation does not adjust the system clock.

Use SNTP:	On
NTP Server Name:	ntp.nict.jp
Polling Interval:	24 hr.
Check NTP Server Connection	

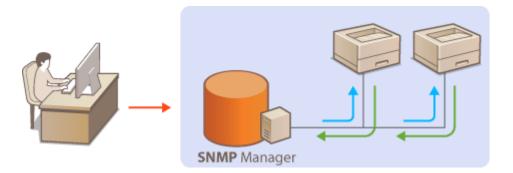
Selecting settings from the operation panel

• You can also enable or disable the SNTP settings from the setting menu of the operation panel. **SNTP(P. 384)**

Monitoring and Controlling the Machine with SNMP

0X7U-03F

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a protocol for monitoring and controlling communication devices in a network by using Management Information Base (MIB). The machine supports SNMPv1 and security-enhanced SNMPv3. You can check the status of the machine from a computer when you print documents or use the Remote UI. You can enable either SNMPv1 or SNMPv3, or both at the same time. Specify the settings for each version to suit your network environment and the purpose of use.



SNMPv1

SNMPv1 uses information called "community" to define the scope of SNMP communication. Because this information is exposed to the network in plain text, your network will be vulnerable to attacks. If you want to ensure network security, disable SNMPv1 and use SNMPv3.

SNMPv3

With SNMPv3, you can implement network device management that is protected by robust security features. Note that TLS must be enabled for the Remote UI before configuring SNMPv3 (**Ousing TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)**).

NOTE

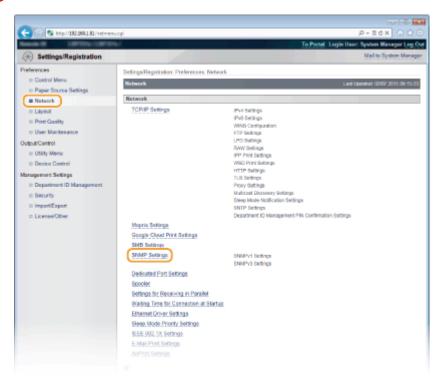
- The machine does not support the trap notification feature of SNMP.
- SNMP management software, when installed on a computer on the network, enables you to configure, monitor, and control the machine remotely from the computer. For more information, see the instruction manuals for your management software.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

	168.1.81 .0000/ipo/potts	LogiPCSUT-138	87603			P+10	x ore
-		Device Nur Product Ne Location:	ie: me (Sorial No.):			Login User: System	Manager Log Ou
设 Remote UI: Po	ərtəl				Language: English	• D Mail to	System Manager
				Last Updated: 06/07 20	NS (NS 1:40	Status Monitos/Cancel	
Device Basic Informe	tion						V
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	0
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						(1)
Error Information					`		
There is no error.						Besic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	ି 👌
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	5
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				





4 Click [Edit].

Settings:Registration Marke Spaten Market Preferences Settings:Registration Preferences Network > SNMP Settings Paper Source Settings Settings:Registration Preferences Network > SNMP Settings Paper Source Settings SMMP Settings Land Updated 2000 2015 01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:01:0	C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C			P - E C X () () To Portal Login User: System Manager Log (
Cashol Meiu Paper Source Settings NMIP Settings Multi	0			Mail to System Manag
Paper Source Settings NWP Settings NWP Settings Network Leal Looker Source Settings Network Leal Looker Source Settings Network Looker Source Settings Network Networ	Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preferences: Netwo	rk > SNNP Settings	
Network Layout Layou		SNMP Settings		Last Updated: 29/06 2015-07-18-4
Print Quality Use: SMMPv1 Sectings Use: SMMPv1 Sectings Use: SMMPv1 Sectings Use: Community Name 1: On OutputControl OutputControl OutputControl Denice: Control Use: Community Name 2: Of Wanagement Settings OutputControl OutputControl Secury Dedicated Concernsity Name 2: public				Edit.
Use Community Name 1: On Use Community Name 1: public Utity Mone MB Access Permission: Read Only Use Community Name 2: Off Annagement Settings Department D Management MB Access Permission: Read Only Security Security Department Community Name 2: public 2 Security	E Print Quality		0.	
Asragement Settings Community Name 2: public2 is Department ID Management MBD Access Petrolesien: Read Drily is Security IDedicated Community Settings	Sulput/Centrol	Community Name 1: MIB Access Permission:	public Read Only	
in Security Dedicated Commanity Settings		Community Name 2:	public2	
	a Security	Dedicated Community Settings		

5 Specify SNMPv1 settings.

• If you do not need to change SNMPv1 settings, proceed to the next step.

C- 2 Mar (182 268.1 81/margar	sk.ogilAction=SET_SNMMP8/CSUT=L198/05720		P-16X 0 00
		To Postal Logi	n User: System Manager Log Ou
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preferences, Net	work > SNNP Settings > Edit SNNP Settings	
Control Menu	Edit SMMP Settings		Last Updated: 79/06 2015 07-19:06
Paper Source Settings Network Layout	The settings will be changed as follow	vs. (Changes effective after the main power is turned	OFF and ON.) OK Cancel
Print Quality	SNWPy1 Settings		
User Maintenance	Use SNMPv1		
Output/Centrol Utility Menu Device Centrol	Use Community Name 1 Community Name 1:	public	
Management Settings	MIB Access Permission	Read Only	
Department ID Management	Use Community Name 2		
a Security	Community Name 2	public2	
E ImportiExport	MIB Access Permission:	Read Only .	
D License/Uther	Dedicated Community Settings		
	Dedicated Community:	C OF C Read/Write a Read Only	
	SNMPy3 Sottings		
	11 Use SNMPv0		
	"To enable the [User Bettings] and the in [Security Settings]	[Context Sattings], [Use TLS] must be turned On on	the (Romote UI Settings) page

[Use SNMPv1]

Select the check box to enable SNMPv1. You can specify the rest of SNMPv1 settings only when this check box is selected.

[Use Community Name 1]/[Use Community Name 2]

Select the check box to specify a community name. If you do not need to specify a community name, clear the check box.

[Community Name 1]/[Community Name 2]

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the name of the community.

[MIB Access Permission]

For each community, select [Read/Write] or [Read Only] for the access privileges to MIB objects.

[Read/Write]	Permits both viewing and changing the values of MIB objects.
[Read Only]	Permits only viewing the values of MIB objects.

[Dedicated Community]

Dedicated Community is a preset community, intended exclusively for administrators using Canon software, such as imageWARE Enterprise Management Console. Select [Off], [Read/Write], or [Read Only] for the access privileges to MIB objects.

[Off]	Does not use Dedicated Community.
[Read/Write]	Permits both viewing and changing the values of MIB objects by using Dedicated Community.
[Read Only]	Permits only viewing the values of MIB objects by using Dedicated Community.

6 Specify SNMPv3 settings.

• If you do not need to change SNMPv3 settings, proceed to the next step.

-				- C 🚥
C 8 http://152.068.1.41/snamped	it.ogi14ction=0ET_SMMP&iCSUT=835029584			P-26X 0 000
	SNMPv3 Settings			
	Use SNMPv3			
	User Settings 1			
	Enable User			
	User Name	intial		
	MIB Access Permission	Read/Write (#)		
	Security Settings:	Authentication Yea/Encryp	tion Yes =	
	Authentication Algorithm	MD5		
	SetChange Password			
	Authentisation Pasaword:		(6 to 16 characters)	
	Confirm		(6 to 16 characters)	
	Encryption Algorithm:	DES AES		
	Set/Change Password			
	Encryption Password:		(6 to 16 characters)	
	Confirm		(6 to 16 characters)	
	In a second second			
	User Settings 2			
	SetChing	Read/Write +		
	Encryption Pausword:		tion Yes -	
	Confirm			
	(
	Context Settings Context Name 1:		_	
	Context Name 2.			
	Context Name 3.			
	Context Name 4:			
	Context Name 5:			
	Othera			
	📋 Obtain Printer Management Informa	tion from Host		
	Reject SMMP Packets While in Size	p Mode		
	×			
	-			Are can be dealer and
				Copyright CANON INC. 2015 .

[Use SNMPv3]

Select the check box to enable SNMPv3. You can specify the rest of SNMPv3 settings only when this check box is selected.

[Enable User]

Select the check box to enable [User Settings 1] to [User Settings 5]. To disable user settings, clear the corresponding check box.

[User Name]

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the user name.

[MIB Access Permission]

Select [Read/Write] or [Read Only] for the access privileges to MIB objects.

[Read/Write]	Permits both viewing and changing the values of MIB objects.
[Read Only]	Permits only viewing the values of MIB objects.

[Security Settings]

Select [Authentication Yes/Encryption Yes], [Authentication Yes/Encryption No], or [Authentication No/ Encryption No] for the desired combination of authentication and encryption settings.

[Authentication Algorithm]

Click the [Authentication Yes/Encryption Yes] or [Authentication Yes/Encryption No] for [Security Settings] for the algorithm that corresponds to your environment.

[Encryption Algorithm]

Click the [Authentication Yes/Encryption Yes] for [Security Settings] for the algorithm that corresponds to your environment.

[Set/Change Password]

To set or change the password, select the check box and enter between 6 and 16 alphanumeric characters for the password in the [Authentication Password] or [Encryption Password] text box. For confirmation, enter the same password in the [Confirm] text box. Passwords can be set independently for authentication and encryption algorithms.

[Context Name 1] to [Context Name 5]

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the context name. Up to five context names can be registered.

7 Specify Printer Management Information Acquisition Settings.

• With SNMP, the printer management information, such as printing protocols and printer ports, can be monitored and obtained regularly from a computer on the network.

BesCharge Pasaword Encryption Pasaword Encryption Pasaword Context Settings Context Name 1: Context Name 2: Context Name 3: Context Name 4: Context Name 5: Context	
Content Settings Context Settings Context Name 2: Context Name 3: Context Name 4: Context Name 5: Context Name	
Contact Settings Contact Name 1: Contact Name 2: Contact Name 3: Contact Name 4: Contact Name 4: Contact Name 5: Differs Differs Contact Printer Wanagement Information from Host	Encryption Password (6 to 16 characters)
Context Name 1: Context Name 2: Context Name 3: Context Name 4: Context Name 5: Others Context Name Finiter Management Information from Host	(6 to 16 characters)
Context Name 2: Context Name 3: Context Name 4: Context Name 5: Context Name 5: Context Name 5: Context Name 7: Context Name 7: Contex	Context Settings
Context Name 3: Context Name 4: Context Name 5: Others Cottain Printer Management Information from Host	Context Name 1:
Context Name 4: Context Name 5: Others Cothers Others Namagement Information from Host	Context Name 2:
Context Name 5: Others Cotain Printer Management Information from Host	Context Name 3:
Others Colum Printer Management Information from Host	Context Name 4:
Coblain Printer Management Information from Host	Context Name 5:
	Othera
Raject ShildP Packets While in Sleep Mode	Cotain Printer Management Information from Host
	Reject ShildP Packets While in Sleep Mode
	Copyright CANON

[Obtain Printer Management Information from Host]

Select the check box to enable monitoring of the printer management information of the machine via SNMP. To disable monitoring of the printer management information, clear the check box.

[Reject SNMP Packets While in Sleep Mode]

Select the check box to discard SNMP packets received during sleep mode. If you do not want to discard the packets, clear the check box.

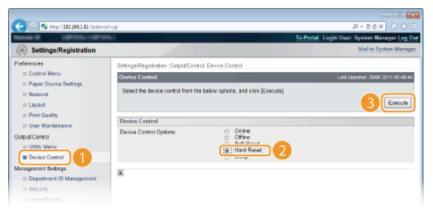
NOTE:

 If you select the check box, applications that use the SNMP protocol, such as Canon software imageWARE Series, may be disabled to access the machine.

8 Click [OK].

9 Perform a hard reset.

Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Disabling SNMPv1

• If SNMPv1 is disabled, some of the functions of the machine become unavailable, such as obtaining machine information via the printer driver.

Using the operation panel

• SNMP settings can also be accessed from the setting menu of the operation panel. **SNMP Settings(P. 387)**

Enabling Both SNMPv1 and SNMPv3

• If both versions of SNMP are enabled, it is recommended that MIB access permission in SNMPv1 be set to [Read Only]. MIB access permission can be set independently in SNMPv1 and SNMPv3 (and for each user in SNMPv3). Selecting [Read/Write] (full access permission) in SNMPv1 negates the robust security features that characterize SNMPv3 because most of the machine settings can then be controlled with SNMPv1.

LINKS

OUsing TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)

Configuring Settings for Device Management Software

0X7U-03H

You can facilitate the collection and management of various information about networked devices by implementing device management software, such as imageWARE Enterprise Management Console, into the network. Information such as device settings and error logs is retrieved and distributed via the server computer. If the machine is connected to such a network, imageWARE Enterprise Management Console searches the network for the machine by using protocols such as Service Location Protocol (SLP) to gather information from the machine, including the power status. SLP settings can be specified via the Remote UI.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

				- management			
		Device Nor Product Na Location:	ie: me (Sorial No.):			Login User: System I	fanager Log
👌 Remote UI: Po	ortal			L	angunge: English	• D Mail to 1	System Man
				Lant Updated: 06/07 2015	sensitika 🛃	Status Monitos/Cancel	6
levice Basic Informa	tion						\sim
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	Q
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						47
Error information					`		
There is no error.						Besic Tools	
onsenables inform	ation					Bax	
Paper Information							-
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	4
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				0

. 🛇 😪 http://182.068.1.81/ (*) Settings/Registration Preferences Settings/Registration: Preferences: Network III Control Menu Network II Paper Source Setting Network B Network Pv4 Satings Pv0 Satings WINS Configur FTP Satings UPO Satings TCP/IP Settings II Layout to Print Quality D User Maintenance Output/Control = Utility Menu PP Print Dellings II Device Control HTTP Salargi Management Settings ILS Setting Department ID Ma Proxy Settings Multicast Disc aticaat Discovery Settings rep Intode Notification Settings Security II ImportiExport NTP Settors ortment ID Management PIN Confirmation Setting a License/Othe Mopria Settings Google Cloud Print Settings SMB Settings SNMP Settings MPy10ette ENMPy3 Setting

4 Specify SLP settings.

Specifying multicast device discovery

Click [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings].

3

1 Click [Edit] in [Multicast Discovery Settings].

			P-16X 0 0
C 🛞 😵 http://182.068.1.81/nettcpip.	ngi		P-16X 0 ☆ 0
	Proxy Authentication:	01	*
	User Name:		
	Password	Not set.	
	Multicast Discovery Settings		
			Edt.
	Discovery Response:	On	
	Scope Name:	dofaali	
	Sleep Mode Notification Sattings		
			.Edt
	Sleep Mode Notification:	On	
	Part Number:	11427	
	Number of Routers to Traverse		

2 Select the [Respond to Discovery] check box and specify the required settings.

-	
C 3 http://182.068.1.81/vetdice	overy og/CSUT=-11160748 / P = 2 6 X 🕥 🏠 🕄
NAME OF COLUMN	To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration	Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preferences: Network > TCP/IP Settings > Edit Multicast Discovery Settings
 Control Menu Paper Source Settings 	Edit Multicast Discovery Settings Last Updated 2940 2015 07:20:50
Network	The settings will be changed as follows. (Changes offective after the main power is turned OFF and ON.)
= Layout	OK Careel
Print Quality	Multicast Discovery Settings
User Maintenance Output/Control	Respond to Discovery
= Utility Menu	Scope Name: default
III Device Control	X
Management Settings	
Department ID Management	
= Security	

[Respond to Discovery]

Select the check box to set the machine to respond to device management software multicast discovery packets and enable monitoring by device management software. If you do not want to set the machine to respond, clear the check box.

[Scope Name]

To include the machine into a specific scope, enter up to 32 characters for the scope name.

3 Click [OK].

■Notifying a device management software of the power status of the machine

1 Click [Edit] in [Sleep Mode Notification Settings].

-			0 6 1
C 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	nji		P-26× 0 ☆ 8
	Proxy Authentication:	01	*
	User Name:		
	Password	Not set.	
	Multicast Discovery Settings		
			Eds.
	Discovery Response:	On	
	Scope Name:	default	
	Sleep Mode Notification Sattings		
			Edt.
	Sleep Mode Notification:	On	
	Port Number:	11427	
	Number of Routers to Traverse:		

2 Select the [Notify] check box and specify the required settings.

-				
C (182.068.1.81/retslp)	ogi?CSUT==0959686485		P-86× 0 0 8	
Benefit INTELLET	Ref.		To Portel Login User: System Manager Log Ov	
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager	
Preferences	SettingsRegistration Preferences Netw	ork > TCPVIP Settings > Edi	t Sleep Mode Notification Settings	
Costrol Menu Paper Source Settings	Edit Sleep Mode Notification Settings	•	Last Updated: 25/06 2015 07 29 42	
Network	The settings will be changed as follows. (Changes offective after the main power is turned OFF and ON.)			
= Layout			OK Cancel	
Print Quality	Skep Mode Notification Settings			
User Maintenance Outout/Control	R Nolly			
= Utilty Menu	Port Number:	11427	(1-05035)	
II Device Control	Number of Routers to Traverse:	3	(0-254)	
Management Sellings	anagement Settings Notification Interval:		sec. (60-65536)	
II Department ID Management	R			
E Security	·			

[Notify]

Select the check box to notify a device management software of the power status of the machine. When [Notify] is selected, you can expect the machine to avoid unnecessary communication during sleep mode and reduce the total power consumption.

[Port Number]

Change the port number for this function according to the network environment.

[Number of Routers to Traverse]

Specify how many routers the notification packets can pass. Enter a number from 0 to 254.

[Notification Interval]

Specify how often the machine notifies a device management software of its power status. Enter a number in seconds from 60 to 65535.

Click [OK].

5 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].

C 3 Ktp://182.068.1.81/finder.com	aj	P-86× 0 0 0
Research Lattice Controls		To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Output/Control: Device Control	
In Costrol Menu	Device Control	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 00:48:46
Paper Source Settings Network Layout	Select the device control from the below options, and click [Execute].	3 Exc.18
© Print Quality © User Maintenance	Device Control	
Output/Centrol	Device Control Options: C Office Office State Device (See Hard Reset Office Sec Prove Sec Pro)
Management Settings	×	
a Security II Import Expert		

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Using the operation panel

- You can also enable or disable discovery response from the setting menu of the operation panel. **Discovery Response(P. 384)**
- Power status notification settings can also be accessed from the setting menu of the operation panel.
 Sleep Notif. Set.(P. 385)

LINKS

Centering Sleep Mode(P. 69)

Configuring SMB

Server Message Block (SMB) is a protocol for sharing resources, such as files and printers, with more than one device in a network and used to register the machine as a shared printer on the SMB network.

NOTE

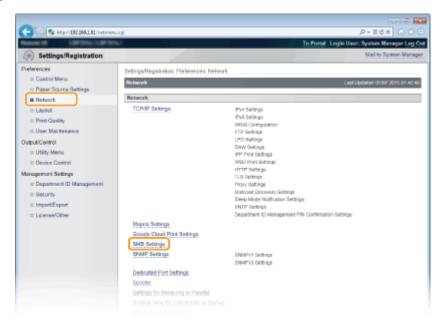
- SMB supports only NetBIOS over TCP/IP and does not support NetBEUI. Configure the IP address before configuring the SMB settings. OSetting IP Addresses(P. 187)
- SMB is enabled only when the optional SD card is installed in the machine.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

		Device Nor Product No	ee: me (Serial No.)	CONTRACTOR OFFICE		Login User: System	Manager Log
		Location:					
Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: Englis	h 💿 🔁 Mail to	System Mana
				Lant Updates: 06/07 20	HS-01:51:40 🛃	Status Monitor/Cancel	6
levice Basic Informa	tion						V
Device Status						Settings/Registration	(V
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						47
Error Information							
There is no error.						Besic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Вах	6
Paper Information							-
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

3 Click [Network] > [SMB Settings].



4 Click [Edit].



5 Select the [Use SMB Server] check box and specify the required settings.

C 8 http://152268.1.81/smbed/			P-86X 0 000
Anna I LITTLATO		To Posta	Login User: System Manager Log Out
(*) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration Preferences	Network > SNB Settings > Edit SNB Settings	
III Costrol Menu	Edit SNB Settings	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 07:30:42	
II Paper Source Settings	The settings will be changed as	blows. (Changes offective after the main power is	turned OFF and ON.)
Network Lavout			OK Cancel
Layout Print Quality			ON OWNER
User Maintenance	SMB Settings		
Outout/Centrol	57) Use SMB Server		
= Utility Menu	Server Name:		
II Device Control	Workgroup Name:	WORKGROUP	
Management Settings	Comments:		
II Department ID Management	Use LM Amounce		
= Security	Use SVB Printing		
ImportiExport	Printer Name:	PRINTER	
III License/Other			
	a		
			Cepyrght CANON INC. 2015

[Use SMB Server]

If you select the check box, the computer is indicated as an SMB server on the SMB network.

[Server Name]

To specify the server name that is to be displayed on the SMB network, you can enter up to 16 characters depending on the character type. The name must be different from the names of any other computers and printers on the network.

NOTE:

- You cannot use spaces.
- A server name set in [SMB Server Name] under [WINS Configuration] is automatically used for [Server Name], if any. A change to the server name in [Server Name] is also applied to [SMB Server Name] under [WINS Configuration].

[Workgroup Name]

To specify the name of the work group to which the machine belongs, you can enter up to 16 characters depending on the character type. If there is no workgroup in your network environment, create a workgroup on Windows and enter the name of the workgroup.

NOTE:

- You cannot use spaces.
- A workgroup name set in [SMB Workgroup Name] under [WINS Configuration] is automatically used for [Workgroup Name], if any. A change to the server name in [Workgroup Name] is also applied to [SMB Workgroup Name] under [WINS Configuration].

[Comments]

To create comments on the machine as necessary, you can enter up to 192 characters depending on the character type.

[Use LM Announce]

Select the check box to notify the LAN Manager of existence of the machine. If you do not need to notify, clear the check box, reducing a network load.

[Use SMB Printing]

When using SMB printing with the machine, select the check box.

[Printer Name]

To specify the name of the machine, you can enter up to 13 characters depending on the character type.

NOTE:

• You cannot use spaces.

6 Click [OK].

7 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].

A		
C 😌 🔄 🖏 kitp://182.068.1.81/ibdevci	legi	P+16× ∩ ☆ 🖯
Research Life Street of Party		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(A) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Output/Control: Device Control	
Control Menu	Device Control	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 00:48:46
II Paper Source Settings	Select the device control from the below options, and slick [Execute	1
Network		C Execute
= Layout = Print Quality		
User Maintenance	Device Control	
Output/Centrol	Device Control Options: O Online O Offine	
= Utility Menu	O Dott David	
Device Control	Set Hard Reset	4
Management Settings		
II Department ID Management	×	
a Security		

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

>>> Continue to Configuring Settings on the Computer for Printing(P. 245) .

NOTE

Using the operation panel

- You can also enable or disable the SMB server from the setting menu of the operation panel. (SMB(P. 387)
- You can also enable or disable SMB print from the setting menu of the operation panel. **SMB(P. 387)**

LINKS

Configuring WINS(P. 226)

Configuring Settings on the Computer for Printing

0X7U-03K

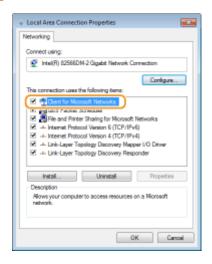
Configure the connection settings and install the printer driver on the computer so that printing can be performed with the machine from the computer via SMB network.

Connecting to the SMB Network(P. 245) Installing the Printer Driver(P. 246)

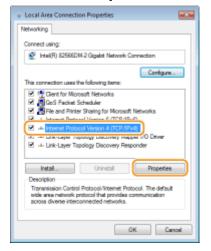
Connecting to the SMB Network

1 Display [Local Area Connection Properties]. Displaying [Local Area Connection Properties](P. 620)

? Select the [Client for Microsoft Networks] check box.



3 Select the [Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)] or [Internet Protocol] check box and click [Properties].

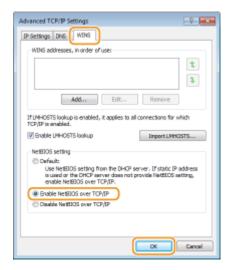


4 Click the [General] tab ▶ [Advanced].

Network



5 Click the [WINS] tab, select [Enable NetBIOS over TCP/IP], and then click [OK].



6 Click [OK] until all dialog boxes are closed.

NOTE:

• Restart the computer if you are prompted to do so.

Installing the Printer Driver

Install the printer driver by following the procedure described in the "Printer Driver Installation Guide".

NOTE

When a port selection screen appears during installation

- Follow the procedure below.
 - 1 Click [Add Port].
 - 2 Select [Network] and click [OK].
 - From the list, select "Workgroup Name," "Server Name," and "Printer Name" that were specified in the SMB protocol settings in this order. OConfiguring SMB(P. 242)

Security	248
Protecting the Machine from Unauthorized Access	249
Preventing Unauthorized Access	250
Setting Access Privileges	252
Setting the System Manager Password	253
Setting the Department ID Management	256
Setting a Remote UI PIN	263
Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls	264
Specifying IP Addresses for Firewall Rules	265
Specifying MAC Addresses for Firewall Rules	271
Setting a Proxy	274
Restricting the Machine's Functions	277
Restricting the Printing Operations	278
Restricting USB Functions	282
Restricting Operation Panel Functions	285
Disabling HTTP Communication	288
Disabling Remote UI	289
Disabling the LAN Port	290
Hiding the Print Job History	291
Implementing Robust Security Features	293
Using TLS for Encrypted Communications	294
Configuring IPSec Settings	298
Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication	309
Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates	315
Generating Key Pairs	317
Using CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates	326
Verifying Key Pairs and Digital Certificates	329

0X7U-03L

Confidential information is handled by information devices everywhere, including computers and printers, and any of these devices may become a target for malicious third parties at anytime. Attackers may directly gain unauthorized access to your devices, or indirectly take advantage of negligence or improper use. Either way, you may incur unanticipated losses when your confidential information is leaked. To counter these risks, the machine is equipped with a variety of security functions. Set the necessary configuration depending on your network environment.

NOTE

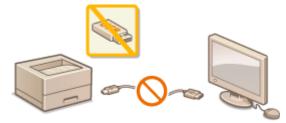
You can configure the best security system by building an environment that inhibits access to printers on your in-house network via the Internet and using such environment together with the machine's security features. **Preventing Unauthorized Access(P. 250)**

Establishing the Basics of Information Security



OProtecting the Machine from Unauthorized Access(P. 249)

Preparing for Risks from Negligence or Misuse



Restricting the Machine's Functions(P. 277)



Printing a Document Secured by a PIN (Secured Print) (P. 131)

Implementing Robust Security Features

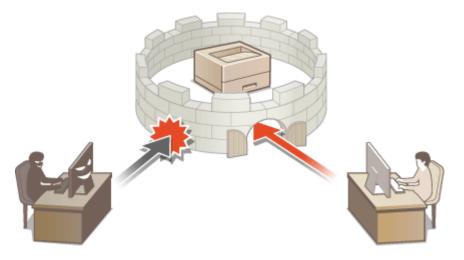


Implementing Robust Security Features(P. 293)

Protecting the Machine from Unauthorized Access

0X7U-03R

Prevent unauthorized third parties from accessing and using the machine. You can implement multiple security measures, such as managing user access privileges and using firewalls.



Preventing Unauthorized Access

0X7U-03S

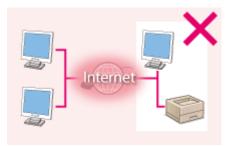
This section describes the security measures on how to prevent unauthorized access from the external network. This is a must-read for all users and administrators before using this machine, other printers, and multifunction machines connected to the network. In recent years, a printer/multifunction machine connected to the network can offer you a variety of useful functions, such as printing from a computer, operating from a computer using the remote function, and sending scanned documents via the Internet. On the other hand, it is essential to take security measures to reduce the security risk for information leakage, as a printer/multifunction machine has become more exposed to threats, such as unauthorized access and theft, when it is connected to the network. This section explains necessary settings you need to specify to prevent unauthorized access before using a printer/multifunction machine connected to the network.

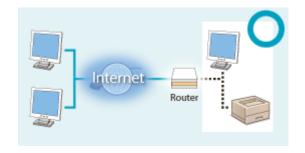
Security Measures to Prevent Unauthorized Access from the External Network

Assigning a Private IP Address(P. 250)
 Using Firewall to Restrict Transmission(P. 251)
 Specifying the TLS Encrypted Communication (P. 251)
 Setting PIN to Manage Information Stored in the Printer(P. 251)

Assigning a Private IP Address

An IP address is a numerical label assigned to each device participating in a computer network. A "global IP address" is used for the communication connecting to the Internet, and a "private IP address" is used for the communication within a local area network, such as a LAN in the company. If a global IP address is assigned, your printer/ multifunction machine is open to the public and can be accessed via the Internet. Thus, the risk of information leakage due to unauthorized access from external network increases. On the other hand, if a private IP address is assigned, your printer/multifunction machine is closed to a local area network and can be accessed by only users on your local area network, such as a LAN in the company.





Global IP Address Can be accessed from the users within a local area network

Private IP Address Can be accessed from the users within a local area network

Basically, assign a private IP address to your printer/multifunction machine. Make sure to confirm the IP address, assigned to the printer/multifunction machine you are using, is a private IP address or not. A private IP address is found in one of the following ranges.

Ranges for Private IP addresses

- From 10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255
- From 172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255
- From 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255

For information on how to confirm the IP address, see **Setting IPv4 Address(P. 188)** .

NOTE

• If a global IP address is assigned to a printer/multifunction machine, you can create a network environment to reduce the risk of unauthorized access by installing security software, such as a firewall that prevents

access from the external networks. If you want to assign a global IP address to and use a printer/ multifunction machine, contact your network administrator.

Using Firewall to Restrict Transmission

A firewall is a system that prevents unauthorized access from the external networks and protects against attacks/ intrusions to a local area network. You can use a firewall on your network environment to block access from the external network that appears to be dangerous, by restricting communication from specified IP address of the external network. The function installed to a Canon printer/multifunction machine enables you to set up the IP address filter. For information on how to set up an IP address filter, see **Specifying IP Addresses for Firewall Rules(P. 265)**.

Specifying the TLS Encrypted Communication

For information on the TLS Encrypted Communication, see **OImplementing Robust Security Features(P. 293)**, and on the procedures to specify, see **OUsing TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)**.

Setting PIN to Manage Information Stored in the Printer

If a malicious third party attempts to gain unauthorized access to a printer/multifunction machine, setting PIN to information stored in the machine will reduce the risk of information leakage. Canon printer/multifunction machine enables you to protect various type of information by setting PIN.

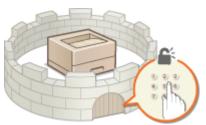
Setting PIN to Each Function

- Setting PIN for Using Remote UI
 For more information, see Setting a Remote UI PIN(P. 263).
- Setting the password for the System Manager
 For more information, see OSetting the System Manager Password(P. 253).

Listed above are some examples of security measures for preventing unauthorized access. For more information on the other security measures, see **Security(P. 248)** and take necessary security measures for preventing unauthorized access to suit your environment.

Setting Access Privileges

Protect the machine from unauthorized access by only allowing users with access privileges to use the machine. Access privileges are set separately for the System Manager password, an account called "Department ID," and the Remote UI. When privileges are set, the user must enter an ID and PIN to print or change settings.



The System Manager password is intended exclusively for administrators while the Department ID is for genera users. Both are specified by System Managers. And by setting a Remote UI Access PIN, you can restrict use of the Remote UI.

System Manager Password

Specifying the settings for the machine from the Remote UI requires the System Manager password. The password is set to "7654321" by default, and can be changed to allow only specific administrators to change the settings.

Setting the System Manager Password(P. 253)

Department ID (Department ID Management)

Department ID is an account for managing printing jobs. You can register multiple Department IDs to specify access privileges for a user (or group of users). If a user tries to print a document when Department IDs are enabled, the screen for entering a Department ID is displayed, and the user must enter his/her own Department ID. Information for each Department ID can be viewed, such as how many pages have been printed.

Setting the Department ID Management(P. 256)

Remote UI PIN (Remote UI Access PIN)

This is a PIN for using the Remote UI. Only users who know the PIN can access the Remote UI.

Setting a Remote UI PIN(P. 263)

Setting the System Manager Password

0X7U-03W

Changing the settings configured in the machine from the Remote UI requires administrative privileges. Follow the procedure shown below to change the System Manager password. The System Manager password settings information is critical to the security of the machine, so make sure that only Administrators know the System Manager password.

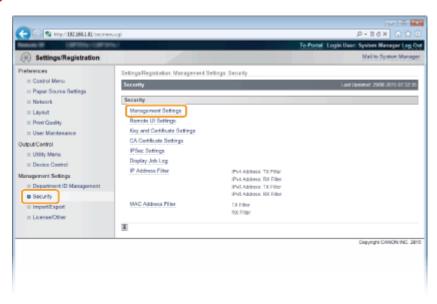
NOTE

- The factory default setting of the System Manager password is "7654321." Note that it is not preferable to use this value as it is, from the viewpoint of security. It is recommended that you change the value by using the following procedure.
 - **1** Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

		Device Nor Product Na Location:	ne: me (Seriel No.):			Login User: System I	fanager Log C
🔓 Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: English	• D Mail to 1	System Manag
				Lant Updated: 06/07 20	HS OF STIND	Status Monitor/Cancel	6
Device Basic Informa	ation						V
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	N
The device is in the	e Sieep mode.						57
Error Information							
There is no error.						Basic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Вак	
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

3 Click [Security] > [Management Settings].





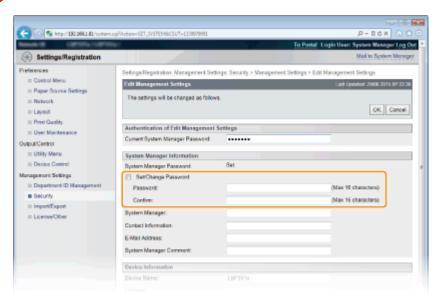
🗲 💿 😵 http://182.068.1.81/system	ogi1C5UT=1117751029	0 × 55 + 9.	12
Land Difference	64 ()	To Postal Login User: System Manager	Leg (
Settings/Registration		Mail to System N	lanag
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Management Set	tings: Security > Management Settings	
Control Menu	Management Settings	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 0	733-0
Paper Source Settings			- 10E
© Network		Le	
= Layout	System Manager Information		
Print Quality	System Manager Password:	Set.	
User Maintenance	System Manager:		
Dutput/Centrol	Contact Information		
III Utility Mene III Device Control	E-Mail Address:		
	System Manager Comment.		
Banagement Settings Department ID Management	Device Information		
· Security	Manufacturer:	CANON INC.	
	Device Name:	LEP 35 fx	

5 Enter the current password in [Current System Manager Password].

• The default password is "7654321".



6 Enter a new password.



[Set/Change Password]

To set or change the password, select the check box and enter up to 16 alphanumeric characters for the password in the [Password] text box. For confirmation, enter the same password in the [Confirm] text box.

NOTE:

• If you click [OK] with the check box selected and the [Password] and [Confirm] text boxes left blank, the currently set password is deleted.

7 Enter the System Manager name and contact information as necessary, and click [OK].

-			
🧲 🛞 😵 http://182.068.1.81/system.c	giViction=GET_SVSTEM&/CSUT=1330979901		р-всх ∩ 🗘 🖯
Second UPDATOR	Interventer System Manager Password Settings Comment Settings Password Settings Password Settings Comment Settings Password Set Passwo		
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Management Setti	ngs: Security > Management S	lettings > Edit Management Settings
ID Control Menu	Edit Management Settings		Last Updated: 29/06 2015 07:20:26
© Paper Source Settings			
D Network	The settings will be changed as follows	1.	
 Layout 			OK. Cancel
Print Quality			
D User Maintenance			
Output/Control	Current System Manager Password		
Utility Menu	System Manager Information		
II Device Control	System Manager Pasaward	Set.	
Management Sellings	SetChange Password		
Department ID Management	Pasovora:		(blax 10 characters)
Security	Conferen		(Max 15 characters)
© ImportiExport			
III License/Other	System Manager:		
	Contact Information:		
	E-Mail Address:		
	System Manager Comment:		
	Device Information		
	Device Information		
		LBP351x	

[System Manager]

Enter up to 128 characters for the name of an administrator.

[Contact Information]

Enter up to 128 characters for the contact information of the administrator.

[E-Mail Address]

Enter up to 64 alphanumeric characters for the e-mail address of the administrator.

[System Manager Comment]

Enter up to 128 characters for comments of the administrator.

IMPORTANT

• Be sure to remember the password that you have set. If you have forgotten the password, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

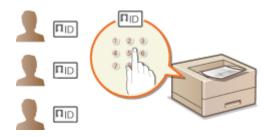
LINKS

Setting Access Privileges(P. 252) Checking System Manager Information(P. 346)

Setting the Department ID Management

0X7U-03X

You can control access to the machine by using multiple IDs for multiple users or groups. If a user tries to operate the machine when Department ID Management is enabled, a logon screen is displayed, and the user must enter their own Department ID and PIN to use the machine. Department ID Management provides recorded details of the past use of the machine for each Department ID. To configure Department ID Management, register department IDs as necessary and then enable Department ID Management function. Additional settings are required if you want to enable Department ID Management for printing from a computer.



Registering/Editing Department ID and PIN(P. 256)
 Enabling the Department ID Management(P. 257)
 Setting the Department ID Management for Printing from the Computer(P. 260)
 Blocking Jobs When Department ID Is Unknown(P. 261)

NOTE

To manage the print status of each department OChecking the Number of Pages Printed for Each Department(P. 545)

Registering/Editing Department ID and PIN

Register a Department ID and set a PIN for it. Up to 300 Department IDs can be registered.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

Device Name Login Usar: System Manager L Voluet Name (Satel Ho): Language: Unitein Last Lipitate: 0007 2015 01:51:40 Imaging: Unitein Device States Status Monitor/Cancel Device States Device States Device States Device Tools Device Tools Device Tools Device Tools Device Pret	and the second	mana anno populo	l cgiTCSUT+13890				P = 11 d	A 00 1
Last Lipidade: 0007 2015 01:51:40 Status Monitor/Cancel Betringte/Registration Device Status Device Status			Product Nem				Login User: System I	fanager Le
Device State Settings/Registration Device States Settings/Registration The device is in the Sizep mode Settings/Registration Ener information Resize Tools Consumables information Box Paper information Direct Print Paper Source Remaining Paper Type	👌 Remote UI: Po	etal			La	ngunga: English	- P Mail to	System Mar
Device Status Settings/Registration The device is in the Sizep mode Settings/Registration Enser information Pasts Tools Consumables information Box Paper information Direct Print					Lant Updated: 06/07 2015	H-51-40 🛃	Status Monitor/Cancel	10
The device is in the Sizep mode Enser information There is no enor. Consumables information Paper information Paper Size Paper Type Drest Pinet	Device Basic Informa	tion						6
Error Information There is no error. Consumables information Paper Information Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Sour Paper Type	Device Status					(Sattings/Registration	6
There is no entor. Consumables information Paper Information Paper Store Remaining Paper Paper Type Deet Pret	The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						2
Consumables Information Box Paper Information Paper Source Remaining Paper Sour Paper Type Orect Pret	Error information					`		
Consumables Information Paper Information Paper Susce Remaining Paper Susce Paper Type Direct Print	There is no error.						Besic Tools	
Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Size Paper Type Direct Print	Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	6
Paper Source Remaining Paper Size Paper Type	Paper Information							
Multi-Purpose Tray None A4 Plain	Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size I	Paper Type			Direct Print	-
	Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4 1	Plain				

3 Click [Department ID Management] and register or edit Department IDs.

Settings/Registration Preferences Gets of Menu Department ID Management Settings Department ID Management Department ID Management Department ID Management	Mailto Spaten Man erinent ID Management Last Updater: 2005 2015 (2:34
Control Menu Department ID Management Paper Source Settings	
Paper Source Settings	Lant Updated: 25/06 2015 07:34
	Clear All Counts Settings.
Layout Department ID Page Total	
© User Maintenance Register New Department	
utput/Centrol	Dept. ID: 1 to 100 m Dispt
© Utility Menu Dept. ID	Printed Pages
ID Device Control Jobs With Unknown IDs	0
anagement Settings Utility, E-Mail Print	0
Department ID Management	
a Security	
II ImportiExport	
License/Other	
	Copyright CANON INC.

Registering a Department ID

- 1 Click [Register New Department].
- 2 Specify the required settings and click [OK].

-				
C 8 kmp//132.068.1.81/file	g.cg//CSUT+394297377			P-86× 0 ☆ 0
Research Lawrence of	inter .		To Postal Login User	System Manager Log Qut
Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Manager	ment Settings: Department ID Man	agement > Register New Departm	ent
Costrol Menu	Register New Department		Lant G	pointed: 29/06 2015 07:35:41
Paper Source Settings Network	Register a new department.			
= Lavert			(CK Cancel
E Print Quality				
User Maintesance	New Department			
Output/Control	Department ID:	7654321	(Max 7 digits)	
	Set PIN			
E Device Control	PR:		(Max 7 digits)	
Management Settings	Confirm		(Max 7 digits)	
Department ID Management				
a Security	X			

[Department ID]

Enter a number of up to seven digits for the Department ID.

[Set PIN]

To set a PIN, select the check box and enter a number of up to seven digits both in the [PIN] and [Confirm] text boxes.

Editing the settings of the registered Department ID

- 1 Click the corresponding text link under [Department ID] to edit.
- 2 Change the settings as necessary and click [OK].

NOTE:

Deleting a Department ID

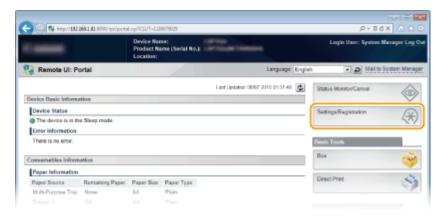
• Click [Delete] on the right of the Department ID you want to delete > click [OK].

Enabling the Department ID Management

After you register as many Department IDs as necessary, enable Department ID Management.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**

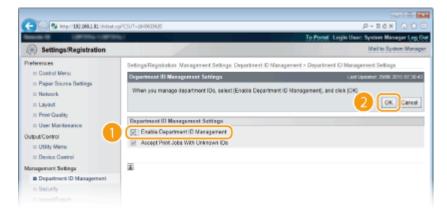
2 Click [Settings/Registration].



3 Click [Department ID Management] > [Settings].

		P-84
Contraction of the second second	k og	To Postal Login User: System Manager Log
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Mana
elerences	SettingsRegistration Management Settings Depa	where it D Management
In Control Menu	Department ID Management	Last Updates: 29/06 2015 07:362
© Paper Source Settings	to particular management	
iii Network		Clear All Counts Settings
a Layout		
E Print Quality	Department ID Page Total	
User Maintenance	Register New Department	
(put/Centrol		Dept. ID: 1 to 100 a Displa
Utility Menu	Dept. ID	Printed Pages
II Device Control	Jobs With Unknown IDs	0
nagement Settings	Usiny, E-Mail Print	0
Department ID Management	E .	
Security	*	
ImportExport		
I License/Other		
		Copyright CANON INC. 3

4 Select the [Enable Department ID Management] check box and click [OK].



[Enable Department ID Management]

Select the check box to enable Department ID Management. If you do not want to use Department ID Management, clear the check box.

NOTE:

• For information on the [Accept Print Jobs With Unknown IDs] check box, see **Blocking Jobs When Department ID Is Unknown(P. 261)**.

NOTE

If Department ID Management is enabled

 When users try to print a file in the USB memory device or a document stored on the SD card from the operation panel, the authentication screen is displayed. Enter the Department ID and PIN, select <Log In>, and press a.

Enter Dept. ID & PIN
<remove memory="" usb=""></remove>
<log in=""></log>
Dept. ID:
PIN:

 To log on to the Remote UI in General User Mode, you must enter the Department ID and PIN. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

When the XPS Printer Driver Is Used

If you want to use Department ID Management when the XPS printer driver is used, set key pairs for TLS encrypted communication (**Using TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)**). After completing the settings of key pairs, configure the settings shown below.



Log on to the Remote UI in Management Mode (Starting Remote UI(P. 333)) [Settings/ Registration] [Network] [TCP/IP Settings] [Edit] in [Department ID Management PIN Confirmation] check box [OK]

C- 0 Ktp://182.068.1.81/retilep	fpin.cg/PCSUT=309856864	P-86× 0 ☆ 0
Rest OFFICIARY		o Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(A) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preferences: Network > TCP/IP Settings > Edit Departs	ment ID Management PIN Confirmation Settings
Control Menu	Edit Department ID Management PIN Confirmation Settings	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 07:37:13
Paper Source Settings Network	The settings will be changed as follows. (Changes offective after the main)	power is turned OFF and ON.)
= Layout		OK Cancel
Print Quality User Maintenance	Department ID Management PIN Confirmation Settings	
Output/Centrol	Sel Use Department ID Management PIN Confirmation	
Utility Menu	X	
II Device Control		
Management Settings		
Department ID Management		
= Security		

[Use Department ID Management PIN Confirmation]

If you select the check box, Department ID Management will be enabled for printing with the XPS printer driver. If you do not want to use Department ID Management, clear the check box.

IMPORTANT:

 If any key pair is not set in the machine, you cannot enable [Use Department ID Management PIN Confirmation]. Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 315)

Setting the Department ID Management for Printing from the Computer

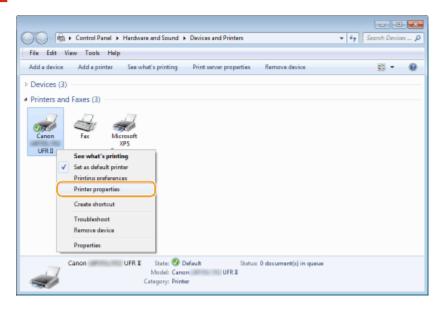
If you want to enable Department ID Management for printing from a computer, you need to specify settings by using the printer driver you already installed on the computer. Specify the Department ID and PIN as necessary.

IMPORTANT

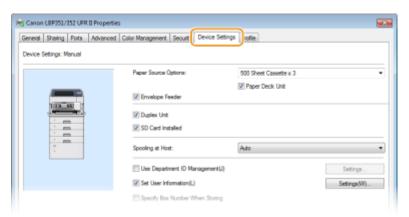
To perform the following procedure, log on to your computer with an administrator account.

1 Open the printer folder. **O**Displaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)

2 Right-click your printer icon and click [Printer properties] or [Properties].



3 Click the [Device Settings] tab and specify the required settings.



- 1 Select the [Use Department ID Management] check box and click [Settings] on the right of it.
- 2 Specify the settings as necessary and click [OK].

ſ	Department ID/PIN Settin	gs 📧			
	Alow PIN Settings				
	Department ID:	1234567			
	PIN	•••••			
	Verfy Confirm Department ID/PIN When Pinting				
	Athenticate Department ID/PIN at Device				
	OK Cancel Help				

[Allow PIN Setting]

Select the check box to enable the PIN setting.

[Department ID]

Enter a number of up to seven digits for the Department ID.

[PIN]

Enter a number of up to seven digits for the PIN if it is set for the Department ID.

[Verify]

Click to verify that the correct ID and PIN are entered. This function is not available if the machine and the computer are connected via a USB or WSD (Web Services on Devices) port.

[Confirm Department ID/PIN When Printing]

Select the check box to display the [Confirm Department ID/PIN] pop-up screen each time you print from a computer.

[Authenticate Department ID/PIN at Device]

Select the check box if the machine and the computer are connected via a USB or WSD port.

Click [OK].

NOTE

Logging on to the machine

 When you try to print from a computer when Department ID Management is enabled, the following pop-up screen is displayed (unless the [Confirm Department ID/PIN When Printing] check box is cleared):

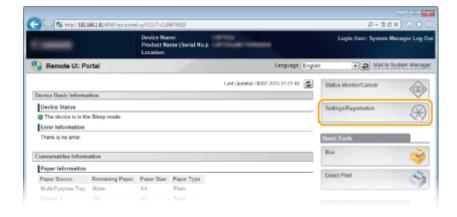
Confirm	Department ID/PIN		
1	Confirm Department ID and PIN.		
	Department ID:	1234555	
	PIN:		
	ОК	Cancel Help	

Blocking Jobs When Department ID Is Unknown

The factory default settings are such that even when Department ID Management is enabled, you can print from a computer without entering an ID and PIN. If you want to change this so that printing is not possible unless an ID and PIN are entered, use the following procedure.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

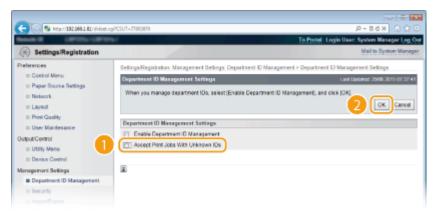
2 Click [Settings/Registration].



3 Click [Department ID Management] > [Settings].

-		
C 🖓 🛞 😵 http://182.068.1.81/Hidlot.cg	i	우-86× 6 습
Anna di Cardina Cardina	R. C. C.	To Postel Login User: System Manager Log Ou
(A) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Management Settings, Dv	partment ID Management
III Costrol Menu	Department ID Management	Last Updated: 29/00 2015 07:36 20
Paper Source Settings		
Network		Clear All Counts Settings
= Layout	to an and a set	
II Print Quality	Department ID Page Total	
User Maintenance	Register New Department	
Output/Centrol		Dept. ID: 1 to 100 w Display
= Utility Menu	Dept. ID	Printed Pages
II Device Control	Jobs With Unknown IDs	0
Management Sellings	Utility, E-Mail Print	0
Department ID Management	X	
a Security	*	
ImportiExport		
= License/Other		
		Copyright CANON INC. 2015

4 Clear the [Accept Print Jobs With Unknown IDs] check box and click [OK].



IMPORTANT:

• If you clear the check box, users cannot print by a method that is not supported by Department ID Management or perform Direct Print from the Remote UI that the users log on in Management Mode.

LINKS

Setting Access Privileges(P. 252) Setting the System Manager Password(P. 253)

Setting a Remote UI PIN

0X7U-03Y

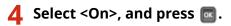
You can set a PIN for access to the Remote UI. All users use a common PIN.

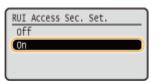
NOTE

When Department ID Management is enabled, setting here is not required. Setting the Department ID Management(P. 256)

Press ▶ (□☑).

- 🤰 Use 🔺 / ▼ to select <Network>, and press 🔤.
- When a message appears, press 🕅.
- 3 Select <Remote UI Settings> > <RUI Access Sec. Set.>.





5 Select <Remote UI Access PIN>, and press 🔤.

6 Set a PIN.

- Enter up to 7 digits and press 🚾.
- As <Confirm PIN> is displayed for confirmation, enter again the same PIN digits.

Remote UI Access PIN	Confirm PIN
******	****
(fix : OK key)	(fix : OK key)

NOTE

If Remote UI settings are initialized

• The Remote UI Access PIN is also initialized. After an initialization, reset the PIN. **Initializing Menu(P. 551)**

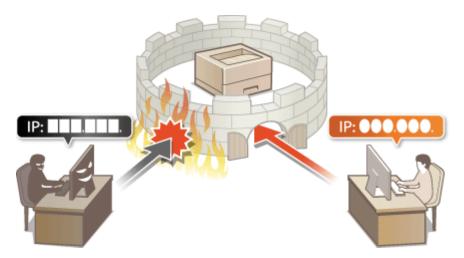
LINKS

Setting Access Privileges(P. 252)
 Setting the System Manager Password(P. 253)

Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls

0X7U-040

Without proper security, unauthorized third parties can access computers and other communication devices that are connected to a network. To prevent this unauthorized access, specify the settings for packet filter, a feature that restricts communication to devices with specified IP addresses or MAC addresses.



Specifying IP Addresses for Firewall Rules

0X7U-041

You can either limit communication to only devices with specified IP addresses, or block devices with specified IP addresses but permit other communications. You can specify a single IP address or a range of IP addresses. For data reception, you can specify IP addresses by specifying port numbers.

NOTE

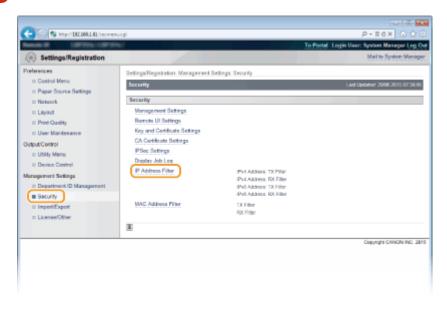
- Up to 16 IP addresses (or ranges of IP addresses) can be specified for both IPv4 and IPv6.
- The maximum number of port numbers that can be specified for a single IP address is 50.
- The packet filters described in this section control communications over TCP, UDP, and ICMP.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

ACC AND A DECIMAL OF A DECIMAL	968.1.81.8000/pp/ports						6× 0 12 5
		Device Nar Product Na Location:	ne (Seriel No.):	Contraction of the second		Login User: System	Manager Log O
👌 Remote UI: Po	ortal			L	ingunge: English	· P Main	o System Manage
				Lant Updates: 06/07 2015	015150 🛃	Status Monitov/Cancel	6
Device Basic Informa	stion						\triangleleft
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	(V)
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						47
Error Information					`		
There is no error.						Benic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	5
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

3 Click [Security] > [IP Address Filter].



Click [Edit] for the filter type that you want to use.

-			
C 😳 😵 http://182.068.1.81/pfilter.e			P+16× 0 û 🖯
Ratio 0 UPDISCOPE			To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(+) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration Nanage	rient Settings: Security > IP Address P	iller
ID Control Menu	IP Address Filter		Lant Updated: 25/06 2015 07:38-19
Paper Source Settings	IPv4 Address: TX Filter		
II Network	IPYS ADDITUSE: LA PERM		
= Layout			Est.
Print Quality	TX Filter:	0#	
III User Maintesance	IPv4 Address: RX Filter		
Output/Centrol Utility Menu	Investabilities, Ita Filter		\square
II Device Control			EM.
Management Settings	RX Piller	01	
II Department ID Management	IPv6 Address; TX Filter		
· Security	IF TO PROTECT. LA FILLE		<u> </u>
8 Import/Export			Est.
= License/Other	TX Filter:	OW	
	IPv6 Address: RX Filter		
			Est.
	RX Filter	0#	
	12		

[IPv4 Address: TX Filter]

Select to restrict sending data from the machine to a computer by specifying IPv4 addresses.

[IPv4 Address: RX Filter]

Select to restrict receiving data from the machine to a computer by specifying IPv4 addresses and the port number.

[IPv6 Address: TX Filter]

Select to restrict sending data from the machine to a computer by specifying IPv6 addresses.

[IPv6 Address: RX Filter]

Select to restrict receiving data from the machine to a computer by specifying IPv6 addresses and the port number.

5 Specify the settings for packet filtering.

For TX Filter

Select the default policy to allow or reject the communication of other devices with the machine, and then specify IP addresses for exceptions.

C 8 http://182.068.1.81/pfilterv/	bsog/1Action=CET_JPV1TX8xCSUT=-685LE3L37	P+86× 0 ℃ 8
Rende 18 CERTISAL LINES	To Partel	Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Management Settings: Security > IP Address Filter > IPv4 Address	
D Paper Source Settings	IPv4 Address: Edit TX Filter	Last Updated: 79/06 2015 07:38:57
ii Network ii Layout	The settings will be changed as follows. (Changes offective after the main power is	turned OFF and ON.) OK Cancel
B Print Quality	Set TX Eiter	
D User Maintenance	571 Use Filter	
Output/Control	Default Policy: @ Allow	
 Utility Mena Device Control 	Reject	
Management Sellings	Exception Address	
Department ID Management	Register Address	Add
Security	To enter multiple IP addresses at the same time, use a hyphen as follows: xxx xxx x	NO. 310. UNK AND DISC 3101
© ImportiExport	"To specify the prefix length, enter the IP address as follows: xxx xxx xxx xxx/xx (Pre	ta Longity (0-32)
ID Likense/Other		
	Delote	
	x	
	-	Provide and the second second
		Copyright CAVON INC. 2015

1 Select the [Use Filter] check box and click the [Reject] or [Allow] radio button for the [Default Policy].

[Use Filter]

Select the check box to restrict communication. Clear the check box to disable the restriction.

[Default Policy]

Select the precondition to allow or reject the communication of other devices with the machine.

[Allow]	Select to block communication packets when they are sent to or received from devices whose IP addresses are entered in [Exception Addresses]. Communications with other devices are permitted.
[Reject]	Select to pass communication packets only when they are sent to or received from devices whose IP addresses are entered in [Exception Addresses]. Communications with other devices are prohibited.

2 Specify address exceptions.

• Enter the IP address (or the range of IP addresses) in [Register Address] and click [Add].

IMPORTANT:

Check for entry errors

 If IP addresses are incorrectly entered, you may be unable to access the machine from the Remote UI, in which case you need to set <Address Filter> to <Off>. OAddress Filter(P. 392)

NOTE:

When you have selected [Reject] under [Default Policy]

• Neither multicast packets nor broadcast packets can be filtered.

Deleting an IP address from exceptions

• Select an IP address and click [Delete].

	Add
time, use a hyphen as follows: encrossment-excentionation	
ddress as follows xex.xxx.xxx.xxx/xx (prefix length: 0-32)	
545 146 1 255 185 186 1 248	
(192.163.1.4)	
Delete	-

Click [OK].

For RX Filter

When selecting [Allow] under [Default Policy], specify the IP addresses of devices whose communication with the machine should be blocked. When selecting [Reject] under [Default Policy], specify the IP addresses of devices that should be able to communicate with the machine.

C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	Incogilitation=GET_JPV40X8xCSUT=-1124614948	P + E C X in the Control Login User: System Menager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager Log III Com
Preferences		
Costrol Menu		curity > IP Address Filter > IPvd Address: Edit RX Filter
	IPv4 Address: Edit RX Filter	Last Updated: 25/06 2015 07:40:23
 Paper Source Settings Network Layout 	The settings will be changed as follows. (Char	rges effective after the main power is turned OFF and ON.) OK Cancel
Print Quality User Maintenance	Set RX Filter	
Output/Centrol Utility Menu	Default Policy @	Allow Reject
III Device Control Management Settings III Department ID Management	Exception Address Register New	
Security Import/Export	Exception Address	Part Number
= License/Other	x	
		Coeyingint CANON INC. 2016

1 Click [Register New].

2 Specify address exceptions.

- Enter the IP address (or the range of IP addresses) in [Register Address].
- To specify a port number, select the [Specify Port Number] check box, enter a port number (1 to 65535) in [Port Number], and click [Add].

-		
C 🛞 😫 http://182.068.1.81/pfilter	vindstogi	P-116X 0 습요
Read of Control of the	ner i	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Q
(A) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manage
Preferences © Control Menu	Settings/Registration. Nanagerie Exception Address	erd Setlings. Security > IP Address Filter > IPv4 Address. Edit RX Filter > Register New
II Paper Source Settings	Register New Exception Addr	ess Last Updated: 29/06 2015 07:40:42
III Network		OK Cancel
Print Quality	Exception Address	
User Maintenance	Register Address:	192.168.1.11
Output/Control Utility Mona Device Control		To enter multiple IP addresses at the same time, use a hypites as follows: too accuox acc-sociation accuox To specify the prefix length, enter the IP address as follows: too too too too (Prefix Length: 1-32)
Management Settings	Bpecify Port Number	
Department ID Management Socurby ImportExpont License/Other	Port Mamber:	Dekes Add
	*	
		Creviant CANON INC. 281

IMPORTANT:

Check for entry errors

• If IP addresses or the port numbers are incorrectly entered, you may be unable to access the machine from the Remote UI, in which case you need to set <Address Filter> to <Off>. **Oddress Filter(P. 392)**

NOTE:

To delete a set port number

• Select the port number to delete, and click [Delete].

10000	 	 _

- 3 Click [OK].
- 4 Select the [Use Filter] check box and click the [Reject] or [Allow] radio button for the [Default Policy].

ander B. Special Speci		TeP	ortel Login User: System Manager Log (
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manag
eferences	Settings/Registration Management Set	lings: Security > IP Address Filter > IPvL	Address: Edit RX Filler
III Control Menu	IPv4 Address: Edit RX Filter		Land Updated: 01/07 2015 02:47 S
III Paper Source Settings III Network III Layout	The settings will be changed as follow	vs. (Changes effective after the main pow	er is turned OFF and ON.) OK Cancel
Print Quality User Maintenance Aput/Control	Set RX Filter	a Alco	
II Utility Mene III Denice Control Management Settings	Exception Address	Reject	
© Department ID Management	Register New		
Security	Exception Address	Port Number	
ImportiExport License/Other	192.168.1.11	on	Delete
	X		
			Copyright CANON INC. 2

[Use Filter]

Select the check box to restrict communication. Clear the check box to disable the restriction.

[Default Policy]

Select the precondition to allow or reject the communication of other devices with the machine.

[Allow]	Select to block communication packets when they are sent to or received from devices whose IP addresses are entered in [Exception Addresses]. Communications with other devices are permitted.
[Reject]	Select to pass communication packets only when they are sent to or received from devices whose IP addresses are entered in [Exception Addresses]. Communications with other devices are prohibited.

NOTE:

Deleting an IP address from exceptions

• Select an IP address to delete, and click [Delete].

Exception Address	Port Number	
192.168.1.11	Off	Delete
۲.		

5 Click [OK].

6 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].

😄 💿 🧐 krav/182.068.1.81/iteleven	ai	ρ-16× 0.0
Settings/Registration		To Postel Login User: System Manager Log O Mail to System Manage
references	Settings/Registration: Output/Control: Device Control	
III Costrol Menu	Device Control	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 00:48 46
 Paper Source Settings Network Layout 	Select the device control from the below options, and click [Execution	AN) Execute
© Print Quality © User Maintenance	Device Control	
User Mankenance uput/Control Utility Menu Denice Control	Device Control Options: Online Control	2
Enagement Sellings II: Department ID Management	×	
a Security		

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Using the operation panel

• You can also enable or disable IP address filtering from the Setting menu of the operation panel. **OAddress** Filter(P. 392)

LINKS

Specifying MAC Addresses for Firewall Rules(P. 271)

Specifying MAC Addresses for Firewall Rules

0X7U-042

You can limit communication to only devices with specified MAC addresses, or block devices with specified MAC addresses but permit other communications. Up to 50 MAC addresses can be specified.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333) 1 2 Click [Settings/Registration]. 1.51 8 http://182.068.1.814 P-BdX Name (Sorial No.) Language: English Pa Remote UI: Portal - 🔁 Mai Lant Updated: 06/07 2015 01:51:40 Status Monitos/Cancel **Device Basic Information** Device Status The device is in the Sleep mode æ Error Information There is no error. Bax Consumables Information Paper Information Direct Print
 Paper Source
 Remaining Paper
 Paper Size
 Paper Type

 Multi-Purpose Tray
 None
 Ad
 Plain
 Click [Security] > [MAC Address Filter]. 3 1.63 🗟 😪 http://182.068.1.81/ P-16X

Preferences	Settings/Registration: Management Settin	gs: Security	
Costrol Menu Paper Source Settings Network Prest Castling User Mantesance User Mantesance User Costrol Utility Menu Denics Costrol Co	Security Security Management Bettings Rends UI Settings Kay and Certificate Bettings CA Certificate Bettings PSec Settings Display Job Log IP Address Filter WAC Address Filter	Per Address TX Piller Per Address TX Piller Per Address RX Filter Per Address RX Filter Per Address RX Filter TX Filter fX Filter	Lant Updator: 2006 7015 07-425
	×		Copyright CANON INC. 20

4 Click [Edit] for a filter type.

-			
C 38 http://182.068.1.81/meef/ter-	ogi1CSUT=-156015559		P-86X 🕥 🛈 🖯
Research Little Colleges	8		To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration Manager	ent Settings: Security > MAC Addres	ss Filter
Costrol Menu Paper Source Settings	MAC Address Filter		Lant Updated: 29/00 2015 07:48:07
III Network	TX Filter		
E Likyout E Print Quality	TX Filter:	Off	Edt.
User Maintenance		01	
Output/Control Utility Menu	RX Filter		
II Device Control			Est.
Management Settings	RX Pillar:	Of	
II Department ID Management	X		
Security			

[TX Filter]

Select to restrict sending data from the machine to a computer by specifying MAC addresses.

[RX Filter]

Select to restrict receiving data from the machine to a computer by specifying MAC addresses.

5 Specify the settings for packet filtering.

• Select the precondition (default policy) to allow or reject the communication of other devices with the machine, and then specify MAC addresses for exceptions.

C () 4ttp://1321681.81/mecfik	erts.cgilVetion=0E1_WWCTX8xC9VT=-1197455407		P-16X 0 ☆0
0		19	Portel Login User: System Manager Log O
(*) Settings/Registration			Mail to Spatem Manage
Preferences	Settings/Registration Management Setting	s: Security > MAC Address Filter >	Edit TX Filter
III Control Menu	Edit TX Filter		Last Updated: 29/06 2015-07-44-29
II Paper Source Settings	The settings will be changed as follows, (Changes effective after the main or	new is keyed (VEE and (Ob))
© Network	the second and the charged as records.	Country and a second and a second second second	
= Layout			OK Cancel
Print Quality	TX Filter		
User Maintenance	El Use Filter		
Dutput/Centrol	Default Policy:	a Alco	
 Utility Menu 		Reject	
II Device Control	Exception Addresses		
Enagement Settings © Department ID Management			
Security			Delete
B ImportiExport			
c License/Other			
	Register Address:		Add Edg
	×		
			Copyright CANON INC. 281

Select the [Use Filter] check box and click the [Allow] or [Reject] radio button for the [Default Policy].

[Use Filter]

Select the check box to restrict communication. Clear the check box to disable the restriction.

[Default Policy]

Select the precondition to allow or reject other devices to communicate with the machine.

[Allow]	Select to block communication packets when they are sent to or received from devices whose MAC addresses are entered in [Exception Addresses]. Communications with other devices are permitted.
[Reject]	Select to pass communication packets only when they are sent to or received from devices whose MAC addresses are entered in [Exception Addresses]. Communications with other devices are prohibited.

- 2 Specify address exceptions.
 - Enter the MAC address in the [Register Address] text box and click [Add].

• You do not need to delimit the address with hyphens or colons.

IMPORTANT:

Check for entry errors

 If MAC addresses are incorrectly entered, you may become unable to access the machine from the Remote UI, in which case you need to set <Address Filter> to <Off>. OAddress Filter(P. 392)

NOTE:

When [Reject] is selected for an outbound filter

• Outgoing multicast and broadcast packets cannot be filtered.

Deleting a MAC address from exceptions

• Select a MAC address and click [Delete].

AABBCCDDEEEE 0123456769AB)
	Delete
0123456789AB	Add Edit

3 Click [OK].

5 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Using the operation panel

• You can also enable or disable MAC address filtering from the setting menu of the operation panel. Address Filter(P. 392)

LINKS

Specifying IP Addresses for Firewall Rules(P. 265)

Setting a Proxy

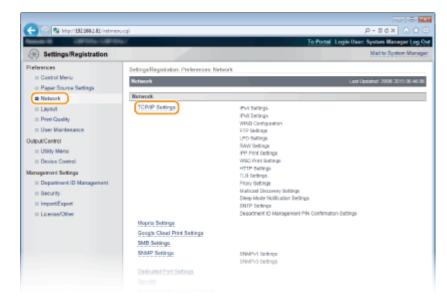
A proxy (or HTTP proxy server) refers to a computer or software that carries out HTTP communication for other devices, especially when communicating with resources outside the network, such as when browsing Web sites. The client devices connect to the outside network through the proxy server, and do not communicate directly to the resources outside. Setting a proxy not only facilitates management of traffic between in-house and outside networks but also blocks unauthorized access and consolidates anti-virus protection for enhanced security. When you use Google Cloud Print to print over the Internet, you can enhance security by setting a proxy. When setting a proxy, make sure that you have the necessary proxy information, including the IP address, port number, and a user name and password for authentication.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333**)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

- California California (* 1923)	68.1.81.0000/ipo/poda	AcgiPCSUT+138	9079029			,0 + 11	ex 🕥 🏫
Common I.		Device Nan Product Na Location:	re: me (Soriel No.):	Contractor of the local division of the loca		Login User: System	Manager Log
🕻 Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: English	· D Naito	o System Mana
				Last Updated: 06/07 2	015-01-51-40 🛃	Status Monitor/Cancel	là
Device Basic Informa	tion						0
Device Status						Settings/Registration	G
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						2
Error information							
There is no error.						Besic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Вая	
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	4
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				0

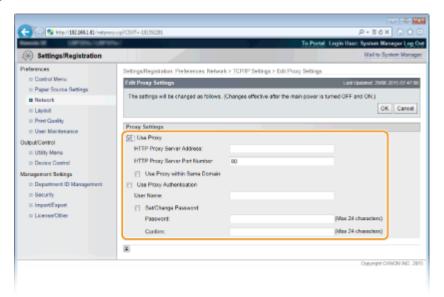
3 Click [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings].



4 Click [Edit] in [Proxy Settings].

C 8 http://182.068.1.81/vettopip.o	ą.		P-26× 0 ☆ 0
	Proxy Settings		Eds.
	Use Proxy: HTTP Proxy Server Address:	on	
	HTTP Proxy Server Port Number:	80	
	Use Proxy within Same Domain:	on	
	Proxy Authoritication:	on	
	Upor Name:		
	Paueword	Not est.	
	Multicart Discovery Settings		
			Eds
	Discovery Response:	On	
	Scope Name:	default	

5 Select the [Use Proxy] check box and specify the required settings.



[Use Proxy]

Select the check box to use the specified proxy server when communicating with an HTTP server.

[HTTP Proxy Server Address]

Enter the address of the proxy server. Specify the IP address or host name depending on the environment.

[HTTP Proxy Server Port Number]

Change the port number as necessary. Enter a number between 1 and 65535.

[Use Proxy within Same Domain]

Select the check box to also use the specified proxy server for communication with devices in the same domain.

[Use Proxy Authentication]

To enable authentication by the proxy server, select the check box and enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the user name in the [User Name] text box.

[Set/Change Password]

To set or change the password for the proxy authentication, when it is enabled, select the check box and enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the new password in the [Password] text box. For confirmation, enter the same password in the [Confirm] text box.

6 Click [OK].

Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Using the operation panel

• Proxy settings can also be accessed from the setting menu of the operation panel. **Proxy Settings(P. 382)**

LINKS

Ousing Google Cloud Print(P. 176)

Restricting the Machine's Functions

0X7U-044

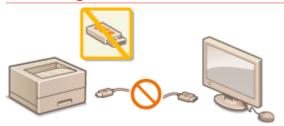
Some of the functions of the machine may rarely be used or provide opportunities for misuse. For security purposes, the machine can be set to limit its capabilities by partially or completely disabling these functions.

Restricting the Printing Functions



ORestricting the Printing Operations(P. 278)

Restricting USB Functions



ORestricting USB Functions(P. 282)

Restricting Operation Panel Functions



ORestricting Operation Panel Functions(P. 285)

Restricting Network Functions Including HTTP Communications





Disabling HTTP Communication(P. 288)
 Disabling Remote UI(P. 289)
 Disabling the LAN Port(P. 290)

Hiding the Print Job History



OHiding the Print Job History(P. 291)

Restricting the Printing Operations

0X7U-045

You can specify settings to prevent received print data from being automatically printed, reducing wasteful use of paper and disabling third parties to use the machine. To use this function, you must install an optional SD card. **Installing an SD Card(P. 583)**



NOTE

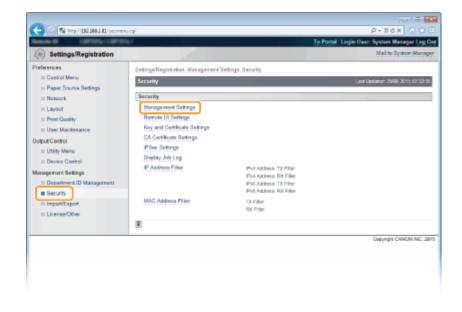
• Even when the printing operations are restricted, settings lists and reports can be printed. **Printing Reports and Lists(P. 536)**

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**

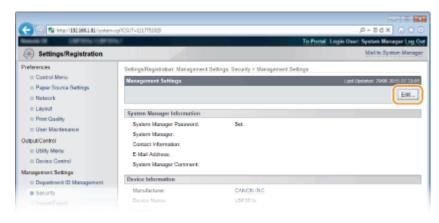
2 Click [Settings/Registration].

		Device Nat Product Na Location:	ne: me (Seriel No.)			Login User: System I	Manager Log (
🕻 Remote UI: Po	ərtəl				Language: English	• D Maito	System Manag
				Lant Updated: 06/07 20	15-01-51-40 🛃	Status Monitor/Cancel	6
Device Basic Informa	tion						9
Device Status						Settings/Registration	(V)
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						477
Error information							
There is no error.						Basic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	-
Paper Information							-
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

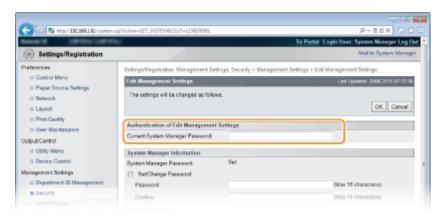
3 Click [Security] > [Management Settings].



4 Click [Edit].



5 Enter the System Manager password in [Current System Manager Password].



6 Select the [Restrict Printer Jobs] check box and click [OK].

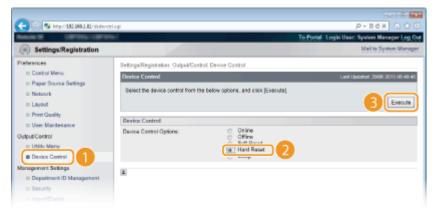
C 20 http://182.068.1.81/system/	ogilAction=GET_SVSTEM&CSUT= (LESST99435		P-16× 0 ☆0
	1. C		o Portal Login User: System Meneger Log Out
(+) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
references	Settings/Registration: Management Sett	ngs: Security > Management Sett	ings > Edit Management Settings
ID Costrol Menu	Edit Management Settings.		Last Updated: 29/06 2015 07-40-11
© Paper Source Settings	The settings will be changed as follow	l.	
Network			OK, Cancel
 Layout Print Quality 			
D User Maintenance	Authentication of Edit Management	Settings	
Aput/Control	Current System Manager Password		
© Utility Menu	System Manager Information		
II Device Control	System Manager Pasaword:	Set.	
ragement Settings	SetChange Password		
Department ID Management	Pasovora:		(blax 16 characters)
Security	Confirm		(Max 15 characters)
© ImportiExport			(max re charactery)
III License/Other	System Manager:		
	Contact Information:		
	E-Mail Address:		
	Bystern Manager Commont:		
	Device Information		
	Device Name:	LOPPIC N	
	Location:		
	Restrict Printer Jobs		
	Restrict Printer Jobs		
	General User Job Operation Settings		
	Allow End-Usor's Job Operation		

[Restrict Printer Jobs]

Select the check box to restrict the printing operations of the machine. Clear the check box to disable the restriction.

7 Perform a hard reset.

Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

When the printing operations are restricted

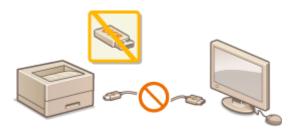
- Only Stored Job Print can be performed from the printer drivers. Printing a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)(P. 137)
- Only PDF, PS, EPS, and XPS files stored in boxes can be printed from the Remote UI. Printing without Opening a File (Direct Print)(P. 146)
- USB Direct Print from the USB memory device and E-mail Print are not available.

OPrinting a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)(P. 137)

Restricting USB Functions

0X7U-046

USB is a convenient way of connecting peripheral devices and storing or relocating data, but USB can also be a source of information leakage if it is not properly managed. Be especially careful when handling USB memory devices. This section describes how to restrict connection via the USB port of the machine and how to prohibit use of USB memory devices.



Restricting the USB Connection with a Computer(P. 282)
 Restricting the USB Direct Print Function(P. 283)

Restricting the USB Connection with a Computer

You can disable the USB port, for connecting a computer, located on the back side of the machine. Connection to a computer via USB will be disabled, but a USB memory device can be connected to the USB port on the right side of the machine.



- 🤰 Use 🔺 / ▼ to select <Interface>, and press 🔤.
- **3** Select <Interface Selection> and press **a**.
- When a message appears, press



Select <Off> and press 🔤.



อ <0ff>

Disables the USB port located on the back side of the machine.

🜔 <0n>

Enables the USB port located on the back side of the machine.

6 Perform a hard reset. **O**Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)

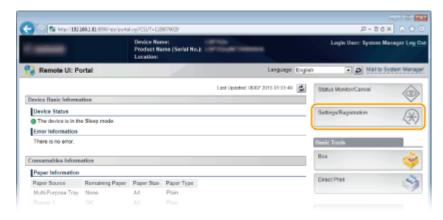
The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

Restricting the USB Direct Print Function

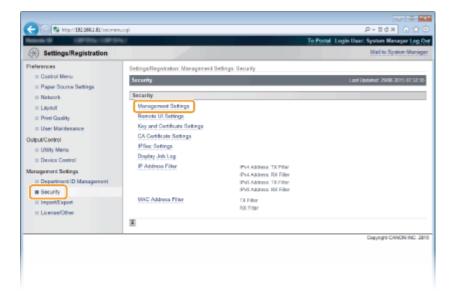
You can disable printing data from a USB memory device. This makes it impossible to print data stored in the USB memory.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

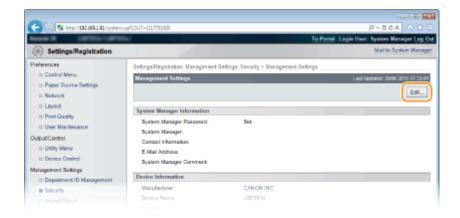
2 Click [Settings/Registration].



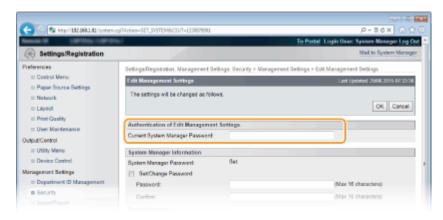
3 Click [Security] > [Management Settings].



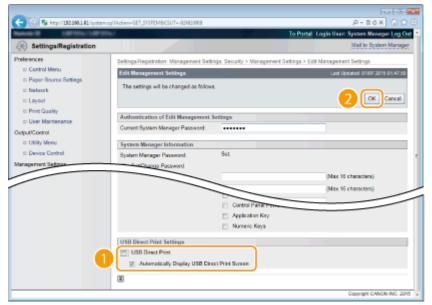
4 Click [Edit].



5 Enter the System Manager password in [Current System Manager Password].



6 Clear the [USB Direct Print] check box and click [OK].



[USB Direct Print]

Clear the check box to disable direct printing from a USB memory device. Select the check box to enable printing from a USB memory device. If you also select the [Automatically Display USB Direct Print Screen] check box, the USB Direct Print screen will be automatically displayed when a USB memory device is attached to the machine.

LINKS

Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)(P. 120)

Restricting Operation Panel Functions

0X7U-047

You can restrict the use of the keys on the operation panel to prevent the settings of the machine from being carelessly changed.

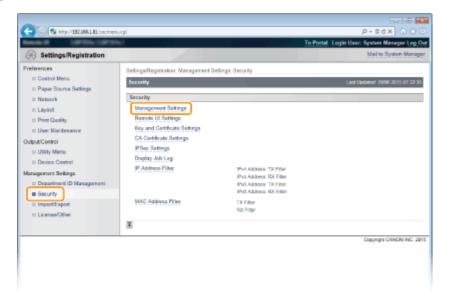


1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

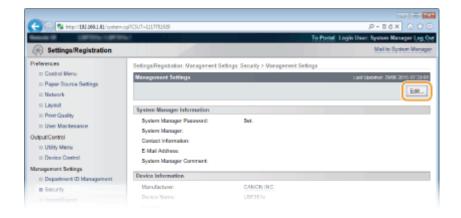
2 Click [Settings/Registration].

		Device Nue Product Ne Location:	ne: me (Sorial No.):	CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR		Login User: System	Manager Log
👌 Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: English	· P Maite	System Mana
				Lant Updatest: 06/07 2	015-01:51:40	Status Monitos/Cancel	6
Device Basic Informe	stion						\bigtriangledown
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	(V
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						47
Error information							
There is no error.						Basic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

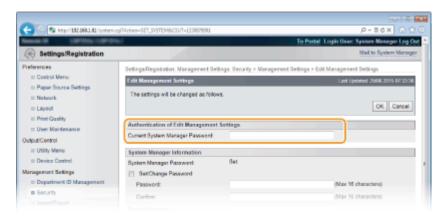
Click [Security] > [Management Settings].



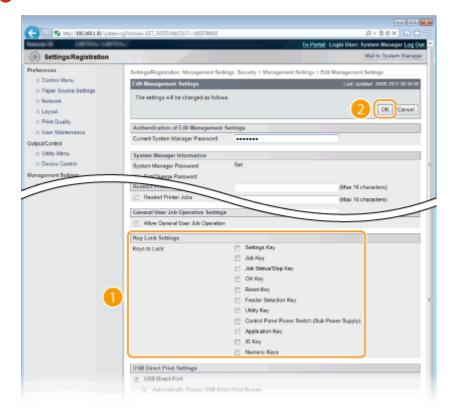




5 Enter the System Manager password in [Current System Manager Password].



6 Select the check box of the key to restrict and click [OK].



[Keys to Lock]

You can select the check box to lock the corresponding key even when it is pressed on the operation panel. Clear the check box to unlock the key. You can also lock the Setup key from the operation panel (**OMng.** Settings(P. 371)).

NOTE:

• Functions of the Keys **Operation Panel(P. 24)**

Disabling HTTP Communication

0X7U-048

HTTP is used for communications over the network, such as when you access the machine via the Remote UI. If you are using a USB connection or are otherwise not using HTTP, you can disable HTTP to block malicious third-party intrusions via the unused HTTP port.

IMPORTANT

Disabling HTTP disables some of the network capabilities, such as the Remote UI, WSD printing., and printing with Google Cloud Print.

1 Press ▶ (□☑).

 $\mathbf{2}$ Use \mathbf{A} / $\mathbf{\nabla}$ to select <Network>, and press \mathbf{m} .

• When a message appears, press 🕅.

3 Select <TCP/IP Settings> > <HTTP>.

🚺 Select <Off>, and press 國.



🔁 <0ff>

Disables HTTP communication.

🜔 <0n>

Enables HTTP communication.

5 Perform a hard reset. **O**Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

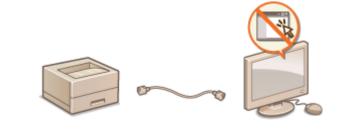
LINKS

Using Remote UI(P. 332)
Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions(P. 197)
Using Google Cloud Print(P. 176)
When the XPS Printer Driver Is Used(P. 259)

Disabling Remote UI

0X7U-049

The Remote UI is useful because the machine settings can be specified by using a Web browser on a computer. To use the Remote UI, the machine must be connected to a computer over the network. If the machine is connected to a computer via USB, or if you do not need to use the Remote UI, you might want to disable the Remote UI to reduce the risk of having your machine controlled remotely over the network by malicious third parties.



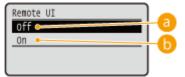
1 Press ▶ (□☑).

🤰 Use 🔺 / ▼ to select <Network>, and press 🔤.

• When a message appears, press 🕅.

3 Select <Remote UI Settings> > <Remote UI>.

4 Select <Off>, and press



🔁 <0ff>

Disables the Remote UI.

🜔 <On>

Enables the Remote UI.

5 Perform a hard reset. Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

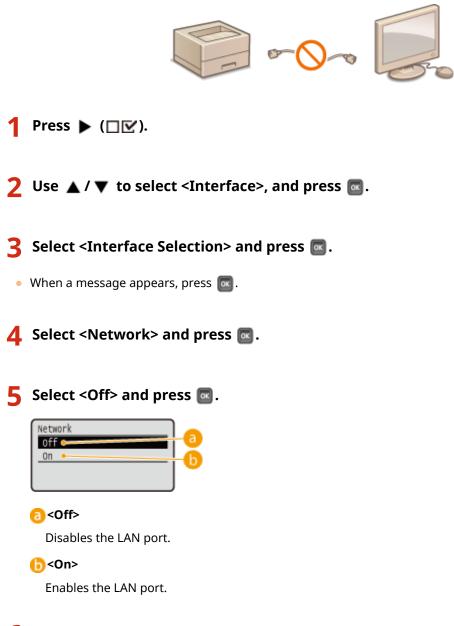
LINKS

Using Remote UI(P. 332)Disabling HTTP Communication(P. 288)

Disabling the LAN Port

0X7U-04A

A LAN port is an interface that connects a LAN cable for using a network. When you are using the machine via USB, you can disable the LAN port to completely shut down the network, blocking malicious third-party intrusions via the LAN port.



6 Perform a hard reset. **O**Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

Hiding the Print Job History

To protect the privacy of users, you can specify settings to disable displaying the print job history on the Remote UI screen and printing the print history list. The print job history is updated and maintained even if it is set to be hidden, so that administrators can view the history as necessary.

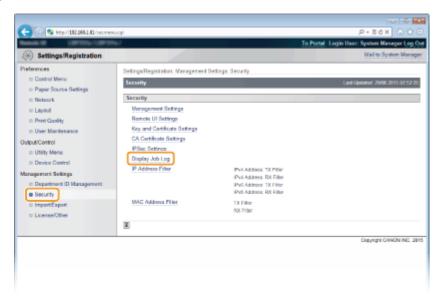


Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

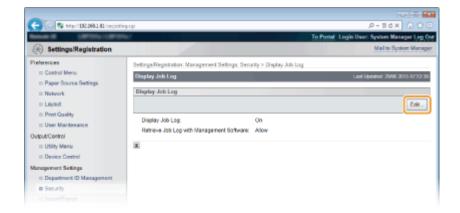
2 Click [Settings/Registration].

0 10 kep/182	088.1.81.0000/ipo/ports	LogiPCSUT=138	9079029			p-1	ex n r
Common of the local division of the local di		Device Nur Product Ne Location:	ne: me (Sorial No.):	Constant of the local division of the local		Login Usor: Syste	n Manager Log O
🔒 Remote UI: Po	ərtəl				Language: English	- @ Nai	to System Manage
				Land Updatest: 06/07 2	015-01:51:40 📓	Status Monitos/Cancel	
Device Basic Informa	tion						V
Device Status						Settings/Registration	0
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						(1)
Error Information						-	
There is no error.						Besic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Вак	ં
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

3 Click [Security] ▶ [Display Job Log].



4 Click [Edit].



5 Clear the [Display Job Log] check box and click [OK].

(C) Settings/Registration		Vention Manager Log Out Mail to System Manager
Preferences Costrol Menu Paper Bource Settings Notacrit Paper Bource Settings Notacrit Pant Casilty User Maintenance OutputControl Utility Mene Denois Control Management Settings Department ID Management SetUrity Department	Settings/Hegistration: Management Settings: Security > Display Job Log > Edit Display Job Log Edit Display Job Log The settings will be changed as follows: Display Job Log Display Job Log White Rotewo Job Log with Managoment Software	OK Gancel

[Display Job Log]

If you clear the check box, the print job history will not be displayed on the Remote UI screen and the print history list cannot be printed, either. To display the job history, select the check box.

[Allow to Retrieve Job Log with Management Software]

If you select the check box, device management software such as imageWARE Enterprise Management Console can be used to obtain a print job history. Clear the check box to disable the management software to obtain the print job history. This function is automatically enabled when the [Display Job Log] check box is selected.

LINKS

Checking History of Documents(P. 343) Job Menu(P. 449)

Implementing Robust Security Features

0X7U-04E

Authorized users may incur unanticipated losses from attacks by malicious third parties, such as sniffing, spoofing, and tampering of data as it flows over a network. To protect your important and valuable information from these attacks, the machine supports the following features to enhance security and secrecy.

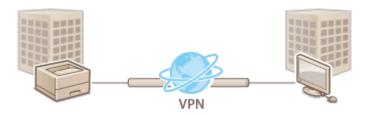
TLS Encrypted Communication

TLS is a protocol for encryption for data sent over a network and is often used for communication via a Web browser or an e-mail application. TLS enables secure network communication when you access the machine from a computer via the Remote UI. **Ousing TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)**



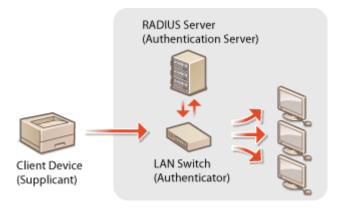
IPSec Communication

While TLS only encrypts data used on a specific application, such as a Web browser or an e-mail application, IPSec encrypts the whole (or payloads of) IP packets. This enables IPSec to offer a more versatile security system than TLS. **Configuring IPSec Settings(P. 298)**



IEEE 802.1X Authentication

IEEE 802.1X is a standard and mechanism for blocking unauthorized access to the network by collectively managing user authentication information. If a device tries to connect to the 802.1X network, the device must go through user authentication in order to prove that the connection is made by an authorized user. Authentication information is sent to and checked by a RADIUS server, which permits or rejects communication to the network depending on the authentication result. If authentication fails, a LAN switch blocks access from the outside of the network. The machine can connect to an 802.1X network as a client device. Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication(P. 309)



LINKS

Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 315)

Using TLS for Encrypted Communications

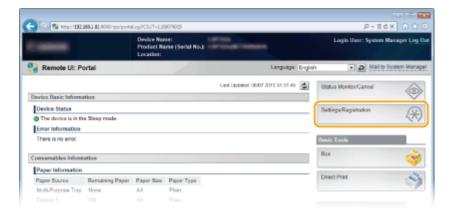
0X7U-04F

You can encrypt communication between the machine and a Web browser on the computer and the IPP Print data to print via Internet by using Transport Layer Security (TLS). TLS is a mechanism for encrypting data sent or received over the network. TLS must be enabled when the Remote UI is used for specifying settings for IPSec (Pre-Shared Key Method), IEEE 802.1X authentication (TTLS/PEAP), or SNMPv3. To use TLS encrypted communication, you need to set a key pair and enable the TLS function. Have a key pair to use ready (Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 315)).

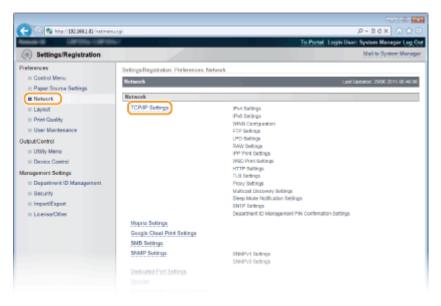


Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

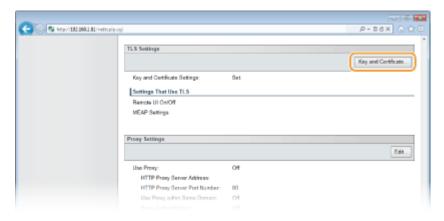
2 Click [Settings/Registration].











Select a key from the list of keys and certificates, and click [Default Key Settings].

-				
(c) (0) 182,068,1.81/metrol	ogi1CSUT=-3020164079			P-26X 0 Ω 🖯
Research LIPTOLICET	Ph.5		Tol	Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manager
Preferences	SettingsRegistre	dian: Preferences: Network > 1	TCPVIP Settings > TLS Key and C	Certificate Settings
Control Menu	TLS Key and C	ertificate Settings		Last Updated: 29/06 2015 07:54-18
II Paper Source Settings				Default Key Settings
Network				
a Layout	10.000			
E Print Quality	_	key and Certificate		
User Maintenance	Select	Key Name	Key Usage	Certificate
Output/Centrol	1 💌	Default Key	[rus]	1 22
Utility Menu	2			
II Device Control				
Management Settings				
II Department ID Management				
= Security				

NOTE:

Viewing details of a certificate

• You can check the details of the certificate or verify the certificate by clicking the corresponding text link under [Key Name], or the certificate icon. **Verifying Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 329)**

If [Default Key Settings] is not displayed

• When TLS is already enabled by [Remote UI Settings] or [IPP Print Settings], [Default Key Settings] is not displayed. To change the key to use, refer to step 6 and clear the [Use TLS] check boxes under [Remote UI Settings] or [IPP Print Settings], respectively.

6 Enable TLS for the Remote UI.

Using TLS for communication with the Remote UI

1 Click [Security] > [Remote UI Settings].

Carlos de la carlo			To Portal Login User: System Manager Log (
(*) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manag
references	Settings/Registration: Management Se	tings: Security	
In Costrol Menu	Security		Last Updated: 29/06 2015 07:54-3
 Paper Source Settings Network 	Security		
C Resurs	Vanacement Settings		
© Print Quality	Remote UI Settings		
C User Maintenance	Key and Certificate Bettings		
Dutout/Control	GA Certificate Settings		
 Utility Menu 	PSec Settings		
Device Centrol	Display Job Log		
Aurugement Settings	IP Address Filter	Pv4 Address: TX Piller	
Department ID Management		IPv4 Address: RX Filter IPv6 Address: TX Filter	
Security		Pv6 Address: RX Filter	
© importit.sport	MAC Address Filter	TX Filter	
c License/Other		RX Filter	
	×		
			Copyright CANON INC. 20
	×		Copyright CAVON I

2 Click [Edit].



3 Select the [Use TLS] check box and click [OK].

		P - E d X 0 0 00 To Postill Login User: System Mesager Log Our
Settings/Registration Preferences Control Menu	Settings/Registration: Management Settin Edit Romote UI Settings	Mail to System Manager gs. Security > Remote UI Settings > Edit Remote UI Settings Last Updaters 2000 2019 07:55 00
II Paper Source Settings II Network II Layout II Print Quality II User Maintenance	The settings will be changed as follows	
Output/Control	Remote UI Sottings	
Utility Menu Device Control	Remote UI Access PIN	
Management Settings	Use Remote UI Access PIN	
Department ID Management	Set/Change PIN	
Security	PIN	(Max 7 digits)

[Use TLS]

When using TLS for Remote UI communication, select the check box. When not using, clear the check box.

■Using TLS for a function that is compatible with encrypted communication

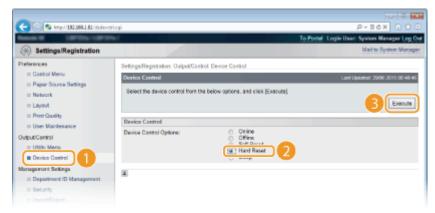
Using TLS for IPP printing

Make the following setting to perform IPP printing using TLS. For other IPP print settings, see **Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions(P. 197)**.



7 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Using the operation panel

• You can also enable or disable TLS encrypted communication from the setting menu of the operation panel. **CRemote UI Settings(P. 390)**

Starting the Remote UI with TLS

• If you try to start the Remote UI when TLS is enabled, a security alert may be displayed regarding the security certificate. In this case, check that the correct URL is entered in the address field, and then proceed to display the Remote UI screen. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**

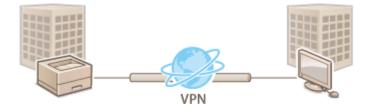
LINKS

- CGenerating Key Pairs(P. 317)
- OUsing CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 326)
- Configuring IPSec Settings(P. 298)
- Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication(P. 309)
- Omonitoring and Controlling the Machine with SNMP(P. 232)

Configuring IPSec Settings

0X7U-04H

Internet Protocol Security (IPSec or IPsec) is a protocol suite for encrypting data transported over a network, including Internet networks. While TLS only encrypts data used on a specific application, such as a Web browser or an e-mail application, IPSec encrypts either whole IP packets or the payloads of IP packets, offering a more versatile security system. The IPSec of the machine works in transport mode, in which the payloads of IP packets are encrypted. With this feature, the machine can connect directly to a computer that is in the same virtual private network (VPN). Check the system requirements and set the necessary configuration on the computer before you configure the machine.



Registering Security Policies(P. 299) Enabling IPSec Communication(P. 306)

System Requirements

IPSec that is supported by the machine conforms to RFC4301, RFC4302, RFC4303, and RFC4305.

Operating systems supported by communication partners	/ Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2003/Server 2008/Server 2012			
Connection mode	Transport mode			
	IKEv1			
	Drint Made	• Main mode		
	Print Mode	Aggressive mode		
	Authentication method	Pre-shared key		
	Authentication method	Digital signature		
		• HMAC-MD5-96		
Key exchange protocol	Hash algorithm	• HMAC-SHA1-96		
	Encryption algorithm	• 3DES-CBC		
	(and key length)	• AES-CBC (128 bits, 192 bits, or 256 bits)		
		Diffie-Hellman (DH)		
	Key exchange algorithm/group	• Group 1 (768 bits)		
	(and key length)	• Group 2 (1024 bits)		
		• Group 14 (2048 bits)		
	Hash algorithm	• HMAC-MD5-96		
ESP (Encapsulating Security		• HMAC-SHA1-96		
Payload)	Encryption algorithm	• 3DES-CBC		
	(and key length)	• AES-CBC (128 bits, 192 bits, or 256 bits)		
AH (Authoritication Hoader)	Hach algorithm	• HMAC-MD5-96		
AH (Authentication Header)	Hash algorithm	• HMAC-SHA1-96		

IMPORTANT

Before configuring IPSec communication settings

• Check the IPSec settings in the operating system the machine will communicate with. An incorrect combination of the operating system settings and machine settings will disable the IPSec communication.

NOTE

IPSec functional restrictions

- IPSec supports communication to a unicast address (or a single device).
- The machine cannot use both IPSec and DHCPv6 at the same time.
- IPSec is unavailable in networks in which NAT or IP masquerade is implemented.
- In IKEv1 phase1, PFS is not supported.

Using IPSec with IP address filter

The IPSec settings are applied before the IP address filter settings during packet reception while the IP address settings are applied before the IPSec settings during packet transmission. Specifying IP Addresses for Firewall Rules(P. 265)

Registering Security Policies

To use IPSec for encrypted communication, you need to register security policies (SP) before enabling the IPSec settings (**©Enabling IPSec Communication(P. 306)**). A security policy consists of the groups of settings described below. Up to 10 policies can be registered. You can register multiple policies according to a combination of the IP address and the port number. After registering policies, specify the order in which they are applied.

Selector

Selector defines conditions for IP packets to apply IPSec communication. Selectable conditions include IP addresses and port numbers of the machine and the devices to communicate with.

IKE

IKE configures the IKEv1 that is used for key exchange protocol. Note that instructions vary depending on the authentication method selected.

[Pre-Shared Key Method]

A key of up to 24 alphanumeric characters can be shared with the other devices. Enable TLS for the Remote UI in advance (**OUsing TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)**).

[Digital Signature Method]

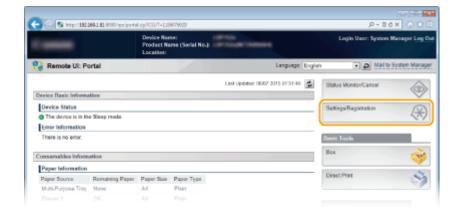
The machine and the other devices authenticate each other by mutually verifying their digital signatures. Have a key pair to use ready (**Ousing CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 326)**).

Setting Protocols and Options

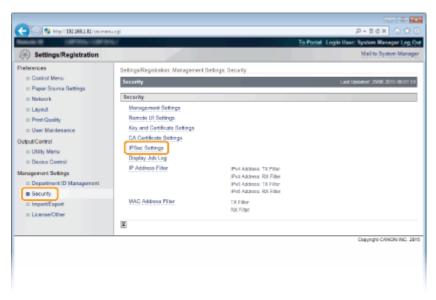
Specify the settings for ESP and AH, which are added to packets during IPSec communication. ESP and AH cannot be used at the same time. You can also select whether or not to enable PFS for tighter security.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

Click [Settings/Registration].



3 Click [Security] ► [IPSec Settings].



4 Click [IPSec Policy List].

G 🖓 Magu (182,084,141/proc.og			P + B C X () () () To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(A) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences = Control Menu	Settings/Registration. Management Set IPSec. Settings	ings: Security > PSec Settings	Lant Updatest: 29/06 2015 40 02-06
Paper Source Settings Network Layout	IPSec Settings		IPSec Policy List
Print Quality User Maintenance Output/Control	Use IPSec: Receive Non-Policy Packets:	0# Alaw	
Utility Mene Denice Control Management Settings	×		
Department ID Management Security Inspect Capacit			

5 Click [Register IPSec Policy].

-			
🗲 💿 😵 http://182.068.1.81/pelicy/s	t.ogi		,P-≣ćX ∩ 🗘
Research Collector Collector	er i		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log
(Settings/Registration			Mail to System Mana
Preferences	Settings/Registration I	lanagement Settings: Security > IPSec Se	tings > IPSec Policy List
ID Costrol Menu	IPSec Policy List		Last Updated: 29/06 2015 06 02:
II Paper Source Settings	The estimate will be a	hanged as follows. (Changes offective after	the main ensuring transf (DEE and (ML)
© Network	The seconds we call	ranges as relove, consigns energies are	
E Layout			Register IPSec Policy
E Print Quality			
User Maintenance	IP Sec Policy List		
Output/Centrol	Priority	Policy Name	Status
Utility Menu	1		
II Device Control	2		
Management Settings	3		
II Department ID Management	4		
· Security			

6 Enter a policy name in [Policy Name], and select the [Enable Policy] check box.

	rat.cailCmdType=Regist&CLUT=-L08823	መድ ወቅ መድ
C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C		To Portal Login User: System Menager Log Out *
(Settings/Registration		Mail to System Monager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Managerry	nt Settings: Security > IPSec Settings > IPSec Policy List > Register IPSec Policy
ID Control Menu	Register IPSec Policy	Last Updated: 2906-2015-01:02:59
Paper Source Settings Network Layout	The settings will be changed a	s follows. (Changes offective after the main power is turned OFF and ON.) OK OK
II Print Quality III User Maintenance	Policy Settings	
Output/Control = Utility Menu	Policy Name:	(Max 24 characters)
II Device Control	Selector Settings	
Management Settings	Local Address Settings	
Department ID Management Security Import Export	Local Address:	All IP Addresse IP Addresse Unit Addresse

[Policy Name]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for a name that is used for identifying the policy.

[Enable Policy]

Select the check box to enable the policy. When not using the policy, clear the check box.

7 Specify the selector settings.

Output/Control	Policy Name:	(Max 24 characters)
a Utility Mene	Enable Policy	
E Device Control		
Management Settings	Selector Settings	
Department ID Management	Local Address Settings	
	Local Address:	ALLE Addresses
Security		 Pv4 Addrose
ImportiExport		 IPv0 Addresse
= License/Other		 IPv4 Manual Settings
		 IPv6 Manual Settings
	Addresses to Set Manually:	
	*To enter multiple IP addresses at *To specify the IPv6 prefix length, or Length: D-128)	the same time, use a hyphen as follows: xxx xxx xxx xxx xxx xxx xxx xxx xxx other the IP address as follows: xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx x
	Subnet Settings:	
	Remote Address Settings	
	Remote Address:	All P Addresses
		 AllPv4 Address
		 All Pv6 Address
		O IPv4 Manual Settings
		 IPv6 Manual Settings
	Addresses to Set Manually:	
	"To enter multiple IP addresses at "To specify the IPv6 profix length, o Length: 0-128)	the same time, use a hyphen as follows: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx anter the IP address as follows: xxxx.cxxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.x
	Subnet Settings:	
	Port Settings	
	Local Port	Al Ports
		 Single Port (1-65535)
	Remote Port	 All Ports
		 Single Port (1-65536)

[Local Address]

Select the type of the IP address of the machine to apply the policy from the following list.

[All IP Addresses]	Select to use IPSec for all IP packets.
[IPv4 Address]	Select to use IPSec for all IP packets that are sent to or from the IPv4 address of the machine.
[IPv6 Address]	Select to use IPSec for all IP packets that are sent to or from an IPv6 address of the machine.
[IPv4 Manual Settings]	Select to specify a single IPv4 address or a range of IPv4 addresses to apply IPSec. Enter the IPv4 address (or the range) in the [Addresses to Set Manually] text box.
[IPv6 Manual Settings]	Select to specify a single IPv6 address or a range of IPv6 addresses to apply IPSec. Enter the IPv6 address (or the range) in the [Addresses to Set Manually] text box.

[Addresses to Set Manually]

If [IPv4 Manual Settings] or [IPv6 Manual Settings] is selected for [Local Address], enter the IP address to apply the policy.

[Subnet Settings]

When manually specifying IPv4 addresses, you can express the range by using the subnet mask. Enter the subnet mask using periods to delimit numbers (example:"255.255.240").

[Remote Address]

Select the type of IP address of the other devices to apply the policy from the list shown below.

[All IP Addresses]	Select to use IPSec for all IP packets.
[All IPv4 Address]	Select to use IPSec for all IP packets that are sent to or from an IPv4 address.
[All IPv6 Address]	Select to use IPSec for all IP packets that are sent to or from an IPv6 address.
[IPv4 Manual Settings]	Select to specify a single IPv4 address or a range of IPv4 addresses to apply IPSec. Enter the IPv4 address (or the range) in the [Addresses to Set Manually] text box.
[IPv6 Manual Settings]	Select to specify a single IPv6 address or a range of IPv6 addresses to apply IPSec. Enter the IPv6 address (or the range) in the [Addresses to Set Manually] text box.

[Addresses to Set Manually]

If [IPv4 Manual Settings] or [IPv6 Manual Settings] is selected for [Remote Address], enter the IP address to apply the policy.

[Subnet Settings]

When manually specifying IPv4 addresses, you can express the range by using the subnet mask. Enter the subnet mask using periods to delimit numbers (example:"255.255.255.240").

[Local Port]/[Remote Port]

If you want to create separate policies for each protocol, such as HTTP or SMTP, enter the appropriate port number for the protocol to determine whether to use IPSec.

IMPORTANT:

• IPSec is not applied to the packets that have a specified multicast or broadcast address.

Specify the IKE Settings.



RE Mode:	(a) Main	
	 Aggrossive 	
AUTH Nethod:	Pre-Shared Key Method:	Shared Key Settings
	 Digital Signature Method: Key Name: 	Not set.
		Key and Certificate
Authentication/Encryption Algorithm	🔀 Auto	
Authentication:	SHA1 and MD5 -	
Encryption:	JOE S-CIIC and AES-CIIC +	
DH Group:	Group 2 (1024)	

[IKE Mode]

The mode used for the key exchange protocol is displayed. Normally select the main mode.

NOTE:

• Select the aggressive mode when the IP address is not fixed. Note that security is lower in the aggressive mode than in the main mode.

[AUTH Method]

Select [Pre-Shared Key Method] or [Digital Signature Method] for the method used when authenticating the machine.

IMPORTANT:

• When the aggressive mode is selected in [IKE Mode], the [Pre-Shared Key Method] setting does not encrypt the shared key.

[Authentication/Encryption Algorithm]

To automatically set the algorithm that is used for key exchange, select the [Auto] check box. If you select the check box, the algorithm is set as shown below.

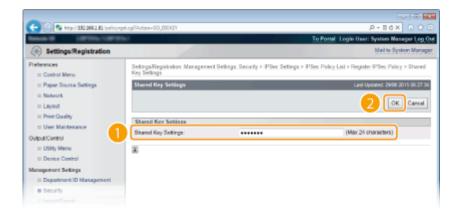
[Authentication]	[SHA1 and MD5]
[Encryption]	[3DES-CBC and AES-CBC]
[DH Group]	[Group 2 (1024)]

To manually set the algorithm, clear the check box and select the algorithm.

[Authentication]	Select the hash algorithm.
[Encryption]	Select the encryption algorithm.
[DH Group]	Select the Diffie-Hellman group, which determines the key strength.

■Using [Pre-Shared Key Method] for authentication

- **1** Select [Pre-Shared Key Method] for [AUTH Method] and click [Shared Key Settings].
- 2 Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the pre-shared key and click [OK].



■Using [Digital Signature Method] for authentication

- 1 Select [Digital Signature Method] for [AUTH Method] and click [Key and Certificate].
- 2 Select the key pair you want to use, and click [Default Key Settings].

-				Territoria (Contractioned Contractioned Contra		
(a) (b) (b) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c	at.ogi%ction=60,08083	EY		P-26× 0 000		
Restant Contractory	M		Tol	Postal Login User: System Manager Log O		
(A) Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manage		
Preferences Costrol Menu	Settings/Registrat Certificate for IPS	Jon: Management Settings: So let	ecurity > IPSec Settings > IPSec	Policy List > Register IPSec Policy > Key and		
© Paper Source Settings	Key and Certific	cate for IPSec		Last Updated: 29/01 2015 06:05 49		
Network				Default Key Settings		
a Layout						
E Print Quality	Registered K	ey and Certificate				
User Maintenance	Select	Key Name	Key Usago	Certificate		
Output/Control	90	Default Key	(TUS)	E		
 Utility Menu 						
II Device Control	2					
Management Sellings						
© Department ID Management						
Security						

NOTE:

Viewing details of a key pair or certificate

• You can check the details of the certificate or verify the certificate by clicking the corresponding text link under [Key Name], or the certificate icon. **Verifying Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 329)**

9 Specify the IPSec Network Settings.

Authentication:			
Encryption:	JOES-COC and ALS	-CIC +	
DH Group:	Group 2 (1024)		
IPSec Network Settings			
Use PFS			
Validity:	Bpecify by Time	480	min. (1-65636)
	 Specify by Size 	1	MB (1-65535)
Authentication/Encryption Algorithm:	Auto		
	ESP	ESP Authentication:	SHA1 and MD5 .
		ESP Encryption:	3DES-CBC and AES-CBC ×
	to AH	AH Authentication:	SHA1 and MD5 .
	Transport		

[Use PFS]

Select the check box to enable Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) for IPSec session keys. Enabling PFS enhances the security while increasing the load on the communication. Make sure that PFS is also enabled for the other devices. When not using PFS, clear the check box.

[Validity]

Specify how long SA is used as a communication tunnel. Select the [Specify by Time] or [Specify by Size] check box or both check boxes as necessary. If both check boxes are selected, the IPSec SA session is terminated when either of the conditions has been satisfied.

[Specify by Time]	Enter a time in minutes to specify how long a session lasts. The entered time is applied to both IPSec SA and IKE SA.
[Specify by Size]	Enter a size in megabytes to specify how much data can be transported in a session. The entered size is applied to IPSec SA only.

NOTE:

If you have selected the [Specify by Size] check box only

• The IKE SA validity cannot be specified by size, so that the initial value (480 minutes) of [Specify by Time] is applied.

[Authentication/Encryption Algorithm]

Select the protocol and algorithm to use for IPSec communication.

Automatically setting up connection

Select [Auto].

[ESP Authentication]	ESP is enabled and the authentication algorithm is set to [SHA1 and MD5].
[ESP Encryption]	ESP is enabled and the encryption algorithm is set to [3DES-CBC and AES-CBC].

Using ESP

Choose [ESP] and select the authentication algorithm and encryption algorithm.

[ESP Authentication]	Select the hash algorithm to use for ESP authentication.
[ESP Encryption]	Select the encryption algorithm for ESP.

Using AH

Choose [AH], and select the hash algorithm to use for AH authentication from [AH Authentication].

[Connection Mode]

The connection mode of IPSec is displayed. The machine supports transport mode, in which the payloads of IP packets are encrypted. Tunnel mode, in which whole IP packets (headers and payloads) are encapsulated is not available.

10 Click [OK].

• If you need to register an additional security policy, return to step 5.

1 Arrange the order of policies listed under [IPSec Policy List].

• Policies are applied from one at the highest position to the lowest. Click [Raise Priority] or [Lower Priority] to move a policy up or down the order.

-				
(-) (-) (2 http://182.068.1.81/policy/r	st.ogi?CSUTL460434	798		
Research Streams	e.			To Postal Login User: System Manager Log O
(Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manage
Preferences	SetingaRepis	balion: Management Set	tings: Security > I	PSec Settings > IPSec Policy List
Control Menu	IPSec Policy	List		Last Updated: 01.07 2015 02:01 52
Paper Source Settings Notwork Layout Print Quality User Maintenance	The settings PSec Poli		vs. (Changes offer	tive after the main power is turned OFF and ON.) List Print Register IPSet Policy
Output/Control	Priority	Policy Nama	Status	
 Utility Menu 	1	example	01	Raise Priority Lower Priority Dolete
II Device Control	2			
Management Settings	3			
Department ID Management	4			
Security	5			

NOTE:

Editing a policy

- You can click the text link under [Policy Name] to edit the settings.
- **Deleting a policy**
- Click [Delete] on the right of the policy that you want to delete.

12 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].

C- 3 Map/ 182,068,1.81/distored	aj	P-16X 0 ☆ 0
Resail OF The CONTRA		To Postel Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Output/Control: Device Control	
III Control Menu	Device Control	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 00:48 46
III Paper Source Settings	Select the device control from the below options, and click [Execute].	
= Layout		3 Execute
II Print Quality		
User Maintenance	Device Control	
Output/Control	Device Control Options: C Offine Offine Offine Offine	
= Utility Mercu	Set Hard Reset	
Device Control	0 mm	
Management Settings	x .	
Department ID Management		
III Security		

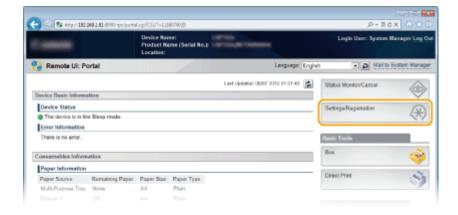
The settings are enabled after a hard reset is performed.

Enabling IPSec Communication

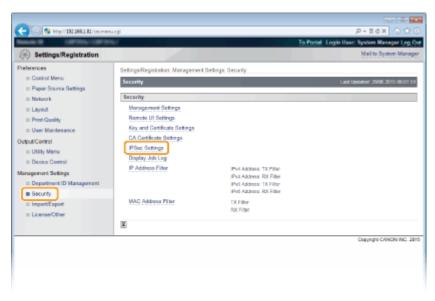
After completion of registering security policies, enable the IPSec communication.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**





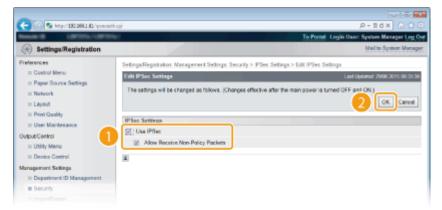
3 Click [Security] ► [IPSec Settings].



4 Click [Edit].

C	sfipper.ogi		0 0 0 × 58-9
	ar i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Cut
Settings/Registration Preferences Costrol Menu	Settings-Registration. Nanagement Set	ings: Security > PSec Settings	Mail to System Monaper
Paper Source Settings Network Layout	IPSec Settings		Lant Updated: 0007 2013 03 43 67
III Print Quality III User Maintenance Output/Control	Use IPSec: Receive Non-Policy Packets:	0# Allow	
III Utility Menia III Device Control Management Settings	×		
Department ID Management Security ImportTypert			

5 Select the [Use IPSec] check box and click [OK].



[Use IPSec]

When using IPSec in the machine, select the check box. When not using, clear the check box.

[Allow Receive Non-Policy Packets]

If you select the check box when using IPSec, packets that are not available for the registered policies are also sent/received. To disable sending/receiving the packets that are not available for the policies, clear the check box.

5 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].

A		
C 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		P-16X 0 0
Research 1007011-1007011		To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Output/Control: Device Control	
In Costrol Menu	Device Control	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 00:48:46
Paper Source Settings Network Layout	Select the device control from the below options, and $\ensuremath{cisc}\xspace{k}$ [Execute].	3 Execute
E Print Quality D User Maintenance	Device Control	
Output/Centrol	Device Control Options: California Office State States Set Hand Reset	
Management Settings	×	
E Security E Importification		

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Using the operation panel

• You can also enable or disable IPSec communication from the setting menu of the operation panel. **IPSec(P. 385)**

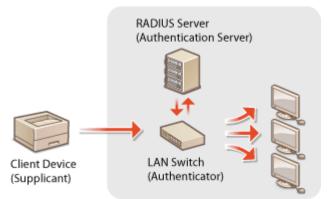
LINKS

Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 315)
 IPSec Policy List(P. 446)

Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication

0X7U-04J

The machine can connect to an 802.1X network as a client device. A typical 802.1X network consists of a RADIUS server (authentication server), LAN switch (authenticator), and client devices with authentication software (supplicants). If a device tries to connect to the 802.1X network, the device must go through user authentication in order to prove that the connection is made by an authorized user. Authentication information is sent to and checked by a RADIUS server, which permits or rejects communication to the network depending on the authentication result. If authentication fails, a LAN switch (or an access point) blocks access from the outside of the network.



Select the authentication method from the options below. If necessary, install or register a key pair or CA certificate before configuring IEEE 802.1X authentication (**Using CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 326)**).

TLS

The machine and the authentication server authenticate each other by mutually verifying their certificates. A key pair issued by a certification authority (CA) is required for the client authentication (when authenticating the machine). For the server authentication, a CA certificate installed via the Remote UI can be used in addition to a CA certificate preinstalled in the machine.

TTLS

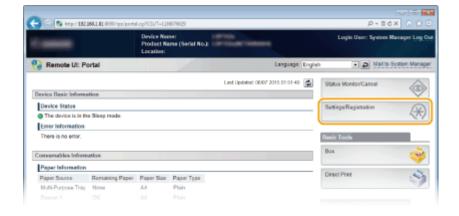
This authentication method uses a user name and password for the client authentication and a CA certificate for the server authentication. MSCHAPv2 or PAP can be selected as the internal protocol. TTLS can be used with PEAP at the same time. Enable TLS for the Remote UI before configuring this authentication method (**Using TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)**).

PEAP

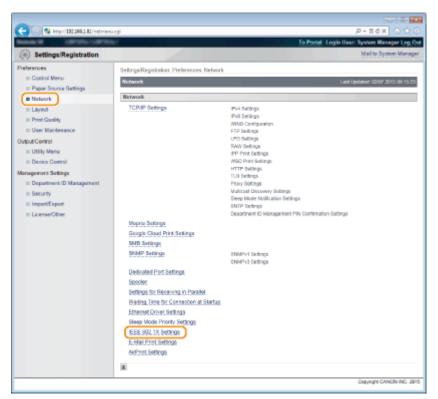
The required settings are almost the same as those of TTLS. MS-CHAPv2 is used as the internal protocol. Enable TLS for the Remote UI before configuring this authentication method (**Ousing TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)**).

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].



3 Click [Network] ► [IEEE 802.1X Settings].



4 Click [Edit].



5 Select the [Use IEEE 802.1X] check box, enter the login name in the [Login Name] text box, and specify the required settings.

A		
C C K Map//192.068.1.81.6000/spc/	iene802mcR.ogi	200 x 25-9
terms areas areas		To Portal Legin User: System Manager Leg O
(+) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manage
Preferences Custrol Menu Custrol Menu Paper Source Sattings Network Print CustR User Maintenance	Edit EEE 802.1X Sottings	k > IIIII 002 1X Setlings > Ildt IIIII 002 1X Setlings Last Updated Oxford All OC (Changes officitive after the main power is turned OFF and OR.) OK. Cancel T164331 Not set: Key and Cestificate MISCHAP+2 PAP

[Use IEEE 802.1X]

Select the check box to enable IEEE 802.1X authentication.

[Login Name]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for a name (EAP identity) that is used for identifying the user.

Setting TLS

- 1 Select the [Use TLS] check box and click [Key and Certificate].
 - You cannot use TLS with TTLS or PEAP.
- 2 Select a key from the list of keys and certificates, and click [Default Key Settings].

-				
C 000 88 http://182.068.1.81.000/tp	oʻleediliberit.cgiViction	TET, KEVSETVSE		P-BdX A 🗘 🖯
Research Contractory	8 7		Tof	fortel Login User: System Manager Log Out
(A) Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manager
Preferences = Control Menu	SetingsRegistral Setings	ian. Prelerences. Network > I	LUE 002.1X Settings > Edit IEEE	002.1X Setlings > Key and Certificate
© Paper Source Settings	Key and Certific	ate Settings		Last Updated: 06/07 2015 01 48:32
Network				Default Key Settings
= Layout				
Print Quality	Registered K	ey and Certificate		
User Maintenance	Select	Key Name	Key Usaga	Certificate
Output/Control	1 🛞	Default Key	(TLS)	65
= Utility Menu			1	- Collins
Device Control	z			
Management Settings				
Department ID Management				
# Security				

NOTE:

Viewing details of a key pair or certificate

• You can check the details of the certificate or verify the certificate by clicking the corresponding text link under [Key Name], or the certificate icon. **Verifying Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 329)**

Setting TTLS/PEAP

1 Select the [Use TTLS] or [Use PEAP] check box.

C 00 http://132.068.1.81-000/1po	/exel02.molt.ogi	P-16X 0 습 🖯
Reads # UPDA-UPDA		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settinga/Registration: Preferences: Networ	rk > IEEE 002 1X Settings > Edit IEEE 002 1X Settings
ID Costrol Menu ID Paper Source Settings	Edit IEEE 802.1X Settings	Last Updatest: 0607 2015 01-49:00
Network	The settings will be changed as follows.	(Changes effective after the main power is turned OFF and ON.)
I Layout		OK Cancel
E Print Quality E User Maintenance	IEEE 802.1X Settings	
Output/Control	Use IEEE 802.1X	
I Utility Menu	Login Name:	7664321
II Device Control	Use TLS Name of Key to Use:	Not set Key and Certificate
B Department ID Management	· ·	Not set Key and Certificate
= Security	TTLS (internal Protocol) to use:	a MSCHAP/2
II ImportiExport		O PAP
= License/Other	Use PEAP	
	Use Login Name as User Name User Name/Pasavord Settings:	Alternative New Process
	over manen adarona berarge.	Charge User Namo/Password

NOTE:

Internal protocol for TTLS

• You can select MSCHAPv2 or PAP. If you want to use PAP, click the [PAP] radio button.

Name of Key to Use:	Not set. Key and Certificate
Use TTLS TTLS (Internal Protocol) to use: Use PEAP Use Login Name as User Name	MSCHAPv2

2 Click [Change User Name/Password].

• To specify a user name other than the login name, clear the [Use Login Name as User Name] check box. Select the check box if you want to use the login name as the user name.

AND A CONTRACTOR		To Port	M Login User: System Manager Log
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Mana
references	Settings/Registration Preferences Netv	ork > IEEE 002.1X Settings > Edit IEEE 00	12 1X Settings
ID Control Menu	Edit EEE 802.1X Settings		Last Updated: 06/07 2015 01:491
Paper Source Settings Network	The settings will be changed as follow	. (Changes offective after the main power	is turned OFF and ON.)
= Layout			OK. Cancel
Print Quality User Maintenance	IEEE 802.1X Settings		
utput/Centrol	Use IEEE 802.1X Login Name:	7654321	
Utility Mone Denice Control Management Settings Department (D Management Security ImportExport License/Other	Use TLS Name of Key to Use:	Not set Key and Certificate	
	Use TTLS TTLS (Internal Protocol) to use:	 MBCHAPy2 PAP 	
	Use PEAP Use Login Name as User Name User Name/Pasavord Settings:	Charge User Name/Paseword	

3 Set the user name/password and click [OK].

-			
🗲 🛞 😵 https://182.068.1.81.644	0/pp/lese802xecit.cg/Mction=50,USD9V	45	P+≣+X () () ()
tende de la companya	FRMA 7		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log 0
(+) Settings/Registration			Mail to Sphere Manage
references In Costrol Menu	Settings/Registration. Preferen Name/Password	cosx Network > IEEE 002.1X Settings > E	dil IEEE 002.1X Setlings > Change User
Paper Source Settings	Change User Name/Possaro	ed 🔅	Last Updated: 06/07 2015 02:02:31
B Network	The settings will be changed	as follows. (Changes effective after the m	ein power is turned OFF and ONU
II Layout			
E Print Quality			
User Maintenance	Change User NamelPasswo	and	
lutput/Control	1 User Name:	7654321	(Max 24 characters)
= Utility Menu	Change Password		
II Device Control	Password		(Max 24 characters)
lanagement Settings			
Department ID Management	Confirm:		(Max 24 characters)
a Security	T.		
	-		

[User Name]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the user name.

[Change Password]

To set or change the password, select the check box and enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the new password both in the [Password] and [Confirm] text boxes.

6 Click [OK].

0			
C		To Portal Login	P + E G X A CO
(Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration Preferences Netw	ork > IEEE 002.1X Settings > Edit IEEE 002.1X Settin	igs
 Costrol Menu Paper Source Settings 	Edit EEE 802.1X Sottings	L.	ant Updatect: 06/07 2015 01:49:06
Network	The settings will be changed as follows	s. (Changes offective after the main power is turned O	
= Layout			OK Cancel
Print Quality User Maintenance	IEEE 802.1X Settings		
Output/Centrol	Use IEEE 802.1X Login Name:	7664331	
Utility Menu Device Control	PI Use TLS	1004241	
Management Settings	Name of Key to Use:	Not set. Key and Certificate	
II Department ID Management	Use TTLS		
© Security © Import/Export	TTLS (Internal Protocol) to use:	MBCHAPv2 PAP	

7 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Using the operation panel

• You can also enable or disable IEEE 802.1X authentication from the setting menu of the operation panel. **IEEE802.1X(P. 392)**

LINKS

Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 315)

Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates

0X7U-04K

In order to encrypt communication with a remote device, an encryption key must be sent and received over an unsecured network beforehand. This problem is solved by public-key cryptography. Public-key cryptography ensures secure communication by protecting important and valuable information from attacks, such as sniffing, spoofing, and tampering of data as it flows over a network.

Key Pair



A key pair consists of a public key and a secret key, both of which are required for encrypting or decrypting data. Because data that has been encrypted with one of the key pair cannot be returned to its original data form without the other, public-key cryptography ensures secure communication of data over the network. Up to eight key pairs, including the preinstalled pairs, can be registered (**OUsing CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 326)**). For TLS encrypted communication, a key pair can be generated for the machine (**OGenerating Key Pairs(P. 317)**).

CA Certificate



Digital certificates including CA certificates are similar to other forms of identification, such as driver's licenses. A digital certificate contains a digital signature, which enables the machine to detect any spoofing or tampering of data. It is extremely difficult for third parties to abuse digital certificates. A digital certificate that contains a public key of a certification authority (CA) is referred to as a CA certificate. CA certificates are used for verifying the device the machine is communicating with for features such as printing with Google Cloud Print or IEEE 802.1X authentication. Up to 150 CA certificates can be registered, including the 72 certificates that are preinstalled in the machine (**Ousing CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 326)**).

Key and Certificate Requirements

The certificate contained in a key pair generated with the machine conforms to X.509v3. If you install a key pair or a CA certificate from a computer, make sure that they meet the following requirements:

Format	 Key pair: PKCS#12^{*1} CA certificate: X.509v1 DER (encoded binary) X.509v3 DER (encoded binary)
File extension	Key pair: ".p12" or ".pfx"CA certificate: ".cer"
Public key algorithm (and key length)	 Key Pair: RSA (512 bits^{*2}, 1024 bits, 2048 bits, 4096 bits) CA Certificate: RSA (512 bits^{*2}, 1024 bits, 2048 bits, 4096 bits) DSA (1024 bits/2048 bits/3072 bits)

^{*1} Requirements for the certificate contained in a key pair are pursuant to CA certificates.

^{*2} Not supported when the operating system of the device the machine communicates with is Windows 8/Server 2012. Encrypted communication may also be unavailable with other Windows versions depending on the program update status.

^{*3} SHA384-RSA and SHA512-RSA are available only when the RSA key length is 1024 bits or more.

Certificate signature algorithm	SHA1-RSA, SHA256-RSA, SHA384-RSA ^{*3} , SHA512-RSA ^{*3} , MD5-RSA, or MD2-RSA
Certificate thumbprint algorithm	SHA1

^{*1} Requirements for the certificate contained in a key pair are pursuant to CA certificates.

^{*2} Not supported when the operating system of the device the machine communicates with is Windows 8/Server 2012. Encrypted communication may also be unavailable with other Windows versions depending on the program update status.

^{*3} SHA384-RSA and SHA512-RSA are available only when the RSA key length is 1024 bits or more.

NOTE

• The machine does not support use of a certificate revocation list (CRL).

Generating Key Pairs

0X7U-04L

A key pair can be generated with the machine when it is required for encrypted communication via Transport Layer Security (TLS). You can use TLS when accessing the machine via the Remote UI or performing IPP Print. Up to eight key pairs, including the preinstalled pairs, can be registered. Self-signed certificates are used with key pairs generated in "Network Communication". With a "Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR)", you can apply for a CA-issued digital certificate for the key pair generated by the machine.

Generate Network Communication Key(P. 317)
 Generate Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR)(P. 320)

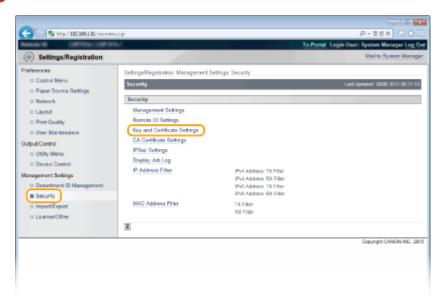
Generate Network Communication Key

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

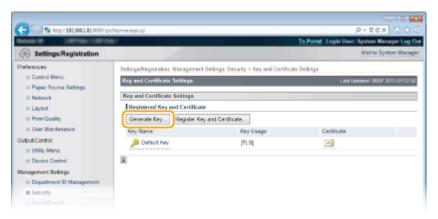
2 Click [Settings/Registration].

Device Name: Product Name (Solid No.) Location:				Login Usor: System M	anager Log O		
🔒 Remote UI: Po	ertal				Language: Eng	ieh 🔹 🗗 Maitte S	rstein Manage
				Lant Updated: 05/07 2	нананая 💆	Status Monitor/Cancel	6
Device Basic Informa	tion						V
Device Status						Settings/Registration	N
The device is in the	e Sieep mode.						47
Error Information							
There is no error.						Besic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	ି 🍣
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	- 9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				1

3 Click [Security] > [Key and Certificate Settings].





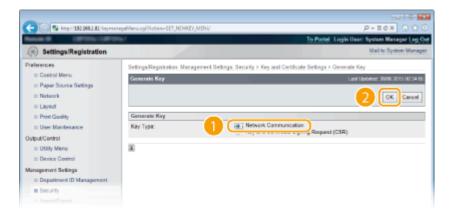


NOTE:

Deleting a registered key pair

- Click [Delete] on the right of the key pair you want to delete > click [OK].
- A key pair cannot be deleted if it is currently used for some purpose, such as when "TLS" or "IEEE 802.1X", is displayed under [Key Usage]. In this case, disable the function or replace the key pair before deleting it.

5 Select [Network Communication] and click [OK].



6 Specify settings for the key and certificate.

Security

A		
C 100 Map/ 192 2001 81 0000/	polikeymenage.cpil/action=021_NEWKEY	P = B C X 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
(A) Retting to IR existention		Mail to System Manager Log O
(+) Settings/Registration		
Preferences In Costrol Menu	Settings/Registration: Management Se Communication Key	etings: Security > Key and Certificate Settings > Generate Key > Generate Network
Paper Source Settings	Generate Network Communication	Key Last Updated: 05/00/2015/07/47/47
i Network		
= Layout		OK Cancal
Print Quality	Key Settings	
User Maintenance	Key Name:	
Output/Control	Signature Algorithm:	SHA216 m
= Utility Menu	Key Algorithm:	RSA 2041 bd m
II Device Control	Kay Agarman	Non 200 (11 -
Management Settings © Department ID Management		
Security	Certificate Settings	
a ImportiExport	Validity Start Date (yyy/mm/dd)	
In License/Other	Validity End Date (yyy/mm/dd):	
	Country/Region:	
	State:	
•	City:	
	Organization:	
	Organization Unit:	
	Common Name:	
	X	
		Copyright CANON INC. 28

👩 [Key Settings]

[Key Name]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for naming the key pair. Set a name that will be easy for you to find later in a list.

[Signature Algorithm]

Select the signature algorithm from the drop-down list.

[Key Algorithm]

RSA is used for generating a key pair. Select the key length from the drop-down list. The larger the number for the key length, the slower the communication. However, the security is tighter.

NOTE:

• [512 bit] cannot be selected for the key length, if [SHA384] or [SHA512] is selected for [Signature Algorithm].

[Certificate Settings]

[Validity Start Date (yyyy/mm/dd)]

Enter the validity start date of the certificate in the range between 01/01/2000 and 31/12/2037.

[Validity End Date (yyyy/mm/dd)]

Enter the validity end date of the certificate in the range between 01/01/2000 and 31/12/2037. A date earlier than [Validity Start Date (yyyy/mm/dd)] cannot be set.

[Country/Region]

Enter up to 2 characters for the Internet country code.

[State]/[City]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the location as necessary.

[Organization]/[Organization Unit]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the organization name as necessary.

[Common Name]

Enter up to 41 alphanumeric characters for the common name of the certificate as necessary. "Common Name" is often abbreviated as "CN."

IMPORTANT:

Security

To perform IPPS Print from Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012, the "IP address" or "<host name>.<domain name>" that is used for connection via IPPS must be entered in [Common Name].

- Enter the "IP address" when it is fixed.
- Enter "<host name>.<domain name>" when the DNS server is used. Senabling IPP/ IPPS(P. 203)

7 Click [OK].

- Keys for network communication may take approximately 10 to 15 minutes to generate.
- After a key pair is generated, it is automatically registered to the machine.

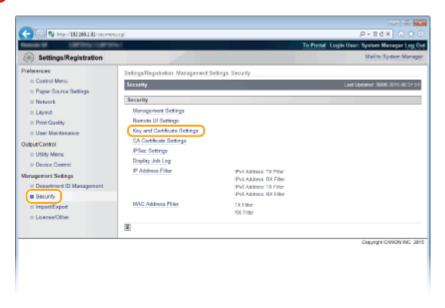
Generate Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR)

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode.
 Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

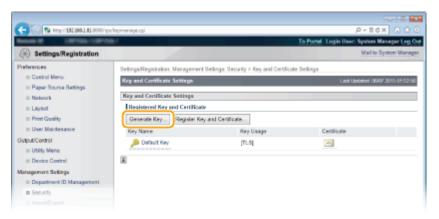
2 Click [Settings/Registration].

		Device Nat Product Na Location:	ne: me (Sorial No.):			Login User: System	Manager Log
Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: English	D D Malt	o System Manag
				Land Updated: 06/07 2	nsensnar 👼	Status Monitor/Cancel	
Device Basic Informa	tion						V
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	(V
The device is in the	e Sieep mode.						5
Error information							
There is no error.						Basic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Bax	-
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

Click [Security] > [Key and Certificate Settings].





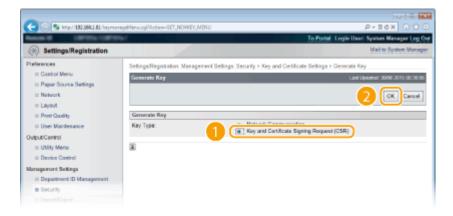


NOTE:

Deleting a registered key pair

- Click [Delete] on the right of the key pair you want to delete > click [OK].
- A key pair cannot be deleted if it is currently used for some purpose, such as when "TLS" or "IEEE 802.1X", is displayed under [Key Usage]. In this case, disable the function or replace the key pair before deleting it.

5 Select [Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR)] and click [OK].



6 Specify settings for the key and certificate.

Security

-			
C 8 http://182.068.1.81/beyrns	regeCarGen.cpil/action=GE1_NEWREY		P+16X 0 ☆ 0
Annual Internation	867 C	- It	Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(*) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Managers	ent Settings: Security > Key and Certificate S	ettings > Generate Key > Generate Key and
III Control Menu	Certificate Signing Request (CSI		
Paper Source Settings	Generate Key and Certificate	Signing Request (CSR)	Last Updated: 30/06 2015 00 36 28
II Network			OK Careal
E Layout E Print Quality			
User Maintenance	Key Settings		
Output/Control	Key Name:		
II Utility Menu	Signature Algorithm:	SHA256 m	
II Device Control	Kay Algorithm:	R8A 2048 bit m	
Management Settings			
Department ID Management	Certificate Signing Request (1985 Settlens	
Security	Country/Region:	and received.	
© ImportiExport	State		
= License/Other	City:		_
•	Organization:		
	Organization Unit		
	Common Name:		
	×		
			Crevian CANON INC. 2915
			And the second sec

[Key Settings]

[Key Name]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for naming the key pair. Set a name that will be easy for you to find later in a list.

[Signature Algorithm]

Select the signature algorithm from the drop-down list.

[Key Algorithm]

RSA is used for generating a key pair. Select the key length from the drop-down list. The larger the number for the key length, the slower the communication. However, the security is tighter.

NOTE:

• [512 bit] cannot be selected for the key length, if [SHA384] or [SHA512] is selected for [Signature Algorithm].

[Certificate Signing Request (CSR) Settings]

[Country/Region]

Enter up to 2 characters for the Internet country code.

[State]/[City]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the location as necessary.

[Organization]/[Organization Unit]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the organization name as necessary.

[Common Name]

Enter up to 41 alphanumeric characters for the common name of the certificate as necessary. "Common Name" is often abbreviated as "CN."

IMPORTANT:

To perform IPPS Print from Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012, the "IP address" or "<host name>.<domain name>" that is used for connection via IPPS must be entered in [Common Name].

- Enter the "IP address" when it is fixed.
- Enter "<host name>.<domain name>" when the DNS server is used. CENABLING IPP/ IPPS(P. 203)

7 Click [OK].

• Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR) may take approximately 10 to 15 minutes to generate.

8 Click [Store in File].

• A dialog box for storing the file appears. Choose where to store the file and click [Save].

C C Kaper 182 268 1 81 / Keymer	vegeCorDeteil.cgilAction=GET_NEWKEY_DE	TALBARID=4	P - 필 C X () (가 다 To Portal Login User: System Manager Log 0
(A) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manage
Preferences ID Control Menu	Settings/Registration Management Certificate Signing Request (CSR)	d Settings: Security > Key and Ce > Key and Certificate Signing Rec	rtificate Settings > Generate Key > Generate Key and quest (CSR) Details
I Paper Source Settings	Key and Certilicate Signing Re-	quest (CSR) Details	Last Updated: 30/08 2015 01:04.01
 Network Layout Print Quality 			Register Certificate
D User Maintenance	Certificate Details		
Dutput/Control III Utility Menu III Device Control	Issue Destination: Signature Algorithm Public Key:	C-GB SHA296 RSA 2048-64	
Aragement Settings © Department ID Management	Certificate Signing Request ((CSR)	
Security ImportExport LicenseOther	Zign/12FM/VE-MT#KOT#KO3 W2YxOTypeggEMA06C9q381 w1MPC058jH5QC5pd5cC3La Kp./5jkc/w1MX0ailmyxR1cRAs 8Fna61TYJybdEAhub7H7D93 8Fna61TYJybdEAhub7H7D93	NAXAA U EUNACROSSTEINEJINT SVOCHMANNINZNDENGESONZ SJOCEBADUAA BOWANING KA STOGBERDING CEVILA KRISK SICCOBERT NICOLEUS VAN KRISK SICCOCESSTEINE CONSISTER BIGCOCESSTEINE CONSISTER	TYteNODRY72YNA2Av NBAODRY74P3ek56T EBX0Y34Vots.6N1KT AglesCOVCWIstA 37Y0VioITV/28+0 VGSNr23K7

The Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR) file is stored on the computer.

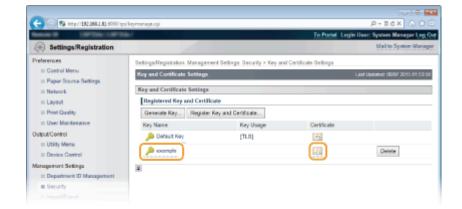
9 Attach the stored file and submit the application to the certification authority.

Register the digital certificate issued by the certification authority.

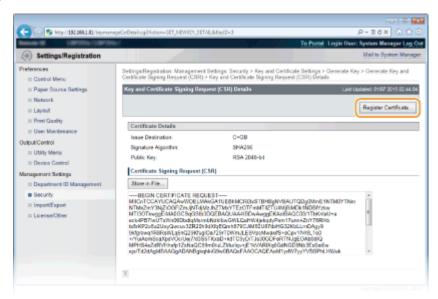
You cannot use the key pair generated by the Certificate Signing Request (CSR) until the certificate is registered. Once the certification authority has issued the digital certificate, register it using the procedure below.

- **1** Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **O**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)
- **2** Click [Settings/Registration].
- 3 Click [Security] > [Key and Certificate Settings].
- **4** Click [Key Name] or [Certificate] for the certificate to be registered.

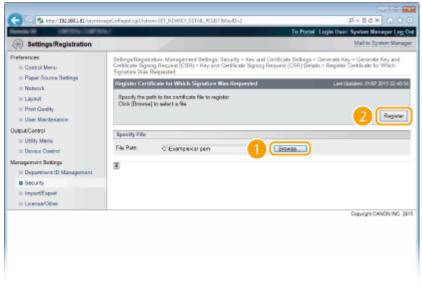
Security



5 Click [Register Certificate].



6 Click [Browse] in [File Path], specify the file for the certificate signing request, and click [Register].



LINKS

Using CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 326)
Verifying Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 329)	

OUsing TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294) Configuring IPSec Settings(P. 298)

Using CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates

0X7U-04R

Key pairs and digital certificates can be obtained from a certification authority (CA) for use with the machine. You can store and then register these files by using the Remote UI. Make sure that the key pair and the certificate satisfy the requirements of the machine (**Key and Certificate Requirements(P. 315)**). Up to 8 key pairs (including the preinstalled ones) can be registered, and up to 150 CA certificates (including the 72 preinstalled ones) can be registered.



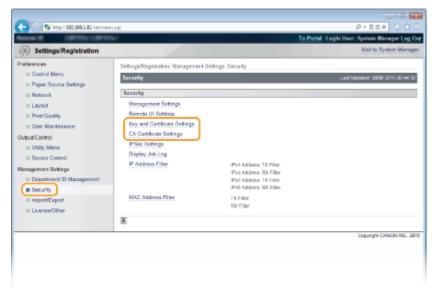
Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333)

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

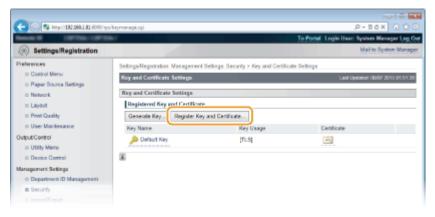
🗧 💽 😫 http://1823	968.1.81.8000/ipo/poda	l-cyiPCSUT+138	9079029			,P + B	6× ①☆(
-		Device Nar Product Na Location:	re: me (Seriel No.)	Contractor of the local division of the loca		Login User: System	Manager Log O
设 Remote UI: Po	ortal				Language: English	· D Mails	System Manage
				Last Updated: 06/07	2015-01:51:40 🛃	Status Monitor/Cancel	
Device Basic Informe	ation						4
Device Status						Settings/Registration	N
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						47
Error information							
There is no error.						Besic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Вах	ં જે
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

3 Click [Security] > [Key and Certificate Settings] or [CA Certificate Settings].

• Click [Key and Certificate Settings] to install a key pair, or [CA Certificate Settings] to install a CA certificate.



Click [Register Key and Certificate] or [Register CA Certificate].



NOTE:

Deleting a registered key pair or CA certificate

- Click [Delete] on the right of the key pair or CA certificate you want to delete > click [OK].
- A key pair cannot be deleted if it is currently used for some purpose, such as when "[TLS]" or "[IEEE 802.1X]" is displayed under [Key Usage]. In this case, disable the function or replace the key pair before deleting it. The preinstalled CA certificate cannot be deleted.

5 Click [Install].

A		
	shepmenage.cpiViction=021_82YR56	P-26X 0 🗘 🖯
Anna UPDUCED	10 C	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(+) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	SettingsRegistration Nanagement Settings: Securi	ty > Key and Certificate Settings > Register Key and Certificate
III Costrol Menu	Register Key and Certificate	Last Updated: 30/06 2015-00 45:30
© Paper Source Settings		
Network	Enstelled Key and Certificate	
= Layout	Instal	
II Print Quality	Fie Name	
User Maintenance		
Output/Centrol	a	
Utility Menu		
II Device Control		
Management Settings		
II Department ID Management		
Security		

NOTE:

Deleting a key pair or CA certificate

• Click [Delete] on the right of the file you want to delete, and then click [OK].

-		
🗲 🛞 😵 http://182.068.1.81/keyrner	reps.cpiViction=0E1,XE1(XE1)XE1	P-86× 0 ☆ 0
Anna B Special	wr.	To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences In Control Menu	Settings/Registration Management Settings: Security > Key and Key and Certificate	I Certificate Settings > Register Key and Certificate > Install
I Paper Source Settings	instal Key and Certificate	Last Updated: 30/06 2015 00:45:49
III Network III Layout III Print Quality	Specify the file path of the key and certificate to install. Click $[I \end{tabular}$	Browse) to select a file
User Maintenance	Installation of Key and Certificate	
Dutput/Centrol Utility Menu	File Path:	- Browse
© Device Control	×	
Management Sellings		
II Department ID Management		
Security		

ation].

Security

• The key pair or CA certificate is installed in the machine.

7 Register the key pair or CA certificate.

Registering a key pair

- 1 Click [Register] on the right of the key pair you want to register.
- 2 Enter the name of the key pair and password, and then click [OK].

C 20 102 102 108 1 81 / beyrnene	ige-cpi?Action=6E1_XE11NSSWD64FileNam	re=EXAMPLE.p12	P-EdX 0 🗘 🖯
Benard Contractory	R. C.		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences = Control Menu	Settings/Registration, Managemen Private Key Password	t Settings: Security > Key and Certific	ele Settings > Register Key and Certificate > Enter
Paper Source Settings	Enter Private Key Password		Last Updated: 30/06 2015 00 47 18
Network	Enter the private key password f	or this file.	
= Layout	File Name: EXAMPLE p12		
Print Quality			2 OK Cancel
User Maintenance			
Output/Control	Pater Private Key Parcowrid		
= Utility Menu	Kay Name:	example	
II Device Control	Password:	•••••	
Management Sellings			
Department ID Management	x		
Security			

[Key Name]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the name of the key pair to be registered.

[Password]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the password of the private key set for the file to be registered.

Registering a CA certificate

Click [Register] on the right of the CA certificate you want to register.

-		
C 8 http://182.068.1.81/comm	ege.ogilAction=SET_KEVRES	P-26X 0 ☆ 8
Research Control of the	6/	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Ox
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Management S	etings: Security > CA Certificate Settings > Register CA Certificate
 Costrol Menu Paper Source Settings 	Register CA Certificate	Last Updated: 30/06 2015 00:52-16
II Network	Installed CA Certificate	
= Layout	instal	
Print Quality	File Name	
User Maintenance	EXAMPLE our	Register
Output/Control		
Utility Menu	×	
E Device Control		
Management Sellings		
II Department ID Management		
 Security 		

LINKS

- Cenerating Key Pairs(P. 317)
- Verifying Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 329)
- OUsing TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)
- Configuring IPSec Settings(P. 298)
- Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication(P. 309)

Verifying Key Pairs and Digital Certificates

0X7U-04S

Once key pairs and CA certificates are registered, you can view their detailed information or verify them for validity and signature.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333) 1 Click [Settings/Registration]. 7 82 http://182.068.1.81 P - 16 X t Name (Sarial No.): Language: English Remote UI: Portal - 2 Na Lant Updated: 06/07 2015 01:51:40 Status Monitor/Cance \bigcirc **Device Basic Information** Device Status The device is in the Sleep mode X Error Information There is no error. Bax Consumables Information Paper Information Direct Print
 Paper Source
 Remaining Paper
 Paper Size
 Paper Type

 Multi-Purpose Tray
 None
 Ad
 Plain

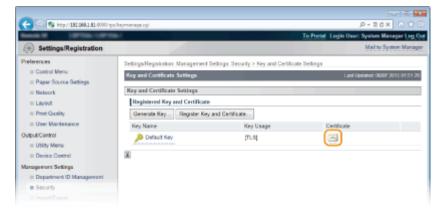
3 Click [Security] > [Key and Certificate Settings] or [CA Certificate Settings].

• Click [Key and Certificate Settings] to verify a key pair, or [CA Certificate Settings] to verify a CA certificate.

-			
(<) (381.81/secment)	ucgi		P-86X 0 0 0
Bank B STOLLARD	N. Contraction of the second sec		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(*) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences Cashol Meno Papar Source Satings Network Layout Pref Cashol Gathy User Maintenance Output/Control Utility Meno Disputic Control Management Satings Department (D Management E Source) Control Cashol C	Settings/Registration: Manageme Security Management Settings Record UI Settings Record UI Settings CA Conflicate Settings UPSice Settings Display Job Log (P Address Filter MAC Address Filter	Peri Address, TX Piter Peri Address, TX Piter Peri Address, TX Piter Peri Address, TX Fiter Peri Address, TX Fiter TX Fiter RX Fiter	Lash Sipdakod: 30700 2015 00: 44 30
	×		Copyright CANON INC. 2815

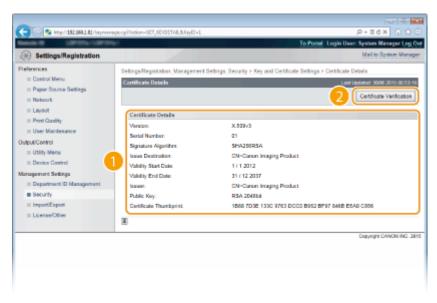
4 Click the icon for the key pair or certificate that you want to verify.

Security



• Certificate details can be viewed on this screen.

5 Check the details of the certificate, and click [Certificate Verification].



• The result from verifying the certificate is displayed as shown below.



LINKS

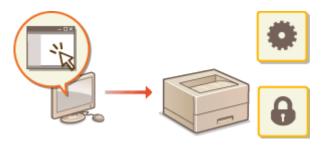
Ogenerating Key Pairs(P. 317)

OUsing CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 326)

Using Remote UI	32
Starting Remote UI	333
Remote UI Screens	36
Managing Documents and Checking the Machine Status	342
Enabling End Users to Operate Documents	348
Setting Up Menu Options from Remote UI	351
Saving/Loading Registered Data	\$53
Saving Registered Data	\$54
Loading Registered Data	\$56

0X7U-04U

Using a Web browser to operate the machine remotely, you can check the documents waiting to be printed or the status of the machine. You can also make some settings for the machine. You can do this without leaving your desk, making system management easier.



Functions of the Remote UI

Managing Documents and Checking the Machine Status(P. 342)
 Setting Up Menu Options from Remote UI(P. 351)
 Saving/Loading Registered Data(P. 353)

Basics of the Remote UI

Starting Remote UI(P. 333)Remote UI Screens(P. 336)

System Requirements

The following environment is required to use the Remote UI. In addition, set the Web browser to enable Cookies.

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later
- Display with a resolution of 800 x 600 pixels or higher and 256 or more colors

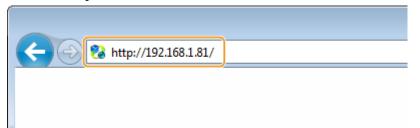
Starting Remote UI

0X7U-04W

To operate remotely, you need to input the IP address of the machine into a Web browser and start the Remote UI. Check the IP address set to the machine in advance (**Network Status Print(P. 446)**). If you have any questions, ask your Network Administrator.

Start the Web browser.

2 Enter "http://(the IP address of the machine)/" in the address field, and press the [ENTER] key.



• If you want to use an IPv6 address, enclose the IPv6 address with brackets (example: http:// [fe80::2e9e:fcff:fe4e:dbce]/).

NOTE:

If using a DNS server

• You can enter "<host name of the machine>.<domain name>" instead of "IP address of the machine" (example: http://my_printer.example.com).

If a security alert is displayed

A security alert may be displayed when the Remote UI communication is encrypted (Using TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)). When certificate settings or TLS settings have no errors, continue browsing the Web site.

3 Log on to the Remote UI.

When the Department ID Management is disabled

Select [Management Mode] or [General User Mode].

🗲 💿 😣 kepur 192 (198 (193 a	008r	9-26 × 000
e	Login	
	Anguage: Employ Postor Anguage: Employ Postor Other anguage: Employ Other angu	
1	Capyight CANON INC. 2015	

อ [Management Mode]

You can perform all the Remote UI operations and settings. Enter the System Manager password in [Password].

NOTE:

• The default System Manager password is "7654321." Setting the System Manager Password(P. 253)

🕞 [General User Mode]

You can check the status of documents or the machine, and you can also change some of the settings. If you wish to delete your print documents, enter the user name of the documents in [User Name]. The user name is automatically set to print documents based on information such as your computer name or computer logon name.

NOTE:

About [User Name]

By default, [User Name] is not displayed to disable general users to operate documents. If you want to
operate documents in General User Mode, log on in Management Mode and enable [Allow General
User Job Operation]. CEnabling End Users to Operate Documents(P. 348)

[Remote UI Access PIN]

If [Remote UI Access PIN] is displayed, enter the PIN (**Setting a Remote UI PIN(P. 263)**).

When the Department ID Management is enabled

Enter the appropriate ID in [Department ID] and PIN in [PIN] (**Setting the Department ID Management(P. 256)**).

Calloll	Login	
	Language: Englis	
	Monogement Mode	
	Password:	
	Department ID:	
	PIN	
		Log In
		Capyright CANON INC. 2015

4 Click [Log In].

Portal Page (main page) will be displayed. **Remote UI Screens(P. 336)**

Product Name (Senial No.) Location:	Color sets Dra	8.1.81.8000/ipo/pots				P-26X 0 ☆
Last Lipdate: 0007 2015 01:5140 Invice Basic Information Device States The device is in the Size prode. Enser information Paper Source Rescaling Raper Sage Paper Type Multi-Purpose Tray None Ad Plain Toner Cartified Information Device States Device Tray None Ad Plain Toner Cartified Information Device Tray None Ad Plain Toner Cartified Information Device Tray None Add Plain Toner Cartified Information Basics Management Service Basics Management Service			Product Na		or the second se	Login User: System Manager Log (
Bevice State Device State The dovice is in the Sizep mode. Enser information Paper isona error. Consemables information Paper Source Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Source Paper Type Math-Purpose Tray None A4 Plain Device Cartifidge Information Doter Cartifidge Information Doter Cartifidge Information Doter Cartifidge Information Doter Remaining Torver Bick Doter Source Bick Source Cartifidge Information Doter Remaining Torver Bick Biology	Remote UI: Po	rtai			Language: (inglish 🔹 🔊 Mail to System Manag
Device Status Settings/Registration The device is in the Steep rade. Settings/Registration Ensure information Pract Information Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper State Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper State Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper State Device Trip None Ad Plain Device Trip OK Toner Certridge Information Service Management Tools Doter Remaining Torver Bervice Management Service Back 100%					Lant Updates: 05/07 2015 01:51:40	Status Monton/Cancel
The device is in the Siege made. Enert Information There is no enor. Consemables Information Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper State Paper Type ModPharpose Trait None A4 Plain Dateer 1 OK A4 Plain Coder Remaining Tome Elock 100% Seeder Tools Coder Remaining Tome Elock 100% Seeder Management Service 100% Seeder Management Service 100% Seeder Source System Manager sepport Link Support S	ovice Basic Informat	ian				
Ense Information There is no error: There is no err	Device Status					Settings/Registration
There is no ency: Basic Tools Onsemathles information Basic Tools Paper Information Basic Tools Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Saue Paper Type Multi-Purpose Trag Noma A.6 Plain Dareer 1 OK A.6 Plain Tooler Castridge Information Caster Tools Management Tools Caster Tools Renaining Tooler Review Management Service Rack 192% Service Nanagement Service	The device is in the	Sleep mode.				47
Insurables Information Box Paper Information Paper Source Multi-Purpose Tray None A.4 Plain Drever 1 OK A.4 Plain Toner Cartridge Information Management Tools Color Remaining Toner Back 10%	Error Information					_
Image: Information Image: Information Paper Source Remaining Paper: Paper Size Paper Source Paper Source Remaining Paper: Paper Size Paper Type Multi-Purpose Tray Non A.4 Daver 1 OK A.4 Plain Image: Paper Source Management Tools Color: Remaining Tome: Benice Management Service Back 109%	There is no error.					Besic Tools
Paper Information Direct Print Direct Print Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper Source Paper Type Multi-Purpose Tray None A.4 Plain Denser 1 OK A.6 Plain Management Toole Toner Cartridge Information Edit Service Management Service Management Service Elack 100% Essage Roard Essage Roard Essage Source Management Service Essage Roard Message from System Management Service Service Management Service Essage Roard Essage Roard	onsemables informa	tion				Bax
Paper Source Remaining Paper Paper State Paper Type Multi-Purpose Tray None A4 Plain Dareer 1 OK A6 Plain Dareer 1 OK A6 Plain Toner Cartridge Information Calor Remaining Toner Back 100% Service Management Service	Paper Information					
MultiPurpose Tray None A4 Plain Draver 1 OK A4 Plain Toxer Cartridge Information Color Remaining Toxer Black 192% lessage Board Massage From System Manager: export Link		Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type		Direct Print
Dates 1 OK A4 Plain Toxer Cartridge Information Banks Management Tools Color Ramasing Tome Back 100% Instage Board Message Board Message from System Management Service support Link support Link support Link support Link						
Toner Cartridge Information Barvice Management Service Calor Remaining Toner Back 19975 Isosage Board Massage From System Management Service sepport Link Support Link: http://www.canon.com	Drawer 1	ок	A4	Plain		
Celor Ranualing Toner Black 100% Issage Roard Message Roard Message Roard Message Roard Support Link Support Link						Management Tools
Rack 100% Iassage Board Massage Forn System Manager: eppert Link Support Link: <u>http://www.canon.com</u>						Bervice Management Service
lessage Boerd Massage From System Manager: eppert Link: <u>http://www.canon.com</u>						
Massaga Pom System Manager: eppert Link Support Link: <u>http://www.canon.com</u>	LIKA I	22.75				
epport Link Support Link: http://www.canon.com	essage Board					
Support Link: http://www.canon.com	Message from System	n Manager.				
Support Link: http://www.canon.com	encourt Link					
Copyright CANON INC :	Copperture. Index	NEW CARGO CAR				
						Copyright CANON INC. 3

Remote UI Screens

This section describes the typical screens of the Remote UI.

Portal Page (Main Page)(P. 336)
[Status Monitor/Cancel] Page(P. 337)
[Settings/Registration] Page(P. 338)
[Box] Page(P. 339)
[Direct Print] Page(P. 340)

Portal Page (Main Page)

	Device Name: Product Name Location:	e (Seriel No.)			Login User: Syste	
Remote UI: Portal				Longunge: Englis	1 2 (Mei to	System Manager
evice Basic Information			Last Updated: 05/07 2	3	Status Monitos/Cancel	6
						<u> </u>
Device Status The device is in the Sleep mode.	4				Settings/Registration	(X)
Error information	4					57
There is no error.					Basic Tools	
onsemables information					Вок	<u> </u>
Paper Information						
Paper Source Remaining Paper	r PaperSize P	aper Type			Direct Print	- 5
Multi-Purpose Tray None	A4 F	Nain	-			1.1
Drawer 1 OK	A4 F	Plain	5			_
Toner Cartridge Information			<u> </u>		Management Tools	
Color Remaining Toner					Service Management Servic	• 5
Back 100%						1
essage Board	-6					
Message from System Manager.						
	_					
epport Link	7					
Support Link: http://www.canon.com						
					Convicient	CANON INC. 2015
						Sector and the sector

[Log Out]

Logs off from the Remote UI. The Login page will be displayed.

[Mail to System Manager]

Displays a window for creating an e-mail to the system manager specified in [Management Settings] under [Security].

8 Refresh Icon

Refreshes the currently displayed page.

4 Device Basic Information

Displays the current status of the machine and error information. If an error has occurred, the link to the Error Information page will be displayed.

0X7U-04X

S Consumables Information

Displays paper information and the amount remaining in the toner cartridge.

[Message Board]

Displays a message from the System Manager specified in [Message Board/Support Link] under [Settings/ Registration] > [License/Other].

7 Support Link

Displays a text link to the support information of the machine specified in [Message Board/Support Link] under [Settings/Registration] > [License/Other].

[Status Monitor/Cancel]

Displays [Status Monitor/Cancel] page. You can use this page to check the current printing status, cancel print processing, and view a history of print jobs.

[Settings/Registration]

Displays [Settings/Registration] page. When you have logged on in Management Mode, you can change the settings items and save/load the registered data. **Setting Up Menu Options from Remote UI(P. 351)**

[0] [Box] (only when an optional SD card is installed)

Displays the [Box] page. You can print and delete documents stored in the machine. **Printing a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)(P. 137)**

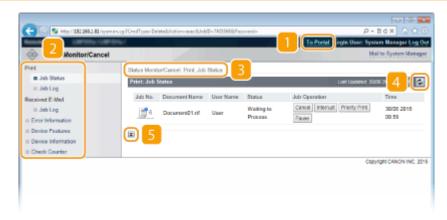
[Direct Print]

You can print a file stored in a computer without opening it. **Printing without Opening a File (Direct Print)(P. 146)**

[Service Management Service]

Starts Service Management Service (SMS) used to manage MEAP applications (function-enhancing software). **Function Guide for MEAP Application Management**

[Status Monitor/Cancel] Page



<mark>1]</mark> [To Portal]

Returns to Portal Page (main page).

🔁 Menu

Click an item, and the content is displayed in the right page. **OManaging Documents and Checking the Machine Status(P. 342)**

Breadcrumb Trail

Indicates the series of pages you opened to display the currently displayed page. You can check what page is currently displayed.

4 Refresh Icon

Refreshes the currently displayed page.

5 Top Icon

Moves the scroll box up to the top of the page when the page is scrolled down.

[Settings/Registration] Page

C			_	P-BCX 01	
Reach II Con Carlos Carlos	el la		To Post	al login User: System Manager Log	Out 1
🛞 Settir 🧲 Jistration				Mail to System Mana	per .
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preferences: Co	ntrol Menu	3		
Control Menu	Control Menu		<u> </u>	Last Updated: 3006 2015 00:594	40
II Paper Source Settings				50	
Natwork				ER.	4
E Layout	Sleep Settings				
D Print Quality	Sleep Mode:		High (Deep Sleep)		
User Maintenance	Siegs Even if Error:		On		
Output/Centrol	Prioritize Energy Saving When i	Darp Shore	on		
Utility Menu	Auto Skeep Time:	a neek such	5 min.		
D Device Control	Sleep When Using USB:		Allow		
Management Settings	and man congreate				
Department ID Management	Timer Settings				
a Security	Wake Up Timer:	017			
0 ImportExport	Wake Up Time:	12:00			
D License/Other	Auto Reset Time:	2 min.			
	Sleep Timer.	07			
	Sloop Time:	12:00			
	Auto Shutdown Timer.	On			
	Auto Shutdown Time:	After 41	r.		
	Thursdown Weekly Timer.	017			
	Interrupt Print	-			n 1
_	Secure Print Deletion Time:		Birther		2
	Stored Job Deletion Time:	3 days			_
	Secure Job Log	Of			
	USB Advanced Functions	-			
	Advanced Function Settings:	Prioritio	Meap		- 1
			÷.		
				Copyright CANON INC. 2	015

[To Portal]

Returns to Portal Page (main page).

🔁 Menu

Click an item, the content is displayed in the right page. **Setting Up Menu Options from Remote UI(P. 351)**

Breadcrumb Trail

Indicates the series of pages you opened to display the currently displayed page. You can check what page is currently displayed.

4 Top Icon

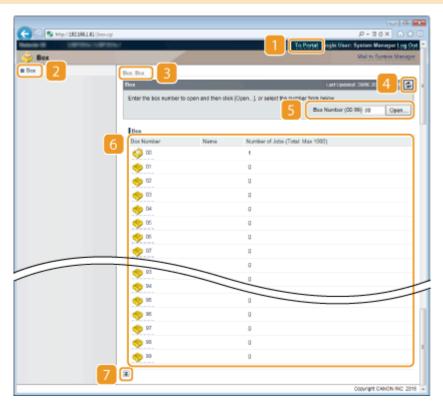
Moves the scroll box up to the top of the page when the page is scrolled down.

NOTE

Menu on the [Settings/Registration] page

- You can change settings on the [Settings/Registration] page only when you have logged on in Management Mode.
- If you log on in General User Mode, [Utility Menu], [Device Control], [Department ID Management], and [Import/Export] are not displayed.

[Box] Page



<mark>[]</mark> [To Portal]

Returns to Portal Page (main page).

2 [Box]

Displays a list of boxes. You can open a box to check detailed information of the documents stored in the box, print and delete the documents. **Printing a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)** (P. 137)

Breadcrumb Trail

Indicates the series of pages you opened to display the currently displayed page. You can check what page is currently displayed.

4 Refresh Icon

Refreshes the currently displayed page.

5 Box Number

You can enter a box number and click [Open] to open the box of the entered number.

👩 Box List

You can click the text link under [Box Number] to open the applicable box.

7 Top Icon

Moves the scroll box up to the top of the page when the page is scrolled down.

[Direct Print] Page

COO Star Market Star Star Star Star Star Star Star Sta	tegi	_		,0 + 1 6 X	
Research Contract Colleges		1	To Portal	ogin User: System Manag	er Log Out
S L rint				Mail to System	Managar
PDF File PS File Intege File XPS File XPS File	Direct Print: Print Image Files Print Image Files Enter the TIFF or JPEG file location. Citik (Browsel) to select a file. Forwarding the file may take some tim Dia not citik (Start Printing) more than			Last Updarled, 3075 2015 Start Printing Restore D	
	Select Image File				
	Specify File:			Вгонтя	
	Specify Print Range				_
	Print Range:	e Al			
		 Specify Pages (First Page:	Last Page: 1	- 1
	Quality Settings				
	Resolution:	600 dpl 🔹			
	Haffonos:	 Resolution Gradation High Resolution 			
	Teagers				
	Print Position:	© sR08			
	Zoone	OF STREET			\sim
	📋 Enlarge Print Area				_
	Print 2-Sided				
	Binding Location:	Long Edge 💌			
	Show Warnings:	Print x			
4					
				Copyright CANOR	N INC. 2015 +

<mark>[]</mark> [To Portal]

Returns to Portal Page (main page).

🔁 Menu

Displays the page for specifying the file format of a file to be printed by Direct Print. **Printing without Opening a File (Direct Print)(P. 146)**

Breadcrumb Trail

Indicates the series of pages you opened to display the currently displayed page. You can check what page is currently displayed.

4 Top Icon

Moves the scroll box up to the top of the page when the page is scrolled down.

Managing Documents and Checking the Machine

Status

0X7U-04Y

Checking Current Status of Print Documents(P. 342)

Checking History of Documents(P. 343)

Checking Error Information(P. 345)

Checking Device Specifications(P. 346)

Checking System Manager Information(P. 346)

Checking Print Total Counter(P. 347)

NOTE

• The document file name displays only 128 characters. The printed application name may be added to the file name.

Checking Current Status of Print Documents

You can check the print status (currently being printed or waiting to be printed) of the documents designated to be printed from a computer, and delete or interrupt documents.



Log on to the Remote UI (Starting Remote UI(P. 333)) > [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Job Status]

Status Moniton/Cancel				h	lail to System Man
et B Job Status Job Log Envired E-Mail B Job Log Envired Formation Device Prostance Device Prostance	Status Monito Print: Job S Job No.	s/Carcel: Print: Job Inten Document Name Document01.rtf	Status Wailing to Process	a b sec 3 Carse Mona: Prety Pret Pear	Time 3006 2015 01:07
Check Counter				0	Byright CANON INC.

[Cancel]

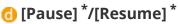
You can delete documents that are being printed or waiting to be printed.

🜔 [Interrupt] *

Temporarily stops the current print job in progress and starts a specified print job. For the interrupted print job, printing of the remaining pages is started as soon as the interrupting print job is finished.

[Priority Print] *

Moves up the print order of a document waiting to be printed by one.



Press [Pause] to temporarily stop the current print job. Press [Resume] to restart the paused print job.

NOTE:

• For a secured or encrypted document, clicking [Resume] displays a screen to prompt you to enter the PIN. Enter the correct PIN and click [OK].

* Not displayed when <Interrupt Print> is set to <Off> in the setting menu of the operation panel (**○Interrupt Print(P. 369)**).

NOTE

- The status of all print jobs is displayed regardless of the settings of the Department ID Management.
- The factory default settings prevent some operations, such as deleting a document to print or interrupting a print job, from being performed in General User Mode. If you want to operate documents in General User Mode, log on in Management Mode and enable [Allow General User Job Operation]. **©Enabling End Users to Operate Documents(P. 348)**
- If you entered your user name when you logged on in General User Mode, your user name will only be displayed on the documents that you printed.
- Click [Job No.] on the paused documents and secure documents to display detailed information. You can check the user name and the page count of the printed document.

Checking History of Documents

The print history and e-mail reception history are displayed in list form.



🔁 🛞 😫 http://192.068.1.41/jobilog.cj					To Descri		16× 0 17
mark introductories	87.				to Portel	Login User: Syste	
Status Monitor/Cancel						Ma	i to System Mana
vint.	Status M	onitos/Can	elt Print: Job	Log			
n Job Status	Print: J					Last Updated: 300	6 2015 01 07 24
e Job Log	Print	Job/Direct	Print			Print Job/Dire	C ; Displa
	300 N	. Result	Total Impres	sion Count: Start Time	End Time	Document Name	User Name
Error Information	8	OK	1	30/06 2015 01:07	30/06 2015 01:07	Document01.rtf	User
Device Peaturee	6	OK	1	30/06 2015 00:59	30/06 2015 00:59	Document01.nf	User
Device Information	5	Cancel	0	30/06 2015 00:58	30/06 2015 00:59	Document01.nf	User
Check Counter	5	Cancel	3	26/06 2015 04:09	26/06 2015 04:28	Document01.nf	User
	6	OK	1	26/06 2015 02:52	26/06 2015 02:53	Document03.nf	User
	5	OK	1	26/06 2015 02:51	26/06 2015 02:53	Document01.nff	User
	7	OK	2	26/06 2015 01:58	26/06 2015 02:00	file-005 pdf	DIRECT PRINT
	5	OK	1	26/06 2015 01:22	26/06 2015 01-23	Test Page	User

อ [Job Log] (Print)

Four types of print history can be displayed.

[Print Job/Direct Print]	Up to 200 documents printed from computers and USB memory devices are displayed.
[Stored Job]	The history of up to 200 printed documents stored in the machine is displayed (only when the SD card is installed).

[Report]	The history of up to 16 documents printed as setting lists and reports is displayed (up to 128 documents when the SD card is installed).
[E-Mail Print]	The history of up to 16 e-mails printed after received is displayed (up to 128 documents when the SD card is installed).

🜔 [Job Log] (E-Mail RX)

The e-mail reception history shows up to 96 e-mails. If an error occurs during e-mail reception, the applicable error code is displayed in [RX Results].

Error Code	Cause	Action
407	The POP3 mail server was disconnected. Data of 1 KB (1024 bytes) could not be received within 10 minutes during e-mail reception.	 Consult your network administrator. If the error occurs frequently with the same e-mail data, check whether the e-mail data is normal.
408	The "ERR" response was returned from the POP3 mail server.	Consult your network administrator.
412	Data of 1 KB (1024 bytes) could not be received within 10 minutes during e-mail reception.	 Consult your network administrator. If the error occurs frequently with the same e-mail data, check whether the e-mail data is normal.
420	The e-mail data size exceeds 1.5 GB.	If the SD card is installed on the machine, the data size of an e-mail to send must be 1.5 GB or less.
421	The e-mail message size exceeds 25 MB.	If the SD card is installed on the machine, the message size of an e-mail to send must be 25 MB or less.
422	The size of an attached file exceeds 100 MB.	If the SD card is installed on the machine, the size of each attached file must be 100 MB or less.
423	A received attached file is in an unsupported format.	Attached files must be in JPEG or TIFF format. Do not attach any files of other formats to an e-mail to send.
424	More than three files are attached.	Excessive attached files are not printed.
430	The sender of the received e- mail is unknown.	Make sure to set a sender before sending e-mails.
431	A divided e-mail has been received.	 Take the following action to prevent e-mails from being sent as a divided e-mail. Reduce the size of an e-mail to send. (Reduce the e-mail size to be less than the one that causes a divided e-mail.) Configure the application to prevent e-mails from being divided before sending.
	The received e-mail contains unsupported encoding or character codes.	For e-mails to send, use the encoding and character codes supported by the machine. Outline of E-Mail Print(P. 157)
	The received e-mail is in an unsupported format.	Check the e-mail format. We recommend sending e-mails in text format.
432	The received data is invalid.	Check whether the data of the sent e-mail is normal.

433	The received e-mail is in HTML format.	This machine does not support HTML e-mails. (An HTML e-mail message is printed as a plain text.)
434	No message is in the e-mail.	The received e-mail contains no message.
435	Forwarded fax document is illegal.	The attached file is not in TIFF format or exceeds the printable size.
436	Forwarded fax document has no attached file.	No document is printed due to no attached file.
440	Printing was canceled for some reason.	Resend the e-mail.
441	An error has occurred during processing.	Resend the e-mail.
499	An error has occurred in the machine.	Take appropriate action according to the message on the display of the machine. When an Error Message Appears(P. 480)

NOTE:

- If two or more errors occur, only the error code of a lower number is displayed.
- You can also check error codes by using the E-Mail RX History List. **E-Mail RX Log List(P. 538)**

[Display] (print history only)

When you select the print type from the drop-down list and click [Display], the history of the selected print type is displayed in list form.

NOTE

• If any optional SD card is not installed on the machine, the history is erased when a shutdown or hard reset is performed.

Checking Error Information

When an error occurs, this page will be displayed by clicking the message displayed under [Error Information] on Portal Page (main page). **Portal Page (Main Page)(P. 336)**

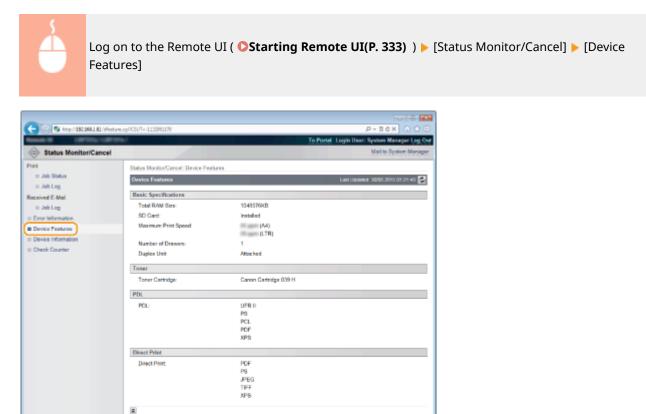


Log on to the Remote UI (**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**) [Status Monitor/Cancel] [Error Information]

C C R Http://182.068.1.81/orv	arinto.cpi?CSVT=4077570	D	0 🖄 🙆 x 5 E - 9.
Berneth Contractor	F8%7		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Status Moniton/Cance	1		Mail to System Manager
Print	Status Monitor	Carcel: Error Information	
= Jub Status	Error Inform	ation	Last Updaled 30/05/2015 01:09:39 🛃
III Jab Log Received E-Mail	Erroro have	occurred.	
E Jab Log	Error Inform	ation	
D Device Features	Status	Dotails	
Device Information	•	No paper in Drawer 1. Load paper into Drawer 1.	
E Check Counter	0	The cover is open. Securely close the cover.	
	a.		
			Copyright CANON INC. 2015

Checking Device Specifications

You can view the information including the maximum print speed and features of the machine.



Checking System Manager Information

Information about the machine and the system manager is displayed. This information is what has been set in [Security] > [Management Settings] on the [Settings/Registration] page (Setting the System Manager Password(P. 253)).



Log on to the Remote UI (**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**) **[**Status Monitor/Cancel] **[**Device Information]

Conviore CANON INC. 2015

C	1/10 (F., 1) 1544/7365		P-86× 0 00
Contraction of the second second	10001-000000		To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Out
A			Mail to System Manager
Status Monitor/Cancel			Mail to System Manager
Print	Status Monitor/Cancel: Device Information		
III Job Status	Device Information		Last Updated: 30/06/2015 01:21:55 🛃
= Jab Log			
Received E-Mail	Device Basic Information		
II Jab Log	Manufacture:	CANON INC.	
Error Information	Device Name:	10000	
Device Pestures	Location:		
Device Information	Product Name:	100000	
8 Dheck Counter	Serial Number:	480.0112.000	
	Varsion Information		
	Main Controller:	R0.42/PH	
	System Manager Information		
	System Manager:		
	Contact Information:		
	E-Mail Address:		
	Support Link:	http://www.canon.com	
	System Manager Comment:		
	Usage Information		
	Total Privited Pages:	0021011	
	X		
			Cosylight CANON INC. 2815

Checking Print Total Counter

The total number of pages that have been printed is displayed.



Status Monitor/Can		To Postel Login User: System Manager Log I Mail to System Manag
Print	Status Monito/Cancel: Check Counter	
⇔ Job Status ⇔ Job Log	Check Counter	Last Updated: 30/06 2015 01 22:30
Received E-Mail	Main Counter	
ti Jab Log	Туре	Total
Error Information	101 : Total 1	21011
Device Peakares	113 : Total (Black & White/Smail)	21011
Device Information	114 : Total 1 (2-Sided)	2391
E Check Counter	×	
		Depytight CANON INC. 2

LINKS

Remote UI Screens(P. 336)

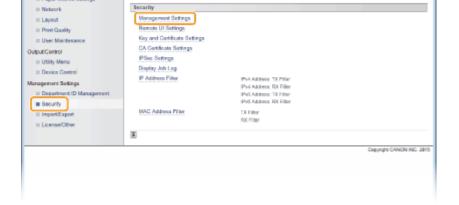
Enabling End Users to Operate Documents

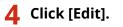
0X7U-050

You can configure settings so that you can delete or interrupt the documents even when you log on to the Remote UI in General User Mode.

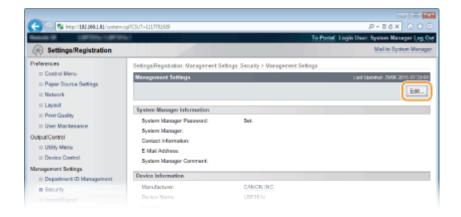
Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333) 1 7 Click [Settings/Registration]. 10 N 🔶 📖 😵 http://182.068.1.814 P-86X 0 0 Login User: System Ma Device Name: Product Name (Sarial No.): Language: English Remote UI: Portal - D Mail to Sy Lant Updated: 06/07 2015 01:51:40 Status Monitor/Cancel 0 Device Basic Information Device Status Settings/Registration X The device is in the Sleep mode Error Information There is no error. Besic Tools Bax Consumables Information Paper Information Direct Print 4
 Paper Source
 Remaining Paper
 Paper Size
 Paper Type

 Multi-Purpose Tray
 None
 Ad
 Plain
 3 Click [Security] > [Management Settings]. **A A** < 100 100 http://182.068.1.81/5 ,Р + 11 6 X -System Manager Log Out (Settings/Registration Mail to Spat Preferences Settings/Registration: Management Settings: Security III Costrol Menu Security





© Paper Source Settings



5 Enter the System Manager password in [Current System Manager Password].

-			
🗲 🛞 😵 http://182.068.1.81/system	cgilAction=GET_SVSTEM&CSUT=1338978981		.P-≣6X 0 00
Anna Carton Carto	67		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(A) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Monager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Management Set	tings: Security > Management S	ettings > Edit Management Settings
Control Menu	Edit Management Settings		Last Updated: 2006 2015 07:30:36
In Paper Source Settings	The settings will be changed as follow	1	
© Network			OK. Cancel
= Layout			UNL CARGE
Print Quality	Authentication of Edit Management	Sottinga	
III User Maintenance	Current System Manager Password		
Output/Centrol			
 Utility Menu 	System Manager Information		
II Device Control	System Manager Paseword:	Set.	
Management Settings	SetChange Password		
II Department ID Management	Pasoword:		(Max 10 characters)
Security	Conten		(Max 15 characters)

6 Select the [Allow General User Job Operation] check box and click [OK].

-			0161*
C (0) (0) (192,068,1,81/system.c)	gilAction=GET_SVSTEM8xCSUT=226779882		P-Edx 0 00
Sector Strength		To	Portal Login User: System Menager Log Out
(H) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration Management Settin	gs: Security > Management Setting	
II Paper Source Settings	Edit Management Settings		Last Updated: 01/07 2015-02/05-01
II Network	The settings will be changed as follows.		
c Layout			OK Cancel
Print Quality	Authentication of Edit Management Se	ttinga	
User Maintenance Outout/Control	Current System Manager Password		
CUbity Menu	System Manager Information		
E Device Control	System Manager Pasaward:	Set.	
Management Sellings	SetChange Password		
© Department ID Management	Pasoword:		(Max 16 characters)
Security	Confirm:		(Max 16 characters)
© ImportiExport	System Manager:		
III License/Other	Contact Information:		
	E-Mail Address:		
	System Manager Comment:		
	Device Information		
	Device Name:	187874	
	Location:		
	Restrict Printer Jobs		
	Restrict Printer Jobs		
	General User Job Operation Settings		
	2 Allow General User Job Operation		
	Key Lock Settings		

[Allow General User Job Operation]

If you select the check box, general users will be able to operate the documents of which the user name matches the one that was used to log on. When you do not want to allow general users to operate documents, clear the check box.

LINKS

Remote UI Screens(P. 336)

Setting Up Menu Options from Remote UI

0X7U-051

You can change the various machine settings by using the Remote UI. Most of the settings can be set also on the machine, but some settings can only be set using the Remote UI.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333) 1 Click [Settings/Registration]. 2 1.51 N 62 http://152.068.1.81 P - 16 X t Name (Sarial No.): Language: English Remote UI: Portal - 2 Lant Updated: 06/07 2015 01:51:40 Status Monitos/Can **Device Basic Information** Device Status The device is in the Sleep mode X Error Information There is no error. Bax Consumables Information Paper Information Direct Print
 Paper Source
 Remaining Paper
 Paper Size
 Paper Type

 Multi-Purpose Tray
 None
 Ad
 Plain

3 Click the menu item you want to set, and click [Edit].

-				
🔶 💿 🚱 http://182.068.1.81/octri.cg	i			P-26× 0 位
MARKED SPECIALIZED	No.		To Postal L	ogin User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manager
Preferences	SettingsRegistration Preferences: Conk	ol Menu		
Control Menu	Control Menu			Last Lipiteted: 30406 2015 01:24:30
I Paper Source Settings				54
II Network				Edt
Layout Print Quality	Sleep Settings			
D User Maintenance	Sleep Mode:		High (Deep Sleep)	
	Sleep Even if Error:		On	
Dutput/Centrol	Prioritize Energy Saving When in	Deep Sleep:	01	
 Utility Menu 	Auto Sleep Time:		5 min.	
II Device Control	Sleep When Using USB:		Allow	
Aanagement Sellings	Timer Settings			
Department ID Management		07		
 Security 	Wake Up Timer:	12:00		
ImportiExport	Wake Up Time:			
= License/Other	Auto Repet Time:	2 min.		
	Sleep Timer.	or		
	Sleep Time:	12:00		
	Auto Shutdown Timer:	On		
	Auto Shuklown Time.	Alter 41	ν.	
	Auto Shutdown Weekly Timer:	Off		
	Warning Step			

• For more information about the settings menu, see each item below

Menu items	Referents	
Preferences		
Control Menu	Control Menu(P. 361)	
Paper Source Settings	Select Feeder Menu(P. 453)	
Network	Network(P. 375)	

Using Remote UI

Menu items	Referents
Layout	CLayout(P. 395)
Print Quality	OPrint Quality(P. 399)
User Maintenance	OUser Maintenance(P. 406)
Output/Control	
Utility Menu	 Printing Reports and Lists(P. 536) Job Menu(P. 449)
Device Control	You can control the status of the machine. Online key(P. 25) Soft Reset(P. 451) Entering Sleep Mode(P. 69)
Management Settings	
Department ID Management	Setting the Department ID Management(P. 256)
Security	Security(P. 248)
Import/Export	Saving/Loading Registered Data(P. 353)
License/Other	 You can change messages shown on the message board and the link to the support page that are displayed on the Portal Page (main page).
	 You can register or update software (Function Guide for Software Registration and Update).
	NOTE:
	• You may not be able to use this function in some countries or regions.

LINKS

Remote UI Screens(P. 336)Setting Menu List(P. 359)

Saving/Loading Registered Data

0X7U-052

Menu options data that has been registered in the machine can be saved in your computer (export). Data that is saved on your computer can also be registered in the machine (import). Data exported from this machine can be imported to another machine of the same model. So you can easily copy a variety of settings data to multiple machines. To use these features, it is required that you have logged on in Management Mode.

Saving Registered Data(P. 354) Loading Registered Data(P. 356)

IMPORTANT

Do not proceed to an import/export operation immediately after the power is turned ON

• After the power is turned ON, wait until the <Starting up... 80 Initializing MEAP. Do not turn power OFF.> message disappears. If you proceed to an import/export operation while this message is displayed, saving/ loading of registered data cannot be performed correctly.

Do not turn OFF the machine until the export/import process is complete

• It may take a few minutes to complete the process. If the machine is turned OFF during the process, it may result in damage to data or the machine.

Do not operate the machine during the export/import process

• Before exporting/importing, check that no operation such as printing documents is currently processing.

NOTE

Import/export using the operation panel

• You can also save/load settings data via a USB memory device by using the operation panel of the machine. **CImport/Export Set.(P. 413)**

Saving Registered Data

0X7U-053

You can export machine settings data and save them in your computer. It is recommended that you regularly back up important settings.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333) 1 Click [Settings/Registration]. 2 1.81 68 http://182.068.1.81/ P-Edx Name: I Name (Sarial No.) Pa Remote UI: Portal Language: English - 🔁 Mai Lant Updated: 06/07 2015 01:51:40 Status Monitor/Cancel $\langle \odot \rangle$ Device Basic Information Device Status The device is in the Sleep mode Same X Error Information There is no error. Bax Consumables Information Paper Information **Direct Print**
 Paper Source
 Remaining Paper
 Paper Size
 Paper Type

 Multi-Purpose Tray
 None
 Ad
 Plain
 Click [Import/Export] > [Export]. 3

-		
(a) (3) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4	sebidi	P+86× 0 ℃ 0
Anna I INTERCORD		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	SettingsRegistration Management Settings Import/Export	
III Costrol Menu	ImportExport	Last Updated: 30/06 2015 01:24 57
Paper Source Settings		
E Network	ImportExport	
= Layout	Import	
Print Quality	Export	
User Maintenance	Importil' sport Reau In	
Output/Control	×	
Utility Menu	-	
E Device Control		
Management Settings		
II Department ID Management		
a Security		
B ImportiExport		
II License/Other		
		Copyright CANON INC. 2915

4 Select the settings to export, and set the encryption password.

Using Remote UI

Settings/Registration	ent.cg//CSUT-1214628479	P + 1 C X C C To Portal Legin User: System Masager Leg. Our Mailto System Masager
Preferences Costrol Menu Paper Source Settings Notwork Layout	Settings/Registration. Management Settings. Import/Diport > Export Select the terms to export, then click (Start Exporting).	Last Updated: 29/00 2015 00:46 00
Print Castley User Mantesance Output/Control Uthly Mene Denice Control Management Settings Department ID Management Seturny	Export Settings Select Item to Export SetingsRegistration MEAP Application Setting Information PDL Setting Information Encryption Pasaword Encryption Pasaword Encryption Pasaword	(Mas 32 characters)
B ImportExport	Confirm	(Max 32 characters) Copyright CAVCIN INC. 2015

[Settings/Registration]

To export the settings data of items that can be set from [Settings/Registration] in the Portal Page, select the check boxes for those items.

[MEAP Application Setting Information]

To export the settings data of MEAP applications, select this check box.

[PDL Setting Information]

To export the settings data of items that can be set from **Settings Specific to Print Mode(P. 417)**, select this check box.

[Encryption Password]

Enter the password to encrypt data to be exported using up to 32 characters. Enter the same password in [Confirm]. If no password is set, data exporting is impossible.

NOTE:

• The password is required when exported data is imported. **Data(P. 356)**

5 Click [Start Exporting].

6 Follow the on-screen instructions to specify the location where the exported setting data is saved.

> The setting data will be saved.

LINKS

Remote UI Screens(P. 336)Setting Menu List(P. 359)

Loading Registered Data

0X7U-054

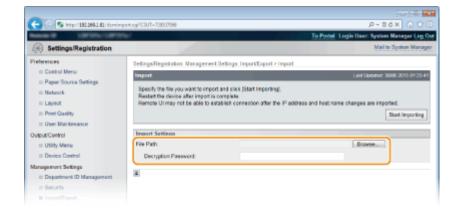
Load (import) data that was exported from the machine. You can also import settings from another machine if it is the same model as your machine.

Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. Starting Remote UI(P. 333) 1 Click [Settings/Registration]. 2 8 http://182.068.1.81 P-16X t Name (Sarial No.): Pa Remote UI: Portal Language: English - 2 Na Lant Updated: 06/07 2015 01:51:40 Status Monitos/Card **Device Basic Information** Device Status The device is in the Sleep mode X Error Information There is no error. Bax Consumables Information Paper Information Direct Print
 Paper Source
 Remaining Paper
 Paper Size
 Paper Type

 Multi-Purpose Tray
 None
 Ad
 Plain
 Click [Import/Export] > [Import]. 3 .

base of Lands-Land		To Portel Login User: System Manager Log 0
🛞 Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manage
heterences Castol Menu Castol Menu Paper Source Settings Network Layout Penet Castley Penet Castley Penet Mantesance Output Control Benuice Control Benuice Control Benuises Desize Seturty BenuiseSeport Penet Seturgs Penet	Settings-Registration: Management Settings: Import/Export Import/Export Export Export Import/Export Results	Last Updelect 30005 2015-04-35-30
 Likense/Other 		Cosyright CHNON INC. 28

4 Specify the setting file to be imported, and enter the password.



[File Path]

Click [Browse] and select the file.

[Decryption Password]

Enter the password set when the settings were exported.

5 Click [Start Importing].

6 Click [OK].

The specified setting data will be imported into the machine.

7 Perform a hard reset.

• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].



The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

LINKS

Remote UI Screens(P. 336)
 Setting Menu List(P. 359)

Setting Menu List

etting Menu List	
Setup Menu	
Control Menu	
Paper Source	
Network	
Layout	
Print Quality	
Interface	403
User Maintenance	
Print Mode	415
Settings Specific to Print Mode	417
UFR II	
PCL	
Imaging	
XPS	
PDF	
PS	439
MEAP Settings	
Check Counter	443
Initialize Menu	
Utility Menu	445
Job Menu	449
Reset Menu	451
Select Feeder Menu	453

Setting Menu List

0X7U-055

There are various settings in this machine. You can adjust each of the settings in detail. Specify the settings from the menu screens of the operation panel.

NOTE

Priority of settings

• Settings that are specified on the printer driver will override those specified on the operation panel.

• When you perform USB Direct Print or Direct Print, the

settings specified for printing or stored in TIFF data

override those specified on the operation panel.

Priority High Low Printer driver Setting menu Priority High Low USB Direct Print Direct Print Setting menu

TIPS

• You can print the setting menu in list form to check the current settings:

Configuration Page(P. 445)Network Status Print(P. 446)

Setup Menu

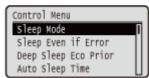


You can specify the settings for the operation environment of the machine and for printing. When you press \blacktriangleright ($\Box \Box \Box$) on the operation panel, the Setup menu appears to show the setting items under each function item.

Control Menu(P. 361)
Paper Source(P. 374)
Network(P. 375)
Layout(P. 395)
Print Quality(P. 399)
Interface(P. 403)
User Maintenance(P. 406)
Print Mode(P. 415)
Settings Specific to Print Mode(P. 417)
MEAP Settings(P. 442)
Check Counter(P. 443)
Initialize Menu(P. 444)

Control Menu

0X7U-057



The settings about the sleep mode and how the machine should behave if an error occurs are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger ([†]).

NOTE

Asterisks (*)

• Settings marked with an asterisk (*) are not displayed depending on other settings or whether an optional SD card is installed on the machine.

Sleep Mode(P. 361)	SD Card(P. 369)
Sleep Even if Error(P. 361)	Interrupt Print(P. 369)
Deep Sleep Eco Prior(P. 362)	Sec. Print Del. Time(P. 369)
🗘 Auto Sleep Time(P. 362)	Secure Job Log(P. 369)
Sleep When Using USB(P. 362)	OUSB-Connected PC OS(P. 370)
Timer Settings(P. 362)	PDL Selection (PnP)(P. 370)
OWarning Step(P. 364)	OMng. Settings(P. 371)
🛇Auto Skip Error(P. 364)	CRMT-SW(P. 371)
Language(P. 365)	Adjust Screen(P. 371)
OAlarm(P. 365)	Animated Instruction(P. 372)
Show Warnings(P. 365)	Show Toner Gauge(P. 372)
Date/Time Settings(P. 367)	Set. Comp. Notify(P. 373)
OMain Pwr Quick Start(P. 368)	Scrolling Speed(P. 373)

Sleep Mode

The sleep mode function reduces the amount of power consumed by the machine by temporarily stopping some internal operations. Specify the sleep mode level. **©Entering Sleep Mode(P. 69)**

High (Deep Sleep)[†] Mid (Printer Sleep)

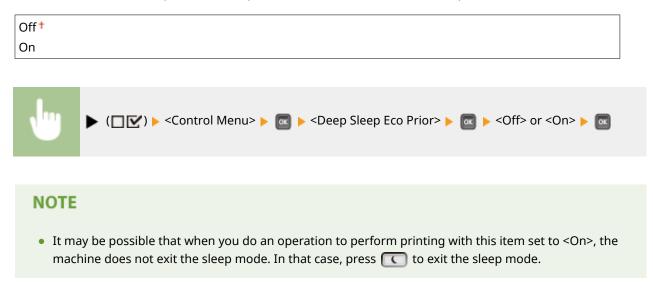
Sleep Even if Error

Select whether to automatically enter sleep mode when an error occurs.

Off On ⁺ ► (□☑) ► <Control Menu> ► @ ► <Sleep Even if Error> ► @ ► <Off> or <On> ► @

Deep Sleep Eco Prior

Select whether to further reduce power consumption when the machine and the computer are connected via USB.



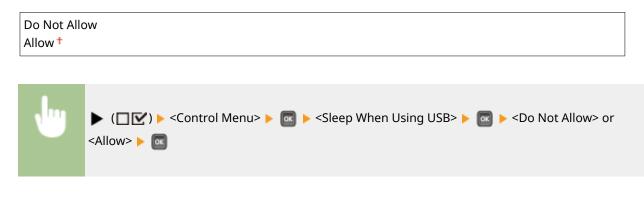
Auto Sleep Time

If the machine has not been operated or has had no data to print for a specified period of time, it enters sleep mode to save energy consumption (Auto Sleep). Specify the period of time after which auto sleep is performed. We recommend using the factory default settings to save the most power. **©Entering Sleep Mode(P. 69)**

5 min.†		
10 min.		
15 min.		
30 min.		
60 min.		

Sleep When Using USB*

Select whether to allow the machine to enter sleep mode when you are using USB over NW to access a USB device from a computer via a network. **OAdv. Func. Settings(P. 403)**



Timer Settings

You can specify the settings for the machine operations and time regarding Sleep Mode and for the Auto Reset function that displays the main screen if any key is not pressed for a specified period of time.

Wake Up Timer

Select whether to automatically exit sleep mode at a specified time. **Centering Sleep Mode(P. 69)**

Off† On

Wake Up Time

Set the time to exit sleep mode if <Wake Up Timer> is set to <On>. DENTERING Sleep Mode(P. 69)

00:00 to 12:00⁺ to 23:59

Auto Reset Time

If any key is not pressed for a specified period of time, the current menu screen automatically returns to the main screen and the machine returns to the online mode (Auto Reset). Specify the interval at which the Auto Reset is performed. Select <Off> to disable the Auto Reset function.

Off	
10 sec.	
20 sec.	
30 sec.	
40 sec.	
50 sec.	
1 min.	
2 min. †	
3 min.	
4 min.	
5 min.	
6 min.	
7 min.	
8 min.	
9 min.	



Sleep Timer

Select whether to automatically enter sleep mode at a specified time. Detering Sleep Mode(P. 69)

Off† On

Sleep Time

Set the time to enter sleep mode if <Sleep Timer> is set to <On>. **Dentering Sleep Mode(P. 69)**

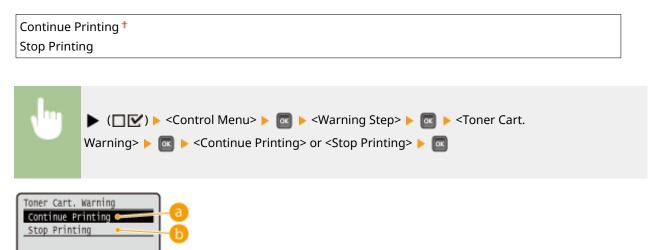
```
00:00 to 12:00<sup>+</sup> to 23:59
```

Warning Step

Specify how the machine should behave when a toner cartridge lifetime message appears.

Toner Cart. Warning

Select whether to automatically stop printing when the toner cartridge will soon reach the end of its lifetime.



60 <Continue Printing>

When the time for toner cartridge replacement is near, the <16 Tnr cart. will soon reach end of lifetime.> message is displayed, but the printing is continued.

Stop Printing>

When the time for toner cartridge replacement is near, the <Toner cartridge will soon reach end of lifetime. > message is displayed, and the printing is temporarily stopped. To resume the printing, press

Auto Skip Error

If an error occurs during printing, the printing is stopped. When you want to continue printing even if an error occurs, specify <On>. For the errors during which the current print job is allowed to continue by this setting, see **OWhen an Error Message Appears(P. 480)**.

Off [†]		
On		
Ju	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <control menu=""> ▶ 📧 ▶ <auto error="" skip=""> ▶ 📧 ▶ <off> or <on> ▶ 🚾</on></off></auto></control>	

Language

You can change the language displayed on the operation panel screen, login screen of the remote UI, and the setting lists.

Čeština		
Dansk		
Deutsch		
English †		
Español		
Français		
Italiano		
Magyar		
Nederlands		
Norsk		
Polski		
Português		
Русский		
Suomi		
Svenska		
Türkçe		
中文(简体)		
한국어		



Alarm

Select whether the machine beeps when a problem such as a paper jam or an operation mistake occurs.



Show Warnings

Select whether to inform about warnings by messages when the machine has entered the warning state.

Toner Cart. Warning

Select whether to display an applicable message when the replacement time for the toner cartridge is near.

Off

On †



Mnt. Kit Warning

Select whether to display an applicable message when the replacement time of the fixing unit, feeder rollers, or the like is near.

Off	
On †	

J	▶ (□☑) ▶ <control menu=""> ▶ 💿 ▶ <show warnings=""> ▶ 💽 ▶ <mnt. kit<="" th=""></mnt.></show></control>
	Warning> ▶ @ ▶ <off> or <on> ▶ @</on></off>

Drawer Empty

Select whether to display an applicable message when the paper drawer or the optional paper deck runs out of paper.

Off		
On †		

E-Mail Trans. Error

Select whether to display an applicable message when a communication error occurs during E-Mail Print.

Off	
On †	

$ (\square \square) > > \square > > \square > Error> > \square > or > \square$	
--	--

Date/Time Settings

Set the current date and time.

Date

Set the current date in the order of Year, Month, and Day. Use \blacktriangleleft / \blacktriangleright to move the cursor, and use the numeric keys to specify the date.

01/01 2001 to 31/12 2030



Time (24 hour)

Specify the current time on a 24-hour basis. Use \blacktriangleleft / \blacktriangleright to move the cursor, and use the numeric keys to specify the time.

00:00:00 to 23:59:59



Daylight Savings

Specify settings for daylight saving time.

DST Settings

Specifies whether to set the daylight saving time.

Off		
On †		



Start Date/Time

Specifies the start date and time of daylight saving time.

Mont	th]
Week	ζ.	
Day		
Time	(24 hour)	
		-
ł	 (\[\colored v] \]) < <control menu=""> \[\overlined v] <-Date/Time Settings> \[\overlined v] \] <daylight< li=""> Savings> \[\overlined v] \] Check the message \[\overlined v] \] <start date="" time=""> \[\overlined v] \] Set the date and</start> time \[\overlined v] \] Perform a hard Reset (\[\overlined Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451) \]) </daylight<></control>	

End Date/Time

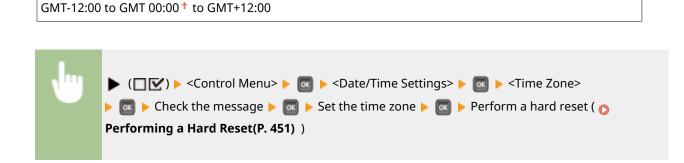
Specifies the end date and time of daylight saving time.

Month	
Week	
Day	
Time (24 hour)	

, Ing	▶ (□☑) ▶ <control menu=""> ▶ 🔤 ▶ <date settings="" time=""> ▶ 🞯 ▶ <daylight< th=""></daylight<></date></control>
	Savings> 🕨 🔤 🕨 Check the message 🕨 國 🕨 <end date="" time=""> 🕨 🚾 🕨 Set the date and</end>
	time 🕨 國 🕨 Perform a hard reset (💽 Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451))

Time Zone

Specifies the time zone according to the region where the machine is being used.



Main Pwr Quick Start

If you specify the quick startup settings, you can reduce the time from when the power switch is pressed until the screens become operable. **Performing a Quick Start of the Machine(P. 35)**

Off [†]	
On	

SD Card *

Enable or disable the SD card.

Off
On
$$\dagger$$

 $(\square \bigcirc) \models \langle Control Menu \rangle \models @ \models \langle SD Card \rangle \models @ \models Check the message \models @ \models \langle Off \rangle or \langle On \rangle \models @ \models Perform a hard reset (\bigcirc Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451))$

Interrupt Print *

Select whether to allow use of the Interrupt Print function (Checking Current Status of Print Documents(P. 342)).

Off On †			
On †			

•	▶ (□☑) ▶ <control menu=""> ▶ 🔤 ▶ <interrupt print=""> ▶ 🔤 ▶ <off> or <on> ▶ 🔤</on></off></interrupt></control>
---	--

Sec. Print Del. Time *

Set the time until secured documents stored in the machine are automatically deleted. **Changing the Valid Time Period for Secured Documents(P. 134)**

1 hr. †			
2 hr.			
2 hr. 3 hr. 6 hr. 12 hr.			
6 hr.			
12 hr.			
24 hr.			

Secure Job Log *

If the machine is turned OFF during printing, a print log may not be generated and the total number of printed pages may not be calculated. If you set this function to <On>, print log generation and total printed page counting are surely performed. However, the print speed will be slower.

Off [†]	
On	



USB-Connected PC OS

Select the OS of the PC connecting to the machine via USB.

/lac OS ⁺	
Vindows	
Other	

IMPORTANT

- Be sure to match the machine settings to the OS of the PC. If not matched, the PC will not correctly recognize the machine.
- If the OS of your computer is Mac OS X 10.10 or earlier and if you want to print from a printer driver via USB, set this item to <Other>.



PDL Selection (PnP)

Specify a printer driver to be installed when the machine is connected to a computer via USB or it is searched over the WSD network.

UFR II †			
UFR II (V4)			
PCL6			
PS3			
XPS (Direct)			



Mng. Settings

Select whether to restrict the use of the \blacktriangleright ($\square \square$) key on the operation panel to prevent any settings from being changed carelessly.

Settings Key Lock

If you select <On>, the Setup menu is not operable even if 🕨 (🔲 🗹) is pressed.

Off †			
On			

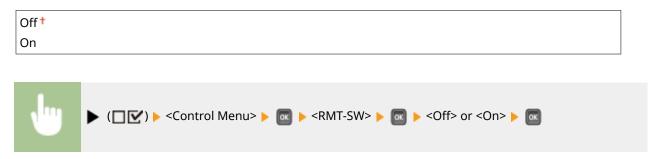


NOTE

If you select <On>, the Settings key can be unlocked from the Remote UI only. Setting Operation Panel Functions(P. 285)

RMT-SW

Use this machine leaving this item set to <Off>. You may be asked to change the setting to <On> to allow for remote maintenance on your machine by a Canon service representative.



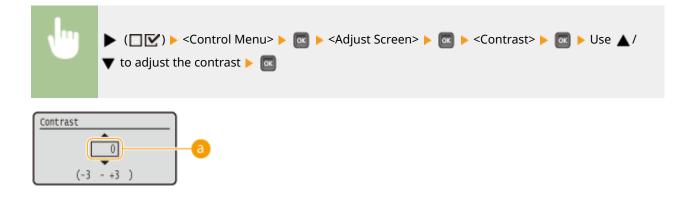
Adjust Screen

You can adjust the contrast and brightness of the display.

Contrast

Adjust the contrast (difference in brightness between light and dark areas) of the display to suit the installation location of the machine.

-3 to 0 † to +3



Output in the contrast

Set a "+" value to brighten the screen. Set a "-" value to darken the screen.

Backlight Brightness

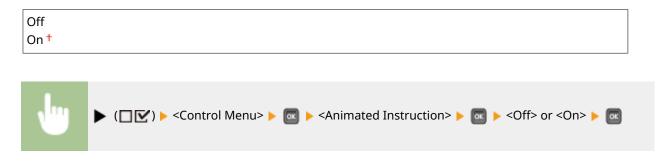
Adjust the backlight brightness of the display by selecting from three levels. Select <Off> to disable the backlight.

Off	
Level 1	
Level 2	
Level 3 ⁺	

1	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <control menu=""> ▶ 🞯 ▶ <adjust screen=""> ▶ 🞯 ▶ <backlight< th=""></backlight<></adjust></control>
	Brightness> 🕨 📧 🕨 Select the brightness level 🕨 🚾

Animated Instruction

Select whether to show animated instructions on the display when a paper jam occurs.



Show Toner Gauge

Select whether to display the toner gauge in the lower right of the display.

Off	
On †	



Set. Comp. Notify

Specify how long a message that appears when a setting is changed is displayed in seconds. If you select <Off>, the message will no longer be displayed.

On has been set.

Off			
1 sec.			
2 sec.			
Off 1 sec. 2 sec. 3 sec. †			

N ""	▶ (□☑) ▶ <control menu=""> ▶ @ ▶ <set. comp.="" notify=""> ▶ @ ▶ Select the number of</set.></control>
	seconds 🕨 🔤

Scrolling Speed

Adjust the speed for scrolling characters from the right to the left on the display by selecting from three levels.



Paper Source

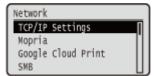
0X7U-058

Paper Source	
Paper Source	1
Env. Tray Paper Size	1
MP Tray Paper Size	
Drawer 1 Paper Size	

See **Select Feeder Menu(P. 453)** .

Network

0X7U-059



All the settings about the network are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger ($^{+}$).

NOTE

If <Network> is not displayed

If <Network> under <Interface Selection> is set to <Off>, <Network> is not displayed in the Setup menu.
 Interface Selection(P. 403)

Asterisks (*)

• Settings marked with an asterisk (*) are not displayed depending on other settings or whether an optional SD card is installed on the machine.

TCP/IP Settings(P. 375)	Remote UI Settings(P. 390)
OMopria(P. 386)	Ethernet Driver(P. 391)
Google Cloud Print(P. 387)	Sleep Mode Priority(P. 391)
SMB(P. 387)	DIEEE802.1X(P. 392)
SNMP Settings(P. 387)	OAddress Filter(P. 392)
Spooler(P. 389)	OMAC Address(P. 393)
Receive in Parallel(P. 390)	E-Mail Print Set.(P. 393)
Wait Time at Startup(P. 390)	Init. Network Set.(P. 394)

TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings for using the machine in a TCP/IP network, such as IP address settings.

IPv4 Settings

Specify settings for using the machine in an IPv4 network.

IPv4

Enable or disable IPv4 in the machine.



N	► (□ ♥) ► <network> ►</network>
	Settings> > a - <ipv4> > a - <off> or <on> > Perform a hard reset (Performing a</on></off></ipv4>
	Hard Reset(P. 451))

IP Mode Select how to set the IP address. Setting IPv4 Address(P. 188)

Auto †

Manual

Protocol*

Select the protocol to use when <IP Mode> is set to <Auto>. If you set the selected protocol to <On>, the other two protocols are automatically set to <Off>. **Osetting IPv4 Address(P. 188)**

Use DHCP



Use BOOTP



Use RARP



Auto IP*

Select whether to automatically obtain an IP address. Specify <On> when <IP Mode> is set to <Auto>. Setting IPv4 Address(P. 188)

Off On†

IP Address Settings

Configure the IP address, which is used for identifying devices, such as computers and printers, on a TCP/IP network. **Setting IPv4 Address(P. 188)**

IP Address

0.0.0.0⁺ to 255.255.255.255

Subnet Mask

0.0.0.0⁺ to 255.255.255.255

Gateway Address

0.0.0.0[†] to 255.255.255.255

DNS

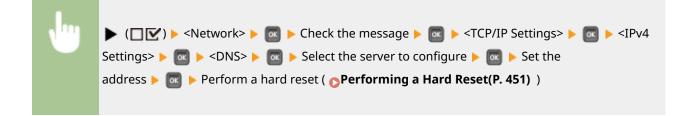
Specify settings for the server address of the Domain Name System (DNS), which provides a host name for IP address resolutions. Use \checkmark / \blacktriangleright to move the cursor, and use the numeric keys to specify the address. Use the Remote UI to specify other settings for DNS. **Configuring DNS(P. 220)**

Primary Address

0.0.0.0[†] to 255.255.255.255

Secondary Address

0.0.0.0[†] to 255.255.255.255



mDNS Settings*

Specify settings for using DNS functions without DNS servers. **Configuring DNS(P. 220)**







mDNS Name *

When <mDNS> is set to <On>, set this item.



DHCP Option

When DHCP is enabled, select whether to acquire the host name and whether to perform dynamic update of the DNS using the DHCP options.

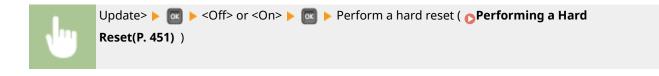
Acquire Host Name



DNS Dynamic Update







IPv6 Settings

Select whether to use the machine in an IPv6 network. Use the Remote UI to specify the IPv6 address settings. Setting IPv6 Addresses(P. 192)

IPv6

Enable or disable IPv6 in the machine.

Off ⁺	
Dn	

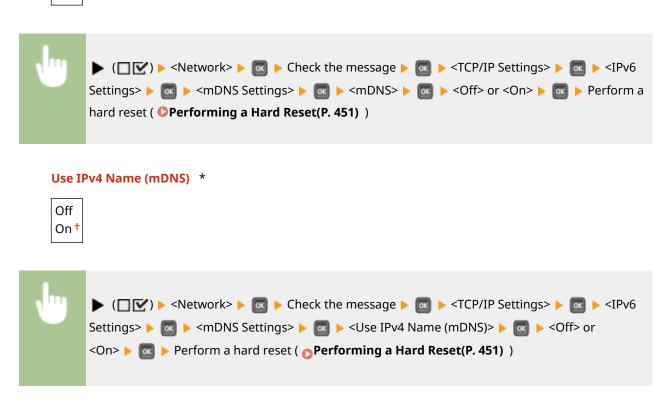


mDNS Settings*

Specify settings for using DNS functions without DNS servers. **Configuring DNS(P. 220)**



On[†]



mDNS Name * When <Use IPv4 Name (mDNS)> is set to <Off>, set this item.



WINS Resolution

Select whether to use Windows Internet Name Service (WINS), which provides a NetBIOS name for IP address resolutions in a mixed network environment of NetBIOS and TCP/IP. Use the Remote UI to specify detailed settings that are applied when WINS is enabled. **Configuring WINS(P. 226)**

On	Off [†]			
	On			

▶ $(\square \boxed{\bigcirc})$ > <network> > $\boxed{\bigcirc}$ > Check the message > $\boxed{\bigcirc}$ > <tcp ip="" settings=""> > $\boxed{\bigcirc}$ > <wins resolution=""> > $\boxed{\bigcirc}$ > <off> or <on> > $\boxed{\bigcirc}$ Perform a hard reset (\bigcircPerforming a Hard</on></off></wins></tcp></network>
Reset(P. 451))

FTP

Select whether to change the settings for printing and those configured in the machine from FTP.

FTP Print

Select whether to print from FTP. Use the Remote UI to set the user name and password that are used to print from FTP. **OPreparing for Using the FTP Server(P. 602)**

On	Off †		
	On		

, lug	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <network> ▶ 國 ▶ Check the message ▶ 國 ▶ <tcp ip<="" th=""></tcp></network>
	Settings> 🕨 國 🕨 <ftp> 🕨 🔤 🕨 <ftp print=""> 🕨 國 🕨 <off> or <on> 🕨 🔤 🕨 Perform a hard</on></off></ftp></ftp>
	reset (OPerforming a Hard Reset(P. 451))

Allow Set. via FTP

Select whether to change the settings configured in the machine from FTP.

Off †		
On		



LPD Settings

Enable or disable LPD, a printing protocol that can be used on any hardware platform or operating system. Also, set the time period after which the print job automatically ends when print data cannot be received due to a communication error or some other problem. Use the Remote UI to specify settings for banner page printing when LPD is enabled. **Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions(P. 197)**

LPD Print



▶ (□ ♥) ► <network> ► @ ► Check the message ► @ ► <tcp ip="" settings=""> ► @ ► <lpd< p=""> Settings> ► @ ► <lpd print=""> ► @ ► <off> or <on> ► @ ► Perform a hard reset (○</on></off></lpd></lpd<></tcp></network>
Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451))

RX Timeout*

1 to (50 ⁺ (min.)
•	▶ (□ ♥) ► <network> ► ∞ ► Check the message ► ∞ ► <tcp ip="" settings=""> ► ∞ ► <lpd Settings> ► ∞ ► <rx timeout=""> ► ∞ ► Set Timeout Time ► ∞ ► Perform a hard reset (Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451))</rx></lpd </tcp></network>

RAW Settings

Enable or disable RAW, a Windows specific printing protocol. Also, set the time period after which the print job automatically ends when print data cannot be received due to a communication error or some other problem. Use the Remote UI to specify settings for bidirectional communication. Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions(P. 197)

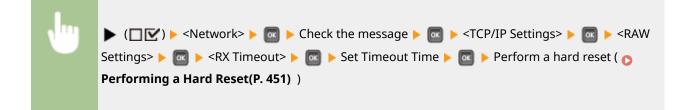
RAW Print





RX Timeout*

1 to 60 ⁺ (min.)



IPP Print

Enable or disable IPP, which enables printing from an external network via Internet. Use the Remote UI to specify settings for TLS encryption of data to send and user authentication. Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions(P. 197)

Off	
On †	

, lug	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <network> ▶ 國 ▶ Check the message ▶ 國 ▶ <tcp ip="" settings=""> ▶ 國 ▶ <ipp< th=""></ipp<></tcp></network>
	Print>

WSD

Enable or disable automatic browsing and acquiring information for the machine by using the WSD protocol that is available on Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012. Configuring Printing Protocols and WSD Functions(P. 197)

WSD Print

Select whether to print with the machine by using WSD.





WSD Browsing *

Select whether to acquire information of the machine from a computer by using WSD. If <WSD Print> is set to <On>, <WSD Browsing> is fixed to <On> and is not displayed in the setting menu.

Off †			
On			
L			

v'''	▶ (□☑) ▶ <network> ▶ ▶ Check the message ▶ ▶ <tcp ip<="" th=""></tcp></network>
	Settings> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <wsd> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <wsd browsing=""> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <off> or <on> ▶ 🔤 ▶ Perform a</on></off></wsd></wsd>
	hard reset (OPerforming a Hard Reset(P. 451))

Multicast Discovery

Select whether to set the machine to reply to multicast discovery messages.

Off †	
On	

1	\blacktriangleright (\Box \Box) \triangleright <network> \triangleright \Box \triangleright Check the message \triangleright \Box \triangleright <tcp ip<="" th=""></tcp></network>
	Settings> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <wsd> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <multicast discovery=""> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <off> or <on> ▶ 🚾 ▶ Perform</on></off></multicast></wsd>
	a hard reset (OPerforming a Hard Reset(P. 451))

NOTE

• If <Multicast Discovery> is set to <Off>, the machine stays in sleep mode even when multicast discovery messages are flowing on the network.

HTTP

Enable or disable HTTP. HTTP is required for communications with a computer, such as when using the Remote UI and performing WSD printing. **Disabling HTTP Communication(P. 288)**

Off	
On ⁺	

Proxy Settings

Specify settings for using the proxy server that relays HTTP communications. **Setting a Proxy(P. 274)**

Proxy

Enable or disable the proxy server when the machine performs HTTP communications.

Off †
On



Server Address *

Set the address of the proxy server to use. Specify the IP address, domain name, and other necessary information that suit your operational environment. Use \checkmark / \blacktriangleright to move the cursor, and use the numeric keys to enter the address (**Centering Text(P. 31**)).



Port Number*

Specify the port number of the proxy server to use.

1 to 80⁺ to 65535



Same Domain*

Enable or disable the proxy server even for performing HTTP communications with devices in the same domain.

Use Proxy Do Not Use Proxy †



Proxy Authentication*

Enable or disable the authentication function of the proxy server.

Off †
On



User Name*

To enable the proxy authentication, enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the user name to authenticate. Use the numeric keys to enter the user name. (**Centering Text(P. 31**))

N	▶ (□☑) ▶ <network> ▶ ▶ Check the message ▶ ▶ <tcp ip="" settings=""> ▶ ▶ <proxy< th=""></proxy<></tcp></network>
	Settings> 🕨 📧 🕨 <user name=""> 🕨 💽 🕨 Enter the user name 🕨 💽 🕨 Perform a hard reset (🔉</user>
	Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451))

Password*

To set the password for the proxy authentication, enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters. Use the numeric keys to enter the password. (**©Entering Text(P. 31**))



SNTP

Select whether to acquire time from a network time server. Use the Remote UI to specify the server address settings. **Configuring SNTP(P. 229)**

Off [†]		
On		



Discovery Response

Select whether to set the machine to respond to multicast discovery packets on the network. Use the Remote UI to specify the scope name that is used to include the machine into a specific scope. **Configuring Settings for Device Management Software(P. 238)**

Off	
On †	



IPSec

Select whether to perform encrypted communication by establishing a virtual private network (VPN) via IPSec. Use the Remote UI to register and specify the security policies. **Configuring IPSec Settings(P. 298)**

Off †			
On			
			_



Sleep Notif. Set.

Specify settings for SLP communication to notify imageWARE of the power status of the machine. If you set <Sleep Mode Notif.> to <On>, you can expect the machine to avoid unnecessary communication during sleep mode and reduce the total power consumption. Configuring Settings for Device Management Software(P. 238)

Sleep Mode Notif.

Enable or disable SLP communication. If you select <On>, the power status of the machine is notified to imageWARE.





Port Number*

Enter the port number for SLP communications with management software.

1 to 11427 ⁺ to 65535



Routers to Traverse*

Specify how many routers the notification packets can pass. Enter a number from 0 to 254.

0 to 3⁺ to 254



Notif. Interval *

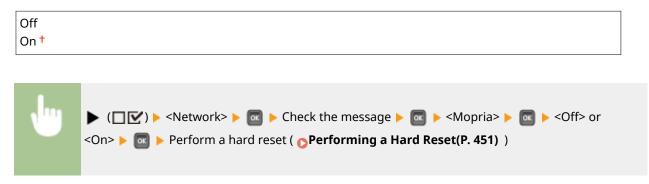
Specify how often the machine notifies imageWARE of its power status. Enter a number in seconds from 60 to 65535.

60 to 600 ⁺ to 65535



Mopria

Select whether to use Mopria[™]. **○Printing with Mopria[™](P. 167)**



Google Cloud Print

Enable or disable Google Cloud Print. **Changing Google Cloud Print Settings(P. 176)**

Use Cloud Print Off

On†

Registration Status

SMB*

Select whether to use the machine as a shared printer on the SMB network. Use the Remote UI to specify other SMB settings including the server name and the workgroup name. **Configuring SMB(P. 242)**

SMB Server

Select whether to display the machine as an SMB Server on the SMB network configuration screen.

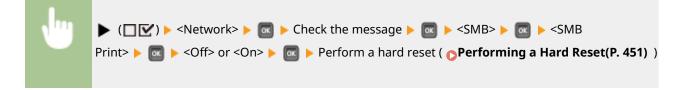
Off †			
On			

 ▶ (□☑) ▶ <network> ▶ 🐼 ▶ Check the message ▶ 🐼 ▶ <smb> ▶ 🐼 ▶ <smb< th=""></smb<></smb></network>
Server> 🕨 🔤 🕨 <off> or <on> 🕨 🔤 🕨 Perform a hard reset (💦 Performing a Hard</on></off>
Reset(P. 451))

SMB Print*

Enable or disable SMB Print.

Off ⁺	
Dn	



SNMP Settings

Specify the settings for monitoring and controlling the machine from a computer running SNMP-compatible software. Omonitoring and Controlling the Machine with SNMP(P. 232)

SNMPv1 Settings

Specify settings for using SNMPv1. Use the Remote UI to specify a community name and access privileges to Management Information Base (MIB) objects.

Setting Menu List

SNMPv1

Enable or disable SNMPv1.

Off			
On†			

, m	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <network> ▶ 🞯 ▶ Check the message ▶ 🞯 ▶ <snmp< th=""></snmp<></network>
	Settings> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <snmpv1 settings=""> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <snmpv1> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <off> or</off></snmpv1></snmpv1>
	<on> < @ > Perform a hard reset (Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451))</on>

Dctd. Community Set.

Dedicated Community is a preset community, intended exclusively for administrators using Canon software, such as imageWARE Enterprise Management Console. Select the access privilege to Management Information Base (MIB) objects.

Dctd. Community



.	► (□ ♥) ► <network> ► @ ► Check the message ► @ ► <snmp< p=""> Settings> ► @ ► <snmpv1 settings=""> ► @ ► <dctd. community="" set.=""> ► @ ► <dctd.< p=""></dctd.<></dctd.></snmpv1></snmp<></network>
	Community > \blacktriangleright Select the access privilege \blacktriangleright $$ Perform a hard reset (\bigcirc Performing a
	Hard Reset(P. 451))

SNMPv3 Settings

Specify settings for using SNMPv3. Use the Remote UI to specify detailed settings that are applied when SNMPv3 is enabled.

SNMPv3

Enable or disable SNMPv3.

Off †			
On			

N	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <network> ▶ 🔤 ▶ Check the message ▶ 🔤 ▶ <snmp settings=""> ▶ 🔤 ▶ <snmpv3< th=""></snmpv3<></snmp></network>
	Settings> 🕨 國 🕨 <snmpv3> 🕨 國 🕨 <off> or <on> 🕨 國 🕨 Perform a hard reset (🔉</on></off></snmpv3>
	Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451))

User Settings N (N=1, 2, 3, 4, 5) *

Specify the authentication password and encryption password as the user information used on SNMPv3. Use the Remote UI to register the user information. **OMONITORING and Controlling the Machine with SNMP(P. 232)**

Auth. Password /Encryption Password

Enter 6 to 16 alphanumeric characters for each password. Use the numeric keys to enter the password.

	► (□ ☑) ► <network> ► @ ► Check the message ► @ ► <snmp< p=""></snmp<></network>
	Settings> 🕨 國 🕨 <snmpv3 settings=""> 🕨 國 🕨 Select the user settings number 🕨 🚾 🕨 Check the</snmpv3>
	user name 🕨 國 🕨 <auth. password=""> or <encryption password=""> 🕨 🚾 🕨 Enter the</encryption></auth.>
	password 🕨 🚾 🕨 Perform a hard reset (<mark>្ងPerforming a Hard Reset(P. 451)</mark>)

Rjct Packet in Sleep

Select whether to discard SNMP packets received during sleep mode.

Off [†]		
On		



NOTE

• If you select <On>, applications that use the SNMP protocol, such as Canon software imageWARE Series, may be disabled to access the machine.

Spooler *

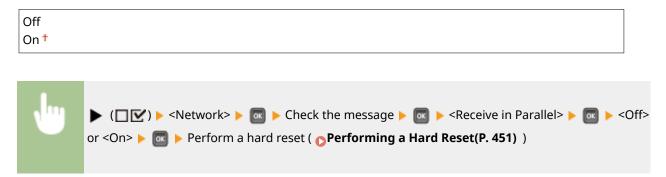
Select whether to include the SD card in the storage locations of received print data. If you select <On>, the machine capacity of receiving print data is increased.

Off [†]	
On	



Receive in Parallel

Specifies whether to print jobs in the order received when print data for several jobs are sent to the printer from one computer. If you select <Off>, jobs are printed in the order received but printing speed may be slower.



Wait Time at Startup

Specify a wait time for connecting to a network. Select the setting depending on the network environment. Setting a Wait Time for Connecting to a Network(P. 219)

0⁺ to 300 (sec.)

Remote UI Settings

Specify settings for using the Remote UI. You can use the Remote UI to specify settings for the machine from a Web browser.

Remote UI

Enable or disable the Remote UI. **Disabling Remote UI(P. 289)**

Off On †

RUI Access Sec. Set.

Select whether to use a PIN to access the Remote UI. **Setting a Remote UI PIN(P. 263)**

Off† On

Remote UI Access PIN *

Specify so that entry of a PIN is required for access to the Remote UI when <RUI Access Sec. Set.> is set to <On>. Set a PIN of up to 7 digits. All users use a common PIN. **Setting a Remote UI PIN(P. 263)**

TLS*

Enable or disable TLS for Remote UI communications. To use TLS for encrypted communications, you need to set key pairs by using the Remote UI (**Using TLS for Encrypted Communications(P. 294)**), respectively.

Off [†]		
On		



Ethernet Driver

Specify the Ethernet communication mode (half duplex/full duplex) and Ethernet type (10 Base-T/100 Base-TX/1000 Base-T). **Configuring Ethernet Settings(P. 217)**

Auto Detect

Select whether to automatically detect or manually select the communication mode and the Ethernet type.

Off On†

Communication Mode*

If <Auto Detect> is set to <Off>, select the Ethernet communication mode.

Half Duplex ⁺ Full Duplex

Ethernet Type *

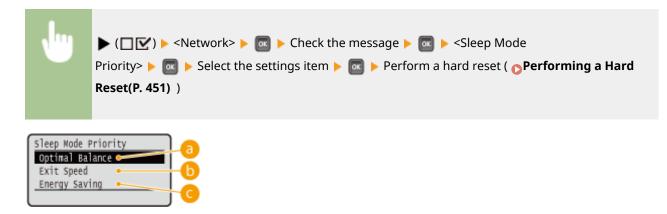
If <Auto Detect> is set to <Off>, select the Ethernet type.

10 Base-T ⁺	
100 Base-TX	
1000 Base-T	

Sleep Mode Priority

Select whether to give priority to rapid returning from sleep mode or greater energy saving effect of sleep mode.

Optimal Balance ⁺	
Exit Speed	
Energy Saving	



Optimal Balance

The machine returns from sleep mode rapidly. When the devices directly connected to the machine support EEE (Energy Efficient Ethernet), power consumption can be reduced to a greater degree. Normally use this setting.

Exit Speed

The machine returns from sleep mode more rapidly.

Contraction Contractico Con

Communication speed during sleep mode is reduced for lowest power consumption.

NOTE

 This item is available when <Sleep Mode> is set to <High (Deep Sleep)>. CEntering Sleep Mode(P. 69)

IEEE802.1X

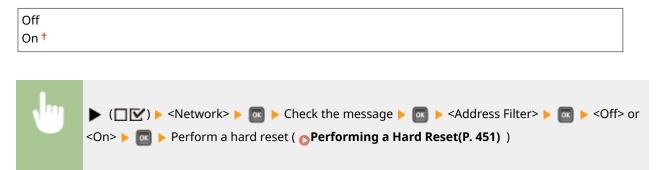
Enable or disable IEEE 802.1X authentication. Use the Remote UI to specify detailed settings that are applied when IEEE802.1X authentication is enabled. **Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication(P. 309)**



N	▶ (□☑) ▶ <network> ▶ ▶ Check the message ▶ ▶ <ieee802.1x> ▶ ▶ Check the</ieee802.1x></network>
	message 🕨 🚾 🕨 <off> or <on> 🕨 🔤 🕨 Perform a hard reset (💽 Performing a Hard</on></off>
	Reset(P. 451))

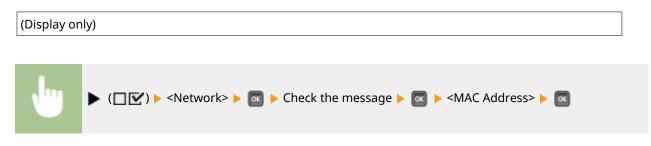
Address Filter

Enable or disable communication restricted with the IP address and MAC address. Use the Remote UI to specify the address to restrict. **Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)**



MAC Address

Check the MAC address of the machine, which is a number unique to each communication device.



E-Mail Print Set.

Specify settings for using the E-Mail Print function. Use the Remote UI to specify other settings for E-Mail Print including the mail server settings. **Printing Received E-mail (E-Mail Print)(P. 157)**

POP3 RX Interval

Specify the interval for automatically connecting to the mail server in minutes. New e-mails in the mailbox of the mail server are automatically received and printed at the specified time intervals.

0⁺ to 90 (min.)



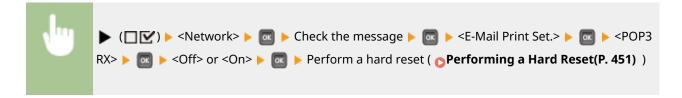
NOTE

If you select "0," e-mails are not automatically received. In this case, receive e-mails manually.
 Manually Receiving E-Mails(P. 162)

POP3 RX

Enable or disable E-Mail Print for the POP3 mail server.

Off⁺ On

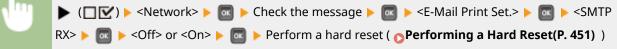


Setting Menu List

SMTP RX

Enable or disable E-Mail Print for the SMTP protocol.





Init. Network Set.

Select to return the Network Settings to the factory defaults. **Initializing the Network Settings(P. 552)**

Setting Menu List

Layout

0X7U-05A

Layout	
Number of Copies	П
Offset Y	
Offset X	- 14
Binding Location	

The settings about print appearance including gutter margins and print positions are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger (⁺).

Number of Copies(P. 395)
Offset Y/Offset X(P. 395)
Binding Location(P. 396)
Gutter(P. 397)
Alternative Method(P. 398)

Number of Copies

Specify the number of copies.

Offset Y/Offset X

You can specify settings for shifting the print position for all types of printing in 0.5 mm increments regardless of the paper source.

-50.0 to 0.0 ⁺ to +50.0 (mm)
$\bigcup (\square \square) \models \langle Layout \rangle \models \square $
Layout Number of Copies Offset Y Offset X Binding Location
Offset Y>

Shifts the print position vertically.

🜔 <Offset X>

Shifts the print position horizontally.

Offset values

For <Offset Y>, set a plus (+) value to shift the print position downward. For <Offset X>, set a plus (+) value to shift the print position rightward. Set a minus (-) value to shift the print position in the opposite direction.

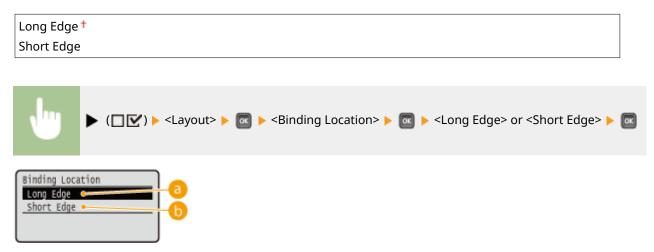


Specifying fine settings for the print position

You can select <Adj. Print Position> under <User Maintenance> to finely specify the print position for each paper source. The range of available offset values is from -5.0 to +5.0 mm. **OAdjusting Print Position(P. 532)**

Binding Location

Select whether to bind the long edge or short edge of the printouts with a binding tool such as a stapler. In this case, specify settings for <Gutter> to adjust the binding margin, as well.



60 <Long Edge>

Select to bind the printouts along the long edge.



Short Edge>

Select to bind the printouts along the short edge.



A B C C

Gutter

Adjust the margin width of the edge specified in <Binding Location> by shifting the print position of the print data. If you select "0.0", the margin will not be changed.



60 Margin values

Specify the direction and width for shifting the print position of the print data. The edge where the margin is changed varies depending on whether a "+" or "-" value is set. You can adjust the margin width in 0.5 mm increments.

Portrait-oriented document

Setting Value	Long edge binding	Short edge binding
"+" value	Left end of paper (for left binding)	Upper end of paper (for top binding)
"-" value	Right end of paper (for right binding)	Lower end of paper (for bottom binding)

Landscape-oriented document

Setting Value	Long edge binding	Short edge binding
"+" value	Left end of paper (for top binding)	Upper end of paper (for right binding)

Setting Menu List

Setting Value	Long edge binding	Short edge binding
"-" value	Right end of paper (for bottom binding)	

Alternative Method

When you perform 2-sided printing of a document that consists of an odd number of pages, you can select whether to process the last page in 1-sided printing mode. If you select <On>, the printing will be finished faster than the regular 2-sided printing.



NOTE

When the printing of a document consisting of an even number of pages finishes in 1sided printing mode

In the following cases, the last page is processed in 1-sided printing mode even if the document consists of an even number of pages.

- The last page is blank.
- The last page cannot be printed for a reason such as the paper size is not available for 2-sided printing.

When paper with preprinted logo is used

• If the last page is processed in 1-sided printing mode with <Alternative Method> to <On>, the orientation or print side of the last page may not match those of other pages. In this case, set <Alternative Method> to <Off>.

Print Quality

0X7U-05C

During Quality	
Print Quality	
Resolution	
Image Refinement	
Toner Save	- 11
Density	U

The settings about print quality including the resolution and toner density are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger ([†]).

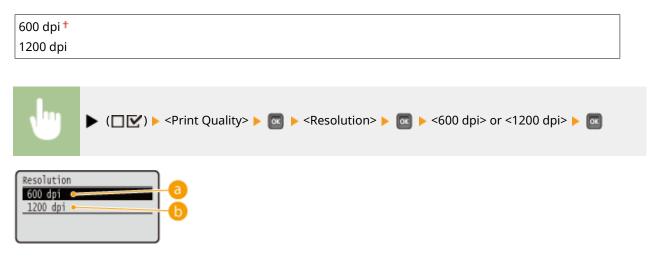
NOTE

Asterisks (*)

- Settings marked with an asterisk (*) are not displayed depending on other settings.
- Resolution(P. 399)
 Image Refinement(P. 400)
 Toner Save(P. 400)
 Density(P. 400)
 Density (Fine Adj)(P. 400)
 Halftones(P. 400)
 Reduce Quality(P. 402)
 Adj. Prt. Line Width(P. 402)

Resolution

Specify the resolution for processing print data.



600 dpi>

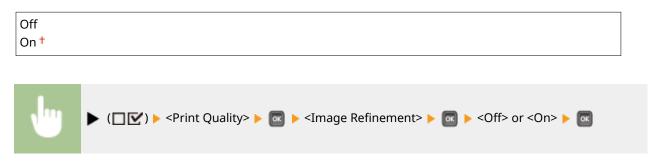
This print mode is suitable for printing at a high speed.

() <1200 dpi>

Edges of characters and graphics can be clearly reproduced at high resolution. This print mode is suitable for printing data that contains many small characters.

Image Refinement *

Enable or disable the smoothing mode in which the edges of characters and graphics are smoothly printed. <Image Refinement> is not displayed when <Resolution> is set to <1200 dpi>.



Toner Save

Specify this setting when you want to check the finishing such as the layout before printing a large job, for example. Since this printing mode saves toner, fine lines and portions with lighter print density may become blurred.



▶ (□☑) ► <print quality=""> ► @ ► <toner save=""> ► @ ► <off> or <on> ► @</on></off></toner></print>	
--	--

Density *

Adjust the toner density to apply to printing. <Density> is not displayed when <Toner Save> is set to <On>. **Adjusting Print Density(P. 530)**

-8 to 0 + to +8

Density (Fine Adj) *

You can make fine adjustment of the toner density applied to printing separately for three different density areas. </br><Density (Fine Adj)> is not displayed when <Toner Save> is set to <On>.

Adjusting Print Density(P. 530)

-8 to 0† to +8

Halftones

You can select the printing method to reproduce halftones (the intermediate range between the lighter and darker areas of an image). Halftones can be specified for each image data type in a single document.

Text

Resolution †

Setting Menu List

Gradation		
Color Tone		
High Resolution		
Graphics		
Resolution		
Gradation		
Color Tone †		
High Resolution		
Image		
Resolution		
Gradation		
Color Tone ⁺		
High Resolution		





👩 Image data type

Select the image data type for which the settings are changed. Select <Text> for characters, <Graphics> for lines and figures, or <Image> for images such as photos.

<Resolution>

Performs fine printing by sharply reproducing the edges of characters. This print mode is suitable for printing data of characters and thin lines with a clear finish.

Gradation>

Prints gradation and lines with a smooth finish. This print mode is suitable for printing figures and charts with gradation.

📵 <Color Tone>

Prints vivid images with a tonal contrast effect. This print mode is suitable for printing image data such as photos.

Control

Implements higher definition printing than the <Resolution> setting, but is slightly inferior in stability of texture. This print mode is suitable for sharply printing edges of data such as characters, thin lines, and CAD data.

Reduce Quality

Select whether to continue printing by automatically reducing the quality when insufficient memory is available for the processing.



NOTE

• If you select <Stop Printing>, an error message is displayed and the printing is stopped when the machine runs out of memory. You can press () to resume the printing by reducing the quality.

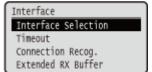
Adj. Prt. Line Width

Adjust this if the printed text or thin lines are faded.

-7 to 0 🕇 to	+8
•	▶ (□☑) > <print quality=""> > ■ <adj. line="" prt.="" width=""> > ■ Use ▲ / ▼ for print line width adjustment. ></adj.></print>

Interface

0X7U-05E



All the settings about interfaces for communications with a computer and USB are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger ([†]).

NOTE

Asterisks (*)

• Settings marked with an asterisk (*) are not displayed depending on other settings.

```
Interface Selection(P. 403)
Timeout(P. 404)
Connection Recog.(P. 405)
Extended RX Buffer(P. 405)
```

Interface Selection

Select the interface used for the machine.

USB

Enable or disable the USB port. **ORESTRICTING THE USB Connection with a Computer(P. 282)**

Off	
On	+

Network

Enable or disable the LAN port. **Disabling the LAN Port(P. 290)**

Off On †

USB Adv. Functions

Specify settings for selecting a function to use a USB device or selecting a device driver to use.

Adv. Func. Settings

Select which of MEAP applications and USB over NW to be given priority when a USB device is connected to the machine.

Meap Priority[†] USB Over NW Priority



Output: Content of the second seco

Specify this to give priority to MEAP applications.

Over NW Priority>

Specify this to give priority to USB over NW. This function enables you to use, from your computer, a USB device connected to the machine's USB port.

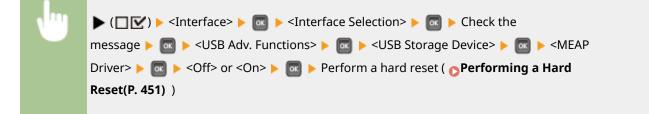
USB Storage Device

Specify settings for the device driver for using a USB memory device.

MEAP Driver

Enable or disable the MEAP specific device driver when a USB memory device is attached to the machine. When you want to perform the direct print function (USB Direct Print) from a USB memory device without using a computer, select <Off>.





Timeout

Specify how the machine should behave if receiving print data is interrupted.

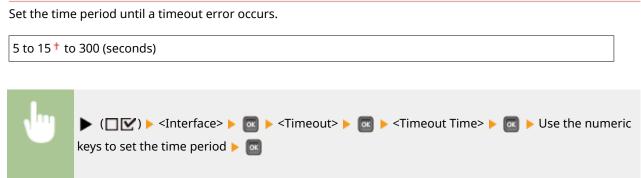
Timeout

Select whether to cancel printing if print data receiving is interrupted for a specified period of time.

Off		
On †		



Timeout Time*



Connection Recog.

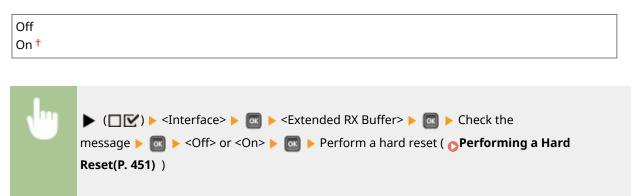
A problem such as improper overlay printing or garbled characters may occur during printing via wired LAN connection. In this case, set <Connection Recog.> to <Off>.

Off	
On †	



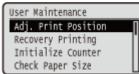
Extended RX Buffer

Select whether to increase the space of the memory built in the machine for receiving print data from a computer. If you select <On>, the time until the computer will be freed from print data processing or transmission can be reduced when the computer sends a large volume of data or complicatedly structured data.



User Maintenance

0X7U-05F



The settings about adjustment of the machine including print position correction for each paper source and print quality improvement are listed with short descriptions. You can specify those settings when the machine is offline. Default settings are marked with a dagger ([†]).

NOTE

Asterisks (*)

• Settings marked with an asterisk (*) are not displayed depending on other settings and whether the paper feeder, paper deck, envelope feeder, or SD card (all of these being optional) is installed or not in the machine.

Adj. Print Position(P. 406)
Recovery Printing(P. 407)
Initialize Counter(P. 407)
Check Paper Size(P. 407)
Substitute Size(P. 408)
Short Edge Fd. Prty.(P. 408)
Sp. Transfer Mode(P. 408)
Special Print Mode A(P. 409)
Special Density Mode(P. 409)
SD Card Maintenance(P. 410)
Special Print Mode(P. 410)

Special Print Adj. C(P. 410)
Barcode Adj. Mode(P. 411)
Update Firmware(P. 411)
Paper Feed Method(P. 412)
Show Job List(P. 412)
Import/Export Set.(P. 413)
Notify to Clean(P. 413)
Clean. Notif. Timing(P. 414)
Toner Check Timing(P. 414)
Spec Tnr Chk Timing(P. 414)

Adj. Print Position

You can adjust the print position for each paper source. **Adjusting Print Position(P. 532)**

Offset Y (Env. Tray)/Offset X (Env. Tray)*

You can adjust the vertical/horizontal print position for printing on envelopes fed from the optional envelope feeder.

-5.0 to 0.0† to +5.0 (mm)

Offset Y (MP Tray)/Offset X (MP Tray)

You can adjust the vertical/horizontal print position for printing on paper from the multi-purpose tray.

-5.0 to 0.0⁺ to +5.0 (mm)

Offset Y (Drawer 1 to 5)/Offset X (Drawer 1 to 5) *

You can adjust the vertical/horizontal print position for printing on paper fed from a paper drawer or the optional paper deck.

-5.0 to 0.0⁺ to +5.0 (mm)

Offset Y (2-Sided)/Offset X (2-Sided) *

You can adjust the vertical/horizontal print position for printing on the first page (front side) in 2-sided printing mode. The print position on the second page (back side) follows the settings for the paper source available when the printing is started.

-5.0 to 0.0⁺ to +5.0 (mm)

Recovery Printing

Select whether to print again the page of which printing was interrupted by a paper jam or an error.

Off On †	
Jun	▶ (□☑) ▶ <user maintenance=""> ▶ ब ▶ <recovery printing=""> ▶ ब ▶ <off> or <on> ▶ ब</on></off></recovery></user>

Initialize Counter

Select whether to initialize the count of printed pages on the fixing unit.

Fixing Unit

Initialize the count of pages using the same fixing unit. You need to perform this operation each time you replace the fixing unit.



Check Paper Size

Select whether to check the size of paper that is fed from the paper source with the paper size set to <Free Size>. If you select <On>, the message for confirming the paper size is displayed and the printing is stopped when the size of the paper fed from the paper source does not match the print data.

Off †			
On			

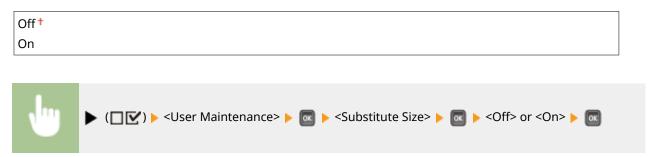


NOTE

If the difference in size between the fed paper and the print data is not so large, it is possible that no
message will be displayed and the printing will be continued even when the selected setting is <On>.

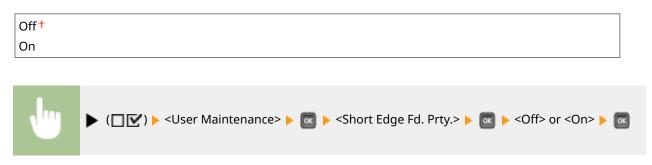
Substitute Size

Select whether to print by substituting A4 size paper and Letter size paper with each other. If you select <On>, Letter size paper is used for printing when you have specified A4 size paper for printing from a computer but the A4 size paper is not loaded in the machine.



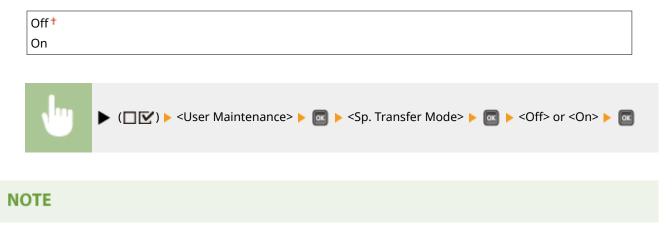
Short Edge Fd. Prty.

When printing on paper of a size that allows for loading both in portrait and landscape orientations, set this item to <On> if you want the paper in portrait orientation to be fed preferentially. This setting applies only when <Paper Source> to <Auto>.



Sp. Transfer Mode

When you use the machine in an environment with low humidity, printed images or text may be smudged. In this case, setting this item to <On> may solve the problem.



• When you set this item to <On> and use the machine in an environment with high humidity, the print density may become lighter or uneven.

Special Print Mode A

Streaks may appear on printouts depending on the paper type or the environmental conditions. In this case, setting this item may solve the problem. The improvement effect is weakest with <Mode 1> and strongest with <Mode 4>.

Off			
Mode 1 ⁺			
Mode 2			
Mode 3			
Mode 4			

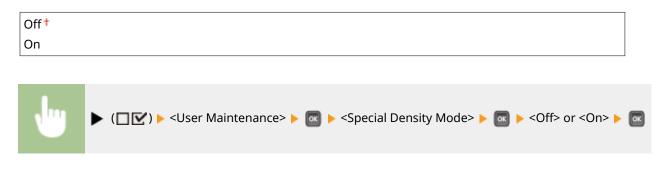


NOTE

- This item cannot be set when <Barcode Adj. Mode> is set to one of <Mode 1> to <Mode 4>. OBarcode Adj.
 Mode(P. 411)
- If you select <Mode 3> or <Mode 4>, the print speed will be slower.
- As the improvement effect is increased, the print density becomes lighter. In addition, the edges may be blurred or roughness may be slightly emphasized.

Special Density Mode

When you use the machine in an environment with high humidity, the print density may become lighter or uneven. In this case, setting this item to <On> may solve the problem.



NOTE

• When you set this item to <On> and use the machine in an environment with low humidity, printed images or text may be smudged.

SD Card Maintenance *

When an error occurs in an SD card or when you want to discard an SD card, you can erase all the data stored on that card.

Format

Initializes the SD card. All the stored data is erased from the card.



Completely Del. Data

All the stored data is erased from the SD card. Perform this operation as necessary, such as when you want to discard an SD card after erasing all the stored data including those fragments that cannot be erased normally. **Deleting All Data in an SD Card(P. 585)**

Special Print Mode

Provides items you can set when printing cannot be performed properly.

Reduce Ppr. Sticking

In 2-sided printing, printed paper may stick to each other depending on the image density of print data. In this case, setting this item may solve the problem. However, the printing speed may be slower.

Off ⁺		
On		

, m	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <user maintenance=""> ▶ 國 ▶ <special mode="" print=""> ▶ 國 ▶ <reduce ppr.<="" th=""></reduce></special></user>
	Sticking> ▶ @ ▶ <off> or <on> ▶ @</on></off>

Special Print Adj. C

Set this item to <On> when printing noise is noticeable.

Off†	
On	
J	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <user maintenance=""> ▶ 🔤 ▶ <special adj.="" c="" print=""> ▶ 💽 ▶ <off> or <on> ▶ 🔤</on></off></special></user>

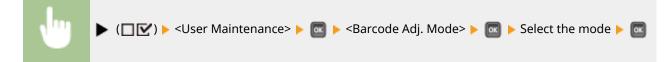
NOTE

• If you set this item to <On>, the printing speed becomes slower.

Barcode Adj. Mode

Specify this setting when a printed barcode cannot be correctly read. The improvement effect becomes greater as the mode number shown below becomes larger.

Off†			
Mode 1 Mode 2 Mode 3 Mode 4			
Mode 2			
Mode 3			
Mode 4			

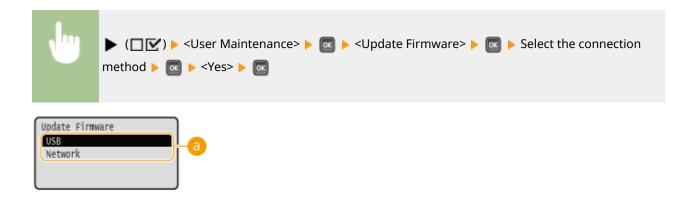


NOTE

- Print density will be lighter when you select stronger improvement.
- When printing from the computer, the setting in the printer driver takes precedence. When the setting of [Graphics Mode] in the printer driver is changed to [UFR II Mode] and [Barcode Adjustment Mode] is changed to [Printer Default], the setting in the operation panel takes precedence.
- When you set this item to one of <Mode 1> to <Mode 4>, <Special Print Mode A> is automatically set to <Off>.
- If you select <Mode 4>, the print speed will be slower.

Update Firmware

Upgrades the firmware of the machine.

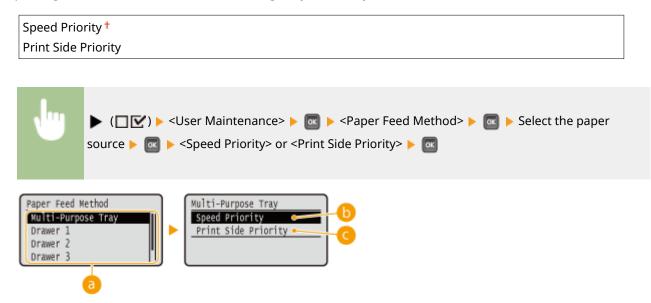


Connection method selection

Select the method to connect a computer that performs the firmware update.

Paper Feed Method

Specify this setting when you print a document on paper with logos. To print on paper with logos, you need to change how the paper loaded in the paper source is facing depending on whether you are performing 1- or 2-sided printing. However, if you change the setting to <Print Side Priority>, you can just load the paper face down for both 1- and 2-sided printing. For more information, see **Doading Preprinted Paper(P. 56)**.



8 Paper source selection

Select the paper source for which you want to change the setting of Paper Feed Mode.

Speed Priority>

When using paper that has been preprinted with a logo, you need to change which side is up depending on 1-sided or 2-sided printing.

NOTE:

• We recommend selecting <Speed Priority> if you do not need to consider which side to print on.

Contemporal Sector Content Sector

To print on a specific side of paper, you do not need to flip over paper in the paper source regardless of whether 1- or 2-sided printing is selected.

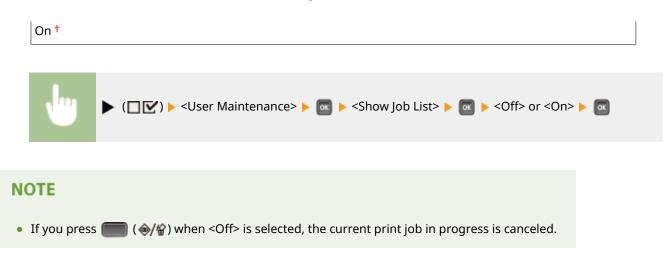
NOTE:

- Even if <Print Side Priority> is selected for the paper source (>Paper(P. 569)), it is disabled and the machine operates in the same way as when <Speed Priority> is selected. In this case, load the paper in the same way as when <Speed Priority> is selected (>Loading Preprinted Paper(P. 56)).
- If you select <Print Side Priority>, 1-sided printing speed will be slower.

Show Job List

Select whether to display a list of data that is being printed and waiting to be printed when you press ($\langle \phi/\Psi \rangle$) on the operation panel.

Off



Import/Export Set.

You can transfer and save the data registered in the machine and the setting data of the menu options to the USB memory device attached to the machine. The exported data can be imported. If the machine model is the same, other machines can import the data exported from this machine and vice versa.

IMPORT

You can import data that was written to a USB memory device from the machine.



EXPORT

You can save the data registered in the machine and the setting data of the menu options to a USB memory device.



NOTE

• For these purposes, you can only use the USB port provided on the right side of the machine.

Notify to Clean

Select whether to display a message that prompts you to clean the fixing unit.

Off†



Clean. Notif. Timing *

When you have set <Notify to Clean> to <On>, you can specify the timing to display a prompt message for cleaning the fixing unit, in terms of the number of printed pages and in units of 1,000. The Configuration Page allows you to check how many pages you can print before the prompt message is displayed. (**Configuration Page(P. 536)**)

1000† to 5	0000	
1	▶ $(\square \square)$ > <user maintenance=""> > \square > <clean. notif.="" timing=""> > \square > Enter the number of printed pages > \square</clean.></user>	
	printed pages 🕨 🚾	

Toner Check Timing

To change the timing to display a message when the toner remaining amount is low, select <Custom>.

Default †			
Custom			

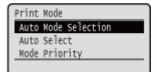
v"	▶ (□☑) ▶ <user maintenance=""> ▶ ▶ <toner check="" timing=""> ▶ ▶ <default> or</default></toner></user>
	<custom> 🕨 🔤</custom>

Spec Tnr Chk Timing *

When you have set <Toner Check Timing> to <Custom>, specify the timing to display the message.

1 to 20⁺ to 99 (%) ► (□♥) ► <User Maintenance> ► ◎ ► <Spec Tnr Chk Timing> ► ◎ ► Use the numeric keys
to enter the toner cartridge remaining amount ► ◎

Print Mode



All the settings about print mode switching are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger (⁺).

NOTE

Asterisks (*)

• Settings marked with an asterisk (*) are not displayed depending on other settings or whether an optional ROM is installed on the machine.

Auto Mode Selection(P. 415)
Auto Select(P. 416)
Mode Priority(P. 416)

Type of Print Mode

Auto selection mode	The machine enters the auto selection mode when <auto selection=""> is selected for <auto mode="" selection="">. The machine automatically discriminates data sent from a computer and selects the print mode. Normally use this print mode when you print from an application.</auto></auto>
<pcl></pcl>	Mode for printing a PCL file sent from a computer.
<ps></ps>	Mode for printing a PS file sent from a computer.
<pdf></pdf>	Mode for printing a PDF file by using Direct Print or USB Direct Print.
<xps></xps>	Mode for printing an XPS file by using Direct Print or USB Direct Print.

Auto Mode Selection

Specify the print mode in which the machine operates.

Auto Selection ⁺	
PCL	
PS	
PDF	
XPS	



Auto Select

Enable or disable the automatic mode selection feature for the print modes during auto selection mode.

Off On †			

N	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <print mode=""> ▶ 國 ▶ <auto select=""> ▶ 國 ▶ Select the print mode ▶ 國 ▶ <off></off></auto></print>
	or <on> 🕨 📧</on>

NOTE

• If all print modes are set to <Off>, the machine operates in the print mode specified for <Mode Priority>.

Mode Priority

Specify the print mode that is automatically selected when the machine cannot identify the control command during auto selection mode.

None ⁺	
PCL	
PS	
PDF XPS	
XPS	

▶ (□☑) ▶ <print mode=""> ▶ ▶ <mode priority=""> ▶ ▶ Select the preferential print mode ▶ </mode></print>

NOTE

• If you select <None>, the machine automatically determines the print mode when it cannot identify the control command.

Settings Specific to Print Mode

0X7U-05J

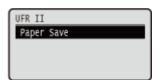
Setup	
UFR II	
PCL	
Imaging	11
XPS	IJ

You can use the Setup menu to specify settings specific to each print mode. The settings specific to print mode are described for each mode.

UFR II(P. 418)
PCL(P. 419)
Imaging(P. 425)
XPS(P. 431)
PDF(P. 435)
PS(P. 439)

UFR II

0X7U-05K



This section describes the settings available during use of UFR II with the control commands. Default settings are marked with a dagger (⁺).

Paper Save

Select whether to prevent blank pages from being output when they are contained in documents to print.



PCL

PCL	
Paper Save	Π
Orientation	
Font Number	
Form Lines	U

All the settings about the PCL control commands are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger ([†]).

NOTE

Asterisks (*)

• Settings marked with an asterisk (*) are not displayed depending on other settings or whether the optional ROM is installed on the machine.

Paper Save(P. 419)
Orientation(P. 419)
Font Number(P. 420)
Point Size(P. 420)
O Pitch(P. 420)
Form Lines(P. 420)
Character Code(P. 421)
Custom Size(P. 422)

Unit of Measurement(P. 422)
X Dimension(P. 422)
Y Dimension(P. 423)
Append CR to LF(P. 423)
Enlarge A4 Prt Width(P. 423)
BarDIMM(P. 424)
FreeScape(P. 424)

Paper Save

Specifies whether the machine outputs the blank page that can be created due to no data existing between two form feed codes sent from an application.

Off [†]	
On	
J	▶ (\square) > <pcl> ▶ $$ <paper save=""> ▶ $$ <off> or <on> ▶ $$</on></off></paper></pcl>

Orientation

Enables you to set the paper orientation.



Font Number

Enables you to set the default font for this machine function using the corresponding font numbers. Valid font numbers are from 0 to 104.



Point Size *

If the number selected in is that of a proportionally spaced scalable font, this option appears in the <PCL> options. It enables you to specify a point size for the default font. The point size can be adjusted in increments of 0.25 pts.



Pitch *

If the number selected in is that of a fixed pitch scalable font, <Pitch> appears in the <PCL> options. It enables you to specify the pitch for the default font. The pitch can be adjusted in increments of 0.01 cpi (characters per inch).

0.44 to 10	.00 ⁺ to 99.99 cpi
•	▶ (□ ☑) ▶ <pcl> ▶ ▶ <pitch> ▶ ▶ Use the numeric keys to enter the setting value ▶ </pitch></pcl>

Form Lines

Enables you to specify the number of lines to be printed on a page. You can specify from 5 to 128 lines.

5	5 to 64† to 128 lines					
---	-----------------------	--	--	--	--	--



Character Code

Enables you to select the symbol set most suited to the needs of the host computer.

PC8 ⁺	
ROMAN8	
ROMAN9	
SOL1	
SOL2	
SOL5	
SOL6	
SOL9	
PC775	
PC8DN	
PC850	
PC852	
PC858	
PC8TK	
PC1004	
NINL1	
NINL2	
WINL5	
<i>N</i> INBALT	
DESKTOP	
PSTEXT	
LEGAL	
SO4	
SO6	
SO11	
SO15	
SO17	
SO21	
SO60	
SO69	
NIN 30	
MCTEXT	
PC864	
ARABIC8	
WINARB	
PC866	
SOCYR	
WINCYR	
GREEK8	
SOGRK	
NINGRK	

Setting Menu List

PC862 HEBREW7 HEBREW8 ISOHEB	
▶ (□ ♥) ► <pcl> ► @ ► <character code=""> ► @ ► Select the character code ► @</character></pcl>	

Custom Size

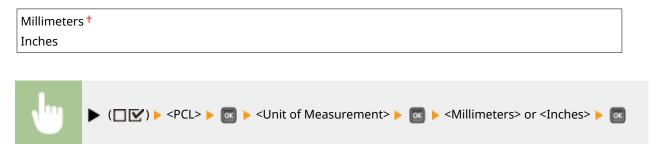
Enables you to specify a custom paper size. If <Set> is selected, you can enter a custom size.



▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <PCL> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <Custom Size> ▶ 🚾 ▶ <Set> or <Do Not Set> ▶ 🔤

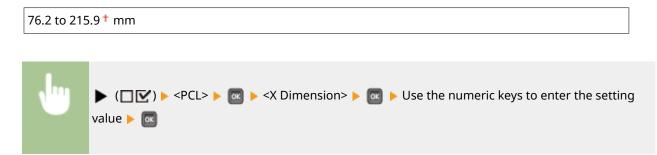
Unit of Measurement *

Enables you to specify the unit of measurement you would like to use to specify your custom paper size.



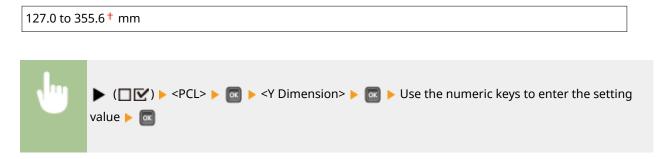
X Dimension *

Enables you to specify the X dimension of the custom paper. The X dimension can be adjusted between 76.2 mm and 215.9 mm in increments of 0.1 mm.



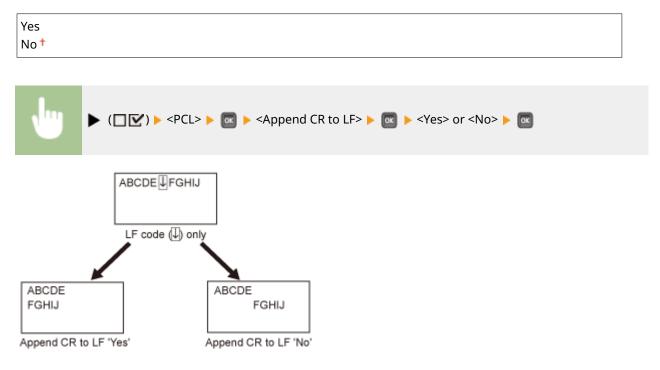
Y Dimension *

Enables you to specify the Y dimension of the custom paper. The Y dimension can be adjusted between 127.0 mm and 355.6 mm in increments of 0.1 mm.



Append CR to LF

Enables you to specify whether to append a carriage return (CR) when line feed code (LF) is received.



Enlarge A4 Prt Width

Determines whether to expand the printable area of A4 paper to that of Letter size in width.

Off †	
On	
•	(□ ♥) > <pcl> ></pcl>

BarDIMM *

You can enable or disable the Bar Code Printing function of the machine.

Enable Disable †		
ł	▶ (□☑) ▶ <pcl> ▶ @ ▶ <bardimm> ▶ @ ▶ <enable> or <disable> ▶ @</disable></enable></bardimm></pcl>	

FreeScape *

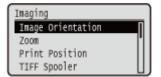
You can specify the AEC (Alternate Escape Code) to be used for bar code commands when the host computer does not support the standard Escape Code.

Off	
~†	
п	
#	
\$	
1	
Δ.	
?	
{	
}	



Imaging

0X7U-05R



All the settings about image files (JPEG and TIFF files) available for USB Direct Print, Direct Print, and E-Mail Print are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger ([†]).

NOTE

Asterisks (*)

• Settings marked with an asterisk (*) are not displayed depending on other settings or whether an optional SD card is installed on the machine.

Image Orientation(P. 425)	Print E-Mail Text(P. 428)
CZoom(P. 426)	Limit E-Mail Print(P. 428)
Print Position(P. 426)	Enlarge Print Area(P. 429)
TIFF Spooler(P. 427)	CHalftones(P. 429)
Show Warnings(P. 427)	Grayscale Conversion(P. 430)

Image Orientation

Specify the print orientation of an image.

Auto [†]	
Vertical	
Horizontal	



🔁 <Auto>

Automatically determines the print orientation based on the width and height of the image.

Vertical>

Select when printing a vertically-long image.

Horizontal>

Select when printing a horizontally-long image.

NOTE

• If the specified setting (<Vertical> or <Horizontal>) does not match the orientation of the image, the image is printed at a reduced size.

Zoom

Enable or disable enlarging/reducing images. The printouts are enlarged or reduced with the image aspect ratio kept.





0ff> []

When an image is within **Printable Area(P. 572)**, it is printed at the original size. When an image is larger than the printable area, printouts are reduced.

🜔 <Auto>

Makes enlarged or reduced printouts according to the printable area of the paper.

Print Position

Specify the position to print the image.

Auto ⁺	
Center	
Top Left	

•	▶ (□☑) ►	<imaging> 🕨 💽</imaging>	<pre> <print position=""> </print></pre>	▶ 國 ▶ Select	<auto> or the po</auto>	osition 🕨 🚾
Print Posit Auto Center Top Left	ion	-0 -0 -0				

🔁 <Auto>

If the TIFF data contains the information that specifies the print position, the image is printed according to the information, otherwise, it is printed at the center of paper. JPEG data is always printed at the center of paper.

Center>

Images are printed at the center of paper.

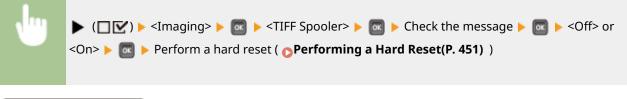
Context Con

Images are printed at the top left.

TIFF Spooler

Select whether to store TIFF data in the SD card prior to processing it for printing. Set this item to <On> if an error occurs during printing.

Off [†]		
On		





0ff> []

TIFF data is continuously processed as soon as it is received, reducing the processing time.



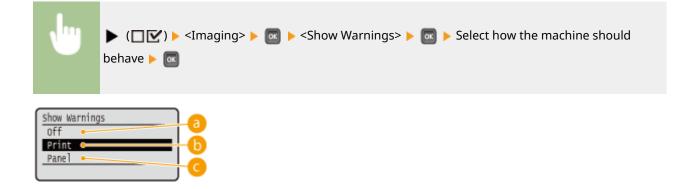
All of received TIFF data is processed at one time, reducing the occurrence of errors. When an SD card is installed, the data is stored to the SD card.

Show Warnings

Г

You can specify how the machine should behave if an error occurs.

Off
Print ⁺
Panel



0ff> []

No image is printed and no error is displayed.



Error information is printed and no image is printed.

Our Content Our Conten

No image is printed and an error message is displayed on the operation panel.

Print E-Mail Text

Select whether to print e-mail messages when E-Mail Print is performed. If you select <Off>, only an image attached to the e-mail is printed.



Limit E-Mail Print *

Select whether to limit the number of e-mail message pages to print when <Print E-Mail Text> is set to <On>. If you select <On>, the number of e-mail message pages to print is limited to 5.

Off †			
On			



Enlarge Print Area

Specify whether or not to print the image by extending the **OPrintable Area(P. 572)** fully to the paper size.

Off †	
On	
•	▶ (□ⓒ) ▶ <imaging> ▶ 🐼 ▶ <enlarge area="" print=""> ▶ 🐼 ▶ <off> or <on> ▶ 🐼</on></off></enlarge></imaging>

NOTE

• If you select <On>, some portions of the image may be missing near the edge of the paper or the paper may be partly tainted depending on the original.

Halftones

You can select the printing method to reproduce halftones (the intermediate range between the lighter and darker areas of an image).

Resolution	
Gradation ⁺	
High Resolution	

	▶ (□☑)> <imaging> ▶ a ► <halftones> ▶ a ► Select the method to reproduce halftones ▶ a</halftones></imaging>
Halftones Resolution Gradation High Resolu	tion C

60 <Resolution>

Prints gradation and lines with a smooth finish. This print mode is suitable for printing figures and charts with gradation.

Gradation>

Prints vivid images with a tonal contrast effect. This print mode is suitable for printing image data such as photos.

G <High Resolution>

Performs fine printing by sharply reproducing the edges of characters. This print mode is suitable for printing data of characters and thin lines with a clear finish.

Grayscale Conversion

You can select the method to convert color pint data to black-and-white data.

sRGB	
NTSC ⁺	
Uniform RGB	



🔁 <sRGB>

Color data is converted to black-and-white data to generate color-conscious smooth gradation.

ONTSC>

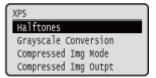
Color data is converted to black-and-white data to generate appearances equivalent to television pictures (NTSC).

Contine Control Con

Color data is converted to black-and-white data to equalize all RGB levels based on the brightness only.

XPS

0X7U-05S



All the settings about XPS files available for USB Direct Print and Direct Print are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger ([†]).

NOTE

Asterisks (*)

• Settings marked with an asterisk (*) are not displayed depending on other settings or whether an optional SD card is installed on the machine.

Halftones(P. 431)
 Grayscale Conversion(P. 432)
 Compressed Img Mode(P. 433)
 Compressed Img Outpt(P. 434)

Halftones

You can select the printing method to reproduce halftones (the intermediate range between the lighter and darker areas of an image). Halftones can be specified for each image data type in a single document.

Text Resolutio	on †
Gradatio	n
High Res	olution
Graphics Resolutio	on †
Gradatio	n
High Res	olution
Image Resolutio	on †
Gradatio	n
High Res	olution
•	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <xps> ▶ 🞯 ▶ <halftones> ▶ 🐼 ▶ Select the image data type ▶ 🐼 ▶ Select the image data type ▶ 🐼 ▶ Select the image data type ▶ 🖉</halftones></xps>

Halftones Text Graphics Image		Text Resolution Gradation High Resolution	
--	--	--	--

อ Image data type

Select the image data type for which the settings are changed. Select <Text> for characters, <Graphics> for lines and figures, or <Image> for images such as photos.

() <Resolution>

Prints gradation and lines with a smooth finish. This print mode is suitable for printing figures and charts with gradation.

Gradation>

Prints vivid images with a tonal contrast effect. This print mode is suitable for printing image data such as photos.

Contraction Contraction

Performs fine printing by sharply reproducing the edges of characters. This print mode is suitable for printing data of characters and thin lines with a clear finish.

Grayscale Conversion

You can select the method to convert color pint data to black-and-white data. You can specify the conversion method for each image data type: <Text>, <Graphics>, and <Image>.

Text sRGB NTSC ⁺ Uniform RGB			
Graphics sRGB NTSC ⁺ Uniform RGB			
Image sRGB NTSC ⁺ Uniform RGB			

•	▶ (□ ♥) ► <xps> ► Grayscale Conversion> ► Select the image data type ► Select the conversion method ►</xps>
Grayscale Co Text Graphics Image	Text SRGB NTSC Uniform RGB d

อ Image data type

Select the image data type for which you want to specify the conversion method.

🜔 <sRGB>

Color data is converted to black-and-white data to generate color-conscious smooth gradation.

ONTSC>

Color data is converted to black-and-white data to generate appearances equivalent to television pictures (NTSC).

📵 <Uniform RGB>

Color data is converted to black-and-white data to equalize all RGB levels based on the brightness only.

Compressed Img Mode*

Specify how the machine should behave when the machine is running out of memory during XPS file printing.

Image Priority ⁺ Output Priority



elimage Priority>

Cancels printing before the quality is reduced when insufficient memory is available.

Output Priority>

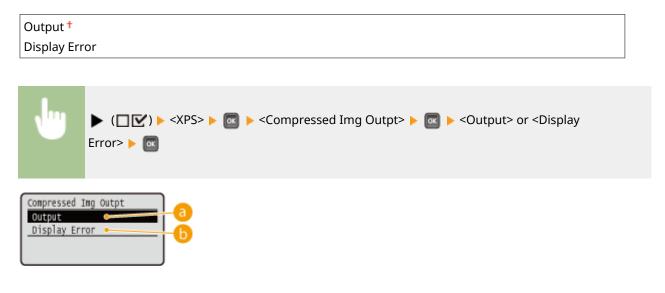
Continues printing even if the quality is reduced due to insufficient memory.

NOTE

 You can specify this item when no SD card is used. If <SD Card> is set to <On>, the machine always operates with <Output Priority> selected (OSD Card(P. 369)).

Compressed Img Outpt

If <Compressed Img Mode> is set to <Output Priority>, the quality may be reduced over time depending on image data. You can specify how the machine should behave if the quality is excessively reduced.



60 <Output>

Continues printing regardless of how the quality is reduced.

Oisplay Error>

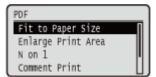
Displays an applicable error message and cancels printing when the quality is excessively reduced.

NOTE

This setting is valid when <Compressed Img Mode> is set to <Output Priority> or <SD Card> (SD Card(P. 369)) is set to <On>.

Setting Menu List

PDF



All the settings about PDF files available for USB Direct Print and Direct Print are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger ([†]).

Fit to Paper Size(P. 435)
Enlarge Print Area(P. 435)
N on 1(P. 436)
Comment Print(P. 436)
Halftones(P. 436)
Grayscale Conversion(P. 437)

Fit to Paper Size

Specify whether to enlarge or reduce printouts according to the **Printable Area(P. 572)** of paper. The printouts are enlarged or reduced with the original aspect ratio kept.



Enlarge Print Area

Off⁺ On

Specify whether or not to print the image by extending the **OPrintable Area(P. 572)** fully to the paper size.

, lu	▶ (□☑) ▶ <pdf> ▶ 🔤 ▶ <enlarge area="" print=""> ▶ 🔤 ▶ <off> or <on> ▶ 🔤</on></off></enlarge></pdf>

NOTE

• If you select <On>, some portions of the image may be missing near the edge of the paper or the paper may be partly tainted depending on the original.

N on 1

Select whether to print multiple pages onto a single sheet at a reduced size by sequentially allocating them from the top left. For example, to print four pages onto a single sheet, select <4 on 1>.

Off [†]		
2 on 1 4 on 1 6 on 1 8 on 1		
4 on 1		
6 on 1		
8 on 1		
9 on 1 16 on 1		
16 on 1		



Comment Print

Select whether to print comments. If you select <Auto>, comments in the PDF file are printed.



Halftones

You can select the printing method to reproduce halftones (the intermediate range between the lighter and darker areas of an image). Halftones can be specified for each image data type in a single document.

Text Resolution ⁺			
Gradation			
High Resolution			
Graphics Resolution ⁺			
Gradation High Resolution			
Image Resolution ⁺			
Gradation High Resolution			

•	▶ (□ ☑) ▶ <pdf> ▶ @ ▶ <halftones> ▶ @ ▶ Select the image data type ▶ @ ▶ Select the method to reproduce halftones ▶ @</halftones></pdf>
Halftones Text Graphics Image	Text Resolution Gradation High Resolution d

อ Image data type

Select the image data type for which the settings are changed. Select <Text> for characters, <Graphic Mode> for lines and figures, or <Image> for images such as photos.

<Resolution>

Prints gradation and lines with a smooth finish. This print mode is suitable for printing figures and charts with gradation.

Gradation>

Prints vivid images with a tonal contrast effect. This print mode is suitable for printing image data such as photos.

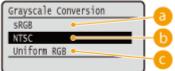
Control

Performs fine printing by sharply reproducing the edges of characters. This print mode is suitable for printing data of characters and thin lines with a clear finish.

Grayscale Conversion

You can select the method to convert color pint data to black-and-white data.

sRGB NTSC †		
Uniform R	GB	
•	▶ (□ ♥) ► <pdf> ► @ ► <grayscale conversion=""> ► @ ► Select the conversion method ► @</grayscale></pdf>	



60 <sRGB>

Color data is converted to black-and-white data to generate color-conscious smooth gradation.

ONTSC>

Color data is converted to black-and-white data to generate appearances equivalent to television pictures (NTSC).

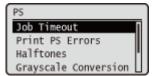
Colored Col

Color data is converted to black-and-white data to equalize all RGB levels based on the brightness only.

Setting Menu List

PS

0X7U-05W



All the settings about the PS control commands are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger (⁺).

Job Timeout(P. 439)
Print PS Errors(P. 439)
Halftones(P. 439)
Grayscale Conversion(P. 440)

Job Timeout

If the time specified in this item has elapsed since a job process was started, the machine automatically finishes the job and receives the next job.

If you do not want to specify the timeout, specify "0 seconds."

0 † to 3600) seconds
•	▶ (□ 🗹) ▶ <ps> ▶ 國 ▶ <job timeout=""> ▶ 國 ▶ Use the numeric keys to enter the setting value ▶ 📾</job></ps>

Print PS Errors

Specifies whether an error page should be printed when a PostScript error is occurring.



Halftones

You can select the printing method to reproduce halftones (the intermediate range between the lighter and darker areas of an image). Halftones can be specified for each image data type in a single document.

Text		
Resolution †		
Gradation		

Setting Menu List

High Resolution			
Graphics Resolution ⁺			
Gradation			
High Resolution			
Image Resolution †			
Gradation			
High Resolution			

•	S> ▶ 💽 ▶ <halftones> ▶ 💽 ▶ Select the image data type ▶ 💽 ▶ Select the duce halftones ▶ 💽</halftones>
Halftones Text Graphics Image	Text Resolution Gradation High Resolution d

อ Image data type

Select the image data type for which the settings are changed. Select <Text> for characters, <Graphics> for lines and figures, or <Image> for images such as photos.

() <Resolution>

Prints gradation and lines with a smooth finish. This print mode is suitable for printing figures and charts with gradation.

Gradation>

Prints vivid images with a tonal contrast effect. This print mode is suitable for printing image data such as photos.

Contraction Contraction

Performs fine printing by sharply reproducing the edges of characters. This print mode is suitable for printing data of characters and thin lines with a clear finish.

Grayscale Conversion

You can select the method to convert color print data to black-and-white data.

sRGB
NTSC [†]
Uniform RGB



60 <sRGB>

Color data is converted to black-and-white data to generate color-conscious smooth gradation.

NTSC>

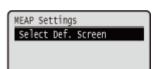
Color data is converted to black-and-white data to generate appearances equivalent to television pictures (NTSC).

Continue of the second seco

Color data is converted to black-and-white data to equalize all RGB levels based on the brightness only.

MEAP Settings

0X7U-05X

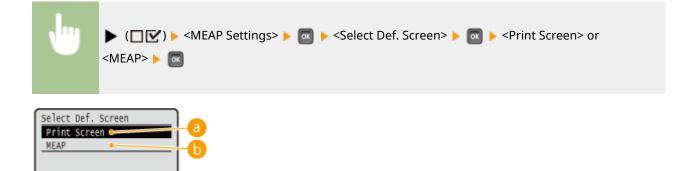


The setting items about the main screen on MEAP are listed with short descriptions. Default settings are marked with a dagger ([†]).

Select Def. Screen

You can specify the screen that appears on the display of the operation panel when the machine starts up.

Print Screen †	
MEAP	





The print standby screen (main screen) is displayed.

MEAP>

The screen of an installed MEAP application is displayed if any installed.

NOTE

• You can press () () on the operation panel to change the screens of the display.

You can check the total number of printed pages.

Check Counter

0X7U-05Y

Check Counter
101: Total 1
113: Total (B&W/Sml)
114:Total 1(2-Sided)

NOTE

• You can also check the counter value by selecting <Check Counter> in the **OUtility Menu(P. 445)** as well as this item.

101: Total 1

You can check the total number of pages printed.

(Display only)

113: Total (B&W/Sml)

You can check the total number of pages printed.

(Display only)

114:Total 1(2-Sided)

You can check the total number of pages printed in 2-sided printing mode.

(Display only)

Initialize Menu

0X7U-060

Execute?	
No	
Yes	

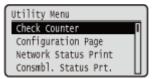
Select to restore the settings of the Setup menu listed below to the factory defaults. **Initializing Menu(P. 551)**

NOTE

Settings that cannot be initialized

You cannot initialize the settings specified for <Network> and <Adj. Print Position>. When you want to initialize the <Network> settings, see OInitializing the Network Settings(P. 552). When you want to initialize the <Adj. Print Position> settings, manually restore them to the factory default settings (OAdj. Print Position(P. 406)).

Utility Menu



You can display the total number of printed pages and print internal system information. When you press \blacktriangleleft ($\blacksquare/\blacksquare$) on the operation panel, the Utility menu is displayed. You can specify the settings described below when the machine is offline.

Check Counter(P. 445)
Configuration Page(P. 445)
Network Status Print(P. 446)
Consmbl. Status Prt.(P. 446)
IPSec Policy List(P. 446)
PCL Utility(P. 446)
PS Utility(P. 446)
Cleaning(P. 446)

E-Mail Print Utility(P. 446)
Printing Pos. Print(P. 447)
Page Count List(P. 447)
Counter Report(P. 447)
Print MEAP Sys. Info(P. 447)
Serial Number(P. 447)
Consumables Info.(P. 447)

Check Counter

You can check the total number of printed pages. **OChecking Total Number of Printed Pages(P. 545)**

NOTE

• You can also check the counter value by selecting <Check Counter> in the **Setup Menu(P. 360)** as well as this item.

101: Total 1

You can check the total number of pages printed.

(Display only)

113: Total (B&W/Sml)

You can check the total number of pages printed.

(Display only)

114:Total 1(2-Sided)

You can check the total number of pages printed in 2-sided printing mode.

(Display only)

Configuration Page

You can check the machine settings (**Setup Menu(P. 360)**) configured in the machine. You can also check other information including the amount of remaining toner, the number of printed pages, and the capacity of the memory (RAM) mounted on the machine. **Configuration Page(P. 536)**

Network Status Print

Select to print a list of the settings (**Network(P. 375)**) about the network configured in the machine. You can also check the information about the security including the address filter settings and IPSec settings. **Network Status Print(P. 536)**

Consmbl. Status Prt.

The information such as toner remaining amount, warning messages, and information on where you can purchase new toner cartridges is printed out. **Consmbl. Status Prt.(P. 537)**

IPSec Policy List

Select to print a list of the IPSec policy names and settings (**Configuring IPSec Settings(P. 298)**) configured in the machine. **CIPSec Policy List(P. 537)**

PCL Utility

Select to print a list of the internal information items registered in the machine for use of the PCL mode.

Font List

Select to print a list of the fonts that can be used in the PCL mode. **PCL Font List(P. 540)**

PS Utility

Select to print a list of the settings for use of the PS mode and the internal information items registered in the machine. **OPS Mode List(P. 540)**

Configuration Page

Select to print a list of the machine settings (**PS(P. 439)**).

Font List

Select to print a list of the fonts that can be used in the PS mode.

Cleaning

Select to clean the fixing unit when black spots or streaks appear on printouts. **Pixing Unit(P. 520)**

E-Mail Print Utility

Select to manually receive e-mails and print a log of received e-mails in list form.

Received E-Mail

Select to manually receive e-mails from the POP3 mail server and print them. **OManually Receiving E-**Mails(P. 162)

E-Mail RX Log List

Select to print a log consisting of subjects and received date/time of e-mails received in the machine in list form. **E-Mail Print Log(P. 543)**

Printing Pos. Print

Select to print marks that indicate the current print position. **OAdjusting Print Position(P. 532)**

Page Count List

Select to print a report on the number of printed pages for each department when Department ID Management is enabled. **Page Count List(P. 538)**

Counter Report

Prints an aggregate report of the number of pages printed for each counter. **Counter Report(P. 539)**

Print MEAP Sys. Info

Select to print a list of information about MEAP applications installed in the machine and the MEAP system applications when the MEAP function is enabled. **Print MEAP Sys. Info(P. 539)**

Serial Number

Select to display the serial number of the machine.

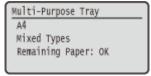


Consumables Info.

Select to display the information about the paper and toner cartridge.

Paper Information

Select to display the currently specified paper size and paper type, and the remaining paper level for each paper source. **Checking Paper(P. 548)**



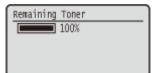
Toner Cart. Model

Select to display the model number of the toner cartridge for the machine. **Checking the Toner Cartridge Model(P. 548)**

Toner Cart. Model Cartridge 039

Remaining Toner

Select to display the amount of remaining toner. **OChecking the Amount of Remaining Toner(P. 548)**



NOTE

• The displayed remaining toner level can be used only as a guide and may differ from the actual level.

Job Menu



You can print documents stored in the SD card and a print log. When you press \blacktriangle (\Rightarrow) on the operation panel, the Job menu is displayed. You can specify the settings described below when the machine is offline.

NOTE

Asterisks (*)

- Settings marked with "^{*1}" are not displayed depending on other settings or whether an optional SD card is installed on the machine.
- Settings marked with "*2" are not displayed when [Display Job Log] check box of the Remote UI is not selected. OHiding the Print Job History(P. 291)

Encrypted Print(P. 449)
Secured Print(P. 449)
Stored Job List(P. 449)
Stored Job Print(P. 449)
Job Print Log(P. 450)
Stored Job Print Log(P. 450)
Report Print Log(P. 450)
E-Mail Print Log(P. 450)

Encrypted Print *1

Select to print encrypted documents that you sent to the machine from the computer. **Printing Out Secured Documents(P. 133)**

Secured Print *1

Select to print secured documents that you sent to the machine from the computer. **Printing Out Secured Documents(P. 133)**

Stored Job List *1

Select to print a list of documents stored in the SD card installed on the machine. Stored Job List(P. 542)

Stored Job Print *1

Select to print documents stored in the SD card installed on the machine. **Printing a Document Stored in the** Machine(P. 139)

Job Print Log *2

Select to print a log of documents printed from the computer in list from. **Job Print Log(P. 542)**

Stored Job Print Log *1*2

Select to print a print log of documents stored in the SD card installed on the machine in list form. Stored Job Print Log(P. 542)

Report Print Log *2

Select to print the settings and a print log of reports in list form. **Print Log(P. 543)**

E-Mail Print Log *2

Select to print a print log of received e-mails in list form. **DE-Mail Print Log(P. 543)**

Reset Menu

0X7U-063

Reset	
Soft	Reset
Form	Feed
Shut	Down

You can cancel all processes, delete data in memory, and turn OFF the power. When you press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ ($\mathbf{\checkmark}$) on the operation panel, the Reset menu is displayed.

Soft Reset(P. 451)
Form Feed(P. 452)
Shut Down(P. 452)

NOTE

• When the message Ennn-nnnn (n is a number) is displayed, only <Shut Down> can be executed.

Soft Reset

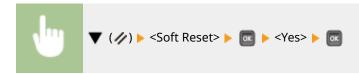
Select to erase all data of print jobs that are not yet finished (soft reset). You can also select this item to perform a hard reset for enabling the changed settings.

IMPORTANT

 Make sure to check that other users are not using the machine before performing a soft reset or hard reset, otherwise, all print data is erased before being printed.

Performing a Soft Reset

Perform a soft reset when you want to erase all print data that is being printed, waiting to be printed, or being received.



Performing a Hard Reset

Perform a hard reset when you want to enable the changed settings of machine or to erase data registered in memory of the machine.



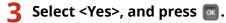
NOTE:

• If the setting menu is displayed, first press () to return to the main screen and then perform this step 1.

2 Use ▲ / ▼ to select <Soft Reset>, press and hold for 5 seconds or more, and release it.

Reset	
(Soft Reset	
Form Feed	
Shut Down	

The message <Execute hard reset?> is displayed.



Execute	hard	reset?	
NO			_
Yes			

When a hard reset is executed, the machine is restarted.

NOTE

• When a soft reset or hard reset is performed, secured documents stored in the optional SD card are also deleted.

Form Feed

If printing is canceled from the computer or the communication is interrupted during data reception, the data may remain in the memory of the machine, preventing the printing from finishing. The next print data cannot be printed with the remaining data left as is. In this case, select <Form Feed> to forcibly print the data remaining in memory.



NOTE

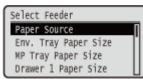
- If the remaining data is not printed, perform a soft reset.
- If the data still remains in the memory of the machine after a form feed is performed (the [Job] indicator is lit on the machine), perform a soft reset.

Shut Down

When turning OFF the machine, shut down the machine from the operation panel without using the power switch. **Description of the Power (Performing a Shutdown)(P. 33)**

Select Feeder Menu

0X7U-064



The settings about the paper source and the size of paper loaded in the machine are listed with short descriptions. When you press (\square) (\square) on the operation panel, the Select Feeder menu is displayed. Default settings are marked with a dagger ($^{+}$).

NOTE

Common settings

• The settings are the same as those for <Paper Source> in the **Setup Menu(P. 360)**. The settings specified here are also applied to the <Paper Source> settings.

Asterisks (*)

• Settings marked with an asterisk (*) are not displayed depending on other settings or whether an optional paper feeder, paper deck, or envelope feeder is installed in the machine.

Paper Source(P. 453)
Env. Tray Paper Size(P. 454)
MP Tray Paper Size(P. 454)
Drawer N Paper Size (N=1, 2, 3, 4, 5)(P. 454)
Standard Paper Size(P. 455)
MP Tray Priority(P. 456)
MP Tray for Mix Ppr.(P. 456)
Auto Select Drawer(P. 456)

Default Paper Type(P. 457)
Env. Tray Paper Type(P. 458)
MP Tray Paper Type(P. 458)
Drawer N Paper Type (N=1, 2, 3, 4, 5)(P. 458)
Manual 2-Sided (MP)(P. 458)
2-Sided Printing(P. 459)
Select Drawer1 Model(P. 459)

Paper Source

Select the paper source from which paper is fed. When you want to automatically change the paper source based on the paper size and paper type, select <Auto>.

Auto [†]
Envelope Tray *
Multi-Purpose Tray
Drawer 1
Drawer 2 *
Drawer 3 *
Drawer 4 *
Drawer 5 *



Env. Tray Paper Size *

Set the size of paper loaded in the optional envelope feeder. Specifying Paper Size and Type for the Envelope Feeder (Option)(P. 66)

Free Size	
🖵 Custom Size	
🗇 Custom Size	
Env. ISO-C5	
Env. Monarch	
Env. No.10	
Env. DL ⁺	

MP Tray Paper Size

Specify the size of the paper that is loaded in the multi-purpose tray. **Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 64)**

A6	
□ A5	
D A5	
B5	
A4 †	
LTR	
LGL	
EXEC	
Free Size	
Custom Size	
🗇 Custom Size	
Env. ISO-C5	
Env. Monarch	
Env. No.10	
Env. DL	
Index Card	
STMT	
FLSC	
16К	

Drawer N Paper Size (N=1, 2, 3, 4, 5)*

Set the size of paper loaded in the paper drawer or optional paper deck (**Specifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 61)**). The paper types displayed differ depending on the type of the drawer or the option installed. When you use an optional A5 cassette or custom media cassette, you need to specify the type of drawer 1 (**Select Drawer1 Model(P. 459)**).

Machine's Standard Paper Drawer or Paper Feeder's Paper Drawer

Free Size
Auto 🕇
🖵 Custom Size
🛛 Custom Size
FLSC

16K

Custom Media Cassette

A6	
A5 ⁺	
Free Size	
🖵 Custom Size	
🗇 Custom Size	
STMT	

A5 Cassette

A5 †	
Free Size	

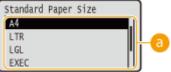
Paper Deck

Free Size Auto †

Standard Paper Size

You cannot perform paper size setting on a computer running an operating system or a mobile device that does not support any printer driver. If you want to print from such computer or mobile device, use this item to set the size of the paper to print on.

A6
A5
B5
A4 [†]
LTR
LGL
EXEC
Env. ISO-C5
Env. Monarch
Env. No.10
Env. DL
Index Card
STMT
FLSC
16K
(ﷺ) ► <standard paper="" size=""> ► 💽 ► Select the paper size ► 🔤</standard>



6) Selecting the paper size

Specify the setting according to the size of the paper to print on.

MP Tray Priority

Select whether to prioritize paper feeding from the multi-purpose tray when <Paper Source> is set to <Auto>. If you select <On>, paper is fed from the multi-purpose tray when the same size paper is loaded in both the multi-purpose tray and the paper drawer.

Off ⁺	
On	
(III) ► <mp priority="" tray=""> ► IIII ► <off> or <on> ► IIII</on></off></mp>	

NOTE

• When <MP Tray for Mix Ppr.> is set to <On>, paper is preferentially fed from the paper drawer even if <MP Tray Priority> is set to <On>.

MP Tray for Mix Ppr.

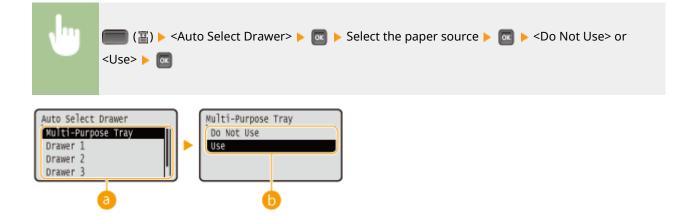
If you select <On> with <Paper Source> set to <Auto>, the multi-purpose tray is automatically selected when appropriate size paper is not loaded in any paper drawer.

Off [†]		
On		
v ""	() ► <mp for="" mix="" ppr.="" tray=""> ► 🔤 ► <off> or <on> ► 🔤</on></off></mp>	

Auto Select Drawer

If you select <Use> with <Paper Source> set to <Auto>, the machine automatically selects the paper source with appropriate size paper loaded. Also, when the paper runs out, this setting enables continuous printing by switching from one paper source to another that is loaded with the same paper size.

Do Not Use	
Use ⁺	



Paper source selection

Select the paper source to which you want to apply the Auto Select Drawer function.

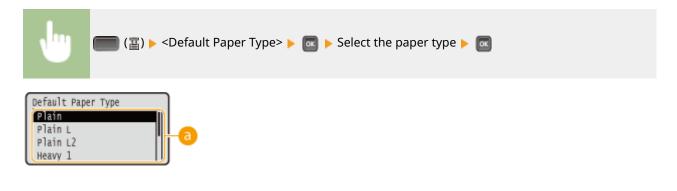
Switching of the settings

Select <On> to enable automatic drawer selection for the paper source you selected on the previous screen (a).

Default Paper Type

You cannot perform paper type setting on a computer running an operating system or a mobile device that does not support any printer driver. If you want to print from such computer or mobile device, use this item to set the type of the paper to print on.

Plain ⁺	
Plain L	
Plain L2	
Heavy 1	
Heavy 2	
Heavy 3	
Envelope	
Envelope H	
Labels	



Paper type selection

Specify the settings in the same way as the paper settings in the printer driver according to the paper type for printing. **Cloading Paper(P. 37)**

Env. Tray Paper Type *

Set the type of paper loaded in the optional envelope feeder. Specifying Paper Size and Type for the Envelope Feeder (Option)(P. 66)

Envelope Envelope H Mixed Types [†]

MP Tray Paper Type

Set the type of paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray. **Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 64)**

Plain	
Plain L	
Plain L2	
Heavy 1	
Heavy 2	
Heavy 3	
Envelope	
Envelope H	
Labels	
Mixed Types ⁺	

Drawer N Paper Type (N=1, 2, 3, 4, 5) *

Set the type of paper loaded in the paper drawer or optional paper deck. **OSpecifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 61)**

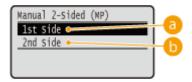
Plain	
Plain L	
Plain L2	
Heavy 1	
Heavy 1 Mixed Types ⁺	

Manual 2-Sided (MP)

Select the side of paper to print on when you want to perform 2-sided printing manually from the multi-purpose tray.

1st Side †			
2nd Side			
			,





60 <1st Side>

Select to print on the front side (the side to print first).

<2nd Side>

Select to print on the back side (the opposite of the side that is already printed).

2-Sided Printing

Select whether to print on both sides of paper.

Off †		
On		
•	(II) ► <2-Sided Printing> ► III ► <off> or <on> ► IIII</on></off>	

Select Drawer1 Model

Set the type of the cassette to use as drawer 1. **OSpecifying the Type of Drawer 1(P. 61)**



Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting	
Clearing Jams	63
When an Error Message Appears 48	80
Common Problems	97
Installation/Settings Problems 4	98
Printing Problems	601
When You Cannot Print Properly	603
Printing Results Are Not Satisfactory	605
Paper Creases or Curls	511
Paper Is Fed Incorrectly	513
When a Problem Cannot Be Solved	514

Troubleshooting

0X7U-065

When a problem occurs, check this chapter to find out solutions before contacting Canon.

Paper Jams

If a paper jams, see **Clearing Jams(P. 463)** to remove the jammed paper.



A Message Appears

If the screen displays a message, see **When an Error Message Appears(P. 480)** .



Common Problems

If you suspect that the machine is malfunctioning, see the following sections before contacting Canon.



Common Problems(P. 497) Installation/Settings Problems(P. 498) Printing Problems(P. 501)

Printing Results are Not Satisfactory

If printing results are not satisfactory, see **When You Cannot Print Properly(P. 503)**.



When a Problem Cannot Be Solved

If a problem persists, see **When a Problem Cannot Be Solved(P. 514)** to find out where to contact.



Clearing Jams

0X7U-066

If a paper jam occurs, an alarm beep sound is generated and a paper jam location is indicated on the screen. Press to display simple solutions. If it is difficult to understand the procedures on the display, see the following sections to clear jams. If a paper jam occurs in multiple locations at the same time, check all messages that are displayed. Carefully read the precautions in **Important Safety Instructions(P. 2)** before you start clearing paper jams.

Paper is jammed.	
MP tray area	J
Paper is jammed.	Remove jammed paper.
Press the right-arrow key to	▶ (🕋)
display the steps.	

- <MP tray area>
 Paper Jams in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 464)
- <Drawer N area> (N=1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
 Paper Jams in the Paper Drawer or the Optional Paper Deck (P. 464)
- <2-sided unit area>
 Paper Jams in the Duplex Unit(P. 467)
- <Back cover area>
 Paper Jams in the Back Side(P. 472)
- <Top cover area>
 Paper Jams inside the Machine(P. 473)
- <Output tray area>
 Paper Jams in the Optional Envelope Feeder(P. 477)

IMPORTANT

When removing the jammed paper, do not turn OFF the machine

• Turning OFF the machine deletes the data that is being printed.

If paper tears

• Remove all the paper fragments to prevent them from becoming jammed.

If paper jams repeatedly

- Tap the paper stack on a flat surface to even the edges of the paper before loading it into the machine.
- Check that the paper is appropriate for the machine. **Paper(P. 569)**
- Check that no jammed paper fragments remain in the machine.
- If a paper jam occurs during printing on the back side of the paper that is already printed (manual 2-sided printing), select the [Print on the Other Side] check box in the [Paper Source] tab of the printer driver.

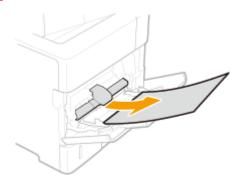
Do not forcibly remove the jammed paper from the machine

• Forcibly removing the paper may damage parts. If you are not able to remove the paper,contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line. **OWhen a Problem Cannot Be Solved(P. 514)**

Paper Jams in the Multi-Purpose Tray

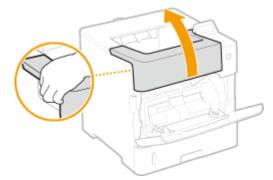
If there is paper loaded in the tray, remove it first. If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not forcibly pull it out, but follow the procedure for a different paper jam location indicated by the message.

1 Gently pull out the paper.





- When the top cover is opened and closed, the paper jam message disappears.
- **1** Open the top cover.
 - Hold the handle on the left side, and open the top cover.



2 Close the top cover.

NOTE:

When the message is still displayed

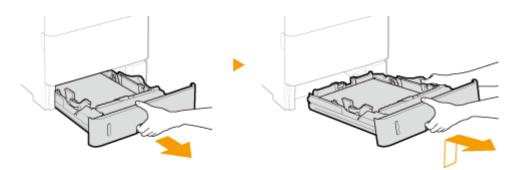
• Paper may be jammed in other locations. Check other locations, and remove jammed paper if any. If the message is still displayed, check whether the top cover is securely closed.

Paper Jams in the Paper Drawer or the Optional Paper Deck

If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not forcibly pull it out, but follow the procedure for a different paper jam location indicated by the message.

Paper Jams in the Paper Drawer

Pull out the paper drawer until it stops, and remove it while lifting the front side.



2 Gently pull out the paper.

• When the optional paper feeder(drawer 2) is attached, gently pull out the paper in the same way.



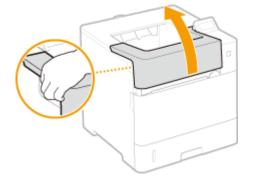
3 Set the paper drawer.

4 Open and close the top cover.

• When the top cover is opened and closed, the paper jam message disappears.

1 Open the top cover.

• Hold the handle on the left side, and open the top cover.



2 Close the top cover.

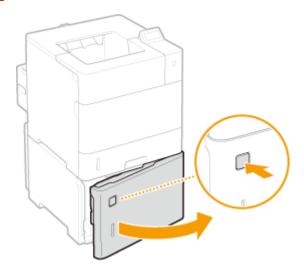
NOTE:

When the message is still displayed

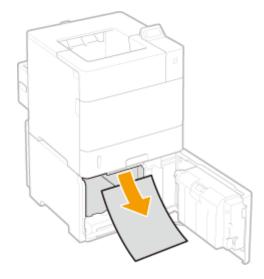
• Paper may be jammed in other locations. Check other locations, and remove jammed paper if any. If the message is still displayed, check whether the top cover is securely closed.

Paper Jams in the Optional Paper Deck

1 Press the button to open the door.



2 Gently pull out the paper.



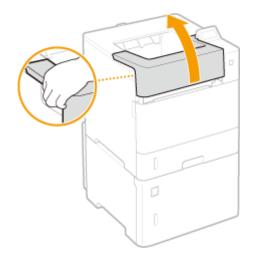
3 Close the door.

4 Open and close the top cover.

• When the top cover is opened and closed, the paper jam message disappears.

1 Open the top cover.

• Hold the handle on the left side, and open the top cover.



2 Close the top cover.

NOTE:

1

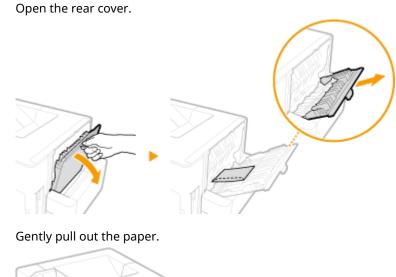
When the message is still displayed

• Paper may be jammed in other locations. Check other locations, and remove jammed paper if any. If the message is still displayed, check whether the top cover is securely closed.

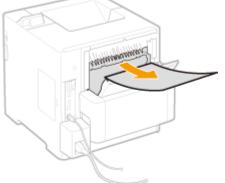
Paper Jams in the Duplex Unit

Do not forcibly remove jammed paper from the machine. If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, proceed to the next step.

Check whether paper is jammed inside the rear cover.



2

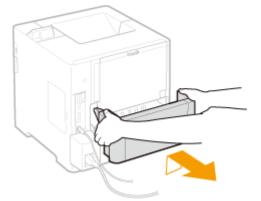


3 Close the rear cover.

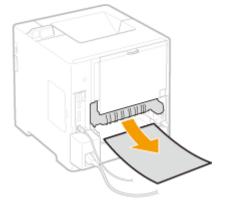
2 Remove the jammed paper in the duplex unit.

1 Pull out the duplex unit

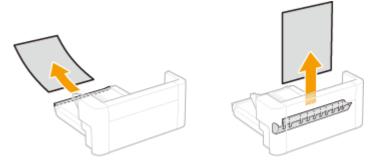
• Hold the handles on the left and right sides, and pull out the duplex unit.



2 Gently pull out the paper.



3 Gently pull out the jammed paper from the duplex unit.

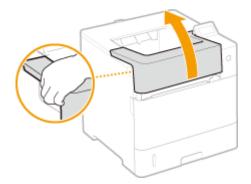


4 Replace the duplex unit back in place.

3 Remove the jammed paper inside the top cover.

1 Open the top cover.

• Hold the handle on the left side, and open the top cover.

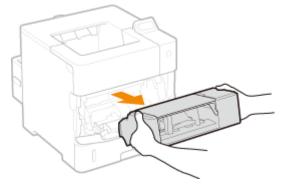


When the optional envelope feeder is installed

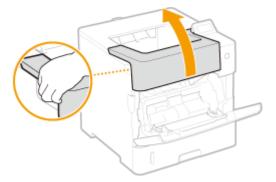
1 Close the envelope feeder cover.



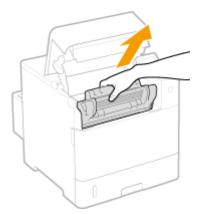
2 Remove the envelope feeder.



- **3** Open the top cover.
 - Hold the handle on the left side, and open the top cover.



2 Remove the toner cartridge.



NOTE:

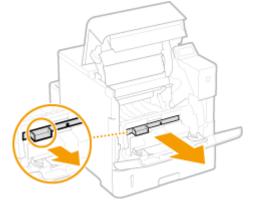
• When the envelope feeder had been installed, skip to step 5.

3 Open the cover of the multi-purpose tray.

• Hold the left and right side handles, and open the cover.



4 Remove the envelope feeder cover.



5 Но

Hold the front side green knob and lift the transport guide.

• Keep holding the transport guide until returning it to the original position in step 7.



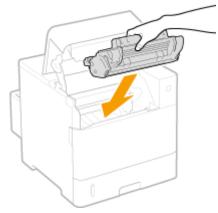
- **6** Gently pull out the paper.
 - Pull out the paper flatly as much as possible to prevent unfixed toner from being dropped.



7 Gently return the transport guide back in place.

NOTE:

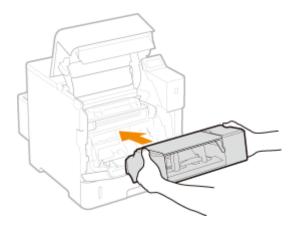
- When the envelope feeder had been installed, skip to step 10.
- 8 Replace the envelope feeder cover back in place.
- 9 Close the cover of the multi-purpose tray.
- **10** Install the toner cartridge.
 - Make sure to push in the cartridge until it stops.



11 Close the top cover.

When the envelope feeder had been installed

1 Replace the envelope feeder back in place.



2 Close the top cover.

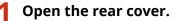
NOTE:

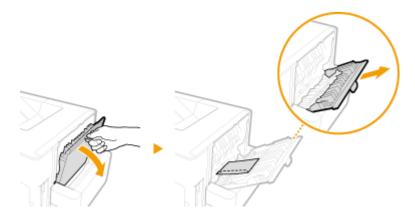
When the message is still displayed

• Paper may be jammed in other locations. Check other locations, and remove jammed paper if any. If the message is still displayed, check whether the top cover is securely closed.

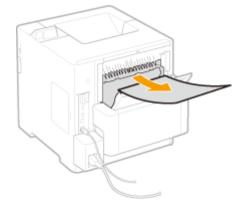
Paper Jams in the Back Side

If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not forcibly pull it out, but follow the procedure for a different paper jam location indicated by the message.





2 Gently pull out the paper.



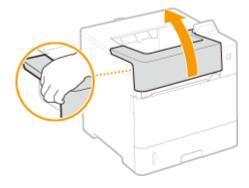
3 Close the rear cover.

1 Open and close the top cover.

• When the top cover is opened and closed, the paper jam message disappears.

1 Open the top cover.

• Hold the handle on the left side, and open the top cover.



2 Close the top cover.

NOTE:

When the message is still displayed

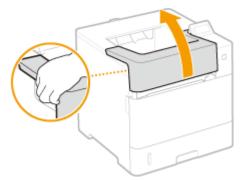
• Paper may be jammed in other locations. Check other locations, and remove jammed paper if any. If the message is still displayed, check whether the top cover is securely closed.

Paper Jams inside the Machine

If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not forcibly pull it out, but follow the procedure for a different paper jam location indicated by the message.

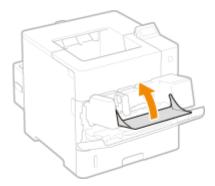
Open the top cover.

• Hold the handle on the left side, and open the top cover.

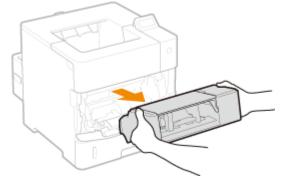


When the optional envelope feeder is installed

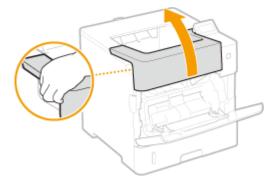
1 Close the envelope feeder cover.



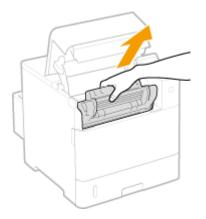
2 Remove the envelope feeder.



- **3** Open the top cover.
 - Hold the handle on the left side, and open the top cover.



2 Remove the toner cartridge.



NOTE:

- When the envelope feeder had been installed, skip to step 4.
- **3** Open the cover of the multi-purpose tray.

• Hold the left and right side handles, and open the cover.



4 Hold the back side green knob and lift the transport guide.

• Keep holding the transport guide until returning it to the original position in step 6.



5 Gently pull out the paper.

• Pull out the paper flatly as much as possible to prevent unfixed toner from being dropped.

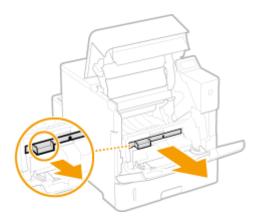


6 Gently return the transport guide back in place.

NOTE:

• When the envelope feeder had been installed, skip to step 8.

7 Hold the handle of the envelope feeder cover, and remove the cover.



8 Hold the front side green knob and lift the transport guide.

• Keep holding the transport guide until returning it to the original position in step 10.



9 Gently pull out the paper.

• Pull out the paper flatly as much as possible to prevent unfixed toner from being dropped.



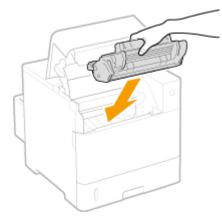
10 Gently return the transport guide back in place.

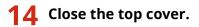
NOTE:

- When the envelope feeder had been installed, skip to step 13.
- **1** Replace the envelope feeder cover back in place.

12 Close the cover of the multi-purpose tray.

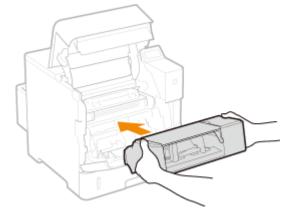
- **13** Install the toner cartridge.
 - Make sure to push in the cartridge until it stops.





When the envelope feeder had been installed

1 Replace the envelope feeder back in place.



2 Close the top cover.

NOTE:

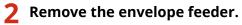
When the message is still displayed

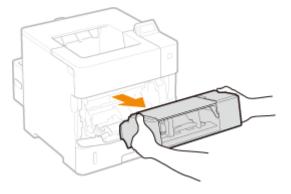
• Paper may be jammed in other locations. Check other locations, and remove jammed paper if any. If the message is still displayed, check whether the top cover is securely closed.

Paper Jams in the Optional Envelope Feeder

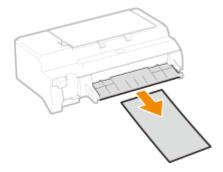
When paper is loaded in the envelope feeder, first remove the loaded paper before starting the following procedure. If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not forcibly remove it from the machine, but follow the procedure for another location indicated by the message.

1 Close the envelope feeder cover.



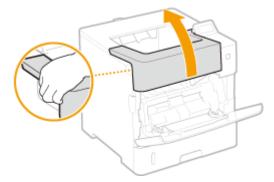


3 Gently pull out the jammed paper from the envelope feeder.



4 Open the top cover.

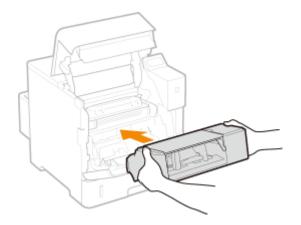
• Hold the handle on the left side, and open the top cover.







6 Replace the envelope feeder back in place.





NOTE:

When the message is still displayed

• Paper may be jammed in other locations. Check other locations, and remove jammed paper if any. If the message is still displayed, check whether the top cover is securely closed.

When an Error Message Appears

0X7U-067

If an abnormality occurs in the print processing or the memory is full, or you encounter operation problems, a message appears on the display. Find out more information about messages in the following list.

NOTE

Auto Continue

• If you set <Auto Skip Error> to <On> in the setting menu of the operation panel, the printing is continued with the error skipped regarding the error messages marked with **>> =** in the list (**____Auto Skip**

Error(P. 364)). If the error skip causes missing print data or improper printouts, print the file again.

To cancel printing

• When you want to cancel the current printing regardless of the error message, perform a soft reset. **©Soft Reset(P. 451)**

About <Show Warnings>

• You can specify settings not to display some messages showing that printing can be continued. **Show Warnings(P. 365)**

16 Tnr cart. will soon reach end of lifetime.

The replacement time for the toner cartridge is near.

- Make sure that you have a replacement toner cartridge ready.
- Replace the toner cartridge if you see this message before you start to print a large job.
 CReplacing Toner Cartridges(P. 521)

1F Output tray is full.

Too much paper is on the output tray.

• Remove the paper from the output tray.

1G Change toner cartridge recommended.

The toner cartridge has reached the end of its lifetime.

• Replacing the toner cartridge with a new one is recommended. **OReplacing Toner Cartridges(P. 521)**

IMPORTANT

- You can continue printing when this message is displayed, but the print quality may deteriorate.
- Receiving e-mail and fax documents will be disabled. Printing Received E-mail (E-Mail Print) (P. 157)

51 Print settings error.

Printing data containing an unavailable paper type or width has been attempted with <Resolution> set to <1200 dpi>.

- Set <Resolution> to <600 dpi> and print the data again. **OResolution(P. 399)**
- Press () to cancel the print job since the data is not available for printing.

55 SD Card error.

An error has occurred in the SD card.

Shut down the machine, remove the SD card, and install it again.
 Turning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)
 Installing an SD Card(P. 583)

NOTE

You can press ((Continue printing, but <SD Card> will be changed to <Off>. SD
 Card(P. 369)

56 SD Card error.

An error has occurred in the SD card.

- Shut down the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more, and turn ON the power again.
 Turning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)
- Format the SD card.
 SD Card Maintenance(P. 410)

80 Initializing MEAP. Do not turn power OFF.

MEAP is being initialized.

• When the MEAP initialization is complete, this message is automatically removed. Wait until the message is removed.

80 Preparing MEAP... Do not turn power OFF.

MEAP is preparing for operation.

• When MEAP is ready for operation, this message is automatically removed. Wait until the message is removed.

A4 nn Error (nn: 2-digit alphanumeric)

An abnormality has occurred in the machine, resulting in malfunction.

Shut down the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more, and turn ON the power again.
 CTurning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)

A5 nn Error (nn: 2-digit alphanumeric)

An abnormality has occurred in the machine, resulting in malfunction.

Shut down the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more, and turn ON the power again.
 CTurning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)

A7 nn ERROR (nn: 2-digit alphanumeric)

An abnormality has occurred in the machine, resulting in malfunction.

Shut down the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more, and turn ON the power again.
 Turning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)

Amount in cart. cannot be displ. correctly.

A toner cartridge may be set that cannot guarantee print quality because it has reached the end of its lifetime or for other reasons.

Replacing the toner cartridge with a new one is recommended.
 Cartridges(P. 521)

The toner cartridge used may not be a genuine Canon product.

Only genuine Canon toner cartridges should be used as replacement toner cartridges.
 Consumables(P. 573)

IMPORTANT

• You can continue printing when this message is displayed, but the print quality may deteriorate. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.

An error occurred while receiving.

Unanalyzable data has been received or a timeout error has occurred during receipt of print data.

- Press ((cancel the print job, and print the file again.
- Check the status of the network that you are using because the network may have a problem.

BT Clock error.

The clock built in the machine has a failure.

• You can continue printing with the clock left faulty, but logs including the print log will not be generated properly. Contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

Cannot decode data.

Data for Encrypted Print has failed in analysis.

Perform a soft reset, and print the file again.
 Soft Reset(P. 451)

NOTE

When you press ((), the print job is canceled.

Cannot decode PDF data.

An incorrect password has been entered for PDF data printing.

• Print the file again with the correct password.

PDF data printing is not permitted by the security settings.

• Change the settings to permit printing, and print the file again.

The PDF file is linked to the policy server, but the machine cannot access the server.

• Make sure that the policy server is turned ON and the network to which the machine and the policy server are connected is normal, and print the file again.

The encryption algorithm being used is not supported by the machine.

• Use the PDF data in the format supported by the machine.

NOTE

- The machine supports the PDF encryption algorithm of RC4 128bit/AES 128bit/AES 256bit.
- To remove the error message, perform a soft reset to cancel the print job. **Osoft Reset(P. 451)**

Cannot feed paper.

The specified paper size or paper type is not available for paper feeding.

• Set <Paper Source> to the paper source where the paper matching the specified paper size/type is loaded or to <Auto>.

Paper Source(P. 453)

- Load the specified paper in the selected paper source.
 CLoading Paper(P. 37)
- Properly specify the <Standard Paper Size> and <Default Paper Type> settings.
 Standard Paper Size(P. 455)
 Default Paper Type(P. 457)
- To forcibly print on the loaded paper, press ().

Cannot perform 2-Sided Printing.

The machine has received print data for a paper size (including orientation) or paper type that is not available for automatic 2-sided printing.

Perform a soft reset, specify the paper size or paper type available for automatic 2-sided printing, and print the file again.
 Soft Reset(P. 451)

Paper(P. 569)

• You can press () to continue printing. However, 2-sided printing data is printed on two sheets in 1-sided printing mode.

Cannot print with the specified resolution.

The data is too complicated to print.

Perform a soft reset, set <Resolution> to <600 dpi>, and print the file again.
 ©Resolution(P. 399)

Soft Reset(P. 451)

- Perform a soft reset, set <Image Refinement> to <Off>, and print the file again.
 Image Refinement(P. 400)
 Soft Reset(P. 451)

Cannot print. Reg. Table is full.

The upper limit on the number of binders or documents in one print data item has been exceeded.

• The maximum number of binders and documents is 2 and 5, respectively, per print data item. Correct the data, and print the file again.

NOTE

• When you press ((), the print job is canceled.

Cannot read PDF data.

An abnormality has occurred during PDF data read.

• Use the PDF data in the format supported by the machine.

NOTE

- The machine supports the PDF version 1.7.
- To remove the error message, perform a soft reset to cancel the print job. **Osoft Reset(P. 451)**

Cannot receive PDF data. Set the receivable size.

Free space is insufficient to perform Direct Print for the PDF file.

- Optimize the PDF file to reduce its size or retry printing after dividing the file.
- Install the SD card, and then resend the data to the machine.
 Installing an SD Card(P. 583)
- Send the data from the USB memory device to the machine.
 Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)(P. 120)

NOTE

• When you press ((), the print job is canceled.

Cannot start printing because job is restricted.

Normal printing has been attempted while the printing operations are restricted.

Only Stored Job Print is available while the printing operations are restricted. Print the file again with the settings to store data on the SD card.
 Storing a Document in the Machine/P 127)

Storing a Document in the Machine(P. 137)



Cannot store.

The SD card is set to <Off>.

Set <SD Card> to <On>, and send the print data again.
 SD Card(P. 369)

The upper limit on the volume of data that can be stored on the SD card has been exceeded.

A maximum of 1000 data items can be stored in the machine. Delete unnecessary stored data.
 Deleting a Document Stored in the Machine(P. 141)

Free space of the SD card is insufficient.

• The SD card can store up to 3 GB of data in total. Delete unnecessary stored data.

An incorrect box number has been specified.

Specify the correct box number.
 Storing a Document in the Machine(P. 137)

NOTE

• When you press ((), the print job is canceled.

Cannot verify.

A department ID authentication error has occurred.

- Specify the correct department ID and password, and print the file again.
- If the print data does not support the department ID management, specify the setting to permit printing with an unknown department ID, and print the file again.
 CBlocking Jobs When Department ID Is Unknown(P. 261)



When you press (), the print job is canceled.

Check paper size.

The paper loaded in the paper source does not match the specified paper size.

Specify the paper size correctly.
 Specifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 61)
 Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 64)
 Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)

When the paper size was set to <Free Size>, printing has been attempted with the custom size paper of which long edge is 215.9 mm or less loaded in portrait orientation (only during use of the UFR II printer driver).

• Load the paper in landscape orientation, and print the file again.

Printing has been attempted with the custom size paper loaded in landscape orientation without the UFR II printer driver used.

• Load the paper in portrait orientation, and print the file again.

<Check Paper Size> is set to <On>.

Set <Check Paper Size> to <Off>, and print the file again.
 Check Paper Size(P. 407)

Consmbl. status print. Press Utility key.

A warning message about toner cartridge has been issued.

Check the message by Consumables Status Print.
 Consmbl. Status Prt.(P. 537)

D7 nn Error (nn: 2-digit alphanumeric)

An abnormality has occurred in the machine, resulting in malfunction.

Shut down the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more, and turn ON the power again.
 CTurning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)

D8 nn Error (nn: 2-digit alphanumeric)

An abnormality has occurred in the machine, resulting in malfunction.

Shut down the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more, and turn ON the power again.
 Turning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)

D9 nn Error (nn: 2-digit alphanumeric)

An abnormality has occurred in the machine, resulting in malfunction.

Shut down the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more, and turn ON the power again.
 CTurning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)

Data receiving error.

When you are using a printer driver other than the supplied one, [Dedicated Port Authentication Method] of the Remote UI is set to [Mode 2].

- When you are using a printer driver that allows you to select the authentication mode for Department ID Management and Secured Print, select Mode 2.
- When you are using a printer driver that does not allow you to select the authentication mode, set [Dedicated Port Authentication Method] of the Remote UI to [Mode 1].

Log on to the Remote UI in Management Mode (**Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**) [Settings/ Registration] [Network] [Dedicated Port Settings] [Edit] Select [Mode 1] in [Authentication Method] [OK] Perform a hard reset (**Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)**)

NOTE

Pressing () cancels the print job.

E001-nnnn (n: Number)

An error has occurred in the fixing unit.

• Write down the error code, hold down the power switch for 5 seconds or more to turn OFF the power, unplug the power plug from the AC outlet, and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

IMPORTANT

Do not turn ON the power

• When this message appears, never turn ON the power after turning it OFF.

E003-nnnn (n: Number)

An error has occurred in the fixing unit.

• Write down the error code, hold down the power switch for 5 seconds or more to turn OFF the power, unplug the power plug from the AC outlet, and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

IMPORTANT

Do not turn ON the power

• When this message appears, never turn ON the power after turning it OFF.

E004-nnnn (n: Number)

An error has occurred in the fixing unit.

• Write down the error code, hold down the power switch for 5 seconds or more to turn OFF the power, unplug the power plug from the AC outlet, and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

IMPORTANT

Do not turn ON the power

• When this message appears, never turn ON the power after turning it OFF.

EM E-Mail access error.

Connection was unable to be established due to an error on the SD card.

• The SD card may be broken. Replace the SD card with a new one.

EM POP3 server error.

The machine could not connect to the POP3 server during E-Mail Print or the POP3 server settings are not configured properly.

• Use the Remote UI or Network Status Print to check the error information.

Checking Error Information(P. 345)

Ennn-nnnn (n: Number)

An error has occurred in an internal mechanism of the machine.

- Hold down the power switch for 5 seconds or more to turn OFF the power, wait for 10 seconds or more, and turn ON the power again.
- If the machine does not operate normally even after the power is turned ON again, write down the error code, hold down the power switch for 5 seconds or more to turn OFF the power, unplug the power plug from the AC outlet, and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

Error. Non-Canon cart. not cov'd by warranty.

A toner cartridge may not be installed correctly or may be faulty.

• Re-install the toner cartridge. If re-installing the toner cartridge fails to clear the error message, the toner cartridge may be faulty. Contact the store where you purchased the toner cartridge or consult the Canon Customer Help Center.

CHow to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524)

The toner cartridge used may not be a genuine Canon product.

Only genuine Canon toner cartridges should be used as replacement toner cartridges.
 Consumables(P. 573)

Error. Non-Canon cart. not covered by warranty.

A toner cartridge may not be installed correctly or may be faulty.

• Re-install the toner cartridge. If re-installing the toner cartridge fails to clear the error message, the toner cartridge may be faulty. Contact the store where you purchased the toner cartridge or consult the Canon Customer Help Center.

OHow to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524)

The toner cartridge used may not be a genuine Canon product.

Only genuine Canon toner cartridges should be used as replacement toner cartridges.
 Consumables(P. 573)

Google Cloud Print not avail. Server auth err

Server authentication for Cloud Print failed. Or, acquisition of information for registration failed.

Check whether the date and time settings are correctly specified.
 Date/Time Settings(P. 367)

The CA certificate does not exist or has become invalid. Or the CA certificate has expired.

Check whether the CA certificate settings are correct.
 Verifying Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 329)

Google Cloud Print not avail. Server comm err

Cloud Print is unavailable due to an error.

Check whether the machine is correctly connected to a wired LAN.
 Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 185)

- A port that is used for Cloud Print may be blocked by a firewall or other protection. Check whether the 5222 port is available with your computer.
- If a proxy server is used on the network, check whether the proxy settings on the machine and the server are correct. For details, contact your Network Administrator.
 Setting a Proxy(P. 274)

IE An unknown error has occurred.

An error with an unidentified cause has occurred during IEEE802.1X authentication.

Perform a hard reset or restart the machine.
 Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)

IE Cannot analyze the certificate.

Analysis of the certificate received from the authentication server has failed during IEEE802.1X authentication.

• Check the certificate of the authentication server.

IE Change the password.

The password used for IEEE802.1X authentication has expired.

• Change the password registered in the authentication server, and update the password for IEEE802.1X authentication.

Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication(P. 309)

IE Check auth. settings

The IEEE802.1X authentication method differs between the machine and the authentication server.

Select the correct IEEE802.1X authentication method.
 Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication(P. 309)

IE No reply from the destination.

An error has occurred during communication for IEEE802.1X authentication with the authentication server.

• Check whether the LAN cable is securely connected.

IE Set necessary authentication info.

The information specified for IEEE802.1X authentication is not sufficient.

Check the IEEE802.1X settings, and specify the settings properly.
 Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication(P. 309)

IE Set the correct authentication info.

An error has been returned from the authentication server because the certificate to be used for IEEE802.1X authentication is not specified or it is invalid.

• The certificate to be used for TLS authentication is not specified or it is invalid. Check the certificate, and specify the valid certificate.

Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication(P. 309)

• If the certificate in the machine is valid, check the CA certificate of the authentication server.

The login name to be used for IEEE802.1X authentication is not specified.

• The login name to be used for IEEE802.1X authentication is not specified. Specify the login name.

IE The certificate has expired.

The certificate received from the authentication server has been found to have expired during IEEE802.1X authentication.

- Check the certificate of the authentication server.
- Check the time settings in the machine and authentication server.
 Date/Time Settings(P. 367)

IE The certificate is incorrect.

An error has occurred as a result of verification of the certificate received from the authentication server by using the CA certificate during IEEE802.1X authentication.

- Check the certificate of the authentication server.
- Install the CA certificate in the machine.
 Ousing CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 326)

IEEE802.1X error. Set the necessary auth. information.

The information specified for IEEE802.1X authentication is not sufficient.

Check the IEEE802.1X settings, and specify the settings properly.
 Configuring IEEE 802.1X Authentication(P. 309)

Image browse data error.

The TIFF data contains data that the machine cannot process while receiving.

- Set <TIFF Spooler> to <On>, and print the file again. If the file size exceeds 40 MB, install an SD card.
 TIFF Spooler(P. 427)
 Installing an SD Card(P. 583)
- Because the data cannot be printed, press () to cancel the print job.

Image data error.

The TIFF or JPEG data contains data that is not available for the machine.

• Because the data cannot be printed, press () to cancel the print job.

Insert toner cartridge.

The toner cartridge is not set or properly set.

Properly set the toner cartridge.
 CHow to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524)

Key management file is corrupt or deleted.

Files related to key management are damaged.

Restart the machine, regenerate or reinstall the key and certificate, and then specify the TLS settings.
 Curning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)

Specifying the TLS Encrypted Communication (P. 251) Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates(P. 315)

NOTE

• While this error message is displayed, the machine cannot be connected from the Remote UI until it is restarted.

Load paper.

The paper of the size specified to print is not loaded in the paper source.

- Load the appropriate paper in the selected paper source.
 Coading Paper(P. 37)
- Select the paper source loaded with the paper of the size specified to print or of a size larger than that.
 Paper Source(P. 453)

No Paper: Drawer N (N=1 to 5)

Paper is not loaded in the paper drawer.

As the specified paper size and type are displayed, load appropriate paper.
 CLoading Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 39)

Non-Canon cart. not covered by warranty.

A toner cartridge may be set that cannot guarantee print quality because it has reached the end of its lifetime or for other reasons.

Replacing the toner cartridge with a new one is recommended.
 Cartridges(P. 521)

The toner cartridge used may not be a genuine Canon product.

Only genuine Canon toner cartridges should be used as replacement toner cartridges.
 Consumables(P. 573)

IMPORTANT

• You can continue printing when this message is displayed, but the print quality may deteriorate. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.

Not enough display list memory.

The available memory space is insufficient for the processing and an overflow has occurred.

- Perform a hard reset, and print the file again.
 Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)
- You can press ((continue printing. However, the data that overflowed is not registered.

Not enough download memory.

Memory for registering the overlay form and external characters is insufficient and has overflowed.

• Perform a hard reset, and print the file again.

Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)

Not enough memory for PDF processing.

Memory for processing the PDF file is insufficient.

• Optimize the PDF file to reduce its size or retry printing after dividing the file.

NOTE

- If you tried USB Direct Print or Direct Print, printing may be properly performed when it is restarted from the printer driver.
- To remove the error message, perform a soft reset to cancel the print job. **Osoft Reset(P. 451)**

Not enough memory for XPS processing.

Memory for XPS processing is insufficient.

- When the XPS file contains a ProgressiveJpeg image or the like, convert the image to a TIFF or BaselineJPEG format, and print the file again.
- You can press ((continue printing. However, the output result of pages with errors is not guaranteed.

Not enough spool memory.

Printing an excessive amount of data has been attempted.

- Specify the reduced paper size, and print the file again.
- Set <Image Refinement> to <Off>, and print the file again.
 CImage Refinement(P. 400)
- Set <2-Sided Printing> to <Off>, and print the file again.
 2-Sided Printing(P. 459)
- Change the <Halftones> setting, and print the file again.
 CHalftones(P. 400)

Not enough system memory.

Memory for data processing (mainly, graphics and characters) in the system is insufficient.

- Perform a hard reset, and print the file again.
 Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)
- You can press ((continue printing. However, graphics or characters with the error cannot be printed properly.

Not enough work memory.

Memory dedicated to each print mode is insufficient.

Perform a hard reset, and print the file again.
 Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)

• You can press () to continue printing. However, data with errors cannot be printed properly.

NOTE

Registered Data

 If you press ((continue printing, the data such as registered overlay or macros may be deleted.

NW Competing IP add. found on the network.

The IPv4 address set for the machine is a duplication of that for another host on the network.

Set a proper IPv4 address for the machine, and restart the machine.
 Setting IPv4 Address(P. 188)

NW IP address updated. Turn main power OFF/ON

The IP address has been changed when the machine was operating or a quick start was performed.

- Perform a hard reset or restart the machine.
 Performing a Hard Reset(P. 451)
- Fix the IP address assigned to the machine in the DHCP server.
 Setting IP Addresses(P. 187)

Paper is jammed.

Paper jams have occurred inside the machine.

Do not forcibly pull out the jammed paper, but follow the procedure described in the manual.
 Clearing Jams(P. 463)

PDF error.

Printing the PDF data that is not available for the machine has been attempted.

• Use the PDF data in the format supported by the machine.

NOTE

- The machine supports the PDF version 1.7.
- To remove the error message, perform a soft reset to cancel the print job. **Osoft Reset(P. 451)**

PDF font error.

The PDF data contains fonts that are not available for the machine.

• Use the PDF data in the format supported by the machine.

NOTE

• To remove the error message, perform a soft reset to cancel the print job. **Osoft Reset(P. 451)**

PDF print range error.

An invalid range of pages has been specified for printing.

Specify the correct range of print pages, and print the file again.
 Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)(P. 120)
 Print Settings for Direct Print(P. 150)

Prepare maintenance kit.

The fixing unit, feeder rollers, or the like have reached the end of their lifetime.

Replacing the fixing unit, feeder rollers, or the like with those included in a new maintenance kit is recommended.
 Consumable Parts(P. 574)

IMPORTANT

• You can continue printing when this message is displayed, but the print quality may deteriorate.

Print data version error.

Printing has been tried from the printer driver that is not available for the machine.

• Print again by using the printer driver available for this machine.

Set below paper.

Paper of the size specified to print is not loaded or the selected paper source does not match the paper size.

- Load the paper of the size specified to print in the selected paper source.
 CLoading Paper(P. 37)
- Select the paper source loaded with the paper of the size specified to print.
 Paper Source(P. 453)
- To forcibly print on the loaded paper, press (). For the multi-purpose tray, the setting specified for <MP Tray Paper Size> is automatically changed to the paper size of the print data.

Starting up... 80 Initializing MEAP. Do not turn power OFF.

You have tried to shut down the machine while MEAP was being initialized.

• When the MEAP initialization is complete, this message is automatically removed. Wait until the message is removed.

Starting up... 80 Preparing MEAP... Do not turn power OFF.

You have tried to shut down the machine while MEAP was preparing for operation.

• When MEAP is ready for operation, this message is automatically removed. Wait until the message is removed.

Syntax error.

Invalid data has been sent during printing with the UFR II printer driver.

• Change the printer driver settings or the format of print data, and print the file again.

NOTE

• When you press (), the print job is canceled.

Toner cartridge will soon reach end of lifetime.

The replacement time for the toner cartridge is near.

- Make sure that you have a replacement toner cartridge ready.
- Replace the toner cartridge if you see this message before you start to print a large job.
 CReplacing Toner Cartridges(P. 521)

Turn OFF main power. Check options.

The duplex unit or an optional accessory * is not properly installed.

• Shut down the machine, properly install the duplex unit or optional accessory, and then turn ON the power.

CTurning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)

The duplex unit or an optional accessory * has been detached when the machine is ON.

• Shut down the machine, properly install the duplex unit or optional accessory, and then turn ON the power.

OTurning ON/OFF the Power(P. 33)

The connection part of the duplex unit or an optional accessory * has a contact failure.

• Shut down the machine, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet, and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

OTurning OFF the Power (Performing a Shutdown)(P. 33)

* Paper Feeder, Paper Deck, Envelope Feeder

XPS document data error. >>> 🏢

XPS data is damaged.

• Check that XPS data is not damaged and that the XPS data format is supported by the machine, and then try printing the document again.

A large file has been sent by Direct Print.

- Optimize the XPS file to reduce its size or retry printing after dividing the file.
- Install the SD card, and then resend the data to the machine.
 Installing an SD Card(P. 583)
- Send the data from the USB memory device to the machine.
 Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)(P. 120)

NOTE

• When you press ((), the print job is canceled.

XPS font data error. 🕨 🏢

Font data analysis has failed.

- Replace the font data in the XPS file, and try printing the file again.
- You can press () to continue printing. However, characters with errors are not printed.

XPS image data error. 🕨 🏢

Image data is damaged.

- Replace the image data in the XPS file, and try printing the file again.

XPS page data error. 🕨 📗

A page cannot be generated due to an invalid description.

- Check the description of the page with the error, and try printing the file again.
- You can press ((continue printing. However, pages with errors are not printed.

XPS print range error. 🕨 🏢

There is no page that can be processed in the specified print range.

Specify the correct range of print pages, and try printing the file again.
 Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)(P. 120)
 Print Settings for Direct Print(P. 150)

NOTE

• When you press ((), the print job is canceled.

XPS rendering error.

An error has occurred in the XPS rendering system.

• Contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

XPS unsupported image error.

Unprintable images (HD Photo) are contained in the data.

- Convert the image data in the XPS file to other data format, and try printing the file again.

Common Problems

0X7U-068

If you encounter problems when using the machine, check the items in this section before contacting us. If the problems persist, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

Check the Following

→ Is the machine turned ON? Is the power cord connected?

• If **(()** and the display of the operation panel are in the off state, it indicates that a quick turn-OFF has been performed or the machine has not been turned ON. If the machine does not respond when you press the power switch, check whether the power cord is connected correctly, and press the power switch again. For power cord connection, see "Getting Started".

Operation Panel(P. 24)

OManuals Included with the Machine(P. 587)

→ Are the LAN cable and USB cable connected correctly?

Check whether these cables are connected correctly.
 Parts and Their Functions(P. 16)

→ Is sleep mode activated?

If you leave the machine unattended for a specific period of time, it enters sleep mode for power conservation, not allowing you to operate it.
 To cancel sleep mode, press

→ Is any message displayed on the screen?

If a problem occurs, a message is displayed.
 When an Error Message Appears(P. 480)

If a problem persists even after checking

Click the link that corresponds to the problem.

Installation/Settings Problems(P. 498)
 Printing Problems(P. 501)

Troubleshooting

Installation/Settings Problems

0X7U-069

See **Common Problems(P. 497)** also.

Problems with the Wired LAN Connection(P. 498)
 Problem with the USB Connection(P. 499)
 Problem with the Print Server(P. 499)
 Machine Problem(P. 499)

Problems with the Wired LAN Connection

Remote UI is not displayed.

- Are <HTTP> and <Remote UI> set to <On>?
 - Disabling HTTP Communication(P. 288)
 Disabling Remote UI(P. 289)
- Check whether the LAN cable is connected properly and the IP address is set correctly, and then start the Remote UI again.

Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 185)Network Status Print(P. 536)

- Are you using a proxy server? If so, add the machine's IP address to the [Exceptions] list (addresses that do not use the proxy server) in the Web browser's proxy settings dialog.
- Is the computer communication restricted by firewalls? Use the operation panel to set <Address Filter> to <Off>.

Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls(P. 264)
 Address Filter(P. 392)

The LNK indicator is Off. Back Side(P. 19)

- Use a straight-through Ethernet cable for the wired LAN connection.
- Check that the hub or router is turned ON.
- Do not connect the cable to the UP-LINK (cascade) port of the hub.
- Change the LAN cable.

A connection to a network cannot be established.

• Is <Network> under <Interface Selection> set to <On>?

Interface Selection(P. 403)

• The IP address may not be set correctly. Set the IP address again.

Setting IP Addresses(P. 187)

• If you are using an IPv4 address, specify the fixed IP address.

Setting IPv4 Address(P. 188)

You are unsure of the set IP address.

• Check by using Network Status Print.

Problem with the USB Connection

Cannot communicate.

• Is <USB> under <Interface Selection> set to <On>?

OInterface Selection(P. 403)

- Change the USB cable. If you are using a long USB cable, replace it with a short one.
- If you are using a USB hub, connect the machine directly to your computer using a USB cable.

The machine cannot be correctly detected from a computer.

Does the setting of <USB-Connected PC OS> under <Control Menu> match the OS of your computer?
 ©USB-Connected PC OS(P. 370)

Problem with the Print Server

You cannot find the print server to connect to.

- Are the print server and computer connected correctly?
- Is the print server running?
- Do you have user rights to connect to the print server? If you are not sure, contact the server administrator.
- Is [Network discovery] enabled? (Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012)

Enabling [Network discovery](P. 615)

You cannot connect to a shared printer.

• On the network, does the machine appear among the printers of the print server? If it is not displayed, contact the network or server administrator.

ODisplaying Shared Printers in the Print Server(P. 616)

Machine Problem

No menus are displayed.

• Is the machine offline? The Utility menu and Job menu are available in online mode. **Online key(P. 25)**

The operation panel keys do not work.

- Is the [->] indicator lit? In this case, print data remains in memory. If the remaining data is not printed even after a while, select <Form Feed> in the Reset menu.
 Form Feed(P. 452)
- If <Key locked.> appears on the display, the key lock function is active. Contact the administrator of the machine or disable the key lock function from the Remote UI.
 CRestricting Operation Panel Functions(P. 285)

Troubleshooting

• If you cannot perform any operation, hold down the power switch for 5 seconds or more to turn OFF the power. When turning ON the power, wait for 10 seconds or more after **(C)** indicator is turned OFF, and then press the power switch.

No SD card can be used.

- Is <SD Card> set to <Off>? Select <On>.
 SD Card(P. 369)
- Is the SD card write-protected?

Shut down the machine, and check whether the SD card is write-protected. If the card is write-protected, unlock the card, and again install it on the machine. **Installing an SD Card(P. 583)**

Printing Problems

0X7U-06A

See **Common Problems(P. 497)** also.

Printing results are not satisfactory. Paper creases or curls.

When You Cannot Print Properly(P. 503)

You cannot print.

Check the Following.

Reset Menu(P. 451)

• Is () lit? If it is not lit, press () to set the machine to online.

Online key(P. 25)

• Can you print by Status Print or Network Status Print? If you can print, the machine has no problem. Check the configured network and computer settings.

Printing Reports and Lists(P. 536)

• Can you print a Windows test page? If you can print a Windows test page, there is no problem with the machine or the printer driver. Check the print settings of your application.

OPrinting a Test Page in Windows(P. 617)

If the problems persist, check the items that suit your operational environment.

- Wired LAN connection
- Have you selected the correct port?

Checking the Printer Port(P. 618)

If the correct port is selected, click [Configure Port] of the [Ports] tab to check that the setting specified for [Printer Name or IP Address] matches that configured in the machine.

If there is no port to use or the IP address of the machine is changed, generate a port by following the procedure for changing the standard TCP/IP port described in the Printer Driver Installation Guide.

• Is the computer communication restricted by firewalls? Use the operation panel to set <Address Filter> to <Off>.

Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls(P. 264)

CAddress Filter(P. 392)

- Disable security software and other resident software.
- By following the procedure for changing the standard TCP/IP port described in the Printer Driver Installation Guide, change the print protocol to LPD and enable LRP Byte Counting.
- Reinstall the printer driver in accordance with the Printer Driver Installation Guide.
- Can you print from other computers on the network? If you also cannot print from other computers, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

NOTE:

If you are using the SMB network

• Are the SMB settings configured correctly? In particular, check that the DHCP server and WINS server are connected properly if you are using them. **Configuring SMB(P. 242)**

Troubleshooting

- If the SMB settings are correctly configured, set a time value slightly longer than usual in <Wait Time at Startup>. Setting a Wait Time for Connecting to a Network(P. 219)
 - USB connection
- Have you selected the correct port? If there is no port to use or you are not sure, reinstall the printer driver in accordance with the Printer Driver Installation Guide. When you reinstall the printer driver, the correct port is created automatically.

Checking the Printer Port(P. 618)

• Is bidirectional communication enabled? Enable bidirectional communication, and restart the computer.

Checking Bidirectional Communication(P. 619)

- Disable security software and other resident software.
- Connect to another USB port on the computer.
- Can you print from a USB connection to another computer? If you also cannot print from other computers, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

Via print server

• Can you print from the print server? If you can print from the print server, check the connection between the print server and your computer.

OProblem with the Print Server(P. 499)

- Disable security software and other resident software.
- Reinstall the printer driver in accordance with the Printer Driver Installation Guide.
- Can you print from other computers via the print server? If you also cannot print from other computers, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

You cannot print with Google Cloud Print.

Ousing Google Cloud Print(P. 176)

It takes a long time before printing starts.

• Did you print to narrow width paper? After you print to narrow width paper, the machine may cool itself to maintain the print quality. As a result, it may take some time before the next job is printed. Wait until the machine is ready to print. Printing will resume when the temperature inside the machine has fallen.

A blank sheet is output (nothing is printed).

• Did you pull the sealing tape out when loading the toner cartridge? If you did not pull it out, remove the toner cartridge, pull the sealing tape out, and reload the toner cartridge.

CHow to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524)

Printing has stopped halfway.

• Is the [�] indicator lit? If it is lit, the machine has not received a command for the print data end. If the printing is not resumed even after a while, select <Form Feed> in the Reset menu.

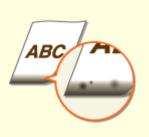
CForm Feed(P. 452)

• If you cannot perform any operation, hold down the power switch for 5 seconds or more to turn OFF the power. Wait for 10 seconds or more after you have turned OFF the power, then turn it ON again and retry printing.

When You Cannot Print Properly

0X7U-06C

If printing results are not satisfactory, or paper creases or curls, try the following solutions. If the problems persist, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.



Smudge Marks Appear on the Bottom Edge of Printouts(P. 505)



Smudges Appear on Printouts(P. 505)



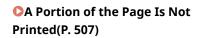
Toner Smudges and Splatters Appear(P. 506)





OAfterimages Appear in Blank Areas(P. 506)

Printouts Are Faded(P. 507)





Streaks Appear/Printing is Uneven(P. 508)



OWhite Spots Appear(P. 508)



Black Spots Appear(P. 509)

Troubleshooting



504

Printing Results Are Not Satisfactory

0X7U-06E

Dirt inside the machine may affect printing results. Perform care and cleaning to the machine first. Cleaning the Machine(P. 518)

Smudge Marks Appear on the Bottom Edge of Printouts



→ Are you using appropriate paper?

• Check the supported paper types and replace with an appropriate type. Also, specify the paper size and type settings properly.

Paper(P. 569)

Loading Paper(P. 37)

Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 60)

→ Do you print data without margins?

• This symptom occurs if a margin is set to none in the printer driver. The marginal areas within the first 5 mm from the respective edges of paper are not printable (for envelopes, the top and bottom marginal areas within the first 10 mm from the top/bottom edge are not printable). Make sure to have margins around the document to print.

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Expand Print Region and Print] > [Off]

Smudges Appear on Printouts



→ Are you using appropriate paper?

• Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.

Paper(P. 569)

```
Loading Paper(P. 37)
```

→ Do streaks appear on printouts depending on the paper type or the operating

environment?

• Change the setting for <Special Print Mode A>. The improvement effect is weakest with <Mode 1> and strongest with <Mode 4>. Try the adjustment starting with <Mode 1>.

Special Print Mode A(P. 409)

NOTE:

- This item cannot be set when <Barcode Adj. Mode> is set to one of <Mode 1> to <Mode 4>.
- Print density will be lighter when you select stronger improvement. It may also result in less sharp edges and rougher details.
- If you set this item to <Mode 3> or <Mode 4>, the printing speed becomes slower.

Toner Smudges and Splatters Appear



→ Are you using appropriate paper?

Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.
Paper(P. 569)
Loading Paper(P. 37)

Afterimages Appear in Blank Areas



→ Are you using appropriate paper?

• Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.

Paper(P. 569)

Loading Paper(P. 37)

→ Is it time to replace the toner cartridge?

• Materials inside the toner cartridge may have deteriorated. Replace the toner cartridge.

OHow to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524)

Printouts Are Faded



➔ Is the amount remaining in toner cartridge running low?

- Check how much toner is left, and replace the toner cartridge as necessary.
- Replacing Toner Cartridges(P. 521)

→ Are you using appropriate paper?

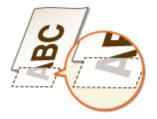
• Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper. Also, specify the paper size and type settings properly.

Paper(P. 569)

Loading Paper(P. 37)

Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 60)

A Portion of the Page Is Not Printed



→ Do the paper guides align with the edges of the paper?

- If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, part of a document may not be printed.
- Loading Paper(P. 37)

→ Do you print data without margins?

• This symptom occurs if a margin is set to none in the printer driver. The marginal areas within the first 5 mm from the respective edges of paper are not printable (for envelopes, the top and bottom marginal areas within the first 10 mm from the top/bottom edge are not printable). Make sure to have margins around the document to print.

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Expand Print Region and Print] > [Off]

→ Are you using custom size paper loaded in correct orientation?

- Load the custom size paper in portrait orientation when you print without using the UFR II printer driver.
- Load the custom size paper in landscape orientation if the following conditions are met when you are using the UFR II printer driver.

P	Paper Size in Select Feeder Menu	<free size=""></free>
L	oaded Paper	Long edge length is 215.9 mm or less.

Streaks Appear/Printing is Uneven



→ Have you cleaned the fixing unit?

- Clean the fixing unit.
- **C**Fixing Unit(P. 520)

→ Is the amount remaining in toner cartridge running low?

• Check how much toner is left, and replace the toner cartridge as necessary.

OReplacing Toner Cartridges(P. 521)

→ Is it time to replace the toner cartridge?

Materials inside the toner cartridge may have deteriorated. Replace the toner cartridge.
 CHow to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524)

White Spots Appear



→ Are you using paper that has absorbed moisture?

- Replace with appropriate paper.
- Loading Paper(P. 37)

→ Are you using appropriate paper?

• Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.

- **Paper(P. 569)**
- Loading Paper(P. 37)

→ Is it time to replace the toner cartridge?

- Materials inside the toner cartridge may have deteriorated. Replace the toner cartridge.
- OHow to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524)

Black Spots Appear



→ Have you cleaned the fixing unit?

Clean the fixing unit.**Fixing Unit(P. 520)**

Reverse Side of Paper is Smudged



→ Have you loaded paper that is smaller than the size of the print data?

• Check to make sure that the paper size matches the size of the print data.

→ Have you cleaned the fixing unit?

Clean the fixing unit.
Fixing Unit(P. 520)

Printed Barcode Cannot Be Read



→ Are you using a small barcode or a barcode consisting of thick lines?

- Enlarge the barcode.
- If the direction of lines in the barcode is perpendicular to the paper output direction, turn the image 90 degrees to make the lines parallel to the paper output direction.
- If the problem persists even after performing the above operation, change the mode by using [Barcode Adjustment Mode]. The improvement effect is weakest with [Mode 1] and strongest with [Mode 4]. Try the adjustment starting with [Mode 1].

Setting in the Printer Driver

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Barcode Adjustment Mode] > Select the mode

Specifying Settings in the Setting Menu of the Operation Panel

Barcode Adj. Mode(P. 411)

NOTE:

- Print density will be lighter when you select stronger improvement.
- When printing from the computer, the setting in the printer driver takes precedence. When the setting of [Graphics Mode] in the printer driver is changed to [UFR II Mode] and [Barcode Adjustment Mode] is changed to [Printer Default], the setting in the operation panel takes precedence.
- When you set <Barcode Adj. Mode> to one of <Mode 1> to <Mode 4>, <Special Print Mode A> is automatically set to <Off>.

Troubleshooting

Paper Creases or Curls

0X7U-06F

Paper Creases



→ Is paper loaded correctly?

If paper is not loaded below the load limit line or the load limit guide or is loaded obliquely, it may crease.
 CLoading Paper(P. 37)

→ Are you using paper that has absorbed moisture?

• Replace with appropriate paper.

Loading Paper(P. 37)

→ Are you using appropriate paper?

Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.
Paper(P. 569)
Loading Paper(P. 37)

Paper Curls



→ Are you using paper that has absorbed moisture?

- Replace with appropriate paper.
- Loading Paper(P. 37)
- When the current setting of the paper type is <Plain>, change it to <Plain L>

Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 60)

→ Are you using appropriate paper?

• Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper. Also, specify the paper size and type settings properly.

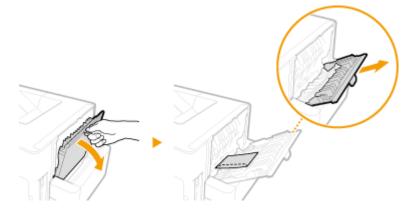
Paper(P. 569)

CLoading Paper(P. 37)

Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 60)

→ Do you output printouts to the output tray?

• If printouts of envelopes curl, output them to the sub-output tray on the back side of the machine.



Troubleshooting

Paper Is Fed Incorrectly

0X7U-06H

Paper Is Not Fed/Two or More Sheets Are Fed Together



→ Is paper loaded correctly?

- Fan the paper stack thoroughly so that paper is not stuck together.
- Check whether paper is loaded correctly.

Loading Paper(P. 37)

• Check whether the number of sheets of paper loaded is appropriate and whether the appropriate paper is used.

Paper(P. 569)

CLoading Paper(P. 37)

• Check whether mixed sizes and types of paper are loaded together.

Printouts Are Skewed



→ Do the paper guides align with the edges of the paper?

If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, the printouts are skewed.
>Loading Paper(P. 37)

When a Problem Cannot Be Solved

0X7U-06J

If you cannot solve a problem by referring to the information in this chapter, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

IMPORTANT

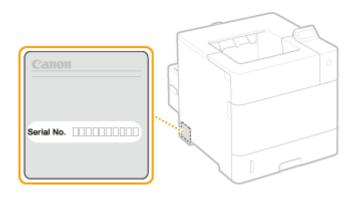
Do not disassemble or repair the machine yourself

• If you disassemble or repair the machine yourself, it may not be covered by warranty.

When Contacting Canon

When contacting us, have the following information ready:

- Product name (LBP352x/LBP351x)
- Dealer where you purchased the machine
- Details about your problem (such as what you did, what happened as a result, and displayed messages)
- Serial number (10 alphanumeric characters long, found on the label on the back side of the machine)



NOTE

Checking the serial number from the operation panel You can also check by \triangleleft (\mathbb{P}/\mathbb{P}) > <Serial Number>.

laintenance	516
Cleaning the Machine	518
Exterior	519
Fixing Unit	520
Replacing Toner Cartridges	521
How to Replace Toner Cartridges	524
Relocating the Machine	527
Maintaining and Improving Print Quality	529
Adjusting Print Density	530
Adjusting Print Position	532
Printing Reports and Lists	536
Viewing the Counter Value	545
Checking Consumables	548
Initializing Settings	550
Initializing Menu	551
Initializing the Network Settings	552

0X7U-06K

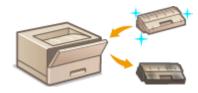
This chapter describes upkeep of the machine, including how to clean the machine and initialize settings.

Basic Cleaning OCleaning the Machine(P. 518)



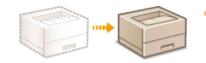
- The machine becomes dirty, see **Exterior(P. 519)** .
- Black spots appear on printouts, see **Sixing Unit(P. 520)** .

Replacing Toner Cartridges



- If you want to check the remaining toner level, see **Replacing Toner** Cartridges(P. 521) .
- How to replace toner cartridges, see How to Replace Toner
 Cartridges(P. 524) .

Relocating the Machine



Relocating the machine for maintenance or an office move, see **Relocating** the Machine(P. 527) .

Managing Print Quality OMaintaining and Improving Print Quality(P. 529)

- If you want to adjust the toner density to be used for printing, see **Adjusting Print Density(P. 530)**.
- If you want to adjust the print position, see **OAdjusting Print Position(P. 532)** .

Printing Reports and Lists



Printing out lists of settings or the like , see OPrinting Reports and Lists(P. 536) .

Checking the Total Pages Printed by the Machine

If you want to check the total page number of printouts , see **Viewing the Counter Value(P. 545)** .

Initializing Settings

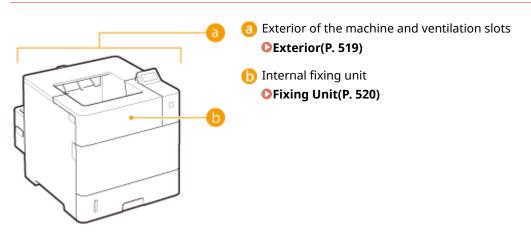
If you want to restore the settings, see **OInitializing Settings(P. 550)** .

Cleaning the Machine

0X7U-06L

Regularly clean the machine to prevent deterioration in printing quality and to ensure that you use it safely and easily. Carefully read the safety instructions before you start cleaning. **OMaintenance and Inspections(P. 9)**

Where to Clean



Exterior

Regularly wipe the exterior of the machine, especially around the ventilation slots, to keep the machine in good condition.

Turn OFF the machine, and unplug the power cord from the AC power outlet.

• When you turn OFF the power, shut down the machine from the operation panel without using the power switch. **Curning OFF the Power (Performing a Shutdown)(P. 33)**

2 Clean the exterior of the machine and the ventilation slots.

- Use a soft, well-wrung-out cloth dampened with water or a mild detergent diluted with water.
- To locate the ventilation slots, see **OFront Side(P. 17)** and **OBack Side(P. 19)**.



- **3** Wait for the exterior of machine to dry completely.
- **4** Reconnect the power cord and turn ON the machine.

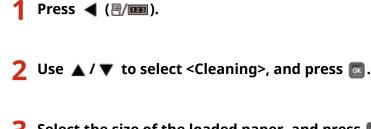
Fixing Unit

0X7U-06S

Dirt may adhere to the fixing unit inside the machine and cause black spots to appear on printouts. To clean the fixing unit, perform the following procedure. Note that you cannot clean the fixing unit when the machine has documents waiting to be printed. Note that cleaning the fixing unit requires A4 or Letter size paper with a weight of 60 to 120 g/m². Set the paper in the multi-purpose tray before performing the following procedure.

NOTE

 Cleaning consumes the toner cartridge. Make sure that there is sufficient toner cartridge remaining beforehand. OChecking the Amount Remaining in the Toner Cartridge(P. 522)



 $\mathbf{3}$ Select the size of the loaded paper, and press \mathbf{a} .

4 Select <Yes>, and press



The <Set cleaning paper and press the Online key.> message appears on the display.



The cleaning paper is slowly fed into the machine and the cleaning of the fixing unit starts.



• You cannot stop the cleaning halfway. Wait until the cleaning is completed (approx. 165 seconds).

Replacing Toner Cartridges

0X7U-06U

The machine will display a message when a toner cartridge is nearly empty. Note that the print quality becomes poor if you continue printing without taking any action. You can check the amount remaining in the toner cartridge on the display.

When a Message Appear(P. 521)
 If Printouts are Poor in Quality(P. 522)
 Checking the Amount Remaining in the Toner Cartridge(P. 522)

When a Message Appear

Depending on which message is displayed, you will need to make sure that you have a replacement toner cartridge ready or replace the toner cartridge. **OHOW to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524) OCOnsumables(P. 573)**

<16 Tnr cart. will soon reach end of lifetime.>

<Toner cartridge will soon reach end of lifetime.>

This message notifies you that a toner cartridge needs to be replaced soon. Make sure that you have a replacement toner cartridge ready. Replace the toner cartridge if you see this message before you start to print a large job.

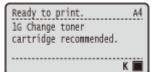
Ready to print. A4	Toner cartridge
16 Tnr cart. will soon	will soon reach
reach end of lifetime.	end of lifetime.
К	

NOTE

- When the <Toner cartridge will soon reach end of lifetime.> message is displayed, the printing is temporarily stopped. To resume the printing, press ().
- Which message is to be displayed depends on the <Warning Step> setting in the setting menu of the operation panel. **Warning Step(P. 364)**
- You can set any value as the percentage of the amount remaining in the toner cartridge that triggers this message. **©Spec Tnr Chk Timing(P. 414)**

<1G Change toner cartridge recommended.>

The toner cartridge has reached the end of its lifetime. It is recommended that you replace this cartridge with a new one.

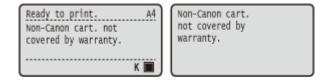


IMPORTANT

- You can continue printing when this message is displayed, but the print quality may deteriorate.
- Receiving e-mail and fax documents will be disabled. OPrinting Received E-mail (E-Mail Print) (P. 157)

<Non-Canon cart. not covered by warranty.>

This message notifies you that the machine may not print in optimum quality. It is recommended that you replace this cartridge with a new one.

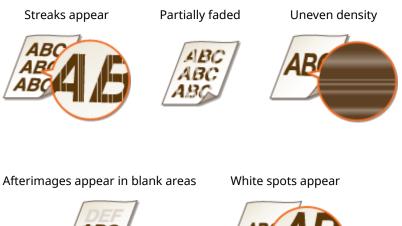


IMPORTANT

• You can continue printing when this message is displayed, but the print quality may deteriorate. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.

If Printouts are Poor in Quality

If your printouts begin to show any of the following features, one of your toner cartridges is consumed. Replace the nearly empty toner cartridge even if no message is displayed. **OHOW to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524)**

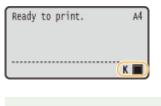


ABC



Checking the Amount Remaining in the Toner Cartridge

You can check the amount remaining in the toner cartridge on the main screen. It is recommended that you check the amount before you start to print a large job.



NOTE

- The displayed amount remaining in the toner cartridge can be used only as a guide and may differ from the actual amount.
- You can also check the amount with <Remaining Toner> under <Consumables Info.>. Consumables Info.?. Info.(P. 447)

LINKS

Consumables(P. 573)

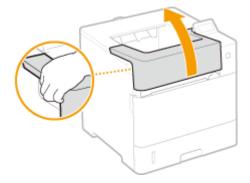
How to Replace Toner Cartridges

0X7U-06W

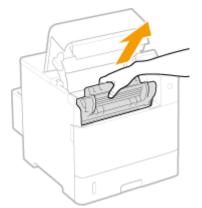
Read the precautions in **OMaintenance and Inspections(P. 9)** and **OCONSUMABLES(P. 10)** before replacing the toner cartridges.

Open the top cover.

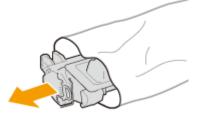
• Hold the handle on the left side, and open the top cover.



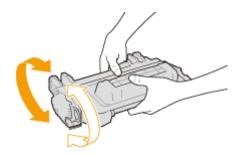
2 Remove the toner cartridge.



3 Remove the replacement toner cartridge from the protective bag.



4 Shake the toner cartridge five or six times as shown below to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge, and then place it on a flat surface.

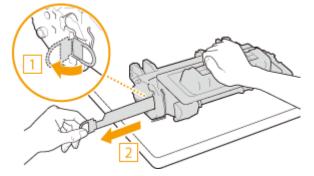


5 Remove the Packing Materials.



6 Pull the sealing tape straight out.

• The full length of the sealing tape is approximately 55 cm.

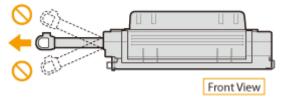


IMPORTANT:

When pulling out the sealing tape

If the sealing tape remains inside the toner cartridge, the quality of printouts may deteriorate.

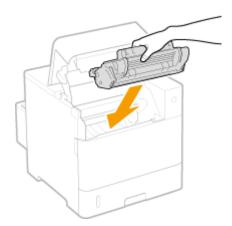
• Do not pull out the sealing tape at an angle or sideways. If the tape breaks, you may not be able to pull it out completely.



• If the sealing tape becomes stuck when pulling it out, keep pulling until it is completely removed.

7 Install the toner cartridge.

• Fully push it in until it cannot go any further.



Close the top cover.

Relocating the Machine

0X7U-06X

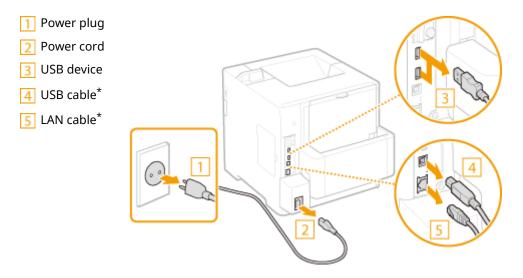
The machine is heavy. Make sure to follow the procedures below when moving the machine to avoid injury, and also make sure to read the safety precautions before you begin. **OIMPORTANT Safety Instructions(P. 2)**

Turn OFF the machine and computer.

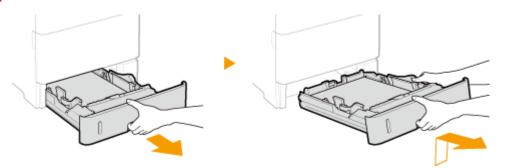
• When you turn OFF the power, be sure to shut down the machine from the operation panel without using the power switch. **Curning OFF the Power (Performing a Shutdown)(P. 33)**

2 Disconnect the cables and cord from the machine in numerical order as in the illustration below.

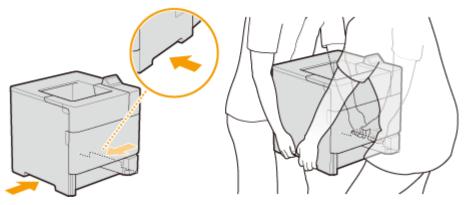
• Whether the cables with "*" are connected depends on your environment.



- When transporting the machine across a long distance, remove the toner cartridge.
 OHow to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524)
- **4** Pull out the paper drawer until it stops, and remove it while lifting the front side.



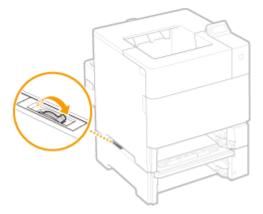
- **5** Close all the open covers, and move the machine to a new location.
- The machine is heavy (**OMachine Specifications(P. 566)**). Do not try hard to carry the machine.
- Use the handles on both sides of the machine, and have at least two people carry it.



IMPORTANT:

Be sure to hold the lift handles

- Do not move the machine by holding the duplex unit.
- If the optional paper feeder or paper deck is attached to the machine
- Unlock the paper feeder or paper deck before lifting the machine, and transport the paper feeder or paper deck separately.



- **6** Carefully place the machine at the new installation site.
 - For information about how to install the machine after relocating it, see Getting Started. **OManuals** Included with the Machine(P. 587)

Maintaining and Improving Print Quality

0X7U-06Y

When you cannot obtain a satisfactory print result, such as when the resulting print density or print position is different than expected, try the following adjustments.

Density Adjustment

Adjust the toner density. You can make fine adjustment of toner density by density level. **Adjusting Print Density(P. 530)**

Print Position Adjustment

For each paper source, you can adjust the print position. **OAdjusting Print Position(P. 532)**

Adjusting Print Density

0X7U-070

If the resulting print is darker or lighter than expected, you can adjust the toner density. You can make fine adjustment of the toner density by dividing the whole density range into three areas.

IMPORTANT

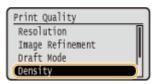
• If <Toner Save> is set to <On>, you cannot use this adjustment function. **OTONER Save(P. 400)**

1 Press ▶ (□☑).

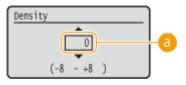
🤰 Use 🔺 / ▼ to select <Print Quality>, and press 🔤.

3 Adjust the density.

1 Select <Density>, and press 💽.



2 Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the density.



Density adjustment

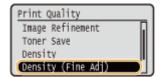
Set a "+" value to increase the density. Set a "-" value to decrease the density.

3 Press 🚾.

■Making fine adjustment of toner density by density level

You can make fine adjustment of toner density on three density levels - high, medium, and low.

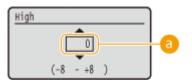
1 Select <Density (Fine Adj)>, and press 🚾.



2 Select the desired density level, and press 🚾.

Density	(Fine	Adj)	
High			
Medium			
LOW			

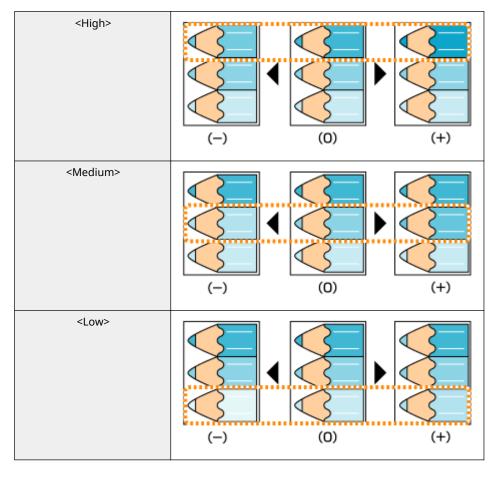
3 Use \blacktriangle / \blacktriangledown to adjust the density.



Density adjustment

Set a "+" value to increase the density. Set a "-" value to decrease the density.

Example adjustment of each density area



4 Press 💽.

• If you want to also make adjustments on other density levels, repeat the operations in steps 2 to 4.

Adjusting Print Position

If a document is printed off-center or out of the printable range, adjust the print position. You can adjust the print position for each paper source.

Step 1: Printing the Current Print Position(P. 532)
 Step 2: Checking the Direction and Distance to Adjust(P. 533)
 Step 3: Adjusting the Print Position for Each Paper Source(P. 534)

Step 1: Printing the Current Print Position

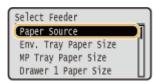
You can perform "Printing Position Adjustment Print" to check the direction and distance to adjust.

NOTE

• When you want to check the print position for 2-sided printing, set <2-Sided Printing> to <On> in the setting menu of the operation panel in advance. **2-Sided Printing(P. 459)**

Press 📰 (📳).

🤰 Use 🔺 / ▼ to select <Paper Source>, and press 🔤.



 \mathbf{R} Select the paper source for which you want to check the print position, and press \mathbf{R} .

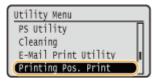
Paper Source	
Auto	П
Drawer 1	
Drawer 2	
Drawer 3	[]



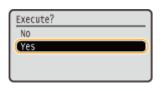
The screen returns to the main screen.



🔓 Select <Printing Pos. Print>, and press 🔤 .



🖊 Select <Yes>, and press 🔤.



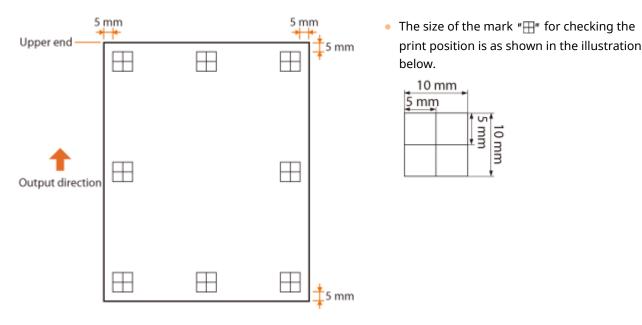
A printing position adjustment printout is output.

Step 2: Checking the Direction and Distance to Adjust

When Printing Position Adjustment Print is performed, the print position check marks " \square " are printed. Determine the direction and distance to adjust based on those marks. When the print position is normal, all the marks are printed at a position 5 mm from the nearest edge of the paper.

How to Check Printing Position Adjustment Printouts

The edge of paper that comes out first when the paper is output is the top of a Printing Position Adjustment Print. When you check the print position, make sure which edge of the paper is the top.



When the Print Position Is Off-Center

When the print position check marks are printed off the correct position, you need to adjust the print position. When you adjust the print position, specify the direction using "+" and "-" and the distance using "mm". Use "-" to shift the print position upward and "+" to shift it downward (vertical position correction). Use "-" to shift the print position leftward and "+" to shift it rightward (horizontal position correction).

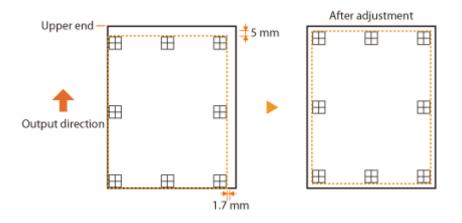
Vertical direction (<Offset Y>)

Horizontal direction (<Offset X>)

Maintenance

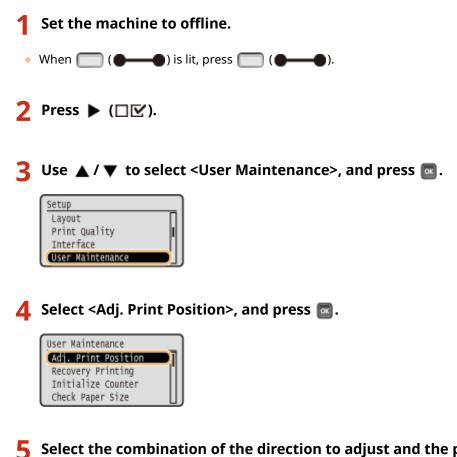


In the example shown below, to shift the print position 5 mm upward and 1.7 mm rightward, "-5.0 mm" is set in <Offset Y> and "+1.70 mm" is set in <Offset X>.



Step 3: Adjusting the Print Position for Each Paper Source

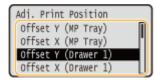
After you confirm the direction and distance to adjust, specify an adjusted print position. You can adjust the print position in the range of -5.0 to +5.0 mm in 0.1 mm increments in either direction: vertical and horizontal.



5 Select the combination of the direction to adjust and the paper source, and press \square .

Maintenance

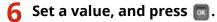
• You can use <Offset Y (2-Sided)> and <Offset X (2-Sided)> to adjust the print position on the first page (front side) in 2-sided printing mode regardless of the paper source.



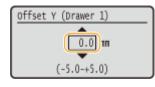
NOTE:

• The print position on the second page (back side) in 2-sided printing mode follows the settings for the available paper source. For example, the vertical print position for 2-sided printing from the multi-purpose tray is adjusted as shown below.

First page (front side)	<offset (2-sided)="" y=""> setting value</offset>
Second page (back side)	<offset (mp="" tray)="" y=""> setting value</offset>



● Based on the printout made by Printing Position Adjustment Print, use 🔺 / 🔻 to enter a value.



• To adjust another position or paper source, repeat steps 5 and 6.



The screen returns to the main screen.



The machine becomes online.

9 Perform the Printing Position Adjustment Print, and check the adjusted print position on the printout. **•** Step 1: Printing the Current Print Position(P. 532)

Adjusting all print positions

You can use <Offset Y> and <Offset X> in the setting menu of the operation panel to adjust the print positions for all types of printing regardless of the paper source. You can adjust the print position in the range of -50.0 to +50.0 mm in 0.5 mm increments in either direction: vertical and horizontal. **Offset Y/Offset X(P. 395)**

Printing Reports and Lists

You can check the condition of consumables and the machine settings by printing reports and lists.

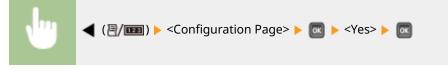
NOTE

Asterisks (*)

- Settings marked with "^{*1}" are not displayed depending on whether an optional SD card is installed on the machine.
- Settings marked with "*2" are not displayed when [Display Job Log] check box of the Remote UI is not selected. OHiding the Print Job History(P. 291)

Configuration Page

You can check the machine settings (**Setup Menu(P. 360)**), the contents registered in the machine, and other information in list form. The other information includes the amount of remaining toner, the number of printed pages, and the capacity of the memory (RAM) mounted on the machine. Setting items whose name is preceded by an asterisk (*) are the items whose setting was changed from the factory default.

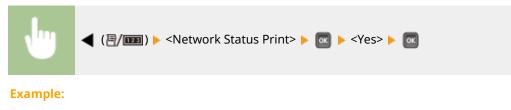


Example:

Canon	Configu	ration Page	
Main Controller Version DOON Version Font Version NAM Size Model	181.06/90 804.55 1.01.00 20086612 1024 MB	Animated Instruction Show Torac Gauge Set Comp. Notify Scrolling Speed	: On : On : J sec. : Stormal
Device Nonafacturer Product Name Display Name Serial Sumber	Carson	Paper Source Noter Source Nº Tray Poper Size Nº Tray Priority Drawer 1 Paper Size Standard Naper Size	: Auto : A4 : Off : A4 : A4
Controller UMN II PC5 PS	: Wer.02.030/01.092 : Wer.60.089.089 : Wer.3018.102	NF Tray for Mix Ppr. Auto Select Drawer Multi-Durpose Tray Downer 1 Default Paper Type NF Tray Paper Type	: Off : Une : Une : Flain : Flain
Network Version MAC Address USB	: 1.00 : d8:49:21:59:3d:6e	Drawer 1 Faper Type Manual 2-Sided (MP) 2-Sided Printing Select Draweri Model	: Plain : let Side : Off : Standard Drower
Verdor ID Product ID Serial Mumber	: 0x0489 : 0x2741 : d8492119305e : 058	Layout Number of Copies	1 3

Network Status Print

You can check the settings about the network configured in the machine (**Network(P. 375)**) in list form. The information about the security including the address filter settings and IPSec settings is also printed.



Canon	Network	Status Print	
Ethernet Driver Settings		HTTP Proxy Server Port Number	:80
Auto Detect	:On	Use Proxy Within Same Domain	
MAC Address	:d0:49:2119:3d:6e	Denne & these lighting	:Off
200.00 0.00-00		Proxy Authentication Multicast Discovery	206
TCP/IP Settings IPv4		Discovery Response	:On
Use Pv4	101	SNTP	
Use DHCP	01	SNTP	:01
Liss RARP	:01	NTP Server Name	1
Use BOOTP	.Off		
Auto IP	:0#	Sleep Mode Notification Settings	
DHCP Acquire DNS Host Name	:On	Sleep Mode Notification	:On
DHCP DNS Dynamic Update	:0#	Port Number	:11427
IP Address	:192.108.1.81	Number of Routers to Treverse	:3
Subnet Mask	:255.255.255.0	Notification Interval	:600
Galeway Address	:192.168.1.1	Mopris Settings	
mDNS Settings mDNS	:On	Mopria Mopria	:Dn ·
mDNS Name	Canon	Neopra	
IP46	(Lainon)	Google Cloud Print Settings	
Use IPv0	:Dff	Google Cloud Print	100
Statelean Addreas	:Dn	Local Print	-On
Manual Address	101	Locar Hirt	:300 seconds

Consmbl. Status Prt.

The information such as toner remaining amount, warning messages, and information on where you can purchase new toner cartridges can be viewed in list form.

– ([टि/व्व्वा) ► <consmbl. sta<="" th=""><th>atus Prt.> 🕨 💽 🕨 <yes> 🕨 🚾</yes></th></consmbl.>	atus Prt.> 🕨 💽 🕨 <yes> 🕨 🚾</yes>
iple:	
Information about Inserted Cartridge	bles Status Print *** Bred Carifally Bieface Replacing Carridge *** Re-auroch of overster führer:
Hadk: Level 100% Warning: There is no error.	Be caseful of counterfeit outsidges Plogge be oware fluct there are counserfait. Canon cartridges in the marketplace. Use of counserfait cartridges may nearly in poor print quality or machine performance.
	Canon is not responsible for any multimation, avoident or damage exactle by the use of counterfuel entridges. For exore information, use essence-convolument/file. For optimum print quality, using genuine Canon contridges is reconstructed.
	Information about Genuine Products Carridge Name Thick : Carridge 5/2

IPSec Policy List

You can check the list of policy names and the IPSec settings registered in the machine by printing an IPSec Policy List.



Example:

Canon	IPSec Policy List
IPSec Settings Use IPSec Paterix Non-Policy Packets Policy Settings Policy Name Enable Policy Setector Settings	:On :Alow :comple :Of
Local Address Settings Local Address Remote Address Settings Remote Address	SALIP Addresses SALIP Addresses
Port Settings Local Pert Remote Port IKE Surtings IKE Mode	Al Pota Al Pota
AUTH Method Authentication/Encryption Algorithm IPSec Network Use PFS	Pre-Sharod Key Method Sulo
Tecoger Algorithm	-460 2440

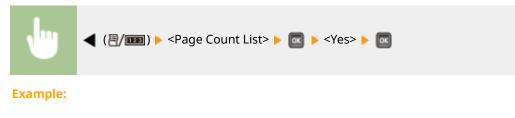
E-Mail RX Log List

You can check a log consisting of subjects and received date/time of e-mails received in the machine in list form.

↓ ([/	<e-mail print="" utility=""> 🕨 🧧</e-mail>	🛛 🕨 <e-mail lo<="" rx="" th=""><th>og List> 🕨 💽 🕨 <yes> 🕨 🚾</yes></th><th></th></e-mail>	og List> 🕨 💽 🕨 <yes> 🕨 🚾</yes>	
Example:				
Canon	E-Mail RX Log List	1.000		
Subject	From user 1 <testümsil.exampl< td=""><td>Received Date/Time</td><td>RX Results #433</td><td></td></testümsil.exampl<>	Received Date/Time	RX Results #433	

Page Count List

You can check the number of pages printed for each department by printing a report when [Department ID Management] is enabled.



Canon	Page Count List	
Department ID	Total	
1	1	
7654021	0	
7654021 Jobs With Unknown IDs	0	

Counter Report

You can print an aggregate report of the number of pages printed for each counter.

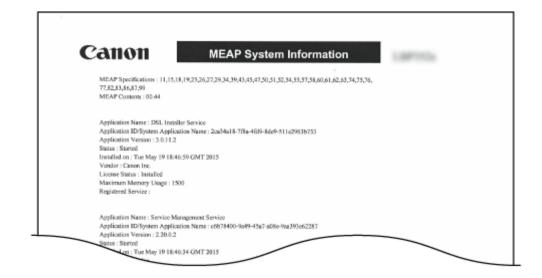
•	◀ (문/ጬ))	<counter report="">)</counter>	▶ 💽 ▶ <yes> ▶</yes>	OK	
Example:	_				
C	Canon	Counter F	Report	187754	
	Main Controller Version : R DCON Version : 1 Serial Number : N Device Name :	01.00 EYA000004		Model :	
r	08/07 2015 05:39:26	Total I Total (Block/Small) Total I (2-Sided)	s		

Print MEAP Sys. Info

You can check the information about MEAP applications installed in the machine and the MEAP system applications in list form if the MEAP function is enabled.



Maintenance



PCL Font List

You can check the fonts available in PCL mode in list form. **Second Samples (P. 623)**

"								
ple:								
6								
				Frank Street	ont Lis	PAGE 001		
PCL	Inter	nal Fo	nts					
PCL		nal Fo	nts					
PCL	Font New	ae		StrokeW	Pitch/Point Typeface	Sample		
	Font New	ae		StrokeW		Sample		
[000]	Font Nem Symbol Courier	ae		StrokeW 0	Typeface scalable 4099	Sample		
[000]	Font New Symbol	be Spacing O	Style 0	Q	Typeface scalable 4099 scalable	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ		
[000]	Font Nem Symbol Courier	Bpacing 0	Style		Typeface scalable 4099	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ		
[000] [001] [002]	Font Nam Symbol Courier CG Times CG Times	Bpacing 0 1 Bold 1	Style 0	Q	Typeface scalable 4099 scalable 4101 scalable 4101	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ		
[000] [001] [002]	Font Nem Symbol Courier CG Times	o J Bold Italic	Style 0 0	0 0 3	Typeface scalable 4099 scalable 4101 scalable 4101 scalable	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ		
[000] [001] [002] [003]	Font New Symbol Courier CG Times CG Times CG Times	o I nold I Italic I	Style 0 0 1	0	Typeface scalable 4099 scalable 4101 scalable 4101 scalable 4101	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ		
[000] [001] [002] [003]	Font New Symbol Courier CG Times CG Times CG Times	o J Bold Italic	Style 0 0 1	0 0 3 0	Typeface scalable 4099 scalable 4101 scalable 4101 scalable 4100 scalable	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ		
[000] [001] [002] [003] [004]	Font New Symbol Courier CG Times CG Times CG Times CG Times	o I nold I Italic I	Style 0 0 1	0 0 3	Typeface scalable 4099 scalable 4101 scalable 4101 scalable 4101	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ		
[000] [001] [002] [003] [004]	Font New Symbol Courier CG Times CG Times CG Times	o I nold I Italic I	Style 0 0 1	0 0 3 0	Typeface scalable 4099 scalable 4101 scalable 4101 scalable 4101 scalable 4101	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ		
[000] [001] [002] [003] [004]	Font New Symbol Courier CG Times CG Times CG Times CG Times	ne Spacing 0 1 nold 1 ttalic 1 nold ttal 1 1	Style 0 0 1 ie 1	0 0 3 0 3	Typeface scalable 4099 scalable 4101 scalable 4101 scalable 4101 scalable 4101 scalable	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ		

PS Mode List

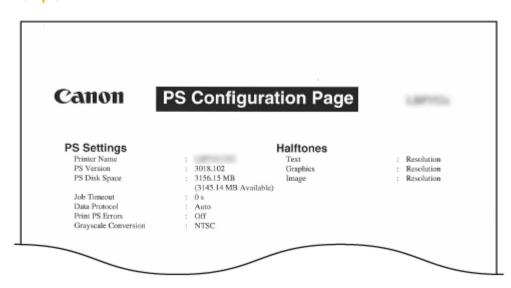
The settings for use of the PS mode and the internal information items registered in the machine are printed in list form.

Configuration Page(P. 541)Font List(P. 541)

Configuration Page

You can check the machine settings (**PS(P. 439)**) and the contents registered in the machine in list form.





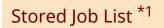
Font List

You can check the fonts available in PS mode in list form.

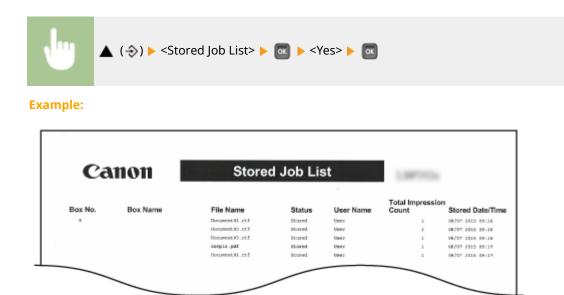


Example:

	Font List PAGE. 001
PS Fonts	
Font Name	Sample
AdobeSansMM	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
AdobeSerifMM	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
AlbertusMT	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
AlbertusMT-Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
AlbertusMT-Light	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
AntiqueOlive-Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ
AntiqueOlive-Compact	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
AntiqueOlive-Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
imeOlive-Roman	ABCDEFGHI

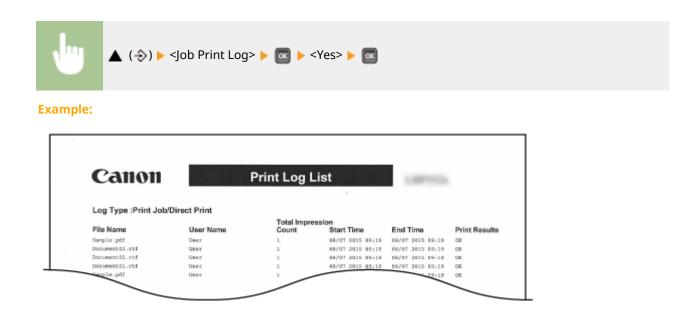


You can print a list of documents stored in the SD card installed on the machine.



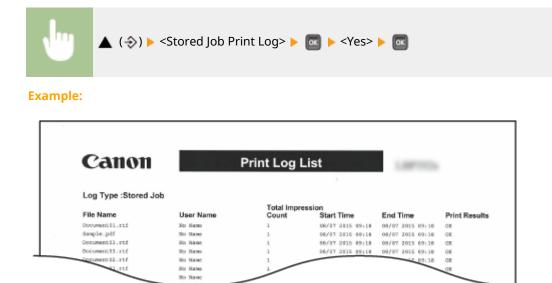
Job Print Log *2

You can print a log of documents printed from the computer in list from.



Stored Job Print Log *1*2

You can print a print log of documents stored in the SD card installed on the machine in list form.



Report Print Log *2

You can print the settings and a print log of reports in list form.

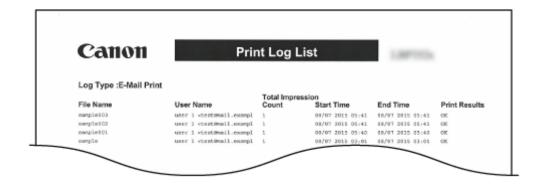
ple:					
ple:					
ple:					
Canon		Drint Log I	Lint		
Canon		Print Log l	List	1.8571134	
Canon		Print Log I	List	187114	
		Print Log I	List	1.87113	
Canon Log Type :Report				18713	
Log Type :Report		Total Impre	ression	1.8710.	
Log Type :Report File Name	User Name		ression Start Time		Print Results
Log Type :Report File Name Report Print	User Name Ha None	Total Impre	ression Start Time 08/07 2015 05:59	0 08/07 2015 05:59	OK
Log Type :Report File Name Report Print Report Print	User Name Ho None Ho Name	Total Impre	55300 Start Time 08/07 2015 05:59 08/07 2015 05:43	9 08/07 2015 05:59 3 08/07 2015 05:43	
Log Type :Report File Name Report Frint Report Frint	User Name Ha None	Total Impre	ression Start Time 08/07 2015 05:59	9 08/07 2015 05:59 3 08/07 2015 05:43	OK
Log Type :Report File Name Report Frint Report Frint	User Name Ho Hone Ho Nome Ho Nome Ho Nome	Total Impre	ression Start Time 08/07 2015 05:59 08/07 2015 05:43 08/07 2015 05:43	0 08/07 2015 05:59 3 08/07 2015 05:43 3 08/07 2015 05:43	OK OK
Log Type :Report File Name Report Frint Report Frint	User Name Ho Nome Ho Nome Ho Nome	Total Impre	ression Start Time 08/07 2015 05:59 08/07 2015 05:43 08/07 2015 05:43	0 08/07 2015 05:59 3 08/07 2015 05:43 3 08/07 2015 05:43	OK OK OK

E-Mail Print Log *2

You can print a print log of received e-mails in list form.



Maintenance



LINKS

Outility Menu(P. 445) Job Menu(P. 449)

Viewing the Counter Value

0X7U-073

You can check the number of printed pages.

Checking Total Number of Printed Pages(P. 545)
 Checking the Number of Pages Printed for Each Department(P. 545)

Checking Total Number of Printed Pages

You can check the total number of printed pages.



Checking the Number of Pages Printed for Each Department

You can check the number of pages printed for each department.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

	68.1.81.8000/po/ports				_		× n t
		Device Name Product Name Location:	: e (Seriel No.):	CONTRACTOR		Login Usor: System I	Manager Log
🚷 Remote UI: Po	ortal			Languago	English	• D Mail to	System Man
				Last Updated: 06/07 2015-01:51:40	4	Status Monitor/Cancel	là
Device Basic Informa	tion						6
Device Status					(Settings/Registration	G
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						57
Error information							
There is no error.					- 1	Besic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation				- 1	Bax	
Paper Information					_		
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size I	Paper Type			Direct Print	4
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4 1	Plain				

3 Click [Department ID Management].

Maintenance

C	(9.1T=43558096			P-16X 000
			To Portal Log	gin User: System Manager Log Out
(A) Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manager
Preferences © Costrol Menu © Paper Source Settings © Natwork	SellingsRegistration Preferences, Confe Control Menu	ol Menu		Last Updated 0107 2015 81-47 08 E&L
Eliyout Phint Quality User Mantesance OutputControl Utility Mene Denice Control	Sleep Settings Sleep Mode. Sleep Even if Error. Prioritae Energy Saving When in I Auto Sleep Time. Sleep When Using USB.	Deep Sleep:	High (Deep Sleep) On Off 5 min. Allow	
Management Settinge © Department ID Management © Security © Impositi Sport © License/Other	Timer Settings Wake Up Time: Wake Up Time: Add: Roost Time: Sleap Time: Sleap Time: Add: Statuboum Time: Add: Shubboum Time: Add: Shubboum Time: Mate: Shubboum Veekly Timer: Warning Step	Off 12:00 2 min. Off 12:00 On After 4 m Off	r.	

The number of printed pages is displayed for each Department ID under [Printed Pages].

(※) Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manage
references = Costrol Menu	Settings/Registration: Management Settings	Department ID Management	
	Department ID Management		Last Updated: 30/06 2015 01-41 03
Paper Source Settings Network			Clear All Counts Settings
= Layout	Department ID Page Total		
E Print Quality			
User Maintenance	Register New Department		
Dutput/Centrol			Dept. ID: 1 to 100 . Display
 Utility Menu 	Dept. ID	Printed Pages	
E Device Control	1	1	Delete
Vanagement Sellings	1		
Department ID Management	2	٥	Dolete
= Security	Jobs With Unknown IDs	11	
ImportiExport	Utility, E-Mail Print	19	
III License/Other	×		
			Cosynght CANON INC. 28

NOTE

To print the check result OPage Count List(P. 538)

To clear the page count to zero

 When you want to clear the page count to zero for each department, click the text link under [Dept. ID], and click [Clear Count] > [OK].

Maintenance

MARK STRUCTURE	96 - C		To Postal Login U	ser: System Manager Log
(A) Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manag
Preferences	Settings/Registration Manageme	nt Settings: Department ID M	anagement > Edit Department	
III Costrol Menu	Edit Department		La La	nt Updated: 30/06 2015 01:41:
Paper Source Settings Network	The settings will be changed as	follows.		
= Layout				OK Cancel
E Print Quality				
User Maintenance	Department Department ID:			
Output/Control Utility Mone	Department ID: PIN	Not set.		
	Pla.	14.44		
II Device Control	PIN:		(Max 7 digits)	
Management Settings				
Department ID Management	Confirm:		(Max 7 digits)	
= Security				
ii ImportiEsport ii: License/Other	Printed Pages			
				Clear Count
	Total Print:	1		
	x			

• If you want to return the counts of all departments to zero, click [Clear All Counts] > [OK].

-			
C 🛞 😵 http://182.008.1.81/didlot.c	2 ⁱ		P-26× 0 0
Read of Contractory	w/	To Postel 1	ogin User: System Manager Log (
(Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manag
Preferences	Settings/Registration, Management Settings	Department ID Management	
III Control Menu	Department ID Management		Last Updated: 30/06 2015 01-41-56
Paper Source Settings			
II Network			Clear All Counts Settings
= Layout			
Print Quality	Department ID Page Total		
User Maintenance	Register New Department		
Output/Centrol			Dept. ID: 110 100 m Display
 Utility Menu 	Dept. ID	Printed Pages	
II Device Control	1	1	Delete
Varagement Settings			
Department ID Management	2	0	Delete
a Security	Jobs With Unknown I Da	11	
	Utility, E-Mail Print		

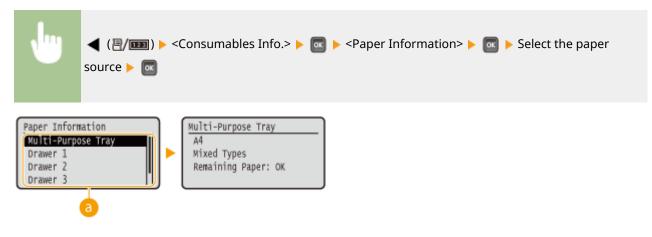
Checking Consumables

0X7U-074

You can use the operation panel to check the information of the consumables.

Checking Paper

You can display the currently specified paper size and paper type, and the remaining paper level for each paper source.



8 Paper source selection

Select the paper source of which information is displayed.

Checking the Toner Cartridge Model

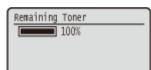
You can display the model number of the toner cartridge for the machine.



Checking the Amount of Remaining Toner

You can display the amount of remaining toner.





NOTE

• The displayed remaining toner level can be used only as a guide and may differ from the actual level.

Maintenance

Initializing Settings

You can restore the following settings:

Initializing Menu(P. 551)
 Initializing the Network Settings(P. 552)

0X7U-075

Initializing Menu

0X7U-076

You can restore the settings of the machine (**Setup Menu(P. 360)**) to the factory default settings.

IMPORTANT

Do not press the power switch when the initialization is in progress

• If the machine is turned OFF during the initialization, it may be damaged.

If a Remote UI Access PIN has been specified

• The Remote UI Access PIN is also initialized. After performing initialization, respecify a Remote UI Access PIN. Setting a Remote UI PIN(P. 263)

NOTE

- When you want to initialize the network settings, follow the procedure in **Initializing the Network Settings(P. 552)**.
- When you want to initialize the settings in <Adj. Print Position>, follow the procedure in **OAdj. Print Position(P. 406)**.



Initializing the Network Settings

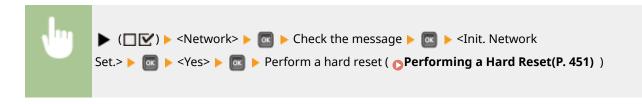
0X7U-077

You can restore the network settings (**Network(P. 375)**) to the factory default settings.

IMPORTANT

Do not initialize the network settings when the machine is printing or receiving print data

• Doing so may result in incorrect printing, paper jams, or damage to the machine.



ppendix	554
Third Party Software	555
Feature Highlights	556
Going Green and Saving Money	557
Improving Efficiency	559
So Much More	562
Specifications	
Machine Specifications	566
Paper	
Consumables	573
Consumable Parts	
Optional Items	
Installing the ROM	
Installing an SD Card	583
Manuals Included with the Machine	
Using e-Manual	
Installing e-Manual	589
Uninstalling e-Manual	591
Screen Layout of e-Manual	592
Viewing e-Manual	598
Managing MEAP Applications	600
Using FTP Clients	601
Preparing for Using the FTP Server	602
Printing via FTP Client (FTP Print)	605
Specifying Settings via FTP Client	607
Others	614
Basic Windows Operations	615
For Mac OS Users	
Font Samples	
Notice	628
Office Locations	

Appendix

This chapter contains technical specifications of this machine, instructions on how to use the e-Manual, disclaimers, copyright information, and other important information for customers.

Third Party Software

PDF

0X7U-08U

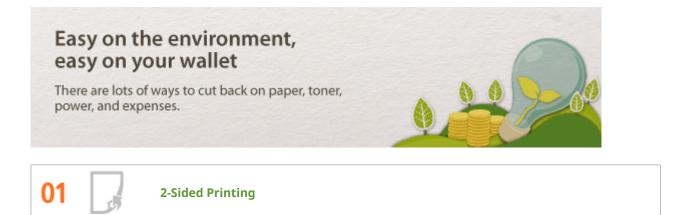
Feature Highlights

0X7U-079

Give the features that are described in this section a try. The features are grouped under three headings: "Going Green and Saving Money," "Improving Efficiency," and "So Much More."

Going Green and Saving Money

0X7U-07A



You can print on both sides of the paper. Use 2-sided printing to save paper not only on large print jobs but also when you only want to print a few pages. To save even more, combine 2-sided printing with N on 1 printing of multiple pages on one sheet of paper. You can print up to 32 pages on a single sheet, which is both economical and environmentally friendly.



To print 2-sided documents from your computer: **OSwitching 1-Sided and 2-Sided Printing(P. 89)**

To print multiple pages onto one sheet from your computer: **OPrinting Multiple Pages onto One Sheet(P. 93)**



Print Multiple Pages on a Single Sheet

When there are many pages in a document, the printout can be inconveniently bulky-hard to carry around and store, and also hard to read. But there is a solution. Print multiple pages onto one sheet! This allows you to save paper and make your documents slimmer and easier to handle. It is even more effective when combined with 2-sided printing.



To print multiple pages onto one sheet from your computer: **OPrinting Multiple Pages onto One Sheet(P. 93)**

To print 2-sided documents from your computer: **Switching 1-Sided and 2-Sided Printing(P. 89)**

3 Sleep Mode

If you will not be using the machine for a while, you can save power by putting it into sleep mode, either manually or automatically. You don't need to turn OFF the power each time, but you can still have the machine minimize its power consumption. The auto shutdown function can boost the savings, by automatically turning OFF the machine if it remains idle for a longer time. These convenient functions work in the background to save power and money every day.



To save power by putting the machine into sleep mode: **Centering Sleep Mode(P. 69)**

To configure the machine to be automatically turned OFF: **OSetting Auto Shutdown Time(P. 71)**



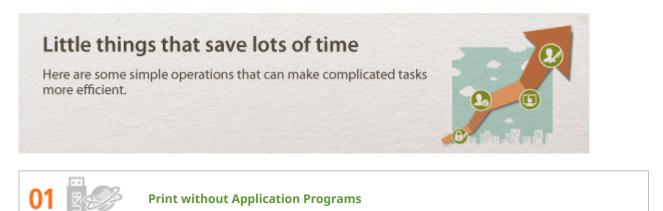
To economize on toner, you can use the <Toner Save> mode for drafts and test printouts. Or you can switch between modes according to purpose, using normal mode for beautiful photos and draft mode for company documents that do not require presentation quality.



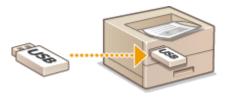
For more information about this function, see **Saving Toner(P. 107)**.

Improving Efficiency

0X7U-07C



You can send PDF/PS/EPS/JPEG/TIFF/XPS data from the Remote UI directly to the machine for printing. You can also print without a computer by connecting a USB memory device to the machine. There is no need to open files, so you do not need to start an application program. This is very convenient when you are in a hurry and do not have access to a computer.



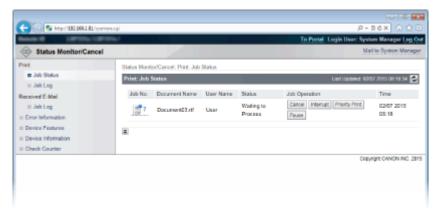
To print data directly from the Remote UI: **Printing without Opening a File (Direct Print)(P. 146)**

To print data directly from USB Memory (USB Direct Print): **Printing from USB Memory (USB Direct Print)** (P. 120)



Remote Management with Remote UI

The Remote UI allows you to manage the machine remotely from the computer at your desk. You can check the remaining amounts of paper and toner cartridge, and check the current status of print jobs to decide if you should temporarily interrupt print jobs to print urgent documents or move documents up among the jobs waiting to be printed. Save time and trouble by eliminating trips between your desk and the printer.



For more information about this function, see **Using Remote UI(P. 332)** .



Register Favorite Settings and Call Them Up at Any Time

Everyone in the office uses the printer. If you register the most popular settings as the default settings, you can use them right away. You can also register frequently used combinations of print settings as "profiles." Then you can call up your favorite settings in a single operation, by selecting a profile instead of selecting each setting every time you print.

Add Profile		
Name:	SAMPLE	
loon:		
Comment:	SANPLE	
	~ View Settings	
	OK Carcel Help	

To change default print settings: **OChanging Default Settings(P. 116)**

To register combinations of frequently used print settings as "profiles": **ORegistering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Settings(P. 114)**



When you have a number of documents to print, it would be convenient to print them all with one operation. Canon PageComposer allows you to combine multiple documents and print them all at once. You can also save frequently printed documents like fax cover sheets in the machine's SD card, and then print them directly from the operation panel. You don't need to return to your computer and start the printer driver. These shortcuts save time and allow you to work more efficiently.

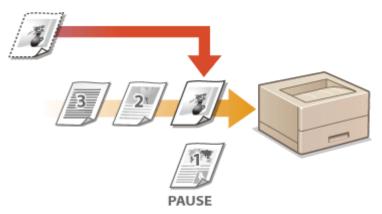
527 C	自閉 里	17 I. I. I. I.		
Document Name	Pages	Layout Informati Con	mments	
Document01.rtf	1	1 on 1		
Document02.rtf	1	1 on 1		
Document03.rtf	1	1 on 1		

To combine multiple documents and print them all at once: **Combining and Printing Multiple Documents(P. 109)**

To print a document saved on the SD card installed on the machine: **OPrinting a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)(P. 137)**



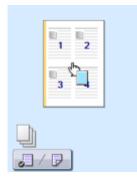
You need to print 1 page right away, but a 200-page document is printing and 5 other print jobs are waiting! At times like this, you can use the Interrupt Print function to have your page printed now without canceling the other jobs. When your page is finished, printing of the other print jobs resumes smoothly and automatically.



For more information about this function, see **OChecking Current Status of Print Documents(P. 342)**.



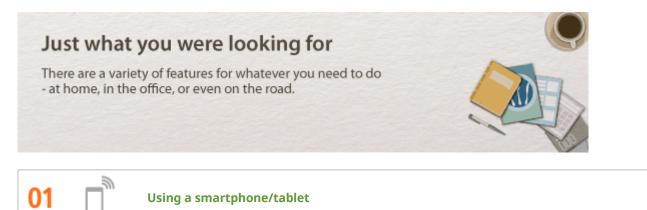
You can easily specify the page layout as well as binding position, switching between 1-sided and 2-sided printing, etc. intuitively on the preview image in the printer driver. The simple click-operation allows you to conveniently make settings while viewing how settings are applied.



For more information about this function, see **Basic Printing Operations(P. 78)**.

So Much More

0X7U-07E



At times such as when you want to quickly print out a proposal you completed on a tablet while travelling to a business destination, Canon Mobile Application comes in handy.

PCless, quick, and easy! An even broader range of possibilities for work/play with functionality made for this age of speed.



For more information about this function, see **Can Be Used Conveniently with a Mobile Device(P. 165)**



Easy Printing with Google Cloud Print

Hook up to Google Cloud Print with your laptop or cell phone, send your data, and out come your printed documents. With this machine, Google Cloud Print, and your mobile device, print whenever you want from wherever you want.

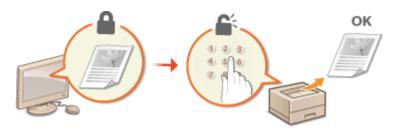


For more information about this function, see **Ousing Google Cloud Print(P. 176)**.



Normally, when you print something from your computer, it comes out of the printer right away. However, if you have sensitive documents, this may not be what you want. Just use secure printing and no one will be able to print your documents without entering your password on the machine's operation panel. Don't let your

confidential documents lie exposed on the tray for everyone to see. For even greater security, you can print a watermark such as "CONFIDENTIAL" or "PRIVATE COPY."

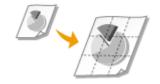


To print a document secured by a PIN: **Printing a Document Secured by a PIN (Secured Print)(P. 131)**

To print watermarks such as "CONFIDENTIAL" over the document: **Printing Watermarks(P. 101)**



Blow up a regular one-sheet printout and make an exceptionally large poster. A large poster will be printed out on nine sheets. Put them together in a 3x3 grid, and voila!



For more information about this function, see **Printing Posters(P. 95)**.



Sometimes your documents deserve better presentation than a staple in the upper-left corner. Making booklets is easy. The print driver will take care of the page positioning for you. All you have to do is fold the pages and staple them along the middle.



For more information about this function, see **OPrinting Booklet(P. 96)**.



When you print multiple copies of a multi-page document, you can use the collate function to print one copy after another with all of the pages in the correct order. This is convenient when preparing handouts for meetings or presentations.



For more information about this function, see **Collating Printouts by Page(P. 91)**.

Specifications

The machine specifications are subject to change without prior notice due to improvements of the machine.

Machine Specifications(P. 566)Paper(P. 569)

Machine Specifications

0X7U-07H

Hardware Specifications(P. 566)Controller Specifications(P. 567)

Software Specifications(P. 568)

Hardware Specifications

Туре	Desktop page printer
Printing Method	Semiconductor laser + dry-type electrophotographic method
Toner Fixing System	On-demand fixing system
Resolution	600 dpi
Print Speed *1	LBP352x
(Plain paper (60 to 89 g/m²), A4 continuous printing)	1-sided printing: 62 sheets/minute
	 2-sided printing: 41.4 pages/minute *2
	LBP351x
	 1-sided printing: 55 sheets/minute
	 2-sided printing: 36.5 pages/minute *2
Warm-Up Time *3	Normal start: 29 seconds or less
(from power ON until machine enters standby)	Quick start: 12 seconds or less
Recovery Time *4	Mid (Printer Sleep): 10 seconds or less
(recovery from sleep mode to standby)	High (Deep Sleep): 10 seconds or less
First Print Time *4	LBP352x
(1-sided printing on A4 size paper, with the output tray used)	7.0 seconds LBP351x
	7.2 seconds
Acceptable Paper Stock	♥Paper(P. 569)
2-Sided Printing	Standard size:
	A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, and Foolscap
Paper Output	Face down (output tray)/Face up (sub-output tray)
Output Capacity *5	Output tray: Approx. 500 sheets
	• Sub-output tray: 100 sheets
Noise	LwAd (Declared A-weighted sound power level (1 B = 10 dB))
(measured in accordance with ISO 7779, declared noise	During standby mode: 4.0 B or less
emission in accordance with ISO 9296)	During printing: 1 sided printing: 7.1 B or loss
	1-sided printing: 7.1 B or less 2-sided printing: 7.1 B or less
	LpAm (Declared A-weighted sound pressure level (Bystander position))
	 During standby mode: 26 dB
	During printing:

Weight *8	Approx. 24.5 kg
Consumables	Consumables(P. 573)
	 During power-off: 0.17 W or less (shutdown) 0.75 W or less (quick turn-OFF)
	<high (deep="" sleep)=""> *7: Approx. 1.1 W (Wired LAN connection) Approx. 2.0 W (USB connection)</high>
	Approx. 4.0 W (Wired LAN connection) Approx. 4.2 W (USB connection)
	 During sleep mode: <mid (printer="" sleep)=""> *7:</mid>
	 During standby: Approx. 19 W
	Approx. 850 W (LBP352x) Approx. 800 W (LBP351x)
(at 20 °C)	During operation:
Power Consumption *6	Maximum: 1,650 W or less
Power Supply	220 to 240 V (± 10 %), 50/60 Hz (± 2 Hz)
	Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (no condensation)
(Main unit only)	• Temperature: 10 to 30 °C
Environmental Conditions	System requirements
	LBP351x 1-sided printing: 56 dB 2-sided printing: 56 dB
	2-sided printing: 57 dB
	LBP352x 1-sided printing: 57 dB

^{*1} The print speed may be slower depending on the output resolution, paper size, paper type, paper orientation, and a specified number of sheets to print.

*² For 2-sided printing, one page printed on the front side of a sheet and one printed on the back side are counted as one output sheet.

^{*3} May vary depending on the use conditions of the machine (including attached optional accessories and installation environment).

^{*4} May vary depending on the output environment.

^{*5} May vary depending on the installation environment and paper type used.

^{*6} Even if the printer is turned OFF, power is still consumed slightly while the power plug is inserted in the AC power outlet. To stop the power consumption completely, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

^{*7} Power may be consumed more than the values shown here according to the situation even if the sleep mode is set to <Mid (Printer Sleep)> or <High (Deep Sleep)>.

^{*8} The weight of the machine excluding the weight of a toner cartridge.

Controller Specifications

СРИ	264 MHz + 528 MHz
Memory (RAM) Capacity	1,024 MB
Host Interface	 USB interface: Hi-Speed USB x 4 (Front side x 1, Back side x 3)

	 Network interface: Common to 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T (RJ-45) Full Duplex/Half Duplex
User Interface	 LCD: 132 x 65 dots F-STN LCD LED indicator: 5 indicators Operation key: 12 keys Numeric key: Yes
ROM connector	1 connector
SD card slot	1 slot

Software Specifications

Built-in Control Command	PCL6, PostScript 3, UFR II, PDF, and XPS
Built-in Scalable Font	• PCL: 93 Scalable fonts, 10 Bitmap fonts
	• PS: 136 standard fonts
Printable Range	OPrintable Area(P. 572)
Network Interface	Supported protocol
	• TCP/IP (Frame type: Ethernet II)
	• SMB (option)
	Print application
	• LPD
	• RAW
	• IPP/IPPS
	• FTP
	• WSD

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper sizes that can be loaded in the paper drawer, multi-purpose tray, or optional paper sources are listed below.

Drawer 1

A4 (210.0 x 297.0 mm) *1*2 B5 (182.0 x 257.0 mm) *1*2 A5 (148.0 x 210.0 mm) *2*3 A6 (105.0 x 148.0 mm) *1*4 Legal (215.9 x 355.6 mm) *1*2 Letter (215.9 x 279.4 mm) *1*2 Statement (139.7 x 215.9 mm) *1*4 Executive (184.1 x 266.7 mm) *1*2 Foolscap (215.9 x 330.2 mm) *1*2 16K (195.0 x 270.0 mm) *1 Custom Paper Size *5

Drawer 2 to 5 (optional)

A4 (210.0 x 297.0 mm) *1*2 B5 (182.0 x 257.0 mm) *1*2 A5 (148.0 x 210.0 mm) *1*2 Legal (215.9 x 355.6 mm) *1*2 Letter (215.9 x 279.4 mm) *1*2 Executive (184.1 x 266.7 mm) *1*2 Foolscap (215.9 x 330.2 mm) *1*2 16K (195.0 x 270.0 mm) *1 Custom Paper Size *6

Paper Deck (optional)

A4 (210.0 x 297.0 mm) ^{*1*2} Legal (215.9 x 355.6 mm) ^{*1*2} Letter (215.9 x 279.4 mm) ^{*1*2}

Multi-Purpose Tray

A4 (210.0 x 297.0 mm) *1*2 B5 (182.0 x 257.0 mm) *1*2 A5 (148.0 x 210.0 mm) *2*7 A6 (105.0 x 148.0 mm) *1 Legal (215.9 x 355.6 mm) *1*2 Letter (215.9 x 279.4 mm) *1*2 Statement (139.7 x 215.9 mm) *1 Executive (184.1 x 266.7 mm) *1*2 Foolscap (215.9 x 330.2 mm) *1*2 16K (195.0 x 270.0 mm) *1 Envelope COM10 (104.7 x 241.3 mm) *1 Envelope Monarch (98.4 x 190.5 mm) *1 Envelope C5 (162.0 x 229.0 mm) *1 Envelope DL (110.0 x 220.0 mm) *1 Index Card (76.2 x 127.0 mm) *1 Custom Paper Size *8

Envelope Feeder (optional)

Envelope COM10 (104.7 x 241.3 mm) ^{*1} Envelope Monarch (98.4 x 190.5 mm) ^{*1}

```
Envelope C5 (162.0 x 229.0 mm) <sup>*1</sup>
Envelope DL (110.0 x 220.0 mm) <sup>*1</sup>
Custom Paper Size <sup>*9</sup>
```

*1 Can be loaded in portrait orientation only.

^{*2} Automatic 2-sided printing is available without replacing paper.

^{*3} A5 size paper can be loaded in landscape orientation only when the optional A5 cassette is installed. Automatic 2-sided printing on A5 size paper is only possible when the paper is loaded in portrait orientation.

^{*4} Printable only when an optional custom media cassette is attached.

*⁵ The following sizes are available:

Machine's standard paper drawer

- When loaded in portrait orientation: Width 148.0 to 215.9 mm, Length 210.0 to 355.6 mm
- When loaded in landscape orientation (only with the UFR II printer driver used): Width 148.0 to 215.9 mm, Length 148.0 to 215.9 mm

Custom media cassette (optional)

- When loaded in portrait orientation: Width 102.0 to 170.0 mm, Length 148.0 to 282.0 mm
- When loaded in landscape orientation (only with the UFR II printer driver used): Width 102.0 to 170.0 mm, Length 148.0 to 170.0 mm
- ^{*6} The following sizes are available:
- When loaded in portrait orientation: Width 148.0 to 215.9 mm, Length 210.0 to 355.6 mm
- When loaded in landscape orientation (only with the UFR II printer driver used): Width 210.0 to 215.9 mm, Length 210.0 to 215.9 mm

^{*7} Automatic 2-sided printing on A5 size paper is only possible when the paper is loaded in portrait orientation.

*8 The following sizes are available:

- When loaded in portrait orientation:
 Width 76.2 to 215.9 mm, Length 127.0 to 355.6 mm
- When loaded in landscape orientation (only with the UFR II printer driver used): Width 127.0 to 215.9 mm, Length 127.0 to 215.9 mm
- *9 The following sizes are available:
- When loaded in portrait orientation: Width 90.0 to 178.0 mm, Length 160.0 to 254.0 mm
- When loaded in landscape orientation (only with the UFR II printer driver used): Width 160.0 to 178.0 mm, Length 160.0 to 178.0 mm

NOTE

Factory default settings

- For drawers 1 to 5, the default setting of paper size is <Auto>. With this setting, the machine automatically recognizes the size of the loaded paper and therefore you need not change the paper size setting in most cases. However, you need to change the paper size setting when using the optional A5 cassette or custom media cassette. Specifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 61)
- For the multi-purpose tray, the default setting of paper size is <A4>. Change the paper size setting when using a different size of paper. **Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 64)**
- For the envelope feeder, the default setting of paper size is <Env. DL>. Change the paper size setting when using a different size of paper. Specifying Paper Size and Type for the Envelope Feeder (Option)(P. 66)

■ Paper Type and Paper Source Capacity

Chlorine-free paper can be used with this machine.

NOTE

• Print quality may deteriorate depending on the paper type used. Each source capacity indicated in the following table is merely a guide, so it may be different from the actual capacity.

— : Unavailable

Drawer 1/Drawer 2 to 5 (optional)/Paper Deck (optional)

Paper Type		Drawer 1	Drawer 2 to 5 (optional)	Paper Deck (optional)
Plain paper ^{*1*2}	60 to 80 g/m²	500 sheets ^{*3}		1,500 sheets
	81 to 89 g/m ²	300) sheets	900 sheets
90 to 120 g/m ²		250 sheets		750 sheets
Heavy paper	121 to 135 g/m ²		_	—
Bond paper *2	60 to 75 g/m²	500 sheets		1,500 sheets
76 to 90 g/m ²		300) sheets	900 sheets
Labels		—		—
Envelope		—		—

Multi-Purpose Tray/Envelope Feeder (optional)

Paper Type		Multi-Purpose Tray	Envelope Feeder (optional)
Plain paper *1*2	60 to 80 g/m ²		—
	81 to 89 g/m²	50 sheets	—
90 to 120 g/m ² *2		50 sheets	—
	121 to 135 g/m ²	50 sheets	—
Bond paper *2	60 to 75 g/m²	100 sheets	—
76 to 90 g/m ²		50 sheets	—
Labels		40 sheets	—
Envelope		10 sheets	75 sheets

*1 Recycled paper is also available.

*² Automatic 2-sided printing is available without replacing paper.

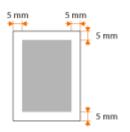
^{*3} The source capacity when paper of 80 g/m² is used. For paper of 64 g/m², up to 550 sheets can be loaded.

Paper Type and Setting for the Machine

Loading Paper(P. 37)

Printable Area

The shaded areas in the image below indicate the printable area of the document. For envelope, the top, bottom, left, and right margins are all 10 mm.



Consumables

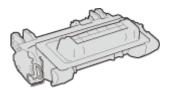
0X7U-07K

The following is a guide to the estimated replacement time for the consumables used in this machine. Purchase consumables at your local authorized Canon dealer. Observe safety and health precautions when storing and handling consumables (**Consumables(P. 10)**).

NOTE

• Depending on the installation environment, printing paper size, or document type, you may need to replace consumables before the end of the estimated lifetime.

Toner Cartridges



Supplied Toner Cartridges

The average yield^{*} of the toner cartridge that comes with the machine is 11,000 sheets.

* The average yield is based on "ISO/IEC 19752" (the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for monochromatic electrophotographic printers and multi-function devices that contain printer components" issued by ISO [International Organization for Standardization]) when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting.

Replacement Toner Cartridges

For optimum print quality, using Canon genuine toner cartridges is recommended.

Canon Genuine Toner Cartridge	Average yield of toner cartridge*
Canon Cartridge 039	11,000 sheets
Canon Cartridge 039 H	25,000 sheets

Genuine Canon Consumables

For optimum print quality, using Canon genuine Toner, Cartridge and Parts is recommended.



NOTE

• When replacing toner cartridges **OHow to Replace Toner Cartridges(P. 524)**

Consumable Parts

0X7U-07L

This section describes the consumable parts of the machine and the estimated timings for replacing them. Purchase the consumable parts at your local authorized Canon dealer.

NOTE

• Depending on the installation environment, paper size, or data type, you may need to replace consumable parts before the end of their estimated lifetime.

■ User Maintenance Kit UM-A1



Fixing unit/Transfer roller/Feeder roller

The average number of pages that can be printed per fixing unit is 225,000. When replacing the fixing unit, also replace the rollers.

NOTE

• When replacing the fixing unit or other consumable part, see the "Replacing Guide" supplied with "User Maintenance Kit UM-A1". You can also see "Replacing Guide" at the Canon Web site.

Optional Items

The functionality of the machine can be fully utilized by using the optional items described below. Optional items can be purchased from the retail outlet where you purchased the machine or from your local Canon dealer.

■ Paper Feeder PF-B1



Use of the optional paper feeder allows you to load a different size of paper than that loadable in the standard paper drawer, thus reducing the time and labor of paper size replacement.

Available Paper	O Paper(P. 569)
Power Supply	From main unit
Dimensions (W x L x H)	415 x 448 x 148 mm
Weight	Approx. 6.4 kg

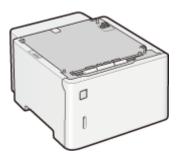
Installation Method

See "Getting Started."

NOTE

• You can install up to four units of paper feeder in the machine. However, if you use the optional paper deck, the maximum installable number of paper feeder units is three.

Paper Deck Unit PD-G1



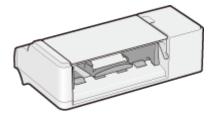
Use of the optional paper deck allows you to load a large amount of paper of standard size such as A4, thus reducing the time and labor of paper replenishment.

Available Paper	O Paper(P. 569)
Power supply	Supplied from the machine
Dimensions (W x L x H)	415 x 519 x 286 mm
Weight	Approx. 12.7 kg

Installation Method

See "Getting Started."

Envelope Feeder EF-A1



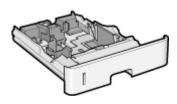
If you install the envelope feeder, you can load a large number of envelopes. Even when the envelope feeder is left installed, you can use the multi-purpose tray.

Available Paper	O Paper(P. 569)
Power supply	Supplied from the machine
Dimensions (W x L x H)	330 x 234 x 118 mm
Weight	Approx. 2.3 kg

Installation Method

See "Getting Started."

Custom Media Cassette CM-A1



You can load A6 size paper. To use this cassette, replace the standard paper drawer in the machine by it.

Paper Capacity	Approx. 500 sheets (64 g/m²) Approx. 450 sheets (80 g/m²)
Available Paper	A5, A6, Statement, Custom Paper Size *

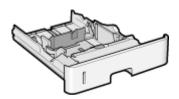
*The following sizes are available:

• When loaded in portrait orientation: Width 102.0 to 170.0 mm, Length 148.0 to 282.0 mm

Width 102.0 to 170.0 mm, Length 148.0 to 170.0 mm

• When loaded in landscape orientation (only with the UFR II printer driver used):

A5 Cassette C-A1



You can load A5 size paper in landscape orientation. To use this cassette, replace the standard paper drawer in the machine by it.

Paper Capacity	Approx. 500 sheets (64 g/m²) Approx. 450 sheets (80 g/m²)
Available Paper	A5

Barcode Printing Kit-F1



If the Barcode Printing Kit-F1 is installed on the machine, barcode printing mode is added, enabling barcodes to be printed from your computer. The Barcode Printing Kit-F1 contains the following barcode fonts.

• OCR-B

- Symb. FontInform
- Symbole stethos
- BarDIMM ©1997
- USPS ZEBRA+4Stat

This option enables you to generate barcodes in various formats. Note that if you want to print barcodes, PCL must be enabled. For information on using the Barcode Printing Kit, see the Barcode Printing Guide (PDF manual) via the online manual website.

Installation Method

Sinstalling the ROM(P. 579)

NOTE

• You can install only one unit of Barcode Printing Kit-F1 on the machine.

PCL International Font Set-C1



If the PCL International Font Set-C1 is installed on the machine, the following fonts are added for a PCL printer. As a result, you can output using multiple languages in a SAP Unicode environment.

- Andale[®] and WorldType[®] Collection J (Japanese Version)
- Andale[®] and WorldType[®] Collection K (Korean Version)
- Andale[®] and WorldType[®] Collection S (Simplified Chinese Version)
- Andale[®] and WorldType[®] Collection T (Traditional Chinese Version)

In order to support differences in character design depending on the region, four font versions are enabled.

Installation Method

Sinstalling the ROM(P. 579)

SD CARD-C1



You can install the SD card to use the functions described below.

- Secured Print
 Printing a Document Secured by a PIN (Secured Print)(P. 131)
- Stored Job Print
 Printing a Document Stored in the Machine (Stored Job Print)(P. 137)
 - Interrupt Print, Priority Print, Pause/Resume
 Checking Current Status of Print Documents(P. 342)
 - SMB Print
 Configuring SMB(P. 242)
 - Spooler
 Spooler(P. 389)

Installation Method

Sinstalling an SD Card(P. 583)

IMPORTANT

• When you dispose of a used SD card, perform <Completely Del. Data> for it or physically destroy it to prevent your personal information from being leaked. **○Installing an SD Card(P. 583)**

Installing the ROM

This section describes how to install the Barcode Printing Kit-F1 or PCL International Font Set-C1 in the machine. The ROM is used connected to the ROM connectors inside the right cover of the machine. Read the precautions in **©Installation(P. 3)** before installing the ROM.



Precautions when installing the ROM

- Do not cause any metal such as screws to come into contact with the circuit boards in the machine. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.
- Do not touch the internal parts, printed wiring, connectors, or switches. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.
- Do not turn ON the power when the ROM cover is open. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.

Precautions for avoiding static electricity

The ROM contains parts that are sensitive to static electricity. Observe the following precautions for preventing the ROM from being damaged by static electricity.

- Touch a metal portion in the room to discharge static electricity from your body before handling the ROM.
- Do not touch any item that is likely to generate static electricity, such as a display, during work.
- To avoid the influence of static electricity, do not remove the ROM from the protective bag until just before connecting it to the ROM connectors.

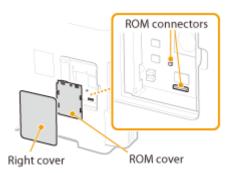
1 Turn OFF the machine, and unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

IMPORTANT:

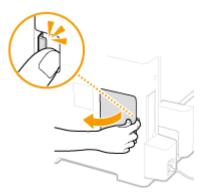
 When you turn OFF the power, shut down the machine from the operation panel without using the power switch. <a>Turning OFF the Power (Performing a Shutdown)(P. 33)

2 Remove the right cover.

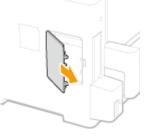
1 While pushing the catch, slightly open the cover toward you.



0X7U-07S



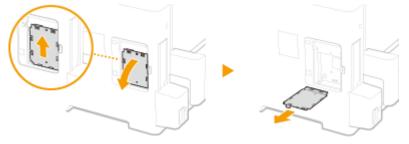
2 Remove the right cover in the direction indicated by the arrow.



- **3** Remove the ROM cover.
 - **1** Use a coin to remove the screws.



2 Open the ROM cover, and remove it in the direction indicated by the arrow.



4 Install the ROM.

• While aligning the ROM with the two ROM connectors of the machine, securely push it until it stops.



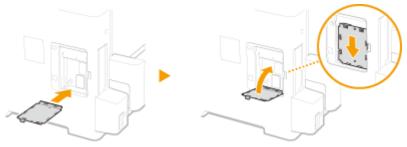
NOTE:

When disconnecting the ROM

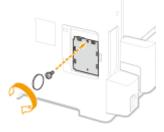
• Hold the edges of the ROM and pull it out as shown in the illustration below.



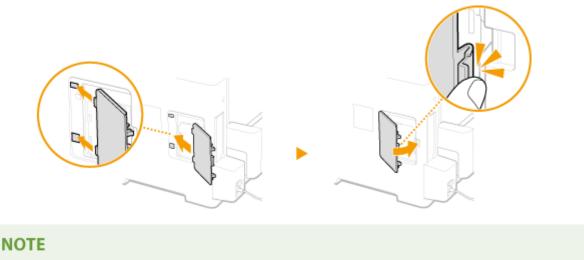
- **5** Put the ROM cover back into position.
 - **1** Close the ROM cover by pushing in the catch of the ROM cover in the direction indicated by the arrow.



2 Use a coin to reattach the screws.



6 Insert the right cover in the direction indicated by the arrow, and close it while pushing the catch.



• When you want to install an SD card at the same time, proceed to **OInstalling an SD Card(P. 583)** .

Checking that Barcode Printing Kit-F1 Is Properly Installed

Print the **Configuration Page(P. 445)**, and confirm that "BarDIMM" is displayed in "PCL" If "BarDIMM" is displayed, the ROM is properly installed.

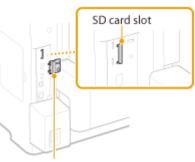
NOTE:

- If "BarDIMM" is not displayed
- The ROM is not installed properly. Remove the ROM from the machine, and reconnect it.

Canon	Configuration Page	18770
The second secon	- Inter Balantines 	
No. or other states	- 10 -	
BarDIM		
NOT OF ALL REPORT	n. allenti d'ann tu.	Page Caucil 00000230

Installing an SD Card

This section describes how to mount and initialize an SD card. Insert the SD card into the SD card slot on the back side of the machine. Read the precautions in **OInstallation(P. 3)** before installing the SD card. Note that the data in the machine that is stored to the SD card is all subjected to encryption. This ensures safe use of the SD card on a computer or in other situation because the encrypted data in the SD card is protected against unauthorized extraction.



0X7U-07U



NOTE

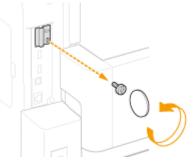
- Before mounting the SD card, check whether the SD card is write-protected. If the card is write-protected, unlock the card before inserting it.
 - Turn OFF the machine, and unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

IMPORTANT:

• When you turn OFF the power, shut down the machine from the operation panel without using the power switch. **OTurning OFF the Power (Performing a Shutdown)(P. 33)**

Remove the SD card slot cover.

1 Use a coin to remove the screws.





Open the SD card slot cover, and remove it in the direction indicated by the arrow.



583

3 Install an SD Card.

• Insert the card into the SD card slot until it clicks.



NOTE:

When removing the SD card

• Push the SD card until it clicks as shown in the illustration, release your finger, and then remove it.



- **4** Reinstall the SD card slot cover.
 - **1** Close the SD card slot cover by pushing in the catch of the cover.



2 Use a coin to reattach the screws.





SD Card Anti-theft Security Slot

- The SD card slot cover is provided with a security slot, to which you can attach security wire or equivalent.
- The hole of the security slot is 3.4 mm wide and 7.4 mm high.
- For inquires about the security slot, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

Initializing the SD Card

When you turn ON the power for the first time after installing the SD card, <Format SD Card?> appears on the display. Press on the start initializing the SD card. When the initialization is completed, the SD card is ready to use.

NOTE:

If <Format SD Card?> is not displayed

 Initialize the SD card by selecting <Format> under <SD Card Maintenance> in the setting menu of the operation panel. OSD Card Maintenance(P. 410)

Checking that the SD Card Is Properly Installed on the Machine

Print the **Configuration Page(P. 536)**, and the SD card is installed properly if "SD Card" in "Control Menu" is "On."

NOTE:

If no SD card status information is indicated

• The SD card is not installed properly. Remove the SD card from the machine, and remount it.

Configuring the Information of the SD Card

If an SD card was added after the printer driver was installed, you need to configure the SD card information in the printer driver. **Optional Items(P. 575)**

Deleting All Data in an SD Card

Before disposing of an SD card, you can use the procedure below to delete all data in the card. The procedure deletes even those fragments of data that cannot be deleted normally. This eliminates the risk of your data being red by third parties, thus you can dispose of the SD card safely.





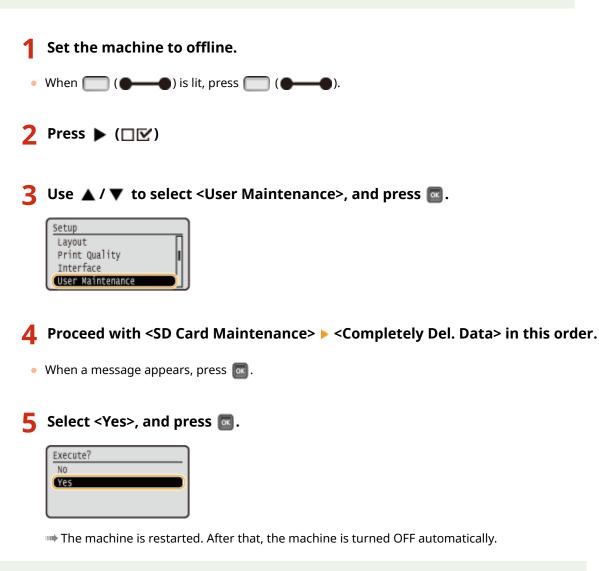
Format SD Card?

OK Key: Yes Back Key: No

Canon	Configurat	tion Page	1877134
Dis Para de Verante La Para de Verante Referencia de Verante Refer			
Entrance Entrance Entrance Market	225 2420-* 25		1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2
100 St. mention transferration (11.00 Junto) variable variabl		Contraction Sector and Sector and Secto	En sur
		REF No. 10 27.5 Referent REFE REFE REFE REFE REFE REFE REFE REF	
10.20	1	Margare Tal	1 1 1 1 1
SD Card	: On	dilline.	1
ATTENDED NA			
10111111111111111111111111111111111111	rindensk of the file rinden Discr.		ope Douged HEDBIRD'S

NOTE

• For any SD cards other than the optional "SD CARD-C1", the procedure below cannot be used.



NOTE

• When <Completely Del. Data> has been performed, the setting for <SD Card> changes to <Off>.

Manuals Included with the Machine

The manuals listed below are included with the machine. Refer to them as necessary.

Getting Started		Read this manual first. It describes basic setup procedures, from removing the packing materials to setting up the machine.
e-Manual (This Manual)	emanual	This manual describes all the functions of the machine in a manual that is viewed using a Web browser. You can browse information by category or enter a keyword to search for pages on a specific topic. OUsing e-Manual(P. 588)
Printer Driver Installation Guide	PrinterDriver	This manual describes how to install the printer driver and the supplied software on the User Software DVD-ROM.

Using e-Manual

0X7U-082

The e-Manual is a manual that can be viewed on your computer that describes all of the functions of the machine. You can search from your intended use or enter a keyword to quickly find the page you are looking for. You can use the e-Manual by installing it on your computer, or start the e-Manual directly from the Instruction Manual DVD-ROM. **Installing e-Manual(P. 589)**

How to Find the Topic You Are Looking for

You can find the page you are looking for using the following 3 methods.

Search the contents

You can find the page you are looking for by selecting the topic from the [Contents] tab on the left side of the screen, and selecting the [Chapter icon] next to the topic.

OTop Page(P. 592)

CTopic Page(P. 594)

Search by keyword

Perform a search by entering a keyword, such as "envelope" or "toner cartridge", and the pages containing the keyword are displayed. You can find the page you are looking for from those results. You can also enter phrases such as "connecting to a network." The keyword search also supports the AND Boolean to search for multiple keywords.

Search Tab(P. 596)

Search the site map

Click [Site Map] on the top part of the screen, and a list of all the e-Manual topics is displayed. From there you can find the topic you are looking for.

OSite Map(P. 597)

NOTE

System Requirements

• To use the e-Manual, the following Web browsers are required. The content of the e-Manual may not display correctly if a browser not listed below is used.

Windows: Internet Explorer 8.0/9.0/10.0/11.0 Firefox 24.x ESR/26.x/29.x/30.x/31.x/31.x ESR/32.x/33.x/34.x/35.x/36.x/37.x/38.x Mac OS: Safari 7.x/8.x Firefox 24.x ESR/26.x/29.x/30.x/31.x/31.x ESR/32.x/33.x/34.x/35.x/36.x/37.x/38.x

• The DVD-ROM provided for this product may include manuals in PDF format. If you do not have access to Adobe Reader to view the manuals in PDF format, try other programs such as PDF Preview developed by Vivid Document Imaging Technologies.

About the latest e-Manual

For the latest e-Manual, see the Canon Web site.

Installing e-Manual

Install the e-Manual on your computer by using the Instruction Manual DVD-ROM that comes with the machine.

1 Insert the Instruction Manual DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer.

Select the language, and click [Next].		
Manual Installer		
Select the manual language.		
British English		
Danish Dutch		
Finnish Prench		
German Hungarian		
Italan Korean Norwegian		
Polith Polith Portugese		
Rumien Spenish		
Swedah Turkish		
Display Manual		
The manual can be viewed directly from the doc.	Display	
	Next Quit	

NOTE:

2

- If the above screen is not displayed **Displaying the Setup Screen of Instruction Manual DVD-**ROM(P. 616)
- If [AutoPlay] is displayed, click [Run Maninst.exe].

3 Follow the on-screen instructions to install the manual.

■ Viewing the e-Manual

Double-click the [LBP351_352 Manual_eng] icon on the desktop.



NOTE

If a security warning message appears

• Click [Allow blocked content].

Internet Explorer restricted this webpage from running scripts or	ſ
ActiveX controls.	l

TIPS for Viewing the e-Manual Directly from the DVD-ROM

Allow blocked content

- 1 Insert the Instruction Manual DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer.
 - If the setup screen of the Instruction Manual DVD-ROM is not displayed, remove the DVD-ROM from the drive, and insert it again. If the setup screen is still not displayed ODisplaying the Setup Screen of Instruction Manual DVD-ROM(P. 616)
- 2 Select the language, and click [Display] in "Display Manual."

Uninstalling e-Manual

0X7U-084

You can remove the e-Manual from the computer to restore the computer to the same state it was in before the e-Manual was installed. Manually delete the data generated during installation.

Delete the folder in which the manual is saved.

- Windows Vista/7/Server 2008/8.1/Server 2012 R2 Delete the [LBP351_352 Manual_eng] folder in "C:/Users/(user-name)/Documents/Canon/Manuals."
- Windows 8/Server 2012 Delete the [LBP351_352 Manual_eng] folder in "C:/Users/(user-name)/My Documents/Canon/Manuals."
- Windows Server 2003
 Delete the [LBP351_352 Manual_eng] folder in "C:/Documents and Settings/(user-name)/My Documents/ Canon/Manuals."

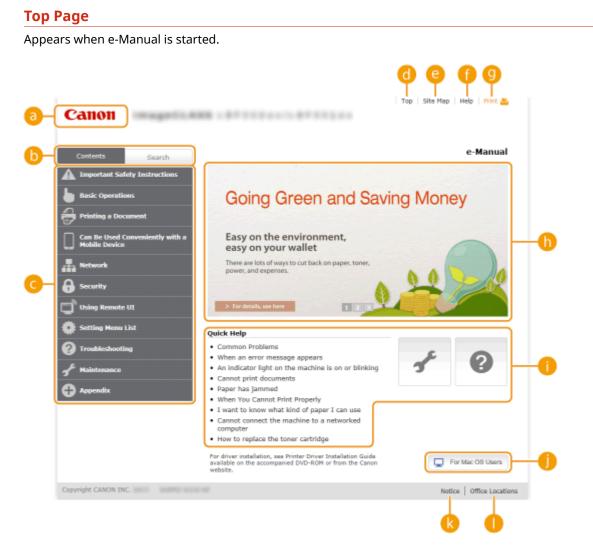
NOTE:

• The above shows an example of standard installation. If you changed the location to install the e-manual, search for and delete the folder in question.

2 Delete the [LBP351_352 Manual_eng] shortcut icon from the desktop.

Screen Layout of e-Manual

The e-Manual is divided into different screens, and the content of each screen varies.



👩 Canon

Click to return to the top page.

[Contents] tab/[Search] tab

Click to toggle the display between the table of contents and search.

🕝 Contents

The titles of chapters are displayed (1). Place the mouse pointer over one of the titles, and topics of the chapter are displayed on the right. Click a topic and its page is displayed.



👩 [Тор]

Click to return to the top page.

</u> [Site map]

Click to display all the e-Manual topics.

🚹 [Help]

Click to display information on how to view the e-Manual, how to perform a search, and other information.

🕘 [Print]

Click to print the displayed content.

🚹 Feature Highlights

Provides a variety of practical examples of ways to use the machine. Click 1 / 2 / 3 / 4 to toggle the display of practical examples by category, or click the sliding display for more information about each category. The sliding display can be stopped by moving the pointer onto it. **• Feature Highlights(P. 593)**

[] [Quick Help] / [Troubleshooting] / [Maintenance]

Click to view how to solve problems or maintain the machine.

🌔 [For Mac OS Users]

Click to view precautions when using Mac OS.

[[Notice]

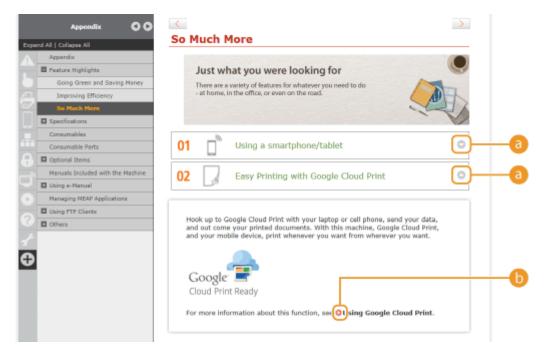
Click to view important information you should know when using the machine.

[Office Locations]

Click to display contact information for any inquiries about the machine.

Feature Highlights

Provides a variety of practical examples of ways to use the machine.



<u>|</u>]

Click to display the detailed information. Click again to close the window.

60

Click to display the corresponding topic page.

Topic Page

Contains information about how to configure and use the machine.

Contents Search Setting Henus List O O Expand Al Collapse All Setting Menu List Setting Menu List Setting Menu List Control Menu Paper Source Network Lyyout	Top > Setting Menu List > Setup Menu > Layout	0
Print Quality Interface User Maintenance Print Mode Settings Specific to Print Mode	© Binding Location © Gutter © Alternative Method	
MEAP Settings Chack Counter Initialize Menu Utility Menu Job Menu Reast Nenu Select Feeder Nenu	Number of Copies Specify the number of copies. 1 ⁺ to 9009]
	Offset Y/Offset X	

[Contents]

The chapter icons and titles are displayed.

🕞 [Expand all]/[Collapse all]

Click [Expand all] to display all of the subsections of all topics. Click [Collapse all] to close all of the subsections of all the topics.

🔁 Chapter icons

Click a chapter icon to navigate to the top of the corresponding chapter.

📵 Topic page

Displays the topics of the selected chapter. If "+" is displayed on the topic, clicking it displays the subsections of that topic. Click "-" to close the expanded topic.

😑 [Print all]

All pages of the selected chapter are opened in a separate window. The chapter can be printed if necessary.

🚹 Navigation

See what chapter topic you are currently viewing.

9 🗈

Click to return to the page top.

(h) < / 🗲

Click to display the previous or following topic.

00

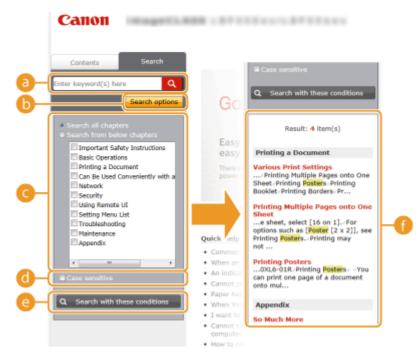
Click to jump to the corresponding page. To return to the previous page, click "Back" on your Web browser.

0 🗉

Click to display the hidden detailed descriptions. Click again to close the detailed descriptions.

Search Tab

Contains a text box to perform a search and find the page you are looking for.



[Enter keyword(s) here]

Enter a keyword or keywords and click **Q** to display the search results in the search result list (**1**). You can search for pages containing all the keywords by separating the keywords by a space (blank). Also you can only search for pages containing an exact phrase by enclosing the keywords in double quotation marks.

🚯 [Search options]

Click to specify search conditions such as scope of search and fuzzy match conditions. To display the conditions, click this button when it is gray. To close the display, click the button when it is orange.

🕒 Search scope selector

Specifies the search scope. You can efficiently search for topics by narrowing the search scope. The search scope selector is especially useful when you can predict the general location of the topic that you are looking for.

📵 Search options selector

Select the check box to make your search case-sensitive.

[Search with these conditions]

Click to display the search results with the conditions specified with \bigcirc and \bigcirc .

🚹 Search result list

Displays the search results of the pages that contain the specified keywords. From the results, locate the page you are looking for and click the topic title of the page. If the results cannot be displayed on one page, click of a page number to display the results on the corresponding page.

Site Map

Displays the table of contents for the e-Manual.

	Canon	Top Site Map Help Print 📇
0-	A 6 🗧 🛛 🚠 8 🗊	<mark>0 √ 0 ♦</mark>
	Important Safety Instructions	▼ Next
b –	Installation Power Supply Handling Maintenance and Inspections Consumables	
	basic Operations	A Previous Vext
	Parts and Their Functions	
	Front Side	
	Back Side	
	Interior	

👩 Chapter icons

Click to jump to the topic of the selected chapter.

() Title (Topic)

Displays titles and topics. Click a title or topic to jump to the page.

C 🗉

Click to return to the page top.



Click to go to the previous or next chapter.

Viewing e-Manual

Marks

Cautions regarding safety, restrictions and cautions regarding the handling of the machine, useful tips, and other information are indicated using the marks below.

	Indicates a warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the machine safely, always pay attention to these warnings.
	Indicates a caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the machine safely, always pay attention to these cautions.
\bigcirc	Indicates an operation that must not be performed. Read these items carefully, and make sure not to perform the described operations.
IMPORTANT	Indicates operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the machine correctly, and avoid damage to the machine or property.
NOTE	Indicates a clarification of an operation, or contains additional explanations for a procedure.
TIPS	Indicates useful functions or tips for using the machine.

Keys and Buttons Used in this Manual

Keys on the operation panel and buttons on the computer display appear in the following notation:

Туре	Example
Keys on the operation panel	
Settings displayed on the operation panel	<timer settings=""> <paper is="" jammed.=""></paper></timer>
Buttons and other text interfaces displayed on the computer display	[Preferences]

🔺 / 🔻 Used in This Manual

The \blacktriangle / \checkmark keys are used to select a desired setting. They are only described at the first applicable occurrence of their use in a page and omitted from the second time onward. For example, the \blacktriangle / \checkmark keys appear in Step 2, but are omitted in Step 3.

Example:

- 1 Press ▶ (□☑).
- 2 Use ▲ / ▼ to select <Network>, and press 🔤.
- 3 Select <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Settings> ▶ <IP Address Settings>.

Screens Used in This Manual

Unless otherwise noted, displays used in the e-Manual are those for the LBP352x. Depending on the operating system you are using, the appearance of the displays used in this manual may slightly differ from the actual displays. Also, the appearance of the printer driver and software may differ depending on their version.

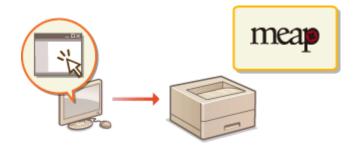
Illustrations Used in This Manual

The illustrations of the toner cartridge used in the e-Manual are those for the Canon Cartridge 039.

Managing MEAP Applications

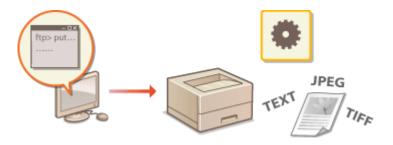
0X7U-087

You can install MEAP applications (function-enhancing software) on the machine to add various features. You can customize the functions according to your needs, for example, to configure an authentication system with IC cards or to manage printouts based on logs. When you want to manage MEAP applications, access the machine from your computer via a Web browser. For more information, see **Function Guide for MEAP Application Management**.



Using FTP Clients

You can use an FTP client to access the FTP server of the machine and specify settings for document printing and networking. Printing and settings can be performed with Command Prompt installed in the operating system as standard, requiring neither specific drivers nor specific applications.



Preparing for Using the FTP Server

Specify settings to enable communication between the machine and the clients. **Preparing for Using the FTP Server(P. 602)**

Printing via FTP Client (FTP Print)

You can print a document sent to the machine via FTP. **Printing via FTP Client (FTP Print)(P. 605)**

Specifying Settings via FTP Client

You can download the machine settings in text format and edit them. **Specifying Settings via FTP Client(P. 607)**

Preparing for Using the FTP Server

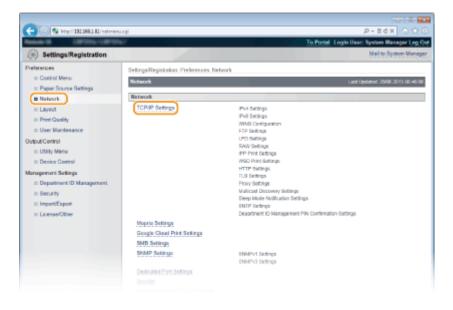
Because the factory default settings prevent operations from FTP clients, specify settings to allow the operations.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in Management Mode. **Starting Remote UI(P. 333)**

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

0 8 kep/1924	088.1.81.0000/ipo/ports	LogiPCSUT+138	8076029			,P - 11 (x n n
-		Device Nar Product Na Location:	ie: me (Soriel No.)	Contraction of the local division of the loc		Login User: System	Manager Log (
🔓 Remote UI: Po	ərtəl				Language: English	- D Mail to	System Manag
				Lant Updated: 06/07 20	H5 01:51:40 🛃	Status Monitos/Cancel	6
Device Basic Informa	tion						\bigtriangledown
Device Status						Settings/Registration	N
The device is in the	e Sleep mode.						57
Error Information							
There is no error.						Besic Tools	
Consumables Inform	ation					Вах	ି 🏹
Paper Information							
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size	Paper Type			Direct Print	9
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4	Plain				

3 Click [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings].



4 Click [Edit] in [FTP Settings].

Appendix

		644
		Edt
WINS Resolution:	07	
Node Type:	None	
SMB Server Name:		
SMB Workgroup Name:	WORKGROUP	
FTP Settings		
		Edit.
Use FTP Print	01	
FTP Print User Name:	guest	
Password:	Set.	
Display Settings for FTP Print J	ob Name	
Use UTF-8 to Display Name of FT	P Print Job: Off	
FTP Settings		

5 Specify the required settings and click [OK].

Control Legin User: System Manage Settings/Registration Netro System Marke System Marke System Netro Settings/Registration Preferences Costrol Merv Paper Source Settings Exel System Manage Exel System Manage Led System Led System Led System The settings will be changed as follows. (Changes effective after the main power is turned OFF and OK)	C	sincsum-sa41279661	P-86X 0 0
Preferences Settings/Registration: Puriferences. Network > TCP/IP Settings > Edit FTP Settings Code of Meric Paper Source Statings Preferences Network Paper Source Statings Edit FTP Settings Example To Settings Edit FTP Settings Example To Settings Example To Settings Example To Settings Example To Settings Example To Settings Example To Settings Example To Settings Use FTP Privet Settings Example To Settings Example To Privet Settings Example To Settings Conference Use UTF-8 to Display Netword FTP Privet Job Ett Privet Settings Example To Display Netword FTP Privet Job Ett Privet Job Example To Display Netword FTP Privet Job Ett Privet Job Example To Display Netword FTP Privet Job Ett Privet Job Example To Displ	Salation of Contraction of Contracti		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log O
Coabot Menu Paper Source Statings Prevention Paper Source Statings Network Layout Prevention Prevention Coabot Prevention Prevention Prevention Coabot Prevention Prevention	Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manage
Pape Source Settings Pape Source Settings Provide Setting Setting Provide Setting Provide Setting Seting Setting Setting Seting Seting Seting Setting Setting Setting	Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preferences: Network > TCP/IP Settin	gs > Edit FTP Settings
Network Layout Layout Layout Layout Denice Control Management Sollings Denice Control Management Set/Change Panavord Paskverd Control Management Set/Change Panavord Paskverd Management Management Set/Change Set/		Edit FTP Settings	Last Updatest: 30/06 2015 01-44-49
		The settings will be changed as follows, (Changes effective	e after the main source is turned OFF and ON 1
Port Calify User Markesance OutputControl User Markesance OutputControl User Markesance OutputControl User Strip Prive FTP Prive FTP Prive FTP Prive General Descent Control Password Password Password Password Orden: Use UTF-8 to Display Name FTP Prive FTP Prive Content Use UTF-8 to Display Name FTP			
User Manifesance Output/Control User Manifesance User Manifesance User Manifesance User Manifesance User Manifesance Department ID Management Betrop Ma			
DubputControl Use FTP Prive > Ubitly Menu FTP Print User Namo: pusol > Device Control Bet/Change Pasowood > Dupartment ID Maxagement Maxagement (Max 24 characters) > Deprive ND Maxagement Confirm: (Max 24 characters) > Skoutly Display Settings for FTP Print Job Name (Max 24 characters) > License/Other Display Settings for FTP Print Job Name Import Expont > License/Other TTP Settings Import Privet Job > TTP Settings Allow Setting via FTP		FTP Print Settings	
Utility More Device Control Device Control Set/Change Password Set/Change Password Password Password Password Outraction Confirm: Confirm: Confirm: Confirm: Outraction Max 24 characters) Max 24 characters) Max 24 characters) Display Settings for FTP Print Job Name Display Settings for FTP Print Job Name Locense/Other ThP Settings Allow Setting via FTP		Use FTP Print	
Benice Control BeliChange Pasaword Pasaword Pasaword Pasaword Pasaword Pasaword Control Control Control Department ID Management Department Department De		FTP Print User Namo: guant	
Bit Department Settings Conferrer (Max 24 churacters) Bit Department ID Management Conferrer (Max 24 churacters) Bit Settings Elizense/Other Elizense/Other License/Other FTP Settings Elizense/Other Allow Setting via FTP Allow Setting via FTP		Bet/Change Paseword	
Security Display Settings for FTP Prior Job Name Use UTF-8 to Display Name of FTP Prior Job FTP Settings Allow Setting via FTP	Management Settings	Password:	(Max 24 characters)
ImportExport Display Settings for FTP Print Job Name LocesseOther TP Settings Allow Setting via FTP	Department ID Management	Confirm:	(Max 24 characters)
Import Sport Use UTF-8 to Display Name of FTP Print Job FTP Settings Allow Setting via FTP	 Security 		
ETP Settings	0 ImportiExport		
Allow Setting via FTP	II License/Other	Use UTF-8 to Display Name of FTP Print Job	
		FTP Settings	
		Allow Setting via FTP	
		-	
		~	Cepvient CANCIN INC. 201

[Use FTP Print]

To perform printing via FTP client, select the check box. Otherwise, clear the check box.

[FTP Print User Name]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the user name used to log on to the FTP server when performing FTP Print.

NOTE:

• You cannot set "root."

[Set/Change Password]

Select the check box to set the FTP Print password, and enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the password in the [Password] text box. For confirmation, enter the same password in the [Confirm] text box.

NOTE:

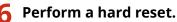
• If you click [OK] with the check box selected and the [Password] and [Confirm] text boxes left blank, the currently set password is deleted.

[Use UTF-8 to Display Name of FTP Print Job]

Select the check box if you are using UTF-8 character code for the name of the file to be printed.

[Allow Setting via FTP]

Select the check box to allow setting changes of the machine via FTP client. When not allowing setting changes, clear the check box.



• Click [Device Control], select [Hard Reset], and then click [Execute].

		U 8 1
C 8 http://132.068.1.81/findered	rlegi	P+16X 0 ☆ 0
Reads 0 107101-10701		To Portel Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Output/Control: Device Control	
Control Menu	Device Control	Last Updated: 29/06 2015 07:48:46
Paper Source Settings Network Layout Print Quality	Select the device control from the below options, and class [Execute],	
D User Maintenance	Device Control	
Culput Control	Device Control Options:)
Management Settings IS Department ID Management IS Security	×	
ii ImportiTaport		

The settings are enabled after the hard reset is performed.

NOTE

Using the operation panel

• You can also enable or disable FTP print, and FTP settings from the setting menu of the operation panel. **FTP(P. 379)**

LINKS

Printing via FTP Client (FTP Print)(P. 605)
 Specifying Settings via FTP Client(P. 607)

Printing via FTP Client (FTP Print)

0X7U-08A

Documents in TEXT/JPEG/TIFF format can be printed from FTP clients via network. Check the IP address set to the machine in advance (**Network Status Print(P. 536)**). If you are unsure of the IP address, contact your network administrator.

Start [Command Prompt].

• Open the [Start] menu and select [All Programs] or [Programs] > [Accessory] > [Command Prompt].

NOTE:

For Mac OS users

Start the Terminal.

For UNIX users

- Display the console screen.
- 2 Copy a document that you want to print to the directory displayed in Command Prompt.
- In an example of a screen, the document is copied into the "USER_NAME" folder in [Users] on drive C:.

Command Prompt	- 2 -
Microzoft Vindovz (Verzian 6.1.7681) Copyright (c) 2009 Microzoft Corporation. All rightz rezerved.	<u></u>
CINDSOVSNUSER_NAME>	
	•

3 Enter "ftp <IP address of the machine>" and press the [ENTER] key.

• Example: ftp 192.168.1.45



Enter the FTP Print user name and press the [ENTER] key.

• The default user name is "guest".

NOTE:

• Anonymous (a user with no account) cannot be used to log on.

5 Enter the FTP Print password and press the [ENTER] key.

- The default password is "7654321".
 - "> "230 User <FTP Print user name> logged in." is displayed.

Command Prompt - ftp 192.168.1.84	
CIVUzerzVUSER_WAME)ftp 192.168.1.84 Connected to 192.168.1.84. 220 Connection established. Uzer (192.1681.1.84(fones)) guest 331 Faszwordi Faszwordi Faszwordi 230 Uzer guest logged in. ftp)_	Ē

Enter "bin" and press the [ENTER] key.

The data transfer mode is changed to binary mode.

NOTE:

• You also need to specify binary mode when printing a text document.



- **Example:** put sample.txt
 - The document is printed.
- **8** Enter "quit" and press the [ENTER] key.
- **9** Enter "exit" and press the [ENTER] key.

Specifying Settings via FTP Client

0X7U-08C

You can specify settings, such as the network settings of the machine, from an FTP client via TCP/IP network. Check the IP address set to the machine in advance (**Network Status Print(P. 536)**). If you are unsure of the IP address, contact your network administrator.

Start [Command Prompt].

• Open the [Start] menu and select [All Programs] or [Programs] > [Accessories] > [Command Prompt].

NOTE:

For Mac OS users

• Start the Terminal.

For UNIX users

• Display the console screen.

Enter "ftp <IP address of the machine>" and press the [ENTER] key.

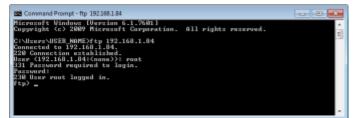
• Example: ftp 192.168.1.45

3 Enter "root" for the user name and press the [ENTER] key.

1 Enter the System Manager password and press the [ENTER] key.

• The default password is "7654321". **OSetting the System Manager Password(P. 253)**

*** "230 User root logged in." is displayed.

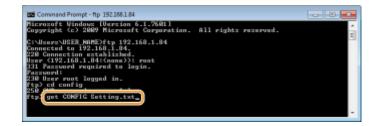


5 Enter "cd config" and press the [ENTER] key.

6 Enter "get CONFIG <file name>" and press the [ENTER] key.

- "CONFIG" must be all uppercase.
- Any characters can be used in <file name> (example: get CONFIG Setting.txt).

The setting file is downloaded to the directory that is displayed when Command Prompt is started. In an example of a screen, the file is downloaded to the "USER_NAME" folder in [Users] on drive C:.



7 Edit the downloaded config file by using the text editor such as Notepad.

List of config file setting items

General Menu (General Settings)

Item Name	Setting Value	Factory Default Setting
DEVICE_NAME (Device Name)	Up to 128 characters	LBP352x/LBP351x
SYS_LOC (Location)	Up to 128 characters	(Blank)
SYS_CONTACT (System Manager)	Up to 32 characters	(Blank)
ROOT_PWD (System Manager Password)	Up to 16 alphanumeric characters	7654321
USER_JOB_CONT (Allow End-User's Job Operation)	ON, OFF	OFF
LINK_URL1 (Support Link URL)	Up to 512 alphanumeric characters	http://www.canon.com

TCP/IP Menu (TCP/IP Settings)

Item Name	Setting Value	Factory Default Setting
INT_ADDR (IP Address)	IP Address	0.0.0.0
NET_MASK (Subnet Mask)	IP Address	0.0.0.0
DEF_GW (Gateway Address)	IP Address	0.0.0.0
DHCP_ENB (Use DHCP)	ON, OFF	OFF
RARP_ENB (Use RARP)	ON, OFF	OFF
BOOTP_ENB (Use BOOTP)	ON, OFF	OFF
DNS_PADDR	IP Address	0.0.0.0

(Primary DNS Server Address)		
DNS_SADDR (Secondary DNS Server Address)	IP Address	0.0.0.0
HOST_NAME (Host Name)	Up to 47 alphanumeric characters	"Canon"+ "Lower 6 digits of MAC address"
DOMAIN_NAME (Domain Name)	Up to 47 alphanumeric characters	(Blank)
DDNS_ENB (DNS Dynamic Update)	ON, OFF	OFF
WINS_ENB (WINS Resolution)	ON, OFF	OFF
WINS_SERVER (WINS Server Address)	IP Address	0.0.0.0
ARP_PING_ENB (Use ARP/PING)	ON, OFF	ON
LPD_ENB (Use LPD Printing)	ON, OFF	ON
LPD_BANN (Print LPD Banner Page)	ON, OFF	OFF
RAW_ENB (Use RAW Printing)	ON, OFF	ON
RAW_BIDIR_ENB (Use Bidirectional Communication)	ON, OFF	OFF
FTP_PRINT_ENB (Use FTP Print)	ON, OFF	OFF
FTP_PRINT_USER (FTP Print User Name)	Up to 24 alphanumeric characters	guest
FTP_PRINT_PWD (FTP Print Password)	Up to 24 alphanumeric characters	7654321
IPP_ENB (Use IPP)	ON, OFF	ON
IPP_AUTH_ENB (Use IPP Authentication)	ON, OFF	OFF
IPP_AUTH_ACCUNT1 (IPP Authentication User Name)	Up to 24 alphanumeric characters (mandatory when using IPP authentication)	guest
IPP_AUTH_PASSWD1 (IPP Authentication Password)	Up to 24 alphanumeric characters (mandatory when using IPP authentication)	7654321
WSD_ENB (Use WSD Printing)	ON, OFF	OFF
WSD_BROWSING (Use WSD Browsing)	ON, OFF	OFF
WSD_MULTICAST_ DISCOVERY (Use Multicast Discovery)	ON, OFF	OFF

HTTP_ENB (Use HTTP)	ON, OFF	ON
SNTP_ENB (Use SNTP)	ON, OFF	OFF
SNTP_ADDR (NTP Server Name)	IP address or host name	(Blank)
SNTP_INTERVAL (Polling Interval)	1 to 48 (hr.)	24
DISCOVERY_ENB (Respond to Discovery)	ON, OFF	ON
DISCOVERY_SCOPE_NAME (Scope Name)	Up to 32 alphanumeric characters	default
EMAIL_PRINT_ENB (POP3 RX)	ON, OFF	OFF
EMAIL_POP_ADDR (POP3 Server Name)	Up to 48 alphanumeric characters	(Blank)
EMAIL_POP_ACCOUNT (POP3 User Name)	Up to 32 alphanumeric characters	(Blank)
EMAIL_POP_PASSWD (POP3 Password)	Up to 32 alphanumeric characters	(Blank)
EMAIL_POP_INTERVAL (POP3 RX Interval)	0 to 90 (min.)	0
EMAIL_POP_PORTNO (POP3 Server Port Number)	0 to 65535	110
IPV4_USE (Use IPv4)	ON, OFF	ON
IPV6_USE (Use IPv6)	ON, OFF	OFF
IPV6_STATELESS_USE (Use Stateless Address)	ON, OFF	ON
IPV6_MANUAL_ADDR_USE (Use Manual Address)	ON, OFF	OFF
IPV6_MANUAL_ADDR_SET (IP Address)	IP Address	(Blank)
IPV6_MANUAL_ADDR_PREFIX (Prefix Length)	0 to 128	64
IPV6_MANUAL_ROUTER_ADDR (Default Router Address)	IP Address	(Blank)
IPV6_DHCPV6_USE (Use DHCPv6)	ON, OFF	OFF
IPV6_DNS_ADDRESS_PRI (Primary DNS Server Address)	IP Address	(Blank)
IPV6_DNS_ADDRESS_SEC (Secondary DNS Server Address)	IP Address	(Blank)

IPV6_DNS_NAME_ SAME_AS_IPV4 (Use IPv4 Host/Domain Names)	ON, OFF	OFF
IPV6_DNS_HOST_NAME_V6 (Host Name)	Up to 47 alphanumeric characters	"Canon"+ "Lower 6 digits of MAC address"
IPV6_DNS_DOMAIN_ NAME_V6 (Domain Name)	Up to 47 alphanumeric characters	(Blank)
IPV6_DNS_DYNAMIC_SET (DNS Dynamic Update)	ON, OFF	OFF
IPV6_DNS_STATELESS (Register Stateless Address)	ON, OFF	OFF
IPV6_DNS_MANUAL (Register Manual Address)	ON, OFF	OFF
IPV6_DNS_STATEFUL (Register Stateful Address)	ON, OFF	OFF

SMB Server Menu (SMB Settings)

Item Name	Setting Value	Factory Default Setting
SMB_ENB (Use SMB)	ON, OFF	OFF
SMB_SERVER (Server Name)	Up to 16 characters	(Blank)
SMB_WG (Workgroup Name)	Up to 16 characters	WORKGROUP
SMB_COMMENT (Comments)	Up to 192 characters	(Blank)
SMB_LM_ENB (Use LM Announce)	ON, OFF	OFF
SMB_PRINT_ENB (Use SMB Printing)	ON, OFF	OFF
SMB_PRINTER (Printer Name)	Up to 13 characters	PRINTER

SNMP Menu (SNMP Settings)

Item Name	Setting Value	Factory Default Setting
SNMP_V1_ENB (Use SNMPv1)	ON, OFF	ON
SNMP_COMMUNITY1_ ENB	ON, OFF	ON

(Use Community Name 1)		
SNMP_COMMUNITY1_ ACCESS (MIB Access Permission)	RW (Read/Write), RO (Read Only)	RO
SNMP_COMMUNITY1_ NAME (Community Name 1)	Up to 32 alphanumeric characters	public
SNMP_COMMUNITY2_ ENB (Use Community Name 2)	ON, OFF	OFF
SNMP_COMMUNITY2_ ACCESS (MIB Access Permission)	RW (Read/Write), RO (Read Only)	RO
SNMP_COMMUNITY2_ NAME (Community Name 2)	Up to 32 alphanumeric characters	public2
SNMP_V3_ENB (Use SNMPv3)	ON, OFF	OFF
SNMP_GET_PRT_MNG_ INFO (Obtain Printer Management Information from Host)	ON, OFF	OFF

SPOOLER Menu (Spool Settings)

Item Name	Setting Value	Factory Default Setting
SPOOL_ENB (Use Spooler)	ON, OFF	OFF

START TIMER Menu (Waiting Time for Connection at Startup)

Item Name	Setting Value	Factory Default Setting
STRT_DELAY_TIME (Waiting Time for Connection at Startup)	0 to 300 (sec.)	0

RUI Menu (Remote UI Settings)

Item Name	Setting Value	Factory Default Setting
RUI_ENB (Use Remote UI)	ON, OFF	ON

8 Enter "put <file name> CONFIG" and press the [ENTER] key.

- Specify the edited file name in <file name> (example: put Setting.txt CONFIG).
 - The setting file is uploaded.

9 Enter "get reset" and press the [ENTER] key.

The machine is restarted. The settings are enabled after the machine is restarted.

10 Confirm that the machine has been normally restarted, press [C] key while holding down the [CTRL] key.

- **1** Enter "quit" and press the [ENTER] key.
- **12** Enter "exit" and press the [ENTER] key.

LINKS

Network(P. 375)

This section describes basic Windows operations and includes disclaimers, copyright information, and other information.

Basic Windows Operations

0X7U-08J

Displaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)

Enabling [Network discovery](P. 615)

Displaying Shared Printers in the Print Server(P. 616)

Displaying the Setup Screen of Instruction Manual DVD-ROM(P. 616)

OPrinting a Test Page in Windows(P. 617)

Checking the Bit Architecture(P. 618)

Checking the Printer Port(P. 618)

Checking Bidirectional Communication(P. 619)

Displaying [Local Area Connection Properties](P. 620)

Displaying the Printer Folder

Windows Vista [Start] > select [Control Panel] > [Printer].

Windows 7/Server 2008 R2 [Start] > select [Devices and Printers].

Windows 8/Server 2012 Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [Control Panel] > [View devices and printers].

Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2 Right-click [Start] > select [Control Panel] > [View devices and printers].

Windows Server 2008 [Start] ▶ select [Control Panel] ▶ double-click [Printers].

Windows Server 2003

[Start] > select [Printers and Faxes].

Enabling [Network discovery]

If you are using Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012, enable [Network discovery] to view the computers on your network.

Windows Vista

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > [View network status and tasks] > select [Turn on network discovery] under [Network discovery].

Windows 7/Server 2008 R2

[Start] ▶ select [Control Panel] ▶ [View network status and tasks] ▶ [Change advanced sharing settings] ▶ select [Turn on network discovery] under [Network discovery].

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [Control Panel] > [View network status and tasks] [Change advanced sharing settings] > select [Turn on network discovery] under [Network discovery].

Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2

Right-click [Start] ▶ select [Control Panel] ▶ [View network status and tasks] ▶ [Change advanced sharing settings] ▶ select [Turn on network discovery] under [Network discovery].

Windows Server 2008

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > double-click [Network and Sharing Center] > select [Turn on network discovery] under [Network discovery].

Displaying Shared Printers in the Print Server

Open Windows Explorer.

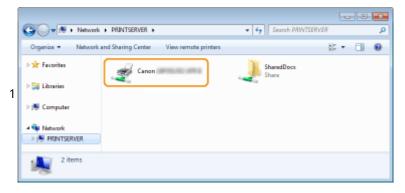
Windows Vista/7/Server 2003/Server 2008
[Start] ▶ select [All Programs] or [Programs] ▶ [Accessories] ▶ [Windows Explorer].
Windows 8/Server 2012
Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen ▶ select [File Explorer].
Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2
Right-click [Start] ▶ select [File Explorer].

2 Select [Network] or [My Network Places] in printer server.

• To view computers on the network, you may need to turn on network discovery or search the network for computers.



Shared printers are displayed.



Displaying the Setup Screen of Instruction Manual DVD-ROM

If your computer does not display the setup screen after the Instruction Manual DVD-ROM is inserted, follow the procedure below. The DVD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The DVD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.

Windows Vista/7/Server 2008

```
[Start] > enter "D:\Maninst.exe" in [Search programs and files] or [Start Search] > press the [ENTER] key.
```

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen ▶ [Run] ▶ Enter "D:\Maninst.exe" ▶ click [OK]

Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2

Right-click [Start] > [Run] > Enter "D:\Maninst.exe" > click [OK]

Windows Server 2003

[Start] > [Run] > enter "D:\Maninst.exe" > click [OK]

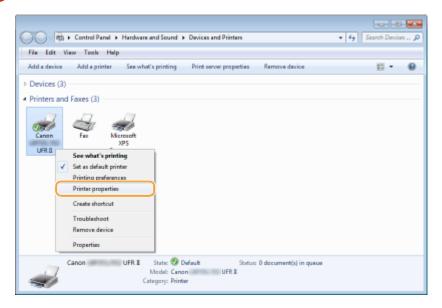
Printing a Test Page in Windows

You can check whether the printer driver is operational by printing a test page in Windows.

Load A4 size paper in the paper drawer or multi-purpose tray. **O**Loading Paper(P. 37)

2 Open the printer folder. **O**Displaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)

3 Right-click your printer icon and click [Printer properties] or [Properties].



4 Click [Print Test Page] in [General] tab.

Canon UFR II Properties		
General Rating Pots Advanced	Color Management Security Device Settings Profile	
Canon U	FRE	
Location		
Comments		
Model: Canon UR Features	RI	
Color: No	Paper available:	
Double-sided: Yes	Al A	
Staple: No Speed:	Envelope No. 10 (COM10)	
Maximum resolution: 1200 dpi		
Pref	ferences Print Test Page	
		_
	OK Cancel Apply He	þ

The test page is printed.

Checking the Bit Architecture

If you are not sure whether your computer is running 32-bit or 64-bit Windows, follow the procedure below.

Display [Control Panel].

Windows Vista/7/Server 2008
[Start] ► select [Control Panel].
Windows 8/Server 2012
Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen ► select [Control Panel].

Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2

Right-click [Start] > select [Control Panel].

2 Display [System].

Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008 R2/Server 2012 Click [System and Maintenance] or [System and Security] > [System].

Windows Server 2008 Double-click [System].

3 Check the bit architecture.

For 32-bit versions [32-bit Operating System] is displayed.

For 64-bit versions [64-bit Operating System] is displayed.

~~~				
Control Panel + /	All Control Panel Items + System	n v 4	Search Control Panel	Q
File Edit View Tools Help				
Control Panel Home Device Manager Remote settings System protection Advanced system settings	View basic information Windows edition Windows 7 Ultimate Copyright © 2009 Microsof Service Pack 1	about your computer tt Corporation. All rights reserv	ed.	0
	System		1	E
	Rating:	4,5 Your Windows Experie	nce Index needs to be refreshed	
See also	Processor: Installed memory (RAM): System type	Intel(R) Core(TM)2 Duo CPU 5.00 GB (3.48 GB usable) 32-bit Operating System	86850 @ 3.00 GHz 3.00 GHz	
	Pen and Touch	No Pen or Touch Input is ava	lable for this Display	
Action Center Windows Update	Computer name, domain, and	workgroup settings		- 11
Performance Information and	Computer name:	1.785	😵 Change settings	
Tools	Full computer name:	4.788		
	and the second second			1

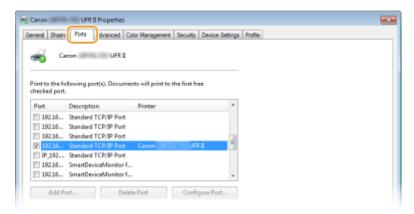
## Checking the Printer Port

Open the printer folder. ODisplaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)

**2** Right-click your printer icon and click [Printer properties] or [Properties].

C	* <b>*</b> 7	Search Devia	
File Edit View Tools Help			
Add a device Add a printer See what's printing Print server properties Remove device		- 6 <u>8</u>	0
<ul> <li>▷ Devices (3)</li> <li>Printers and Faxes (3)</li> <li>Canon</li> <li>Fax</li> <li>Mercoarth 3P5</li> <li>UFRI</li> <li>See what's printing</li> <li>Set as default printer</li> <li>Printer properties</li> <li>Create shortout</li> <li>Troublashoet</li> <li>Rarmova device</li> <li>Properties</li> </ul>			
Canon UFR II State: O Default Status: D document(x) in queue Model: Canon UFR II Catagony: Printer			

**3** In the [Ports] tab, check that the port is selected correctly.



- Checking Bidirectional Communication
  - **1** Open the printer folder. **O**Displaying the Printer Folder(P. 615)
  - **2** Right-click your printer icon and click [Printer properties] or [Properties].

Good Band      Hardware and Sound      Devices and Printers	• • • Search Devices p
File Edit View Tools Help	
Add a device Add a printer See what's printing Print server properties Remove device	23 · 0
<ul> <li>▷ Devices (3)</li> <li>Printers and Faxes (3)</li> <li>Grant Fax</li> <li>Wereouth 295</li> <li>UFRI</li> <li>See what's printing ✓ Set as default printer Printer properties Create shortcut Troubleshoot Remove device Properties</li> </ul>	
Canon UFR II State: I Default State: Default State: Default Odocument(s) in queue Model: Cenon UFR II Cetegory: Printer	

**3** In the [Ports] tab, make sure that the [Enable bidirectional support] check box is selected.

Canon Imm	UFR II Properties						
ieneral Shar	in Pots dvanced	Color Management	Security Device Settings	Profile			
-9 <b>1</b> 0	Canon UFR1	_	ne first free				
checked po		Printer					
192.16.		1					
192.16.	Standard TCP/IP Por	t					
	. Standard TCP/IP Por						
	<ul> <li>Standard TCP/IP Por</li> <li>Standard TCP/IP Por</li> </ul>		UFRI				
	<ul> <li>SmartDeviceMonitor</li> </ul>						
Read and a second second	. SmartDeviceMonitor		-				
⊽ Enable bi	Port. Di idirectional support	elete Port	Configure Port				
				ок	Cancal	Apply	Help

## Displaying [Local Area Connection Properties]

### **Windows Vista**

- 1 Open the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and click [View network status and tasks] > [Manage network connections].
- 2 Right-click the [Local Area Connection] icon, and click [Properties] in the pop-up menu.

### Windows 7/Server 2008 R2

- **1** Open the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and click [View network status and tasks] > [Change adapter settings].
- 2 Right-click the [Local Area Connection] icon, and click [Properties] in the pop-up menu.

### Windows 8/Server 2012

- **1** Right-click the lower left corner of the screen **>** Select [Control Panel], and click [View network status and tasks] **>** [Change adapter settings].
- 2 Right-click the [Local Area Connection] icon, and click [Properties] in the pop-up menu.

### Windows Server 2008

- **1** Open the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], double-click the [Network and Sharing Center] tab, and then click [Manage network connections].
- 2 Right-click the [Local Area Connection] icon, and click [Properties] in the pop-up menu.

### Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2

- **1** Right-click the [Start] > Select [Control Panel], and click [View network status and tasks] > [Change adapter settings].
- 2 Right-click the [Local Area Connection] icon, and click [Properties] in the pop-up menu.

### Windows Server 2003

- 1 Open the [Start] menu, and click [Control Panel] ▶ [Network Connections] ▶ [Local Area Connection].
- 2 Click [Properties].

## For Mac OS Users

Your machine may have not come with a printer driver for Mac OS depending on when you purchased the machine. The printer drivers are uploaded to the Canon website when they become needed. Check the operating system of your computer and download the appropriate printer driver from the Canon website. For the printer driver installation procedure and how to operate the driver, see the "Canon UFR II/UFRII LT Printer Driver Guide".

In the e-Manual and Printer Driver Installation Guide, methods to operate in the Windows environment are explained as examples. To view how to use the printer drivers and utility for Mac OS, see the following guide or help.

Object	Reference
Installing the Printer Driver	Getting Started
	Canon UFR II/UFRII LT Printer Driver Guide
	Canon PS Printer Driver Guide
Using each feature	• Printer Driver's Help
	Canon UFR II/UFRII LT Printer Driver Guide
	Canon PS Printer Driver Guide

## NOTE

### Using RAW as the printing protocol

• When adding a printer during printer driver installation, select [HP Jetdirect - Socket] (or [Socket/HP Jet Direct]).

## Displaying the Printer Driver Guide

Double-click the following HTML file in the [Documents] folder on the supplied DVD-ROM.

**Canon UFR II/UFRII LT Printer Driver Guide / Canon PS Printer Driver Guide** [Documents]-[XXXXXX]^{*}-[Guide]-[index.html]

* For [XXXXXX], select your desired language.

## Displaying the Printer Driver's Help

Click [ 🕐 ] on the printer driver.

## **Font Samples**

0X7U-08S

The fonts lists printed from the Utility menu are a comprehensive listing of all fonts currently available. The listing contains the names and print samples of the fonts stored on the printer.

Scalable Fonts (PCL)(P. 624)
OCR Code Scalable Fonts (PCL) (P. 627)
Bitmapped Fonts (PCL)(P. 627)

## Scalable Fonts (PCL)

Courier	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
CG Times	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
CG Times Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
CG Times Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
CG Times Bold Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
CG Omega	abcdefghijkLmnopQRSTUVWXYZ
CG Omega Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
CG Omega Italic	abcdefghijklmnopqRstUVWXYZ
CG Omega Bold Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Coronet	ABCZETGAIJKLIMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Clarendon Condensed Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Univers Medium	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Univers Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Univers Medium Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ
Univers Bold Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ
Univers Condensed Medium	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ
Univers Condensed Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ
Univers Condensed Medium Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ
Univers Condensed Bold Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ
Antique Olive	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Antique Olive Bold	ABCDEFCHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Antique Olive Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Garamond Antiqua	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Garamond Halbfett	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Garamond Kursiv	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Garamond Kursiv Halbfett	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Marigold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ
Albertus Medium	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Albertus Extra Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Ryadh	ABCDEFGHUKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Ryadh Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Malka	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Malka Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Malka Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Dorit	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Dorit Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Naamit	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Naamit Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Arial	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Arial Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Arial Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Arial Bold Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Times New Roman	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Times New Roman Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Times New Roman Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Times New Roman Bold Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Helvetica	ABCDEFGHUKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Helvetica Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Helvetica Oblique	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Helvetica Bold Oblique	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Helvetica Narrow	ABCDEFGHUKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Helvetica Narrow Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Helvetica Narrow Oblique	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Palatino Roman	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Palatino Bold	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Palatino Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Palatino Bold Italic	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ITC Bookman Light
ITC Bookman Demi
ITC Bookman Light Italic
ITC Bookman Demi Italic
New Century Schoolbook Roman
New Century Schoolbook Bold
New Century Schoolbook Italic
New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic
Times Roman
Times Bold
Times Italic
Times Bold Italic
ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic
Symbol
SymbolPS
Wingdings
ITC Zapf Dingbats
Courier Bold
Courier Italic
Courier Bold Italic
Letter Gothic
Letter Gothic Bold
Letter Gothic Italic
Naskh
Naskh Bold
Koufi
Koufi Bold
CourierPS
CourierPS Bold
CourierPS Oblique
CourierPS Bold Oblique

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHUKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ RECDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ ΑΒΧΔΕΦΓΗΙΘΚΑΜΝΟΠΘΡΣΤΥςΩΞΨΖ ΑΒΧΔΕΦΓΗΙΦΚΑΜΝΟΠΘΡΣΤΥςΩΞΨΖ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ

## OCR Code Scalable Fonts (PCL)

OCR-A	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOP@RSTUVWXYZ
OCR-B	ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

## Bitmapped Fonts (PCL)

Line Printer (10U)	ABCDEFGHIJKſóúňŇ≛ź⊬~%‰i«∞
Line Printer (8U)	ABCDEFGHIJKÅÅÉÉEÍI
Line Printer (0N)	ABCDEFGHIJKj¢£¤¥¦§∵©≠≪¬∞®⁻
Line Printer (11U)	ABCDEFGHIJKíóúňŇöÖzäÄťh;'¤
Line Printer (12U)	ABCDEFGHIJKíóúňŇ≠≥¿⊜⊸∜ki≪»
Line Printer (1U)	ABCDEFGH1JK
Line Printer (2N)	ABCDEFGH1JKĄ~٤ĽŚ§~ŠŞŤŹ-ŹŻ
Line Printer (5N)	ABCDEFGHIJKi¢£¤¥¦§∵¢≀⊷∞"
Line Printer (6N)	ABCDEFGHIJKAĒĢĪĪĶSĻDŠTŽ-ŪŊ
Line Printer (9N)	ABCDEFGHIJKi¢£€¥క్§క≊ి∝ా∞లా

### Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name(s) in parentheses () may be registered instead. LBP352x/LBP351x (F168200)

## ■ EMC requirements of EC Directive

This equipment conforms with the essential EMC requirements of EC Directive. We declare that this product conforms with the EMC requirements of EC Directive at nominal mains input 230 V, 50 Hz although the rated input of the product is 220 to 240 V, 50/60 Hz. Use of shielded cable is necessary to comply with the technical EMC requirements of EC Directive.

## Laser Safety

This product is confirmed as a Class 1 laser product in IEC60825-1:2007 and EN60825-1:2007.



CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT LASER KLASSE 1 APPAREIL À LASER DE CLASSE 1 APPARECCHIO LASER DI CLASSE 1 PRODUCTO LÁSER DE CLASE 1 APARELHO A LASER DE CLASSE 1 LUOKAN 1 LASER-TUOTE LASERPRODUKT KLASS 1

## 

Use of controls, adjustments, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

### ■ WEEE Directive / Rule



Only for European Union and EEA (Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

These symbols indicate that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2012/19/EU), the Battery Directive (2006/66/EC) and/or national legislation implementing those Directives.

If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol shown above, in accordance with the Battery Directive, this indicates that a heavy metal (Hg = Mercury, Cd = Cadmium, Pb = Lead) is present in this battery or accumulator at a concentration above an applicable threshold specified in the Battery Directive.

This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE) and batteries and accumulators. Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. Your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources.

For more information about the recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved scheme or your household waste disposal service or visit **www.canon-europe.com/weee**, or **www.canon-europe.com/weee**.

### India only

This product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the e-waste (Management and Handling) Rules, 2011. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE). Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible negative impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. At the same time, your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information regarding return and recycling of WEEE products, please visit http://www.canon.co.in/environment.

Also, this product complies with the "India E-waste Rule 2011" and prohibits use of lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium, polybrominated biphenyls or polybrominated diphenyl ethers in concentrations exceeding 0.1 % by weight and 0.01 % by weight for Cadmium, except for the exemptions set in Schedule II of the Rule.



### ■ IPv6 Ready Logo



The protocol stack included in this machine has obtained the IPv6 Ready Logo Phase-2 established by the IPv6 Forum.

## Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images

Using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce certain documents, and the use of such images as scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced by your product, may be prohibited by law and may result in criminal and/or civil liability. A non-exhaustive list of these documents is set forth below. This list is intended to be a guide only. If you are uncertain about the legality of using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce any particular document, and/or of the use of the images scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced, you should consult in advance with your legal advisor for guidance.

- Paper Money
- Travelers Checks
- Money Orders
- Food Stamps
- Certificates of Deposit
- Passports
- Postage Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Immigration Papers
- Identifying Badges or Insignias
- Internal Revenue Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Selective Service or Draft Papers
- Bonds or Other Certificates of Indebtedness
- Checks or Drafts Issued by Governmental Agencies
- Stock Certificates
- Motor Vehicle Licenses and Certificates of Title
- Copyrighted Works/Works of Art without Permission of Copyright Owner

### Disclaimers

- The information in this document is subject to change without notice.
- CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THEREOF, WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, OR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MATERIAL.

## Copyright

### Copyright CANON INC. 2019

No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Canon Inc.

## Trademarks

"MEAP" is a trademark of CANON Inc., referring to an "application platform" for Canon multifunction and single function printers.

Adobe, Acrobat, and Reader are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Apple, Bonjour, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, Mac OS, Mac OS X and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc. Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows Server, Internet Explorer, Word and Excel are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Google Cloud Print, Google Chrome, Android, Google Docs and Gmail are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Google Inc.

This product contains the Universal Font Scaling Technology or UFST® under license from Monotype Imaging, Inc. UFST® is a trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc. registered in the United States Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

UFST: Copyright © 1989 - 1996, 1997, 2003, 2004, 2008, all rights reserved, by Monotype Imaging Inc.



Java and all Java based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.



Adobe, PostScript, and the PostScript logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Copyright © 2007 -08 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Protected by U.S. Patents 5,737,599; 5,781,785; 5,819,301; 5,929,866; 5,943,063; 6,073,148; 6,515,763; 6,639,593; 6,754,382; 7,046,403; 7,213,269; 7,242,415; Patents pending in the U.S. and other countries.

All instances of the name PostScript in the text are references to the PostScript language as defined by Adobe Systems Incorporated unless otherwise stated. The name PostScript also is used as a product trademark for Adobe Systems' implementation of the PostScript language interpreter.

Except as otherwise stated, any reference to a "PostScript printing device," "PostScript display device," or similar item refers to a printing device, display device or item (respectively) that contains PostScript technology created or licensed by Adobe Systems Incorporated and not to devices or items that purport to be merely compatible with the PostScript language.

Adobe, the Adobe logo, PostScript, the PostScript logo, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds. Microsoft and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

All other product and brand names are registered trademarks, trademarks or service marks of their respective owners.

## **Office Locations**

0X7U-08X

### **CANON INC.**

30-2, Shimomaruko 3-chome, Ohta-ku, Tokyo 146-8501, Japan

### CANON MARKETING JAPAN INC.

16-6, Konan 2-chome, Minato-ku, Tokyo 108-8011, Japan

### **CANON U.S.A., INC.**

One Canon Park, Melville, NY 11747, U.S.A.

### **CANON EUROPA N.V.**

Bovenkerkerweg 59, 1185 XB Amstelveen, The Netherlands

### CANON SINGAPORE PTE LTD

1 Fusionopolis Place, #15-10, Galaxis, Singapore 138522

### **CANON AUSTRALIA PTY LTD**

Building A, The Park Estate, 5 Talavera Road, Macquarie Park, NSW 2113, Australia

### **CANON GLOBAL WORLDWIDE SITES**

http://www.canon.com/

This Font Software is licensed under the SIL Open Font License, Version 1.1.

This license is copied below, and is also available with a FAQ at: http://scripts.sil.org/OFL

_____

SIL OPEN FONT LICENSE Version 1.1 - 26 February 2007

_____

### PREAMBLE

The goals of the Open Font License (OFL) are to stimulate worldwide development of collaborative font projects, to support the font creation efforts of academic and linguistic communities, and to provide a free and open framework in which fonts may be shared and improved in partnership with others.

The OFL allows the licensed fonts to be used, studied, modified and redistributed freely as long as they are not sold by themselves. The fonts, including any derivative works, can be bundled, embedded, redistributed and/or sold with any software provided that any reserved names are not used by derivative works. The fonts and derivatives, however, cannot be released under any other type of license. The requirement for fonts to remain under this license does not apply to any document created using the fonts or their derivatives.

### DEFINITIONS

"Font Software" refers to the set of files released by the Copyright Holder(s) under this license and clearly marked as such. This may include source files, build scripts and documentation.

"Reserved Font Name" refers to any names specified as such after the copyright statement(s).

"Original Version" refers to the collection of Font Software components as distributed by the Copyright Holder(s).

"Modified Version" refers to any derivative made by adding to, deleting, or substituting -- in part or in whole -- any of the components of the Original Version, by changing formats or by porting the Font Software to a new environment.

"Author" refers to any designer, engineer, programmer, technical writer or other person who contributed to the Font Software.

### **PERMISSION & CONDITIONS**

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Font Software, to use, study, copy, merge, embed, modify, redistribute, and sell modified and unmodified copies of the Font Software, subject to the following conditions: 1) Neither the Font Software nor any of its individual components, in Original or Modified Versions, may be sold by itself.

2) Original or Modified Versions of the Font Software may be bundled, redistributed and/or sold with any software, provided that each copy contains the above copyright notice and this license. These can be included either as stand-alone text files, human-readable headers or in the appropriate machine-readable metadata fields within text or binary files as long as those fields can be easily viewed by the user.

3) No Modified Version of the Font Software may use the Reserved Font Name(s) unless explicit written permission is granted by the corresponding Copyright Holder. This restriction only applies to the primary font name as presented to the users.

4) The name(s) of the Copyright Holder(s) or the Author(s) of the Font Software shall not be used to promote, endorse or advertise any Modified Version, except to acknowledge the contribution(s) of the Copyright Holder(s) and the Author(s) or with their explicit written permission.

5) The Font Software, modified or unmodified, in part or in whole, must be distributed entirely under this license, and must not be distributed under any other license. The requirement for fonts to remain under this license does not apply to any document created using the Font Software.

### TERMINATION

This license becomes null and void if any of the above conditions are not met.

### DISCLAIMER

THE FONT SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHT, PATENT, TRADEMARK, OR OTHER RIGHT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE FONT SOFTWARE OR FROM OTHER DEALINGS IN THE FONT SOFTWARE.

### **Third-Party Services**

If you use third-party services through the PRODUCT, use of the services are subjected the conditions below.

When you access and/or obtain some third party content (such as text, images, videos, audios, or software) through the SOFTWARE, except as expressly permitted by the content owner or by applicable law, you may not (a) scrape, build databases or otherwise create permanent copies of such content, or keep cached copies longer than permitted by the cache header; (b) copy, translate, modify, create a derivative work of, sell, lease, lend, convey, distribute, publicly display or sublicense to any third party; (c) misrepresent the source or ownership; and (d) remove, obscure, or alter any copyright, trademark or other proprietary rights notices, falsify or delete any author attributions, legal notices or other labels of the origin or source of material.

### **Third Party Software**

This product includes third-party software modules. Use and distribution of this software modules, including any updates of such software modules (collectively, the "SOFTWARE") are subject to conditions (1) through (9) below.

- (1) You agree that you will comply with any applicable export control laws, restrictions or regulations of the countries involved in the event that this product including the SOFTWARE is shipped, transferred or exported into any country.
- (2) Rights holders of the SOFTWARE retain in all respects the title, ownership and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE. Except as expressly provided herein, no license or right, expressed or implied, is hereby conveyed or granted by rights holders of the SOFTWARE to you for any intellectual property of rights holders of the SOFTWARE.
- (3) You may use the SOFTWARE solely for use with the Canon product you purchased (the "PRODUCT").
- (4) You may not assign, sublicense, market, distribute, or transfer the SOFTWARE to any third party without prior written consent of rights holders of the SOFTWARE.
- (5) Notwithstanding the foregoing, you may transfer the SOFTWARE only when (a) you assign all of your rights to the PRODUCT and all rights and obligations under the conditions to transferee and (b) such transferee agrees to be bound by all these conditions.
- (6) You may not decompile, reverse engineer, disassemble or otherwise reduce the code of the SOFTWARE to human readable form.
- (7) You may not modify, adapt, translate, rent, lease or loan the SOFTWARE or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE.
- (8) You are not entitled to remove or make separate copies of the SOFTWARE from the PRODUCT.
- (9) The human-readable portion (the source code) of the SOFTWARE is not licensed to you.

Notwithstanding (1) through (9) above, in case you use third-party software modules accompanying the other conditions, these software modules are subject to the other conditions.

## The Software Subjected to the Other Conditions

Please refer to Table of Software and respective License terms below, for more detail and corresponding license conditions.

### Table of Software

Names of Software	License	Terms and Conditions
		of the License:
		See Page
Adobe PostScript 3		5
HttpClient2.0 Alpha1 Release	The Apache Software License, Version 1.1	12
Crypto API	Bouncy Castle License	14
expat	MIT License	15
J2ME		16
libjingle	The BSD License	17
MD4		18
NET-SNMP	The BSD License	19
OpenSSL	OpenSSL License / Original SSLeay License	26
	Java Servlet Implementation Classes Version	20
servlet.jar	2.1.1 Binary Code License	30

If you need source code of the following Software, please send email with the following information in English or Japanese at: <oipossg@canon.co.jp>

-Name of the model that you purchased.

-Product ID number labeled on the back of the main unit.

Please refer to Table of Software and respective License terms below, for more detail and corresponding license conditions

### Table of Software

Names of Software	License	Terms and Conditions	
		of the License:	
		See page	
Linux	GNU General Public License Version 2	32	
qlib	GNU Library General Public License Version	39	
	2.0		
glibc	GNU Lesser General Public License Version	54	
json-glib	2.1	04 	
OSGi Release 4	Eclipse Public License - v 1.0	63	

### Adobe PostScript 3

Copyright 2007-2008 Adobe Systems Incorporated and its licensors. All rights reserved.

Portions include software under the following terms:

This product contains either BSAFE and/or TIPEM software by RSA Security Inc.

Portions of Pool.c_Copyright 1987 - NeXT, Inc., and portions of Graphics.c_Copyright 1988 NeXT, Inc. as an unpublished work. All Rights Reserved.

The Apache Software License, Version 1.1

This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (<u>http://www.apache.org/</u>). Portions Copyright (c) 1998-2000 The Apache Software Foundation. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. The end-user documentation included with the redistribution, if any, must include the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (http://www.apache.org/)."

Alternately, this acknowledgment may appear in the software itself, if and wherever such third-party acknowledgments normally appear.

4. The names "Xerces" and "Apache Software Foundation" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact apache@apache.org.

5. Products derived from this software may not be called "Apache", nor may "Apache" appear in their name, without prior written permission of the Apache Software Foundation.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE APACHE SOFTWARE FOUNDATION OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software consists of voluntary contributions made by many individuals on behalf of the Apache Software Foundation and was originally based on software copyright (c) 1999, International Business Machines, Inc., http://www.ibm.com. For more information on the Apache Software Foundation, please see <a href="http://www.apache.org/">http://www.apache.org/</a>>.

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors. Portions Copyright (c) 1990 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Portions Copyright (c) 1985, 1986 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by James A. Woods, derived from original work by Spencer Thomas and Joseph Orost.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms are permitted provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph are duplicated in all such forms and that any documentation, advertising materials, and other materials related to such distribution and use acknowledge that the software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley. The name of the University may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ``AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTIBILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Portions Copyright (c) 1993 X Consortium

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS ORIMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THEX CONSORTIUM BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER INAN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR INCONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of the X Consortium shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from the X Consortium.

### NOTICE REGARDING SABLOTRON

March 27, 2003

Portions of this product are based on Modifications created from the Original Code known as the "Sablotron XSLT Processor". The Sablotron XSLT Processor is subject to the Mozilla Public License Version 1.1 (the "License"). You may obtain a copy of the License at http://www.mozilla.org/MPL/

Software distributed under the License is distributed on an "AS IS" basis, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, either express or implied. See the License for the specific language governing rights and limitations under the License.

The Original Code is the Sablotron XSLT Processor.

The Initial Developer of the Original Code is Ginger Alliance Ltd. Portions created by Ginger Alliance are Copyright (C) 2000 Ginger Alliance Ltd. All Rights Reserved.

Pursuant to sections 3.2 and 3.6 of the License, the Modifications created by Adobe Systems Incorporated are available as Source Code. The Modifications may be downloaded via the Internet from:

http://partners.adobe.com/asn/tech/xml/sablotron/index.jsp

The Original Code may be downloaded via the Internet from:

#### http://www.gingerall.org

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors. Portions Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1987, 1988, 1989, 1990, 1991, 1992, 1993, 1994 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote

products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Portions Copyright (c) 2001 by Andrei Alexandrescu. This code accompanies the book:

Alexandrescu, Andrei. "Modern C++ Design: Generic Programming and Design Patterns Applied". Copyright (c) 2001. Addison-Wesley.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute and sell this software for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation. The author or Addison-Welsey Longman make no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

Portions developed by the University of California, Berkeley.

Portions Copyright © 1991-2005 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified.

THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,

EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

Unicode and the Unicode logo are trademarks of Unicode, Inc., and may be registered in some jurisdictions. All other trademarks and registered trademarks mentioned herein are the property of their respective owners.

Adobe shall retain and reproduce, and require its Sublicensees to retain and reproduce JIM's following copyright notice within each copy of the licensed programs in any form, in whole or in part: "© 1981, 1990 JMI Consultants, Inc. All rights reserved."

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors. Portions Copyright (c) 1990, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Chris Torek.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS

OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### The Loki Library

Portions Copyright (c) 2001 by Andrei Alexandrescu // This code accompanies the book: Alexandrescu, Andrei. "Modern C++ Design: Generic Programming and Design Patterns Applied". Copyright (c) 2001. Addison-Wesley.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute and sell this software for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation. The author or Addison-Wesley Longman make no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

Updated Information/Additional Third Party Code Information available at http://www.adobe.com/go/thirdparty .

This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (http://www.apache.org/) and is subject to the following terms and conditions.

Copyright (c) 2001 The Apache Software Foundation. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. The end-user documentation included with the redistribution, if any, must include the following acknowledgement:

"This product includes software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (http://www.apache.org/)."

Alternately, this acknowledgement may appear in the software itself, if and wherever such third-party acknowledgements normally appear.

4. The names "The Jakarta Project", "Commons", "Xerces", "Crimson", "Velocity", and "Apache Software Foundation" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact apache@apache.org.

5. Products derived from this software may not be called "Jakarta", "Commons", "Xerces" "Crimson", "Velocity", or "Apache", nor may "Jakarta", "Commons", "Xerces" "Crimson", "Velocity", or "Apache" appear in their names without prior written permission of the Apache Group.

### NO WARRANTY

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE APACHE SOFTWARE FOUNDATION OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software consists of voluntary contributions made by many individuals on behalf of the Apache Software Foundation. For more information on the Apache Software Foundation, please see <a href="http://www.apache.org/">http://www.apache.org/</a>.

## COPYRIGHT INFORMATION

Copyright (c) 2000 The Legion Of The Bouncy Castle (http://www.bouncycastle.org)

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd and Clark Cooper Copyright (c) 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006 Expat maintainers.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## J2ME

Software is a "commercial item," as that term is defined in 48 C.F.R. 2.101 (Oct. 1995), consisting of "commercial computer software" and "commercial computer software documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212 (Sept. 1995).

Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 and 48 C.F.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4 (June 1995), all U.S. Government End Users acquire Software with only those rights set forth herein.

Copyright 2004--2007, Google Inc.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## MD4

"RSA Data Security, Inc. MD4 Message-Digest Algorithm"

Various copyrights apply to this package, listed in various separate parts below. Please make sure that you read all the parts. Up until 2001, the project was based at UC Davis, and the first part covers all code written during this time. From 2001 onwards, the project has been based at SourceForge, and Networks Associates Technology, Inc hold the copyright on behalf of the wider Net-SNMP community, covering all derivative work done since then. An additional copyright section has been added as Part 3 below also under a BSD license for the work contributed by Cambridge Broadband Ltd. to the project since 2001. An additional copyright section has been added as Part 4 below also under a BSD license for the work contributed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. to the project since 2003.

Code has been contributed to this project by many people over the years it has been in development, and a full list of contributors can be found in the README file under the THANKS section.

---- Part 1: CMU/UCD copyright notice: (BSD like) -----

Copyright 1989, 1991, 1992 by Carnegie Mellon University

Derivative Work - 1996, 1998-2000 Copyright 1996, 1998-2000 The Regents of the University of California

#### All Rights Reserved

Permission to use, copy, modify and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appears in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of CMU and The Regents of the University of California not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific written permission.

CMU AND THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA DISCLAIM ALL

WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL CMU OR THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM THE LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

---- Part 2: Networks Associates Technology, Inc copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2001-2003, Networks Associates Technology, Inc All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of the Networks Associates Technology, Inc nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 3: Cambridge Broadband Ltd. copyright notice (BSD) -----

Portions of this code are copyright (c) 2001-2003, Cambridge Broadband Ltd. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * The name of Cambridge Broadband Ltd. may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 4: Sun Microsystems, Inc. copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright © 2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc., 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara,

California 95054, U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Use is subject to license terms below.

This distribution may include materials developed by third parties.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of the Sun Microsystems, Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 5: Sparta, Inc copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2003-2005, Sparta, Inc All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of Sparta, Inc nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 6: Cisco/BUPTNIC copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2004, Cisco, Inc and Information Network Center of Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of Cisco, Inc, Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications, nor the names of their contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 7: Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG, 2003 oss@fabasoft.com Author: Bernhard Penz <bernhard.penz@fabasoft.com>

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the

documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* The name of Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG or any of its subsidiaries, brand or product names may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## **OpenSSL** License

-----

* ______ * Copyright (c) 1998-2011 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved. * Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without * modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions * are met: * 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. * 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright * notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in * the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. * 3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this * software must display the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/)"

- * 4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to
- * endorse or promote products derived from this software without
- * prior written permission. For written permission, please contact
- * openssl-core@openssl.org.

*

- * 5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL"
- * nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written
- * permission of the OpenSSL Project.
- *
- * 6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following
- * acknowledgment:
- * "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project
- * for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/)"

*

* THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT ``AS IS" AND ANY

* EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE
* IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR
* PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR
* ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL,
* SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT
* NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES;
* LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION)
* HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT,
* STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE)
* ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED

* OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

*

- * This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young
- * (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim
- * Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).
- *
- */

**Original SSLeay License** 

_____

/* Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)

- * All rights reserved.
- *
- * This package is an SSL implementation written
- * by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).

* The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

*

- * This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as
- * the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions
- * apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA,
- * Ihash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation
- * included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms
- * except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

*

- * Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in
- * the code are not to be removed.

* If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution

* as the author of the parts of the library used.

* This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or

* in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

*

* Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without

* modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions

* are met:

* 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright

* notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright

* notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the

* documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* 3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software

- * must display the following acknowledgement:
- * "This product includes cryptographic software written by
- * Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)"
- * The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the rouines from the library
- * being used are not cryptographic related :-).
- * 4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from
- * the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement:

* "This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

*

* THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG ``AS IS" AND

* ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE

* IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE

* ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE

* FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL

* DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS

* OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION)

* HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT

* LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY

* OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF

* SUCH DAMAGE.

*

* The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or

- * derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be
- * copied and put under another distribution licence

* [including the GNU Public Licence.]

*/

 Java Platform Interface. Licensee may not modify the Java Platform Interface (JPI, identified as classes contained within the javax package or any subpackages of the javax package), by creating additional classes within the JPI or otherwise causing the addition to or modification of the classes in the JPI. In the event that Licensee creates any Java-related API and distribute such API to others for applet or application development, you must promptly publish broadly, an accurate specification for such API for free use by all developers of Java-based software.

- 2. Restrictions. Software is confidential copyrighted information of Sun and title to all copies is retained by Sun and/or its licensors. Licensee shall not modify, decompile, disassemble, decrypt, extract, or otherwise reverse engineer Software. Software may not be leased, assigned, or sublicensed, in whole or in part. Software is not designed or intended for use in on-line control of aircraft, air traffic, aircraft navigation or aircraft communications; or in the design, construction, operation or maintenance of any nuclear facility. Licensee warrants that it will not use or redistribute the Software for such purposes.
- Disclaimer of Warranty. Software is provided "AS IS," without a warranty of any kind. ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED

REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE HEREBY EXCLUDED.

- 4. Termination. This License is effective until terminated. Licensee may terminate this License at any time by destroying all copies of Software. This License will terminate immediately without notice from Sun if Licensee fails to comply with any provision of this License. Upon such termination, Licensee must destroy all copies of Software.
- 5. Export Regulations. Software, including technical data, is subject to U.S. export control laws, including the U.S. Export Administration Act and its associated regulations, and may be subject to export or import regulations in other countries. Licensee agrees to comply strictly with all such regulations and acknowledges that it has the responsibility to obtain licenses to export, re-export, or import Software. Software may not be downloaded, or otherwise exported or re-exported (i) into, or to a national or resident of, Cuba, Iraq, Iran, North Korea, Libya, Sudan, Syria or any country to which the U.S. has embargoed goods; or (ii) to anyone on the U.S. Treasury Department's list of Specially Designated Nations or the U.S. Commerce Department's Table of Denial Orders.

# GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 2, June 1991 Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301, USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

## Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Lesser General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary.

To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

**D** TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION **0**. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

**1.** You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

**2.** You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

**a)** You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.

**b)** You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.

**c)** If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement

including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

**3.** You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:

**a)** Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

**b)** Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

**c)** Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

**4.** You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

**5.** You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

**6.** Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

**8.** If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

**9.** The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

**10.** If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

### NO WARRANTY

11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

one line to give the program's name and an idea of what it does. Copyright (C) *yyyy name of author* 

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301, USA.

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) *year name of author* Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type `show c' for details.

The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than `show w' and `show c'; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program 'Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker.

*signature of Ty Coon*, 1 April 1989 Ty Coon, President of Vice

This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License.

#### GNU LIBRARY GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

#### Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

[This is the first released version of the library GPL. It is numbered 2 because it goes with version 2 of the ordinary GPL.]

#### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users.

This license, the Library General Public License, applies to some specially designated Free Software Foundation software, and to any other libraries whose authors decide to use it. You can use it for your libraries, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link a program with the library, you must providecomplete object files to the recipients so that they can relink themwith the library, after making changes to the library and recompilingit. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

Our method of protecting your rights has two steps: (1) copyright the library, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

Also, for each distributor's protection, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free library. If the library is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original version, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that companies distributing free software will individually obtain patent licenses, thus in effect transforming the program into proprietary software. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License, which was designed for utility programs. This license, the GNU Library General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries. This license is quite different from the ordinary one; be sure to read it in full, and don't assume that anything in it is the same as in the ordinary license.

The reason we have a separate public license for some libraries is that they blur the distinction we usually make between modifying or adding to a program and simply using it. Linking a program with a library, without changing the library, is in some sense simply using the library, and is analogous to running a utility program or application program. However, in a textual and legal sense, the linked executable is a combined work, a derivative of the original library, and the ordinary General Public License treats it as such. Because of this blurred distinction, using the ordinary General Public License for libraries did not effectively promote software sharing, because most developers did not use the libraries. We concluded that weaker conditions might promote sharing better.

However, unrestricted linking of non-free programs would deprive the users of those programs of all benefit from the free status of the libraries themselves. This Library General Public License is intended to permit developers of non-free programs to use free libraries, while preserving your freedom as a user of such programs to change the free libraries that are incorporated in them. (We have not seen how to achieve this as regards changes in header files, but we have achieved it as regards changes in the actual functions of the Library.) The hope is that this will lead to faster development of free libraries.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, while the latter only works together with the library.

Note that it is possible for a library to be covered by the ordinary General Public License rather than by this special one.

## GNU LIBRARY GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Library General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you".

A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables. The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".)

"Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions: a) The modified work must itself be a software library.

b) You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.

c) You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.

d) If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful.

(For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy.

This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange.

If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables.

When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law.

If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.)

Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also compile or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications.

You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:

a) Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)

b) Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.

c) If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.

d) Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

For an executable, the required form of the "work that uses the Library" must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable. It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:

 a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.

b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying

the Library or works based on it.

10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice. This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Library General Public License from time to time.
 Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

#### NO WARRANTY

15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

#### END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

#### How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License).

To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

<one line to give the library's name and a brief idea of what it does.>
Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>

This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Library General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Library General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU Library General Public License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA.

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the library `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker.

<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1990 Ty Coon, President of Vice

That's all there is to it!

Copyright (c) 1997-2008 University of Cambridge.

↑ Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of the University of Cambridge nor the name of Google Inc. nor the names of their contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

* Copyright (C) 2007 Red Hat Inc.

* Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person

* obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files

* (the "Software"), to deal in the Software ____without restriction,

* including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge,

* publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software,

* and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so,

* subject to the following conditions:

* The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be

- * included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.
- *

* THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,

* EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF

* MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND

- * NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS
- * BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN
- * ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN
- * CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE

* SOFTWARE.

#### GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 2.1, February 1999 Copyright (C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

[This is the first released version of the Lesser GPL. It also counts as the successor of the GNU Library Public License, version 2, hence the version number 2.1.]

#### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users.

This license, the Lesser General Public License, applies to some specially designated software packages--typically libraries--of the Free Software Foundation and other authors who decide to use it. You can use it too, but we suggest you first think carefully about whether this license or the ordinary General Public License is the better strategy to use in any particular case, based on the explanations below.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom of use, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish); that you receive source code or can get it if you want it; that you can change the software and use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you are informed that you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid distributors to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender these rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link other code with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients, so that they can relink them with the library after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with a two-step method: (1) we copyright the library, and (2) we offer you this license, which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

To protect each distributor, we want to make it very clear that there is no warranty for the free library. Also, if the library is modified by someone else and passed on, the recipients should know that what they have is not the original version, so that the original author's reputation will not be affected by problems that might be introduced by others.

Finally, software patents pose a constant threat to the existence of any free program. We wish to make sure that a company cannot effectively restrict the users of a free program by obtaining a restrictive license from a

patent holder. Therefore, we insist that any patent license obtained for a version of the library must be consistent with the full freedom of use specified in this license.

Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License. This license, the GNU Lesser General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries, and is quite different from the ordinary General Public License. We use this license for certain libraries in order to permit linking those libraries into non-free programs.

When a program is linked with a library, whether statically or using a shared library, the combination of the two is legally speaking a combined work, a derivative of the original library. The ordinary General Public License therefore permits such linking only if the entire combination fits its criteria of freedom. The Lesser General Public License permits more lax criteria for linking other code with the library.

We call this license the "Lesser" General Public License because it does Less to protect the user's freedom than the ordinary General Public License. It also provides other free software developers Less of an advantage over competing non-free programs. These disadvantages are the reason we use the ordinary General Public License for many libraries. However, the Lesser license provides advantages in certain special circumstances. For example, on rare occasions, there may be a special need to encourage the widest possible use of a certain library, so that it becomes a de-facto standard. To achieve this, non-free programs must be allowed to use the library. A more frequent case is that a free library does the same job as widely used non-free libraries. In this case, there is little to gain by limiting the free library to free software only, so we use the Lesser General Public License.

In other cases, permission to use a particular library in non-free programs enables a greater number of people to use a large body of free software. For example, permission to use the GNU C Library in non-free programs enables many more people to use the whole GNU operating system, as well as its variant, the GNU/Linux operating system.

Although the Lesser General Public License is Less protective of the users' freedom, it does ensure that the user of a program that is linked with the Library has the freedom and the wherewithal to run that program using a modified version of the Library.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, whereas the latter must be combined with the library in order to run.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

**0.** This License Agreement applies to any software library or other program which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Lesser General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you".

A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables.

The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".)

"Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

**2.** You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

a) The modified work must itself be a software library.

**b)** You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.

**c)** You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.

**d)** If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful.

(For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

**3.** You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy.

This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library. **4.** You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange.

If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

**5.** A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables.

When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law. If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.)

Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

**6.** As an exception to the Sections above, you may also combine or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications.

You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:

**a)** Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)

**b)** Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (1) uses at run time a copy of the library already present on the user's computer system, rather than copying library functions into the executable, and (2) will operate properly with a modified version of the library, if the user installs one, as long as the modified version is interface-compatible with the version that the work was made with.

c) Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.

**d)** If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.

e) Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

For an executable, the required form of the "work that uses the Library" must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the materials to be distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:

**a)** Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.

**b)** Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

**9.** You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.

**10.** Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

**11.** If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly

through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances. It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

**12.** If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

**13.** The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation. **14.** If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

#### **NO WARRANTY**

**15.** BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

**16.** IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

### END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License). To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found. *one line to give the library's name and an idea of what it does.* Copyright (C) *year name of author* 

This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail. You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names: Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the library `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker. *signature of Ty Coon*, 1 April 1990 Ty Coon, President of Vice That's all there is to it!

### Eclipse Public License - v 1.0

THE ACCOMPANYING PROGRAM IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS ECLIPSE PUBLIC LICENSE ("AGREEMENT"). ANY USE, REPRODUCTION OR DISTRIBUTION OF THE PROGRAM CONSTITUTES RECIPIENT'S ACCEPTANCE OF THIS AGREEMENT.

#### **1. DEFINITIONS**

"Contribution" means:

a) in the case of the initial Contributor, the initial code and documentation distributed under this Agreement, and

b) in the case of each subsequent Contributor:

i) changes to the Program, and

ii) additions to the Program;

where such changes and/or additions to the Program originate from and are distributed by that particular Contributor. A Contribution 'originates' from a Contributor if it was added to the Program by such Contributor itself or anyone acting on such Contributor's behalf. Contributions do not include additions to the Program which: (i) are separate modules of software distributed in conjunction with the Program under their own license agreement, and (ii) are not derivative works of the Program.

"Contributor" means any person or entity that distributes the Program.

"Licensed Patents" mean patent claims licensable by a Contributor which are necessarily infringed by the use or sale of its Contribution alone or when combined with the Program.

"Program" means the Contributions distributed in accordance with this Agreement.

"Recipient" means anyone who receives the Program under this Agreement, including all Contributors.

### 2. GRANT OF RIGHTS

a) Subject to the terms of this Agreement, each Contributor hereby grants Recipient a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free copyright license to reproduce, prepare derivative works of, publicly display, publicly perform, distribute and sublicense the Contribution of such Contributor, if any, and such derivative works, in source code and object code form.

b) Subject to the terms of this Agreement, each Contributor hereby grants Recipient a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free patent license under Licensed Patents to make, use, sell, offer to sell, import and otherwise transfer the Contribution of such Contributor, if any, in source code and object code form. This patent license shall apply to the combination of the Contribution and the Program if, at the time the Contribution is added by the Contributor, such addition of the Contribution causes such

combination to be covered by the Licensed Patents. The patent license shall not apply to any other combinations which include the Contribution. No hardware per se is licensed hereunder.

c) Recipient understands that although each Contributor grants the licenses to its Contributions set forth herein, no assurances are provided by any Contributor that the Program does not infringe the patent or other intellectual property rights of any other entity. Each Contributor disclaims any liability to Recipient for claims brought by any other entity based on infringement of intellectual property rights or otherwise. As a condition to exercising the rights and licenses granted hereunder, each Recipient hereby assumes sole responsibility to secure any other intellectual property rights needed, if any. For example, if a third party patent license is required to allow Recipient to distribute the Program, it is Recipient's responsibility to acquire that license before distributing the Program.

d) Each Contributor represents that to its knowledge it has sufficient copyright rights in its Contribution, if any, to grant the copyright license set forth in this Agreement.

## **3. REQUIREMENTS**

A Contributor may choose to distribute the Program in object code form under its own license agreement, provided that:

a) it complies with the terms and conditions of this Agreement; and

b) its license agreement:

i) effectively disclaims on behalf of all Contributors all warranties and conditions, express and implied, including warranties or conditions of title and non-infringement, and implied warranties or conditions of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose;

ii) effectively excludes on behalf of all Contributors all liability for damages, including direct, indirect, special, incidental and consequential damages, such as lost profits;

iii) states that any provisions which differ from this Agreement are offered by that Contributor alone and not by any other party; and

iv) states that source code for the Program is available from such Contributor, and informs licensees how to obtain it in a reasonable manner on or through a medium customarily used for software exchange.

When the Program is made available in source code form:

- a) it must be made available under this Agreement; and
- b) a copy of this Agreement must be included with each copy of the Program.

Contributors may not remove or alter any copyright notices contained within the Program.

Each Contributor must identify itself as the originator of its Contribution, if any, in a manner that reasonably allows subsequent Recipients to identify the originator of the Contribution.

### 4. COMMERCIAL DISTRIBUTION

Commercial distributors of software may accept certain responsibilities with respect to end users, business partners and the like. While this license is intended to facilitate the commercial use of the Program, the Contributor who includes the Program in a commercial product offering should do so in a manner which does not create potential liability for other Contributors. Therefore, if a Contributor includes the Program in a commercial product offering, such Contributor ("Commercial Contributor") hereby agrees to defend and indemnify every other Contributor ("Indemnified Contributor") against any losses, damages and costs (collectively "Losses") arising from claims, lawsuits and other legal actions brought by a third party against the Indemnified Contributor to the extent caused by the acts or omissions of such Commercial Contributor in connection with its distribution of the Program in a commercial product offering. The obligations in this section do not apply to any claims or Losses relating to any actual or alleged intellectual property infringement. In order to qualify, an Indemnified Contributor must: a) promptly notify the Commercial Contributor in writing of such claim, and b) allow the Commercial Contributor to control, and cooperate with the Commercial Contributor in, the defense and any related settlement negotiations. The Indemnified Contributor may participate in any such claim at its own expense.

For example, a Contributor might include the Program in a commercial product offering, Product X. That Contributor is then a Commercial Contributor. If that Commercial Contributor then makes performance claims, or offers warranties related to Product X, those performance claims and warranties are such Commercial Contributor's responsibility alone. Under this section, the Commercial Contributor would have to defend claims against the other Contributors related to those performance claims and warranties, and if a court requires any other Contributor to pay any damages as a result, the Commercial Contributor must pay those damages.

#### 5. NO WARRANTY

EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, THE PROGRAM IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Each Recipient is solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using and distributing the Program and assumes all risks associated with its exercise of rights under this Agreement , including but not limited to the risks and costs of program errors, compliance with applicable laws, damage to or loss of data, programs or equipment, and unavailability or interruption of operations.

#### 6. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY

EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, NEITHER RECIPIENT NOR ANY CONTRIBUTORS SHALL HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION LOST PROFITS), HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OR DISTRIBUTION OF THE PROGRAM OR THE EXERCISE OF ANY RIGHTS GRANTED HEREUNDER, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

## 7. GENERAL

If any provision of this Agreement is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this Agreement, and without further action by the parties hereto, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable.

If Recipient institutes patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Program itself (excluding combinations of the Program with other software or hardware) infringes such Recipient's patent(s), then such Recipient's rights granted under Section 2(b) shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.

All Recipient's rights under this Agreement shall terminate if it fails to comply with any of the material terms or conditions of this Agreement and does not cure such failure in a reasonable period of time after becoming aware of such noncompliance. If all Recipient's rights under this Agreement terminate, Recipient agrees to cease use and distribution of the Program as soon as reasonably practicable. However, Recipient's obligations under this Agreement and any licenses granted by Recipient relating to the Program shall continue and survive.

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute copies of this Agreement, but in order to avoid inconsistency the Agreement is copyrighted and may only be modified in the following manner. The Agreement Steward reserves the right to publish new versions (including revisions) of this Agreement from time to time. No one other than the Agreement Steward has the right to modify this Agreement. The Eclipse Foundation is the initial Agreement Steward. The Eclipse Foundation may assign the responsibility to serve as the Agreement Steward to a suitable separate entity. Each new version of the Agreement will be given a distinguishing version number. The Program (including Contributions) may always be distributed subject to the version of the Agreement under which it was received. In addition, after a new version of the Agreement is published, Contributor may elect to distribute the Program (including its Contributions) under the new version. Except as expressly stated in Sections 2(a) and 2(b) above, Recipient receives no rights or licenses to the intellectual property of any Contributor under this Agreement, whether expressly, by implication, estoppel or otherwise. All rights in the Program not expressly granted under this Agreement are reserved.

This Agreement is governed by the laws of the State of New York and the intellectual property laws of the United States of America. No party to this Agreement will bring a legal action under this Agreement more than one year after the cause of action arose. Each party waives its rights to a jury trial in any resulting litigation.



# Function Guide for Software Registration and Update

# **User's Guide**

USRM2-6358-01 2017-11 en

Copyright CANON INC. 2017

## Contents

Available Functions	2
Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications	4
Installing by Connecting This Printer to an Outside Network (Delivery)	6
Installing by Not Connecting This Printer to an Outside Network (Manual)	
Downloading the Manuals and Related Software	15
Updating the Firmware	17
Managing the Register/Update Software Function	
Using This Guide	
Operating Environment of This Guide	
Screen Layout of This Guide	
Top Page	
Topic Page	
Site Map	
Search Method	
Viewing This Guide	39
Disclaimer	41
Trademarks	

# **Available Functions**

## **Available Functions**

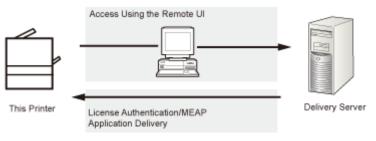
#### 0Y1C-000

## Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications

Using the Register/Update Software function, you can install the System Options/MEAP Applications to the printer. You can use this function from both the touch panel display and the computer (Remote UI).

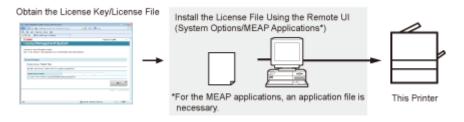
## Installing by Connecting This Printer to an Outside Network

You can install the System Options/MEAP Applications by accessing the delivery server from this printer.



## Installing by Not Connecting This Printer to an Outside Network

You can install the System Options/MEAP Applications by using the license file/license key that you obtained from the License Management System.

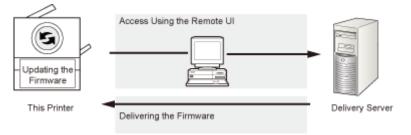


## Updating the Firmware

Using the Register/Update Software function, you can update the firmware of the printer to the most recent version. You can use this function from the computer (Remote UI).

## Updating by Connecting This Printer to an Outside Network

You can update the firmware by accessing the delivery server from this printer.



# Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications

nstalling the System Options/MEAP Applications		
Installing by Connecting This Printer to an Outside Network (Delivery)	6	
Installing by Not Connecting This Printer to an Outside Network (Manual)	9	
Downloading the Manuals and Related Software	15	

## **Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications**

0Y1C-001

The procedures to install the system options or MEAP applications on the printer differ, depending on whether the printer is connected or not to an outside network. Select the procedure that matches your conditions using the references below.

## Installing by Connecting this Printer to an Outside Network

Install from the Remote UI.



#### **Communication test**

To check that the transmission with the delivery server is properly operating, if necessary, perform a communication test before installation.

**O**" Testing Communication Using the Remote UI(P. 29) "

## Installing by Not Connecting this Printer to an Outside Network

## **Installing System Options**

Install using one of the following procedures.

## If you install multiple system options

We recommend that you install from the Remote UI.

Procedure	Necessary Steps	Reference Page
Using the Remote UI to install	Obtain the license file from the 1. License Management System	O" Obtaining the License File(P. 9) "
	2. Install the license file using the Remote UI	Installing the System Options Using the Remote UI(P. 9) "

## **Installing MEAP Applications**

Use the following procedure to install.

	Procedure	Necessary Steps	Reference Page	
Us	ing the Remote UI to install	Obtain the license file from the 1. License Management System	S" Obtaining the License File(P. 9) "	

## Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications

Procedure	Necessary Steps	Reference Page	
	Install the license file and 2. application file using the Remote UI	•" Installing the MEAP Applications Using the Remote UI(P. 11) "	
	Start the MEAP applications from 3. SMS	Starting the MEAP Applications(P. 13) "	

## Installing by Connecting This Printer to an Outside Network (Delivery)

0Y1C-002

If the printer is connected to an outside network, you can install the system options and MEAP applications from the Remote UI by linking with the delivery server.



Start the Remote UI, and then log in as Administrator.

🜔" e-Manual "

2 From the top page of the Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration] → [License/Other] → [Register/Update Software].

	To Ports	al Login User: System Manager Log Out
(*) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences  Control Menu Paper Source Menu Paper Source Menu Network Layout Menu Quality Menu User Maintenance Menu Output/Control Utility Menu Device Control Management Settings Department ID Management Security	Settings/Registration: Management Settings: License/Other License/Other License/Other Message Board/Support Link Register/Update Software T	Last Updated 09/21/2629 08 02:27 PM
License/Other	Co	pyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

## **3** Click [Delivered Installation].

		To Portal
Register/Update Software		
Device Serial Number:		
Install Application/Option	Install Application/Option > Manual Installation	
Manual Installation     Delivered Installation	Manual Installation	
Software Management Settings		Ned >
Display Logs/Communication Test	License File Path:	Browse
	Application File Path:	Browse
	I	
		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserve

**4** Enter the license access number  $\rightarrow$  click [Next].

	To Portal
Register/Update Software	
Device Serial Number:	
Install Application/Option	Install Application/Option > Delivered Installation
Delivered Installation	Delivered Installation
Software Management Settings Display Logs/Communication Test	Enter the license access number to install MEAP application/R option through the internet, and then click (Next).
	License Access Number:
	×
	Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

Once the license access number is confirmed after contacting the delivery server, information for the system options/MEAP applications you can install are displayed.

## **5** Select the system options and MEAP applications $\rightarrow$ click [Start Installation].

Selec	applications/options to in Start Installable		the status after install Cancel	ation.	
Operational Setting Status after Installation	∉ Start ⊂ Stop				
Installable Applications/Option	i i				
				lable Storage Spa	
Application/Option Nan	ie		Memory (KB)	Size (KE	
Sample_1		1.0		10	10
Sample_2		1.0		10	10
Sample_3		1.0		10	10
×					

Status after Installation:

Start: Starts the installed MEAP applications.

Stop: Stops the installed MEAP applications.

## **IMPORTANT**

#### If [Stop] is selected when installing MEAP applications

You need to start the application before using the MEAP application. **O**" **Function Guide for MEAP Application Management** "

If the agreement screen is displayed, read the agreement. If you abide with the agreement, click [Accept].

**6** Check the Installation Result page.

#### Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications

The following MEAP applications/R options are installed.		
-Sample_1 Ver.1.0 : Succeeded : Start -Sample_2 Ver.1.0 : Succeeded : Start -Sample_3 Ver.1.0 : Succeeded : Start		
Download Manual : http://canon.com/fau/downloads		
To Delivered Installation		

When the installation of the system options is completed, the message <Restart the device.> appears. Restart the printer to enable the function.

To return to the Delivered Installation screen, click [To Delivered Installation].



#### The manual for system options/MEAP applications

You can download the manual for the installed system options/MEAP applications by accessing the URL for the manual download site displayed on the Installation Result screen.

O" Downloading the Manuals and Related Software(P. 15) "

# Installing by Not Connecting This Printer to an Outside Network (Manual)

0Y1C-003

This section describes how to install the system options and MEAP applications without connecting the printer to an outside network.

## Obtaining the License File

Obtain the license file.

License file: Obtain the license file when installing the system options/MEAP applications using the Remote UI.



Preparing a license access number certificate
 Make sure that the license access number that is included with the package is available.
 License access number is not printed on the package of the MEAP application
 If the license access number is not printed on the package of the MEAP application you are using, the license file is issued by the distributor of the MEAP application. You do not need to obtain the license file explained in this section. For more information, see the manual for each MEAP application.

Check the management number you need to obtain the license file.

To obtain the license file, the following management number is required.

- License Access Number: Check the license access number certificate.
- Device Serial Number: You can check this number from the Utility menu of the operation panel.
- 🜔" e-Manual "

**2** Access http://www.canon.com/lms/license/.

**3** Follow the instructions on the screen and obtain the license file.

Next, install the system options or the MEAP applications.

## Installing the System Options Using the Remote UI

You can install the system options to the printer using the Remote UI.

Start the Remote UI, and then log in as Administrator.

🜔" e-Manual "

**2** From the top page of the Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration]  $\rightarrow$  [License/Other]  $\rightarrow$  [Register/Update Software].

Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications

	<u>To P</u>	ortal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences  Control Menu Paper Source Menu Network Layout Menu Quality Menu User Maintenance Menu Qutput/Control Utility Menu Utility Menu	Settings/Registration: Management Settings: License/Other License/Other Message Board/Support Link Registen/Update Software	Last Updated 09/21/2029 08 02:27 PM
Device Control Management Settings     Department ID Management     Security     DLicense/Other		Copyright GANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

## **3** Click [Manual Installation].

		To Portal
Register/Update Software		
Device Serial Number:		
Install Application/Option Manual Installation Delivered Installation Software Management Settings Display Logs/Communication Test	Install Application/Option > Manual Installation Manual Installation	
		Next >
	License File Path:	Brove
	Application File Path:	Browse
	<u>س</u>	Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved
		copyrgin conton inc. 2011 Air regins reserved

**4** Click [Browse...]  $\rightarrow$  select the license file to install  $\rightarrow$  click [Next].

		To Portal
Register/Update Software		
Device Serial Number:		
Install Application/Option	Install Application/Option > Manual Installation	
Manual Installation	Manual Installation	
Delivered Installation		
Software Management Settings		Naxt>
Display Logs/Communication Test	License File Path:	Browse
	Application File Path:	Browse
	I	
	<u>ه</u>	
		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

File extensions:

License File: A file with the [lic] extension.

5 Check the contents that will be installed on the confirmation screen  $\rightarrow$  click [Install].

## Installing the MEAP Applications Using the Remote UI

You can install the MEAP applications to the printer using the Remote UI.

#### 

#### The number of MEAP applications that can be installed

You can install up to eight applications.

#### For details on MEAP applications

There may be other system requirements for installation, depending on the MEAP applications. For instructions on settings, see the manual provided with the MEAP application.

#### Start the Remote UI, and then log in as Administrator.

🜔" e-Manual "

2 From the top page of the Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration] → [License/Other] → [Register/Update Software].

	<u>10</u>	Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences Control Manu Paper Source Manu Network Layout Manu Quality Manu User Maintenance Manu Output/Control Utility Menu Device Control Management Settings Department ID Management Security CLicense/Other	Settings/Registration: Management Settings: License/Other License/Other Message Board/Support Link Registen/Update Software	Last Updated: 09/21/2029 08:02:27 PM
		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

## **3** Click [Manual Installation].

		To Portal
Register/Update Software		
ievice Serial Number:		
stall Application/Option	Install Application/Option > Manual Installation	
Manual Installation	Manual Installation	- 55 - 26 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 1
Delivered Installation		Next >
Display Logs/Communication Test	License File Path:	Browse
	Application File Path:	Browse
	×	
		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserve

4 Click [Browse...] → select the license file and the application file to install → click [Next].

nstall Application/Option > Manual Installation	
Manual Installation	
	Naxt>
License File Path:	Browse
	Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved
	Manual Installation

File extensions:

License File: A file with the [lic] extension. Application File: A file with the [jar] extension.

/ IMPORTANT

#### When you install MEAP applications

- You cannot install license files only.
- When installing the MEAP application, make sure you specify the license file. You cannot install the MEAP application without specifying the license file.

**5** Confirm the information displayed on the install confirmation page  $\rightarrow$  click [Yes].

#### Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications

Are yo	u cure you want to install the following details?	
	Yes No	
Application Information		
Application Name:	Sample Application 1	
Version	1.0	
Application ID:	11111111-bbbbb-3333-dddd-555555555001	
Manufacturer	Canon Inc.	
Copyright:	Sample	
Description	Sample	
License Information		
Serial Number:		
Application ID:	11111111-bbbb-3333-dddd-5555555555001	
Expires after:	10 days	
Counter Usage Limit		
PrintedImpressions-Color-Large:	101	
PrintedImpressions-Color-Small	102	
PrintedImpressions-Color:	103	
PrintedImpressions-UniColor-Larger	104	
PrintedImpressions-UniColor-Small	105	
PrintedImpressions-UniColor:	106	
PrintedImpressions-BW-Large	107	
PrintedImpressions-BW-Small	108	
PrintedImpressions-BW	109	
PrintedImpressions	110	
ScannedImpressions-Color:	111	
ScannedImpressions- BW:	112	

Depending on the MEAP application, a software license agreement screen may be displayed. Confirm the information displayed on the screen  $\rightarrow$  click [OK].

If you are installing a new MEAP application, the following information is displayed on the screen.

- Application Information
- License Information

The following information is displayed when you overwrite a MEAP application.

- Current Application Information
- Application Information after Overwrite

Installation will start after the message <Installing... Please wait.> is displayed again. After the installation, click [To Manual Installation] to display the Manual Installation screen.

#### IMPORTANT

**To use MEAP applications** 

To use the installed MEAP application, you must start the MEAP application.

**O**" Function Guide for MEAP Application Management "

### Starting the MEAP Applications

This section describes how to start the installed MEAP application from the SMS screen.

🖊 NOTE

#### **Details on SMS**

For details on SMS, see " Function Guide for MEAP Application Management ."

From the top page of the SMS, click [MEAP Application Management].

#### Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications

NEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Managem	ant					
Install MEAP Application							
stem Management	MEAP Application Manage	ment				Updated On:	Jan/16/2009 01:06:11
Enhanced Bystem Application	Application Name		Installed on	Status			License
Management Management	Sample Application 1	1.0.0.1	Jan/16(2009	Installed	Start	Uninotal	Unnecessary
System Application Management							
System Information	Sample Application 2	1.0	Jan/16/2009	Installed	Start	Uninstall	Installed
MEAP Application Information	Sample Application 3	0.6.1	Jan/14/2009	Started	Stop	Uninated	Notinstalled
Check License	I						
Change Password	Resource Information						
	Resource Name	Amount Used	Remain	ing	Percent Us	red	
	Storage	31	102 KB	1017474 KB	3%		
	Memory	11	746 KB	21022 KB	36%	_	
	Threads		36	220	14%	-	
	Sockets		34	222	13%	-	
	File Descriptor		9	247	4%		
	×						

**2** Select the application you want to start  $\rightarrow$  click [Start].

MEAP Application Management							
	MEAP Application Manageme	Ent					
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application Manager	ment				Updated On:	Mn/16/2009 01:06:11
rstern Management							
Enhanced System Application	Application Name		installed on	Status			License
Management	Sample Application 1	1.0.0.1	Jan/16/2009	Installed	Start	Uninstal	Unnecessary
System Application Management	Sample Application 2	1.0	Jan/16/2009	Installed	Start	Uninstal	Installed
System Information					<u> </u>		
MEAP Application Information	Sample Application 3	0.6.1	Jan/14/2009	Started	Stop	Uninatail	Notinstalled
D Check License	I						
Change Password	Resource Information						
	Resource Name	Amount Used	Remain	ing .	Percent U	sed	
	Storage	31	102 KB	1017474 KB	3%		
	Memory	11	7461/8	21022 KB	38%	_	
	Threads		36	220	14%	-	
	Sockets		34	222	13%		
	File Descriptor		9	247	4%	•	
	X						

# **Downloading the Manuals and Related Software**

0Y1C-004

You can download the manuals for the installed system options/MEAP applications and their related software from the following URL.

http://canon.com/fau/downloads

#### 

- Make sure that the license access number that is included with the package is available.
- If you installed from the Remote UI, you can jump to the above URL from the link displayed on the Installation Result screen. If you do so, the license access number is entered automatically.
- **1** Start the Web browser on your computer.
- **2** Enter the URL in [Address].
- **3** After entering the license access number, follow the instructions on the screen to download the manuals and related software.

If software is downloaded, refer to the manual of that software to install.

# Updating the Firmware

Ipdating the Firmware
-----------------------

# **Updating the Firmware**

0Y1C-005

Update from the Remote UI.

#### **Communication test**

To check that the transmission with the delivery server is properly operating, if necessary, perform a communication test before installation.

**O**" Testing Communication Using the Remote UI(P. 29) "

# Updating by Connecting This Printer to an Outside Network

If the printer is connected to an outside network, you can update to a most recent firmware by linking with the delivery server.

#### / IMPORTANT

#### Estimated time required to apply firmware

The time required to apply the downloaded firmware is approximately 20 minutes. This operation may take more time depending on the system configuration and network environment of your printer.

## Checking the New Firmware/Specifying the Delivery Settings

You can check the new firmware that is applicable with the printer and specify the delivery settings.

#### **1** Start the Remote UI, and then log in as Administrator.

🜔" e-Manual "

# 2 From the top page of the Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration] → [License/Other] → [Register/Update Software].

Settings/Registration         Mail to System M           Preferences         Settings/Registration: Management Settings: License/Other         License/Other           Expost Manu         Hicense/Other         List Updated 09/210209 08 02:           Network         License/Other         List Updated 09/210209 08 02:           Quality Manu         License/Other         List Updated 09/210209 08 02:           Quality Manu         License/Other         List Updated 09/210209 08 02:           Quality Manu         Message Board/Support Link         Registen/Update Software           Quality Manu         Device Control         Imagement Settings           Department D Management         Security         Imagement Settings           Department D Management         Security         Imagement		To Portal Login User: System Ma	anager Log Out
Control Manu     Settings Heighstration: Management Settings: Dense/Other       Control Manu     Least Updated: 00/21/2029 (d) 02:       Paper Source Manu     Least Updated: 00/21/2029 (d) 02:       Network     License/Other       Layout Manu     Message Board/Support Link       Quality Manu     Register/Update Software       User Maintenance Manu     Imagement Settings       Device Control     Imagement D Management       Department D Management     Security	(Registration	Mail to S	ystem Manager
Copyright GANON INC. 2011 All Rights R	Control Menu Paper Source Menu Network Layout Menu Quality Menu User Maintenance Menu Output/Control Utility Menu Device Control Management Settings Department ID Management	License/Other License/Other Message Board/Bupport Link Register/Update Software	
		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All	Rights Resen

## **3** Click [Delivered Update].

	To Portal
Install Application/Option > Manual Installation	
Manual Installation	
	Naxt >
License File Path:	Browse
Application File Path:	Browse
<b>E</b>	
	Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved
	Install Application/Option > Manual Installation Manual Installation

## **4** Click [Confirm New Firmware].

			Te Portal Legin User: 0000001 Log Out
Register/Update Software			
Device Serial Number:			
Install Application/Option   Manual Installation	Update Firmware > Delivered Update Delivered Update		Updated On 2009 06/22 4:15:56 💋
Delivered Installation		_	Confirm New Firmware
Update Firmware			Contirm New Firmware
Delivered Update	Scheduled Delivery Firmware		
Confirm Delivery Server Display Loga/Communication Test	Downloaded Firmware:	None	Apply Firmware Delete Firmware
<ul> <li>Display Edgardaminiarization rest</li> </ul>	Scheduled Delivery Date and Time:	None	Delete Scheduled Delivery
	I		
			Version 3.0.1.19fCopyright CANON INC. 2009 All Rights Reserve

Contact the delivery server for information on whether an applicable new firmware is available or not.



#### **5** Verify the displayed information $\rightarrow$ specify necessary settings $\rightarrow$ click [Execute].

If the agreement screen is displayed, read the agreement. If you abide with the agreement, press [I Accept].

#### Updating the Firmware

If you set [Deliver naw] for the delivery	Select necessary languages and set the delivery settings. schedule, and set [Auto] for the timing to apply, the applicable firmware will be delivered and updated automatically, and the device will restart Execute Cancel
Firmware	
Current Version	V00.00 BNRLISH
Applicable Firmware:	VDD.10 EWGLISH
Release Note:	Sample Sample Sample Sample
Select Language	
Language Ilame	
Fin2	
1	
Delivery Settings	
Delivery Schedule:	C Delivernate C Delivernate specified date and time Year: 2000 M Month: 0 M Date: 10 M Time: 0 M 0 M 40 M
	C Auto
Tining to Apply:	Ø Manual
Tining ta Apply: Deliver Updata:	
	G Manual C On

Details of each item are shown below.

• Firmware:

Current Version: Displays the version of the current firmware.

Applicable Firmware: Displays the new firmware that is applicable with the printer.

Release Note: If the new firmware has a release note, that information is displayed.

**Delivery Settings:** 

• Delivery Schedule: Click "Deliver now" or "Deliver at specified date and time."

[Deliver now]: Downloads the firmware after the delivery setting is specified.

[Deliver at specified date and Select the date/time (year, month, date, and time) to download the firmware time]: from the drop-down list.

• Timing to Apply: Click [Auto] or [Manual].

[Auto]: The firmware is automatically applied after the download of the firmware is completed.[Manual]: Only downloads the firmware. To apply the downloaded firmware, set from [Apply Firmware].

• Deliver Update: Click [On] or [Off].

[On]: Downloads only the difference between the current firmware and the new firmware.

[Off]: Downloads the new firmware entirely.

- E-Mail Address: Enter the e-mail address of the administrator. You can receive e-mails regarding the update status that is sent from the delivery server.
- Comments: Enter the comment that will automatically be added to the e-mail. If the model name is entered, you can identify which device status the e-mail is about.



#### **Delivery Schedule and Timing to Apply**

• When the Delivery Schedule is set to [Deliver now] and the Timing to Apply is set to [Auto] The firmware is applied after the new firmware is downloaded from the delivery server. When the application is completed, the printer automatically restarts.

The firmw	vare is updated. Device will automatical	ly restart.
	To Delivered Update	

• When the Delivery Schedule is set to [Deliver now] and the Timing to Apply is set to [Manual] The new firmware is downloaded.

The firmware was retrieved from delivery server.	
To Delivered Update	

• When the Delivery Schedule is set to [Deliver at specified date and time] The scheduled delivery is set to the specified date/time.

The delivery information is registered.
To Delivered Update

## Applying the Downloaded Firmware

You can apply the downloaded firmware to the printer.

If the Timing to Apply in Delivery Settings is set to [Auto], this step is not necessary.

Start the Remote UI, and then log in as Administrator.

🜔" e-Manual "

2 From the top page of the Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration] → [License/Other] → [Register/Update Software].

Settings/Registration         Main to System Manager           Preferences         Settings/Registration: Management Settings: License/Other         Losd Updated 00/21/2020 06 00:227 PM           Paper Source Menu         Losd Updated 00/21/2020 06 00:227 PM         Losd Updated 00/21/2020 06 00:227 PM           Network         Logout Menu         Losd Updated 00/21/2020 06 00:227 PM         Losd Updated 00/21/2020 06 00:227 PM           Quality Menu         Logout Menu         Message Board/Support Link RegistenUpdate Software         Message Board/Support Link RegistenUpdate Software           Output/Control         Message Board/Support Link RegistenUpdate Software         Message Board/Support Link RegistenUpdate Software           Output/Control         Device Control         Message Board/Support Link RegistenUpdate Software         Message Board/Support Link RegistenUpdate Software           Device Control         Message ment Settings         Department D Management         Message Board/Support Link RegistenUpdate Software         RegistenUpdate Software           Department D Management Security         Loense/Other         RegistenUpdate Software         RegistenUpdate Software		To Portal	Login User: System Manager Log Out
Control Manu     Settings registration: Management Settings: Useries Other       Paper Source Menu     License/Other       Network     License/Other       Layout Menu     Message Board/Bupport Link.       Quaity Menu     RegistenUpdate Software       User Maintenance Menu     Imagement Settings       Output/Control     Imagement Distance       Device Control     Management Distance       Bepartment D Management     Management Distance       Security     License/Other	(*) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
	Control Menu Paper Source Menu Network Layout Menu Cuality Menu User Maintenance Menu Output/Control Utility Menu Device Control Management Settings Department ID Management Security	License/Other License/Other Message Board/Support Link Register/Update Software	

## **3** Click [Delivered Update].

		To Portal
Register/Update Software		
Device Serial Number:		
Install Application/Option	Install Application/Option > Manual Installation	
Manual Installation	Manual Installation	
Delivered Installation	Mariual Installation	
Update Firmware		Next >
Delivered Update	License File Path:	Browne
Software Management Settings	Application File Path:	Browse
Display Logs/Communication Test	I	
Scheduled Update Settings	<u>ـ</u>	
		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

# **4** Click [Apply Firmware].

			To Portal Log	in User : 0000001 Log Out
Register/Update Software				
Device Serial Number:				
Install Application/Option	Update Firmware > Delivered Update			
D Delivered Installation	Delivered Update		Updated	On 2009 06/22 4:22:18 💋
Update Firmware			Ci	Infirm New Firmware
Delivered Update				
Confirm Delivery Server	Scheduled Delivery Firmware Downloaded Firmware	Downloaded	Apply Firmware	Delete Firmware
C Display Logs/Communication rest	Download Date:	2009 06/22 4:21:12		
	Labet	ENGLISH		
	Version:	129		
	Scheduled Delivery Date and Time:	None	Delete Scheduled	Delivery
		Version 3.	0.1.1 BF Copyright CANON	INC. 2009 All Rights Reserve

# **5** Confirm the firmware to apply $\rightarrow$ click [Yes].

#### Updating the Firmware

Device Serial Number: Install Application/Option © Manual Installation © Delivered Installation	Updat Delt Are you sure you device to ver. Dow device?	want to update firmware of micaded and restart the	Updated On:2008 06/32 4-32-18
Update Firmware Delivered Update		Yes Na	Confirm New Firmware
Confirm Delivery Server	Sche Downloaded Firmware:	Downloaded	Apply Firmware Delete Firmware
Display Logs/Communication Test	Download Date:	2009 06/22 4:21:12	
	Labet	ENGLISH	
	Version:	129	
	Scheduled Delivery Date and Time:	None	Delete Scheduled Delivery
	I		
		Version 3.0	3.1.19f Copyright CANON INC. 2009 All Rights Reserv

The new firmware is applied to the printer. When the application is completed, the printer automatically restarts.

The firms	rare is updated. Device will automatically restart.
	To Delivered Update

# Deleting the Downloaded Firmware

You can delete the downloaded firmware.

**1** Start the Remote UI, and then log in as Administrator.

🜔" e-Manual "

2 From the top page of the Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration] → [License/Other] → [Register/Update Software].

	To Port	al Login User: System Manager Log Out
🛞 Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences  Control Menu Paper Source Menu Network Layout Menu Quality Menu User Maintenance Menu Output/Control Utility Menu Device Control Management Settings Department ID Management Security License/Other	Settings/Registration: Management Settings: License/Other License/Other Message Board/Support Link Registen/Update Software	Last Updated: 09/21/2029 08 02:27 PM
	C	apyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

## **3** Click [Delivered Update].

		To Portal
Register/Update Software		
Device Serial Number:		
Install Application/Option	Install Application/Option > Manual Installation	
Manual Installation	Manual Installation	
Delivered Installation	Manual Installation	
Update Firmware		Next >
Delivered Update	License File Path:	Browse
Software Management Settings	Application File Path:	Browse .
Display Logs/Communication Test		L M XTT PLAN
Scheduled Update Settings	×.	
		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

# **4** Click [Delete Firmware].

			To Portal Login User: 0000001 Log Out
Register/Update Software			
Device Serial Number:			
Install Application/Option	Update Firmware > Delivered Update		
D Delivered Installation	Delivered Update		Updated On:2009 06/22 4.22:10 💋
Update Firmware			Confirm New Firmware
Delivered Update			
Confirm Delivery Server	Scheduled Delivery Firmware Downloaded Firmware	Downloaded	Apply Firmware Delete Firmware
C Display Dogs/Communication rest	Download Date:	2009 06/22 4:21:12	
	Labet	ENGLISH	
	Version:	129	
	Scheduled Delivery Date and Time:	None	Delete Scheduled Delivery
		Version 3	3.0.1.19f Copyright CANON INC. 2009 All Rights Reserve

# **5** Confirm the firmware to delete $\rightarrow$ click [Yes].

			To Pertal Login User : 0000001 Log Out
Register/Update Software			
Device Serial Number:			
Install Application/Option  Manual Installation  Delivered Installation	Update Firmw Delivered U	are you want to delete the dimmware?	Updated Cm 2009 06/22 4:27:67
Update Firmware		Yes N	Confirm Naw Firmware
Delivered Update	Scheduled Delivery Firmware		-
Confirm Delivery Server Display Logs/Communication Test	Downloaded Firmware:	Downloaded	Apply Firmware Delete Firmware
- and a fait a state of the sta	Download Date:	2009 05/22 4:21:12	
	Label:	ENGUSH	
	Version:	129	
	Scheduled Delivery Date and Time:	None	Defete Scheduled Defivery
	I		
			Version 3.0.1.19f Capyright CANON INC. 2009 All Rights Reserved

The firmware is deleted.

To Delivered Update	The firmware was deleted.
	To Delivered Update

# Deleting the Scheduled Delivery

You can delete the scheduled delivery of the firmware.

#### **1** Start the Remote UI, and then log in as Administrator.

🜔" e-Manual "

2 From the top page of the Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration] → [License/Other] → [Register/Update Software].

	To	Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(*) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Management Settings: License/Other	
Control Menu	License/Other	Last Updated: 09/21/2029 08:02:27 PM
Paper Source Menu	C.C.M.C.O.M.	
D Network	License/Other	
D Layout Menu	Message Board/Support Link	
D Quality Menu	Registen/Update Software	
D User Maintenance Menu		
Output/Control		
Utility Menu		
Device Control		
Management Settings		
Department ID Management		
D Security		
License/Other		
		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

### **3** Click [Delivered Update].

		To Portal
Register/Update Software		
Device Serial Number:		
Install Application/Option  Manual Installation  Update Firmware  Delivered Update Software Management Settings  Display Loga/Communication Test	Install Application/Option > Manual Installation Manual Installation License File Path: Application File Path:	bied > Brows
D Scheduled Update Settings	E	Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserve

# **4** Click [Delete Scheduled Delivery].

			To Porte	Login User: 0000001 Log Out
Register/Update Software				
Device Serial Number:				
Install Application/Option  D Manual Installation  Delivered Installation	Update Firmware > Delivered Update Delivered Update		, v	Ipsaled On 2009 08/22 4 30 13 🖉
Update Firmware				Confirm New Firmware
Delivered Update	Scheduled Delivery Firmware			
Confirm Delivery Server Display Logs/Communication Test	Downloaded Firmware:	Nane	Apply Firmware	Delete Firmware
- District Englished in induction rest	Scheduled Delivery Date and Time:	2009 06/28 4:29.41	Delete Scheduled	Delivery
	Label:	ENGLISH	<u> </u>	
	Version:	129		
	2		Arraine 3.0.1.10f Convertents	CANON INC. 2009 All Rights Reserved
			ension aux il rei cloppingnici	SANUTA INC. 2005 AI RIGHTS Reserved

**5** Confirm the information of the scheduled delivery  $\rightarrow$  click [Yes].

### Updating the Firmware

levice Serial Number: stall Application/Option Manual Installation Delivered Installation	Update Firmer Dolivored U	sure you want to delete the scheduled	Updated On: 2009-00122 4:30-13
Ipdate Firmware		Yes No	Confirm New Firmware
Delivered Update	Scheduled Delivery Firmware		
onfirm Delivery Server	Downloaded Firmware:	None Ap	
Display Logs/Communication Test	Scheduled Delivery Date and Time:	2009 05/28 4:29:41	Delete Scheduled Delivery
	Labet	ENGLISH	
	Version:	129	
	<b>X</b>		
			3.0.1.191 Copyright CANON INC. 2008 All Rights Rese

The scheduled delivery is deleted.

To Delivered Update

# Managing the Register/Update Software Function

Managing the Register/Update Software Function
------------------------------------------------

# Managing the Register/Update Software Function

0Y1C-006

You can display the installation logs and test communication using the Remote UI.

## Displaying the Installation/Update Log Using the Remote UI

You can check the installation logs of the system options/MEAP applications and the update log of the firmware.

#### Start the Remote UI, and then log in as Administrator.

🜔" e-Manual "

2 From the top page of the Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration] → [License/Other] → [Register/Update Software].

	To Por	tal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(*) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences  Control Menu  Paper Source Menu  Network  Layout Menu  Guality Menu  User Maintenance Menu  Output/Control  Utility Menu  Device Control  Management Settings  Department ID Management  Security  License/Dther	Settings/Registration: Management Settings: License/Other License/Other License/Other Message Board/Support Link Registen/Update Software	Last Updated: 09/21/2029 08:02:27 PM
		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

#### **3** Click [Display Logs /Communication Test].

		To Portal
Register/Update Software		
Device Serial Number:		
nstall Application/Option	Install Application/Option > Manual Installation	
Manual Installation	Manual Installation	
Delivered Installation		
Software Management Settings		Next >
Display Logs/Communication Test	License File Path:	Browse
	Application File Path:	Browse
	I	
		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserve

**4** From the Log View drop-down list, select [Update Logs]  $\rightarrow$  click [Switch].

The installation logs of the system options/MEAP applications and the update log of the firmware are displayed.

	To Portal Login User : 0000001 Log Out
Register/Update Software	
Device Serial Number:	
Instal Application/Option © Manual Installation © Delivered Installation	Confirm Delivery Server > Display Logs/Communication Test Display Logs/Communication Test
Update Firmware	Communication Test
Delivered Update	
Confirm Delivery Server	Log View Update Logs 🔳 Switch
Display Logs/Communication Test	[2008/10/01 12:30:00] sample log (0K) [2008/10/01 12:40:00] sample log (0K) [2008/10/02 12:50:00] sample log (0K) [2009/10/02 13:00:00] sample log (0K)
	Version 3.0.1.19f Copyright CANON INC. 2009 All Rights Reserved

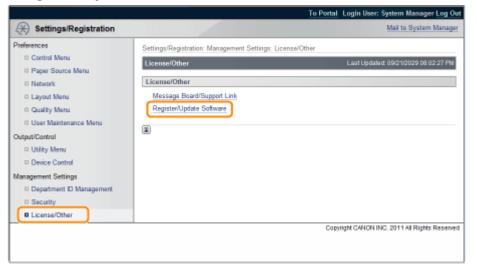
## Testing Communication Using the Remote UI

You can check whether the printer can properly communicate with the delivery server.

#### Start the Remote UI, and then log in as Administrator.

#### 🜔" e-Manual "

2 From the top page of the Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration] → [License/Other] → [Register/Update Software].



**3** Click [Display Logs /Communication Test]  $\rightarrow$  [Communication Test].

#### Managing the Register/Update Software Function

Confirm Delivery Server         Confirm Delivery Server > Display Lega/Communication Test           Delivered Installation         Confirm Delivery Server > Display Lega/Communication Test           Update Firmware         Delivered Update           Confirm Delivery Server         Log View:	Communication Test
Instal Application/Option Confirm Delivery Server > Display Logs/Communication Test Display Lo	Communication Test
Display Logs/Communication Test     Delivered installation     Delivered Update	Communication Test
Delivered installation     Delivered Update     Delivered Update	Communication Test
Delivered installation Update Firmware     Delivered Update	Communication Test
Delivered Update	
la ben	
Confirm Delivery Server	Update Logs 💌 Switch
<ul> <li>Disates is a Research site. Test</li> </ul>	oldino codo
Display Logs/Communication Test         [2009/10/01 12:30:00] same le log [04]           [2009/10/01 12:40:00] same le log [04]         [2009/10/02 12:50:00] same le log [04]           [2009/10/02 13:00:00] same le log [04]         [2009/10/02 13:00:00] same le log [04]	×
Version 3.0.1.19f Copyright CANO	N DAY DOOD ALL DIAME DA ANNO

When the confirmation dialog is displayed, click [Yes].

Contents for the test are downloaded from the delivery server.

When the communication test is completed, the communication test result screen is displayed.

Communication test has been completed.				
- Connect to Delivery Server: OK - Rotrieve Data: OK - Communication Speed: 5514.01868ps				
Back				



#### If [Failed] is displayed on the communication test result

If [Failed] is displayed on the communication test result screen, check that the network cable is connected and that the network settings are correct. If the problem is not resolved, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

# Using This Guide

Using This Guide	32
Operating Environment of This Guide	
Screen Layout of This Guide	34
Тор Раде	35
Topic Page	36
Site Map	37
Search Method	38
Viewing This Guide	39

# **Using This Guide**

This chapter describes how to use this guide.

Operating Environment of This Guide(P. 33)

- Screen Layout of This Guide(P. 34)
- C Top Page(P. 35)
- **D** Topic Page(P. 36)
- Site Map(P. 37)
- Search Method(P. 38)

#### Viewing This Guide(P. 39)

#### <To find the desired content>

- Selecting between the category icons
   From the top page, select a category icon you want.
   "Top Page(P. 35) "
- Searching from the site map
   On the site map, you can view the list of whole sections of this guide sorted by category. You can
   directly display sections in a category.

   " Site Map(P. 37) "
- Whole text search function
   You can search by keyword in this guide. You can display the desired description from the search
   results by entering a keyword you want to search. This function supports AND search.

   "Search Method(P. 38) "

# **Operating Environment of This Guide**

0Y1C-008

You need a Web browser to use this guide. Operation of the following Web browsers is guaranteed.

#### Windows

- Internet Explorer 6.0 or later
- Firefox 2.x or later

#### **Mac OS**

- Safari 3.x or later
- Firefox 3.x or later

## 

#### Enabling the script function

Enable the script function for a Web browser before using this guide.

Using This Guide

# **Screen Layout of This Guide**

0Y1C-009

This section describes the screen layout of this guide.

The page displayed right after this guide starts is called "Top Page" and the guide description is called "Topic Page" in this section.

"Site map" is displayed from [Site map] which is located on the upper right of this guide.

The search panel is used to make search through this guide.

The screen layout is different for each page, so click the following links to see the instruction.

- **Top Page(P. 35)**
- Topic Page(P. 36)
- **Site Map(P. 37)**
- Search Method(P. 38)

# Top Page

Санон		(3) (4) (5)
Function Guide for Software Regis	stration and Update (2)	
	> Available Functions (1)	
	Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications	
	> Updating the Firmware	
	Managing the Register/Update Software Function	
Copyright CANON INC. 2015	Dachaguers D   Copyright D	Trademarks 🔘   USRM2-6358 (00)
	(6) (7)	(8)

#### (1) Select from functions

The instructions of each function and operation method are described.

#### (2) [Search]

The search panel is displayed by entering keyword(s) and clicking [ 1]. For details, see " **Search Method(P. 38)** ."

#### (3) [Top]

The top page of this guide is displayed.

#### (4) [Site map]

The entire contents of this guide are displayed.

#### (5) [Help]

How to use this guide is displayed.

#### (6) [Disclaimers]

The disclaimers are displayed.

#### (7) [Copyright]

The information of copyrights is displayed.

#### (8) [Trademarks]

The trademarks are displayed.

0Y1C-00C

# **Topic Page**

(4)(5) (6)(7)(8)Canon Top | Site map | Help 어 Previous | 아 Next) 🗐 Con a Installing the System Options/MEAP Approx (3)Installing the System Options/MEAP Applications The procedures to install the system options or MEAP applications on the printer differ, depending printer is connected or not to an outside network. Select the procedure that matches your condition of the procedure state of the system option of the system option of the system option option. nding on ns using the where Co to This Printer to references below. ng by Not Connecting This Printer to a the Hanuals and Related Installing by Connecting this Printer to an Outside Network Install from the Remote UI ✓ NOTE Communication test To check that the transmission with the delivery server is properly operating, if necessary, perform a communication test before installation. > "Testing Communication Using the Remote UI" (2)(1)Installing by Not Connecting this Printer to an Outside Network Installing System Options Install using one of the following procedures I NOTE If you install multiple system options We recommend that you install from the Remote UI s D Copyright D 60 (9)

#### (1) Chapter contents

This is the list of the contents in the chapter. Clicking each item displays the description in the topic page. Click []] to expand a menu, and click []] to collapse a menu.

Alternatively, click [ 🛨 Expand all ] to expand all menus, and click [ 🔄 Collapse all ] to collapse all menus.

#### (2) Topic page

The descriptions of each item are displayed.

The current location of the displayed topic is displayed at the upper left of the topic page. Click a link to move to a higher level.

#### (3) [Chapter] menu

You can select a different chapter from the pull-down menu.

#### (4) [Contents] tab

Click to display the chapter contents panel.

#### (5) [Search] tab

Click to display the search panel. For details, see " **Search Method(P. 38)** ."

(6) [ 📢 ]

Click to display or hide the chapter contents panel/search panel.

#### (7) [Previous]/[Next]

Click to move to the previous or next topic.

#### (8) [Print this topic]

Prints only the topic page currently displayed.

(9) [Print all]

Prints all the contents in a chapter.

# Site Map

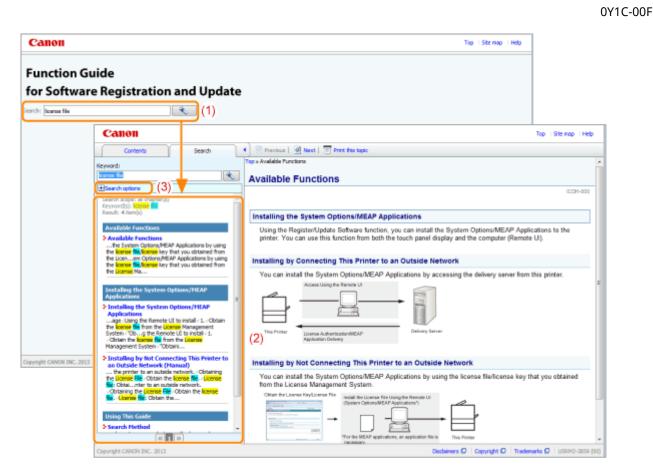
0Y1C-00E

Canon	Top	Site map	H
Site map			
Available Punctions	<u>≭</u> Net	¥ Go to top	of p
Installing the System Options/MEAP Application	a 👷 Previous 🛫 Next	🚡 Go to top	of ;
Installing by Connecting This Printer to an Outsi Installing by Not Connecting This Printer to an O	Dutside Network (Manual)		
Downloading the Manuals and Related Software			
Updating the Firmware	± Previous ± Next	∰ Go to top	ofp
Managing the Register/Update Software Function	an 🗶 Previous 🗶 Next	¥ Go to top	of p
Using This Guide	x Revious	≩ Go to tap	of
Operating Environment of This Guide Screen Layout of This Guide Topic Page Site Map Saarth Nethod			
Search Method Viewing This Guide			
		¥ Go to top	p of
Copyright CANON INC. 2015	Dischimers D   Copyright D   Trademarks D	USRM2-6	635

#### (1) Whole contents

Shows the all chapters and sections of this guide. Click an item to view the contents.

# **Search Method**



#### (1) Search

Entering a character string in [Search] on the top page or in the [Keyword] text box on the search panel and then clicking [

The AND search is available in this guide so you can refine the search results by entering two or more keywords. When entering keywords, enter a space between the keywords.

• Example: license file (if you want to display pages which include words, "license" and "file")

#### (2) Search result

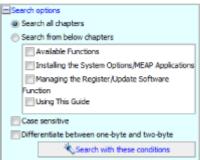
The search results for a keyword are displayed.

If there are more than 10 search results, you can see the other results by clicking [ 💘 ], [ » ], or the

number which is located below the result.

#### (3) [Search options]

Click to display the search options.



The search options can be used to specify the chapter to search, case sensitivity, and whether to differentiate between one- and two-byte characters.

Click [Search with these conditions] to search with the specified conditions.

Using This Guide

# Viewing This Guide

0Y1C-00H

## Symbols Used in This Guide

The following symbols are used in this Guide to mark descriptions of handling restrictions, precautions, and instructions that should be observed for your safety.

#### IMPORTANT

Indicates operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the machine correctly, and avoid damage to the machine or property.

Indicates a clarification of an operation, or contains additional explanations for a procedure. Reading these notes is highly recommended.

## Buttons Used in This Guide

The following are examples of how control panel keys and on-screen buttons are depicted in this guide.

Туре	Depiction in This Guide	Example
Buttons on computer operation screen and so on	[Button name and so on]	[OK]

## Screenshots Used in This Guide

The contents of the screenshots used in this guide are the default settings.

Depending on the system configuration, the contents of the screenshots may partly differ.

# Disclaimer

Disclaimer
------------

0Y1C-00J

The information in this manual is subject to change without notice.

CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THEREOF, WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE OR AGAINST INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PATENT. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, OR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MATERIAL. Trademarks

# Trademarks

# Trademarks

- "MEAP" is a trademark of CANON Inc., referring to an "application platform" for Canon multifunction and single function printers.
- Apple, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, LocalTalk, Mac, Mac OS, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows Server, and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- This product contains the Universal Font Scaling Technology or UFST[®] under license from Monotype Imaging, Inc. UFST[®] is a trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc. registered in the United States Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain jurisdictions.
- UFST: Copyright[©] 1989 1996, 1997, 2003, 2004, 2008, all rights reserved, by Monotype Imaging Inc.



• Java and all Java based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.



- Adobe, PostScript, and the PostScript logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Copyright[©] 2007 -08 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Protected by U.S. Patents 5,737,599; 5,781,785; 5,819,301; 5,929,866; 5,943,063; 6,073,148; 6,515,763; 6,639,593; 6,754,382; 7,046,403; 7,213,269; 7,242,415; Patents pending in the U.S. and other countries.
- All instances of the name PostScript in the text are references to the PostScript language as defined by Adobe Systems Incorporated unless otherwise stated. The name PostScript also is used as a product trademark for Adobe Systems' implementation of the PostScript language interpreter.
- Except as otherwise stated, any reference to a "PostScript printing device," "PostScript display device," or similar item refers to a printing device, display device or item (respectively) that contains PostScript technology created or licensed by Adobe Systems Incorporated and not to devices or items that purport to be merely compatible with the PostScript language.
- Adobe, the Adobe logo, PostScript, the PostScript logo, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds. Microsoft and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

#### Trademarks

- All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
- All other product and brand names are registered trademarks, trademarks or service marks of their respective owners.

This Font Software is licensed under the SIL Open Font License, Version 1.1.

This license is copied below, and is also available with a FAQ at: http://scripts.sil.org/OFL

_____

SIL OPEN FONT LICENSE Version 1.1 - 26 February 2007

_____

#### PREAMBLE

The goals of the Open Font License (OFL) are to stimulate worldwide development of collaborative font projects, to support the font creation efforts of academic and linguistic communities, and to provide a free and open framework in which fonts may be shared and improved in partnership with others.

The OFL allows the licensed fonts to be used, studied, modified and redistributed freely as long as they are not sold by themselves. The fonts, including any derivative works, can be bundled, embedded, redistributed and/or sold with any software provided that any reserved names are not used by derivative works. The fonts and derivatives, however, cannot be released under any other type of license. The requirement for fonts to remain under this license does not apply to any document created using the fonts or their derivatives.

#### DEFINITIONS

"Font Software" refers to the set of files released by the Copyright Holder(s) under this license and clearly marked as such. This may include source files, build scripts and documentation.

"Reserved Font Name" refers to any names specified as such after the copyright statement(s).

"Original Version" refers to the collection of Font Software components as distributed by the Copyright Holder(s).

"Modified Version" refers to any derivative made by adding to, deleting, or substituting -- in part or in whole -- any of the components of the Original Version, by changing formats or by porting the Font Software to a new environment.

"Author" refers to any designer, engineer, programmer, technical writer or other person who contributed to the Font Software.

#### **PERMISSION & CONDITIONS**

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Font Software, to use, study, copy, merge, embed, modify, redistribute, and sell modified and unmodified copies of the Font Software, subject to the following conditions: 1) Neither the Font Software nor any of its individual components, in Original or Modified Versions, may be sold by itself.

2) Original or Modified Versions of the Font Software may be bundled, redistributed and/or sold with any software, provided that each copy contains the above copyright notice and this license. These can be included either as stand-alone text files, human-readable headers or in the appropriate machine-readable metadata fields within text or binary files as long as those fields can be easily viewed by the user.

3) No Modified Version of the Font Software may use the Reserved Font Name(s) unless explicit written permission is granted by the corresponding Copyright Holder. This restriction only applies to the primary font name as presented to the users.

4) The name(s) of the Copyright Holder(s) or the Author(s) of the Font Software shall not be used to promote, endorse or advertise any Modified Version, except to acknowledge the contribution(s) of the Copyright Holder(s) and the Author(s) or with their explicit written permission.

5) The Font Software, modified or unmodified, in part or in whole, must be distributed entirely under this license, and must not be distributed under any other license. The requirement for fonts to remain under this license does not apply to any document created using the Font Software.

#### TERMINATION

This license becomes null and void if any of the above conditions are not met.

#### DISCLAIMER

THE FONT SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHT, PATENT, TRADEMARK, OR OTHER RIGHT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE FONT SOFTWARE OR FROM OTHER DEALINGS IN THE FONT SOFTWARE.



# Function Guide for MEAP Application Management

# **User's Guide**

USRM2-6341-02 2017-11 en

Copyright CANON INC. 2017

# Contents

Available Functions	
Launching and Closing SMS	
Before Launching SMS (Preparation)	
Setting Up HTTP Communication	
Launching SMS (Log in)	
Attention (Launching SMS (Log in))	
Closing SMS (Logging Out)	
MEAP Application Settings	
Installing MEAP Applications	
Attention (Installing MEAP Applications)	22
Uninstalling MEAP Applications	23
Starting/Stopping MEAP Applications	
Starting MEAP Applications	
Stopping MEAP Applications	27
Checking the Details of MEAP Applications	
MEAP Application License Settings	
Adding License Files	
Disabling License Files	
Downloading Disabled License Files	
Deleting Disabled License Files	41
Setting Authentication Information for MEAP Applications	
System Settings	
Changing the MEAP Applet Display Order	50
Charling Login Convisor	52

Changing the MEAP Applet Display Order	50
Checking Login Services	52
Setting Enhanced System Applications	54
Starting/Stopping Enhanced System Applications	55
Starting Enhanced System Applications	56
Stopping Enhanced System Applications	57
Installing Enhanced System Applications	58
Uninstalling Enhanced System Applications	. 61
Checking Information	62
Checking System Information	. 63
Checking Application Information	65
Checking License Files	66
Changing the SMS Password	67
Deleting the MEAP Application Setting Information	. 69
Managing MEAP Application Log Data	71
Downloading Log Data	72

Deleting Log Data	
List of Error Messages (MEAP)	77
Errors Relating to the [Login] Page	79
Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Management] Page	81
Errors Relating to the [Install MEAP Application] Page	83
Errors Relating to the [Authentication Information Settings] Page	
Errors Relating to the [License Management] Page	89
Errors Relating to the [Enhanced System Application Management] Page	
Errors Relating to the [Check License] and [Change Password] Pages	
Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Setting Information Management] Page	
Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Log Management] Page	100
Other Errors	101

Using This Guide	
Operating Environment of This Guide	
Screen Layout of This Guide	
Top Page	106
Topic Page	107
Site Map	108
Search Method	
Viewing This Guide	110
Disclaimer	112
Trademarks	114

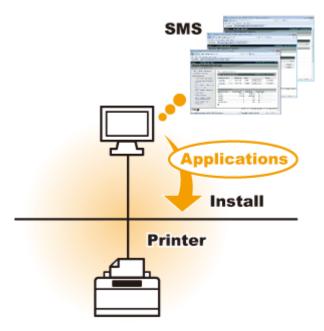
# **Available Functions**

# **Available Functions**

#### 0XW7-000

SMS (Service Management Service) is software that accesses the printer over the network from an existing Web browser, and can install and manage MEAP applications (called "applications" in this document). Since the software (Web server) for using SMS is embedded in the printer, there is no need for any software other than a Web browser.

If a printer on the network is connected to a computer, it can use SMS. You can perform the following operations using SMS.



### You can check application information from computers on the network

You can access the printer via the network and display the status and information of installed applications.

After SMS launches and you log in by entering your password in the [Log In] page, the following top page is displayed.

#### **Available Functions**

🕒 = 🖻 http://				🛧 🗙 🔁 Bing			م ر
Favoritas 🛛 🐅 🚺 Suggested Sites 🕶 🧯	🕑 Web Siice Gallery 🗢						
Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L	BPXCOOK			🗄 • 🖻 • 🖻	E	age +	Safety + Tgols + 🔞
	allill		utili		To Re	mote U	Log Out from SH
ervice Management Se	ervice						
vice Serial Number:							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement					
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application M				Lindated (	in:09/24/	2029 8:21:31 PM 💋
stem Management		anayenten			opassede		
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on				License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Uni	nstall	Unnecessary
Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Uni	notall	Installed
System Application Management	X						
System Information	Resource Informatic	Resource Information					
MEAP Application Information	Resource Name	Amount	Used	Remaining	Percent	Used	
Check License	Storage		13193 KB	19575 KB	40%	_	
Change Password	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KB	18%	-	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	117	9%	-	
	Sockets		6	122	5%		
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	121	5%	•	
	X						
				Cop	right CANC	N INC. 2	011 All Rights Reserv
meap							2
T							

#### (1) [MEAP Application Management]

It can display the status of applications that are installed in the printer. **O**" **MEAP Application Settings(P. 16)** "

#### (2) [Install MEAP Application]

Install the MEAP application. **O**" Installing MEAP Applications(P. 19) "

#### (3) [System Management]

MEAP system administrator settings are used for setting system application settings, displaying information and changing passwords, etc.

System Settings(P. 49) "

#### You can install and uninstall applications

You can install and uninstall applications that support this printer from the computer.

#### **O**" Installing MEAP Applications(P. 19) "

**O**" Uninstalling MEAP Applications(P. 23) "

#### You can update installed applications and license files

If the license for the installed applications has expired, you can reinstall and update it.

O" Adding License Files(P. 32) "

Launching and Closing SMS			
Before Launching SMS (Preparation)	7		
Setting Up HTTP Communication	8		
Launching SMS (Log in)	9		
Attention (Launching SMS (Log in))	. 13		
Closing SMS (Logging Out)	. 14		

Log in is required to use SMS.

Before Launching SMS (Preparation)(P. 7)

#### Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9)

### Closing SMS (Logging Out)(P. 14)

#### Web Browser Settings

The following settings are required.

- JavaScript must be enabled
- The use of session cookies must be enabled
- When a proxy server is used, using the proxy server settings of your Web browser, add the IP address of the printer to the [Exceptions] (addresses that do not use a proxy) list. Since settings differ depending on the network environment, consult with your network administrator.

#### Launching SMS

Multiple users cannot log in to SMS at the same time.

#### **Automatic SMS Logout**

While SMS is in use, if it is not accessed for approximately five minutes or more it times out and the user is automatically logged out. If that happens, log in again from the [Login] page.

#### Do not use the Web browser's [Back] navigation button

If you use the Web browser's [Back] navigation button, SMS may not operate properly.

# SMS System Environment

SMS operation is guaranteed in the following system environments.

Web Browsers	<ul><li>Internet Explorer 7 or later</li><li>Safari 4.0.5 or later</li></ul>
	Windows Vista SP2
Operating system	<ul> <li>Windows 7 SP1</li> </ul>
	Windows 8

0XW7-001

Windows 10
• Mac OS X v 10.5 or later

# Before Launching SMS (Preparation)

#### 0XW7-002

Set the following before launching SMS.

Step 1	Configure the network settings.	O" e-Manual "
Step 2	Check the printer's IP address by Network Status Print.	or e-Manual "
Step 3	Set it so that the printer can be accessed from the Web browser.	• Setting Up HTTP Communication(P. 8)

# **Setting Up HTTP Communication**

#### 0XW7-003

In order to use MEAP functions from the Web browser, HTTP communication must be enabled. Follow the steps in the procedure below to configure the settings. (The default settings are <On>.)

Press [Settings] key, select <Network> with ▲/▼, and then press [OK] key.

After the message is displayed, press [OK] key.

2 Select <TCP/IP Settings> with  $\blacktriangle$  /  $\mathbf{v}$  , and then press [OK] key.

**3** Select <HTTP> with  $\blacktriangle/ \triangledown$ , and then press [OK] key.

**4** Select <On> with  $\blacktriangle / \triangledown$ , and then press [OK] key.

<0n>	It uses HTTP.
<off></off>	It does not use HTTP.

### **5** Perform a hard reset or restart the printer.

The settings are enabled after a hard reset or after the printer is restarted.

NOTE
Details about Hard Resets
See the " e-Manual ."

# Launching SMS (Log in)

The following two methods are used for launching SMS.

**C** Launching SMS directly from the Web browser(P. 9)

Launching SMS from a Remote UI(P. 10)

Before launching SMS, see " Attention (Launching SMS (Log in))(P. 13) ."

Launching SMS directly from the Web browser

**1** Start the Web browser.

- 2 Enter "https://<Printer's IP address>:8443/sms/" in the address bar, and then press [ENTER] from the Enter key on the keyboard.
  - Entry Example: https://192.168.0.215:8443/sms/
  - If the printer's host name is registered in the DNS server, you can enter [host name.domain name] instead of the IP address.
    - Input Example: http://my_printer.xy_dept.company.com:8443/sms/

6 Service Management	Service ( LBP/000) ( LBP/000) - Windows Inte	net Explorer	
🚱 🖓 🕶 🖻 http:	c//192.168.0.215:8443/srms/	- 🔒 🖻 🕂 🗙 💽 8ing	• م
🚖 Favoritas 🛛 🐅 🚺	Suggerted Sites 🔹 👔 Web Sitce Gallery •		
🍘 Service Manageme	nt Service : LBP/0000: LBP/0000	🏪 🕶 🖂 🖷 🖷 🖉 Baga 🕶 Sa	fety • Tgols • 🔞 •
			To Remote UI
Service Mar	agement Service		
Device Serial Number:			
	Login		
	Enter password.		
	Password:		
	Password.		
		Login	
L		Capyright CANON INC. 20	11 All Rights Reserved
meap			
-			
Done		✓ Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off	}• <b>€</b> 100% • ;

#### If SMS does not launch

Check the following.

- HTTP communication is enabled.
  - " Setting Up HTTP Communication(P. 8) "
- The computer and printer are connected properly over the network.
- The printer is turned ON.

0XW7-004

• The IP address or [host name.domain name] are entered correctly.

### 

#### **Device Serial Number**

The printer's device serial number is displayed on the upper left of the screen. (The device serial number is required to obtain the license file from the license management system.)

### **3** Enter the password, and then click [Login].

[†] The default password is "MeapSmsLogin" (case sensitive).

6 Service Management	Service : L8P/0001: L8P/0007- Windows Internet Exp	lorer		
🕒 🗸 🖉 http	VI	- 🔒 🖻 🕂 🗙 🚺	5 Bing	ب م
🔶 Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🊺	Suggerted Sites 🔹 🗿 Web Siice Gallery 🔹			
🍘 Service Manageme	nt Service : LBP/0000: LBP/0000	눱 = 🛛	- 🖂 🌐 - Bage - Safe	ty • Tgoh • 🔞 •
				To Remote UI
Service Mar	agement Service			
Device Serial Number:				
	Login			
	Enter password.			
	Password:		ר ר	
			Login	
			(Levy m)	
			Copyright CANON INC. 2011	All Rights Reserved
meap				
Done		Trusted sites   Prote	cted Mode: Off	* 🔍 100% *

#### 🕜 If you cannot log in

If you cannot log in because the password is not correct, a message is displayed prompting you to reenter your password.

Enter the correct password, and then click [Login].

- [†] If you do not log in within approximately 5 minutes after the login page is displayed, you will not be able to log in even if you enter the correct password.
- * A switch license file is required to initialize passwords. After clicking on [Browse] in [Initialize Password] in the screen that displays the message prompting password re-entry, select Switch License File, and then click [Initialize]. Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.

# Launching SMS from a Remote UI

Start the Remote UI and log on in system manager mode.

🜔" e-Manual "

**2** Click [Service Management Service] on the portal page.

🕞 👻 🔁 http://			• 🖻 4 🗙	🔁 Bing	,
Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🌄 Suggest	ed Sites 👻 🙋 Web Siice	Gallery 🕶			
Remote UE Portal: LBP/0000 I	BPX000X		🖞 -	🔯 = 🖂 🌐 = Baga = Safi	ety 🕶 Tgols 🕶 🌘
	Prod	ce Name: luct Name (Serial No ition:	LBPXXXX .): LBPXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	Login User: System M	lanager <u>Log Ou</u>
👌 Remote UI: Porta			Language: Englis	h 🔹 🔁 Mail to S	Bystem Manager
Device Basic Information		Last Updated: 2	906 2011 01:51:01 😰	Status Monitor/Cancel	
Device Status				Settings/Registration	X
The printer is ready. Error Information					27
There is no error.				Basic Tools	
Consumables Information	I			Box	- 🍣
Paper Information				Direct Print	2
Paper Source	Remaining Paper	Paper Size			
Multi-Purpose Tray	None	A4			
Drawer 1	Loaded	A4		Management Tools	
Remaining Toner			(	Service Management Service	-
Item Name Ren	naining Toner				2

# **3** Enter the password, and then click [Login].

[†] The default password is "MeapSmsLogin" (case sensitive).

Service Management Service   LBP/000  LBP/000/- Windows Internet Explorer	
🚱 🕞 👻 🖹 http:// 🔹 🔒 🧐 🌆 🔀 🕼	• م
👷 Faveritas 🛛 🙀 🚺 Suggested Sites 🖛 🔊 Web Sites Gallery 🕶	
🍘 🐨 🖾 🔹 🖾 👘 🔹 📾	laga • Safety • Tgoh • 🔞 •
	To Remote UI
Service Management Service	
Device Serial Number:	
Login	
Enter password.	_
Password:	
	Login
	N INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved
meap	
Done 🗸 Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off	🖓 👻 🔍 100% 💌 💡

#### 🛜 If you cannot log in

If you cannot log in because the password is not correct, a message is displayed prompting you to reenter your password.

Enter the correct password, and then click [Login].

[†] If you do not log in within approximately 5 minutes after the login page is displayed, you will not be able to log in even if you enter the correct password.

A switch license file is required to initialize passwords. After clicking on [Browse] in [Initialize Password] in the screen that displays the message prompting password re-entry, select Switch License File, and then click [Initialize]. Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.

# Attention (Launching SMS (Log in))

0XW7-005

### / IMPORTANT

#### **SMS Password**

- To prevent unauthorized access, We recommend that the administrator change the password before SMS use is begun. See " **Changing the SMS Password(P. 67)** " when changing passwords.
- This password is to prevent unauthorized operation of the printer. Do not let anyone know except the administrator.
- Make sure that you do not forget your password. If you forget your password, you will not be able to use SMS. If this happens, contact your local dealer.

# **Closing SMS (Logging Out)**

#### 0XW7-006

Click [Log Out from SMS] to close SMS.

[†] If you close the Web browser without clicking [Log Out from SMS], SMS becomes temporarily unusable.

👸 Service Management Service : LBPX00X : L	BPJOOOK			🗄 = 🖂 = 1	a 🖶 - I	laga + 3	Safety + Tgols + 🔞
				1	To Re	mote U	Log Out from Sk
Service Management S	ervice						
Device Serial Number:							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement					
Install MEAP Application		2			1 locate location		
System Management	MEAP Application M	anagement			Updated	0000216	2029 8:21:31 PM 💋
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on	Status			License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Uni	nstall	Unnecessary
¹¹ Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Uni	nstall	Installed
System Application Management	X						
System Information							
	Resource Informatic	_			_		
MEAP Application Information	Resource Name	Amoun		Remaining	Percent	Used	
MEAP Application Information     Check License			13193 KB	19575 F	08 40%	_	
	Storage			40,700.1	40.04	_	
Check License     Change Password	Storage Memory		3700 KB	16780	1.0.10	7.1	
Check License	Storage Memory Threads		3700 KB 11	1	17 9%	÷	
Check License Change Password MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Storage Memory		3700 KB	1	1.0.10	Ē	
Check License     Change Password	Storage Memory Threads Sockets		3700 KB 11 6	1	17 9% 22 5%	Ē	

Μ	EAP Application Settings	16
	Installing MEAP Applications	. 19
	Attention (Installing MEAP Applications)	. 22
	Uninstalling MEAP Applications	23
	Starting/Stopping MEAP Applications	. 25
	Starting MEAP Applications	26
	Stopping MEAP Applications	. 27
	Checking the Details of MEAP Applications	29
	MEAP Application License Settings	31
	Adding License Files	32
	Disabling License Files	35
	Downloading Disabled License Files	38
	Deleting Disabled License Files	. 41
	Setting Authentication Information for MEAP Applications	44

#### 0XW7-007

MEAP applications are set from the [MEAP Application Management] and the [Install MEAP Application] menus.

Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB	P30000-Windows Internet Ex	piorer	0 0 0					
) 🔾 🔻 🔊 http://			• 🗰 😢 🕯	🕈 🗙 💽 85	18			م
Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🚺 Suggested Sites 🕶 🛔	👔 Web Sice Gallery 🕶							
Service Management Service : LBP/000X : L						- p.	-	Safety + Tgols + 🐐
and the interruption of service - carAAAA - 1							-	
		_			101	(emo	te UI	Login User:1 Log (
ervice Management S	ervice							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement						
manan men a reparation	MEAP Application M				Linda	hel 01	09/21	/2029 8:21:31 PM 🔗
stem Management		anagement			opas			
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on	Status	_			License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop	Unin	stall	Unnecessary
<ul> <li>Management</li> <li>System Application Management</li> </ul>	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start	Unin	stall	Installed
	X							
System Information     MEAD Application	Resource Informatio	6						
MEAP Application Information     Charle License	Resource Name	Amount	Used F	Remaining	Pen	cent	Jaed	
Check License     Checks Breasword	Storage		13193 KB	19575 P		40%	-	
Change Password	Memory		3700 KB	16780 1		18%	-	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads Sockets		11		17 93	9% 5%	2	
D MEAP Application Log	File Descriptors		7		22 21	5%		
¹⁴ Management								
м			√ Trusted s	ites   Protected	Mode: O	ff		- € 100% •
Service Management Service   LBP/000X   LB	IPJ0006-Windows Internet Ex	plorer				ff		
Service Management Service   LBP/000X   LB	IPJ000F-Windows Internet Ex	plorer		ites   Protected		ff		
Service Management Service ( LBPXXXX : LB		plorer				ff		
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Converting () + () + () + () + () + () + () + ()	🖉 Web Sice Gallery 🕶	plorer	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	18		ige •	, Q
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Converting () + () + () + () + () + () + () + ()	🖉 Web Sice Gallery 🕶	plorer	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	ې چ Safety + Tgola + 🐐
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Composition () () () () () () () () () () () () ()	g) Web Siice Gallery + BP30000	plorer	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	ې پ Safety + Tgola + 👔
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Teverites   : Inttp:// Favorites   : Suggested Sites • : Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L Service Management S	g) Web Siice Gallery + BP30000	plorer	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	ې چ Safety + Tgola + 🐐
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service : LBPXXXX   LB Faverites   * Suggested Sites • Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : LB Service Management Service : LBPXXX : LB Service Management Service : LBPXX : LB Service Management Service : LBPXX : LB Service Management Service : LB Service Management Service : LB Service Service : LB Service Service : LB Service : LB S	e) Web Sice Gallery + BPXXXX EPVICE		• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	ې چ Safety + Tgola + 🐐
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Favorites	e) Web Sice Gallery - BPXOX ervice	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	ې چ Safety + Tgola + 🐐
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Favorites	e) Web Sice Gallery + BPXXXX EPVICE	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	ې چ Safety + Tgola + 🐐
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Favorites	e) Web Sice Gallery - BPXOX ervice	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service : LBPXXXX   Service Management Service : LBPXXX   Service Management Service : LBPXX   Service Service : LBPXX   Service Service : LBPXX   Service Service : LBPXX   Service : LBPXX   Servi	9) Web Sice Gallery + LBPXCOX EPVICE Instal MEAP Applicatio Install MEAP Applicatio	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	Safety + Tgols + 6 Login User:1 Log 0 Install
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service : LBPXXXX   Service Management Service : LBPXXXX   Service Management Service : LBPXXXX   Service Management Service : LBPXXX   Service : LBPXX   Servi	e) Web Sice Gallery - LEPXCOX Install MEAP Application Install MEAP Application Install MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	Safety + Tgoh + 6 Login User:1 Log ( Install
Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Service Management Service : LBPX00X : L Service SeralNarker: MEAD Arekestion Management Install MEAP Application Service System Application Management System Application Management	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	Safety + Tgols + 6 Login User:1 Log 0 Install
Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Service Management Service : LBPX00X : L Service Seral Number: MEAD Analysis : LBPX00X : L Service Seral Number: MEAD Analysis : LBPX00X : L Service Seral Number: Service Seral Number: MEAD Analysis : LBPX00X : L Service Seral Number: Service Seral N	e) Web Sice Gallery - LEPXCOX Install MEAP Application Install MEAP Application Install MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	Safety + Tgoh + 6 Login User:1 Log 0 Install
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L Envice Management Service : LBPXXXX : L Service Management Service : LBPXXX : L System Application Management Service : LBPXXXX : L System Information Service : LBPXXX : L MEAP Application Information Service : LBPXXX : L System Information Inf	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	Safety + Tgoh + 6 Login User:1 Log 0 Install
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Favorites	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	Safety + Tgoh + 6 Login User:1 Log 0 Install
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Faveritas 2 Interpl Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : I Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : I Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : I Service Management Service : LBPXXX : I Service Management Service : LBPXXX : I Service Management Service : LBPXXX : I Service Seral Number: MEAD Archardion Management I Service Seral Number: Panel Display Order Settings Enhanced System Application Management System Application Management System Application Information Management Management System Information Management Service Information Management Service Information Management Service Information Management Management Service Information Management Service Information Service Information Se	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	Safety + Tgoh + 6 Login User:1 Log 0 Install
Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Service Management Service : LBPX00X : L Service : L	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	Safety + Tgoh + 6 Login User:1 Log 0 Install
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   L Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   L Service Management Service   LBPXXX   L Service Management Service   LBPXX   L Service Management Service   LBPXX   L Service Service   LBPXX   L Service Management Service   LBPXX   L Service Management Service   LBPXX   L Service Service   LBPXX   L Service Management Service   LBPXX   L Service Management Service   LBPXX   L Service Management Service   L Service Management Service   L Service Service   L Service Management Service   L Service M	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	Safety + Tgoh + 6 Login User:1 Log 0 Install
Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Favorites	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •	9 X 🗟 8)	v = +	<b>→</b> ₽	_	Safety + Tgoh + 6 Login User:1 Log 0 Install
Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Favorites Sugerted Star • Service Management Service : LBPX00X : I Service Management Service : LBPX00X : I MEAP Application Information MEAP Application Setting Information Management MEAP Application Log Management	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •		u I 🖶 To P	₹ ₽.	te UI	Safety + Tgoh + 6 Login User:1 Log 0 Install
Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB Formities Interplate Service Management Service : LBPX00X : 1 Service Management Panel Display Order Settings System Application Management System Application Management System Information Check License Change Password MEAP Application Setting Information Management MEAP Application Setting Information Management MEAP Application Setting Information Management MEAP Application Log	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •		u I 🖶 To P	₹ ₽.	te UI	Safety + Tgols + @ Login User:1 Log @ Install Browse
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Faverita: Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L Service Management Service : LBPXXX : L Service Management Service : LBPXX : L Service : L Service Management Service : L Service : L Servic	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •		u I 🖶 To P	₹ ₽.	te UI	Safety + Tgols + @ Login User:1 Log @ Install Browse
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Faverites	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License	• 🔒 🖻 •		u I 🖶 To P	₹ ₽.	te UI	Safety + Tgols + @ Login User:1 Log @ Install Browse
Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LB Faverites	e) Web Sice Gallery - LBPXXXX ErVICE Install MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Enstall MEAP Application Application File Path:	vi/License			19	- BA	te UI	Safety + Tgols + @ Login User:1 Log @ Install Browse

### Items shown in the [MEAP Application Management] menu

[Application Name]	The name of the application is displayed.
[Installed on]	The date on which the application was installed is displayed.
[Status]	The status of the application is displayed.  • [Installed]:

	<ul> <li>The application has been installed, but not started. Or, the printer was turned OFF after the application stopped, and after the printer was restarted the application was not yet started.</li> <li>[Started]: The application is running.</li> <li>[Stopped]: The application is stopped.</li> <li>[Starting]: The application is starting up.</li> <li>[Stopping]: The application is closing down.</li> </ul>
[License]	<ul> <li>The license status of the application is displayed.</li> <li><b>[Installed]:</b> <ul> <li>A valid license file has been installed.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>[Not Installed]:</b> <ul> <li>The license file has been disabled.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>[Over Limit]:</b> <ul> <li>The license file that is installed has an expiration date, and multiple types of counters have been set. One or more of the counter values has exceeded the upper limits of the counter.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>[Invalid]:</b> <ul> <li>The installed license file has passed its expiration date.</li> <li>Or, the current counter value has exceeded the upper limit of the license file.</li> <li>* When upper limits have been set for multiple types of counters, the license will become invalid at the point in time when any counter exceeds its upper limit.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>[Unnecessary]:</b> <ul> <li>The application does not require a license file for startup.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
[Resource Information]	The resources being used by the applications are displayed.         • [Storage]:         The amount of storage being used. It is shown in kilobyte units (KB).         • [Memory]:         The amount of memory being used. It is shown in kilobyte units (KB).         • [Threads]:         The number of threads.         • [Sockets]:         The number of sockets.         • [File Descriptors]:         The number of file descriptors.         Vorte         Timing of [Resource Information] Updates         [Storage]         When the application is installed or uninstalled or

[File Descriptors]	
	[File Descriptors]

### [Install MEAP Application] Menu Settings

	Install the MEAP application.
	• <b>[Install]:</b> Specify the application file and license file to be installed, and then click [Install] to start the installation.
[Install MEAP Application/License]	• [Application File Path]: Specify the application file to be installed.
	• [License File Path]: Specify the license file.

See the following section for settings that use the [MEAP Application Management] and [Install MEAP Application] menus.

## Installing MEAP Applications(P. 19)

## Uninstalling MEAP Applications(P. 23)

- Starting/Stopping MEAP Applications(P. 25)
- Checking the Details of MEAP Applications(P. 29)
- MEAP Application License
   Settings(P. 31)
- Setting Authentication Information for MEAP Applications(P. 44)

# **Installing MEAP Applications**

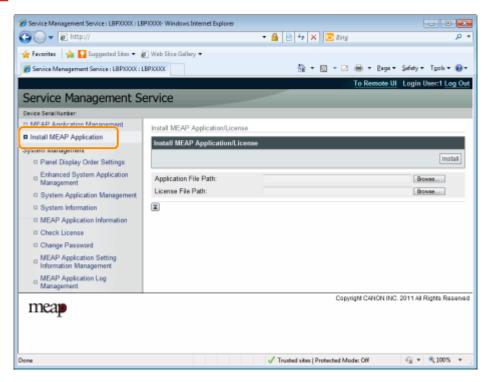
0XW7-008

Before starting the following operation, see " Attention (Installing MEAP Applications)(P. 22) ."

### Start SMS (Service Management Service).

Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

# **2** Click [Install MEAP Application].



# **3** Set [Application File Path] and [License File Path].

Either select the file by clicking [Browse...], or enter the location where the file is stored.

Service Management Service (LBP)000X (LB	8P30000- Windows Internet Explorer		- 2 🛃
🔾 🗸 🖉 http://		• 🔒 🖻 🔸 🗙 💽 Bing	۹ م
🊖 Favorites 🛛 🖕 🌄 Suggested Sites 🔹	🔊 Web Sice Gallery 🕶		
g Service Management Service : LBPXXXX :	LEPIODOC	🟠 = 🔯 - 🖾 🖶 = Bag	• Safety • Tgoh • 🔞 •
		To Remote	UI Login User:1 Log Out
Service Management S	ervice		
Device Serial Number:			
MEAP Application Management	Install MEAP Application/License		
Install MEAP Application	Install MEAP Application/License		
System Management	modelin MCAP Approx MITOR COMPANY		
Panel Display Order Settings			install
Enhanced System Application Management	Application File Path:		Browse
System Application Management	License File Path:		Browse
System Information	I		
MEAP Application Information			
Check License			
Change Password			
MEAP Application Setting Information Management			
DI MEAP Application Log Management			
		Copyright CANON I	NC. 2011 All Rights Reserver
meap			
one		√ Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off	-{j v ₹100% v
orw .			

[Application File Path]	Specify a file with a "jar" extension.
[License File Path]	Specify a file with a "lic" extension.

# **4** Click [Install].

## **5** Confirm the information on the install confirmation page, and then click [Yes].

When the [License Agreement] appears, confirm the information, and then click [I Accept].

 $\rightarrow~$  The installation begins.

### <Information Displayed on the Install Confirmation Page>

#### If you are installing a new application

[Application Information]	Information about the application
[License Information]	The expiration date of the application

#### If you are updating an application

[Application Information]	[Current Application Information]	Information about the current application
[, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	[Application Information after Overwrite]	Application information after overwrite
	[Expires after]	The expiration date of the targeted application
[License Information]	[Current Counter Usage Limit]	Current counter information
	[Counter Usage Limit after Overwrite]	Counter information after overwrite

### If the install is cancelled

If the shutdown process for the printer starts while an application is being installed, an error message may be displayed on the [Install] page for SMS, and the installation cancelled. If this happens, install the application again after restarting the printer by turning the main power switch OFF and then back ON again.

# **6** After the install is completed, click [To MEAP Application Management].

# 

When using the installed applicationStart the application.Starting MEAP Applications(P. 26) "

# **Attention (Installing MEAP Applications)**

0XW7-009

### / IMPORTANT

#### **Installing Applications**

- There may be other specific requirements for installation, depending on the application. For more information, see the instruction manual provided with the application.
- You can install up to eight applications.
- You cannot install license files only. Specify both the application file and the license file. To only add a license file for an application that is already installed, see " Adding License Files(P. 32) ."

#### **Obtaining License Files**

 In order to install an application, a valid license file is required.
 If you have a license access number in your application package, obtain a valid license file from License Management System ( http://www.canon.com/lms/license/ ).

t

In order to obtain a license file, a license access number and a device serial number (the number displayed on the upper left of the SMS screen) are required.

• If you do not have a license access number in your application package, it will be provided by the dealer where you purchased the application. For more information, see the instruction manual provided with the application.

#### **Storage Area**

"Storage" under resource information displayed on the [MEAP Application Management] page allows you to confirm the maximum storage space that can be used by the application and the storage space currently used by the application.

#### When you are updating an application

Stop the application before installing the new version.

**O**" Stopping MEAP Applications(P. 27) "

# **Uninstalling MEAP Applications**

#### 0XW7-00A

#### 🖊 IMPORTANT

If the license status is not "Not Installed" Uninstall the application after disabling and deleting the license files. O" Disabling License Files(P. 35) " O" Deleting Disabled License Files(P. 41) "

### Start SMS (Service Management Service).

" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

## **2** Click [MEAP Application Management].

Favoritas 🛛 🙀 🚺 Suggested Sites 🔹 🛔	👔 Web Slice Gallery 🖛						
Service Management Service : LBPX000X : L	BPIODOC			🔓 = 🔯 = 🖻	🖶 - B	age +	Safety + Tgols + 😱
					To Remo	the UI	Login User:1 Log (
Service Management S	ondeo	_					cogni coci i cogi c
service management 5	ervice						
MEAD Anti-factor Management							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Mar	agement					
ystem Management	MEAP Application M	lanagement			Updated C	n:09/21/	2029 8:21:31 PM 🕻
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on	Status			License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Uni	nstall	Unnecessary
Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Unit	Install	Installed
System Application Management	X			L			
System Information							
MEAP Application Information	Resource Informatio						
D Check License	Resource Name	Amount		Remaining	Percent	Used	
D Change Password	Storage		13193 KB	19575 KB	40%	_	
	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KB	18%	-	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	117		-	
MEAP Application Log	Sockets		6	122	5%		
Management	File Descriptors		7	121	5%	•	
	X						
12000				Copy	right CANO	N INC. 2	011 All Rights Reserv
meap							
*							

# **3** Click [Uninstall] for the application to uninstall.

[†] Applications with [Uninstall] grayed out cannot be deleted.

# **4** Click [Yes].

 $\rightarrow~$  The uninstall begins.

**When the restart prompt message is displayed** Follow the on-screen instructions to restart the printer.

# 

# If <A package exported from this application cannot be used.> is displayed

and you uninstall the application that displayed this message, you may not be able to use other applications.

# **Starting/Stopping MEAP Applications**

0XW7-00C

- Starting MEAP Applications(P. 26)
- Stopping MEAP Applications(P. 27)

# **Starting MEAP Applications**

0XW7-00E

### Start SMS (Service Management Service).

C" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

# **2** Click [MEAP Application Management].

eb Siice Gallery =							
000							
			🗄 = 🛛 = 🗈	🖶 = B	nge 🕶	Safety + Tgo	h = 🔞
			<u>, 11</u>	To Remo	ote UI	Login User:1	l Log (
rice							
EAP Application Man	agement						
	2			Updated O	n:09/21/	2029 8:21:31	PN C
pplication Name		Installed on	Status			License	
oginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Unit	nstall	Unneces	sary
icense Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Unit	Inter	installed	
9			instance [				
-							
	Amount				Used		
					_		
		0100100		1.4.14	-		
		*	10.0				
		7	121	5%			
			Can	Salt Callo	N INFO 12	And All Diable	Danas
			Copy	ingini CANO	PERMANAN A	or in wirkights	Poraner
	IEAP Application M pplication Name .oginTool .icense Generator	EAP Application Management IEAP Application Management pplication Name coginTool 2 01 00 License Generator 4.4.0 B Resource Information Resource Name Amount Storage Aemory Preads Sockets File Descriptors	EAP Application Management IEAP Application Management IEAP Application Management pplication Name Installed on coginTool 2 01 00 09/21/2029 License Generator 4.4.0 09/21/2029 B Resource Information Resource Information Resource Name Amount Used Storage 13193 KB Ademory 3700 KB Phreads 111 Sockets 6 File Descriptors 7	EAP Application Management IEAP Application Management pplication Name Installed on Status coginTool 2.01.00 09/21/2029 Started Clicense Generator 4.4.0 09/21/2029 Installed Clicense Generator 4.4.0 09/21/2029 Installed Clicense Clicense Information Resource Information Storage 13193 KB 19575 KB Storage 13193 KB 19575 KB Threads 11 117 Sockets 6 122 The Descriptors 7 121 Clicense Clicens	EAP Application Management IEAP Application Management Updated O pplication Name Installed on Status coginTool 2 01 00 09/21/2029 Started Stop Unit Jcense Generator 4 4.0 09/21/2029 Installed Start Unit Common Vision Amount Used Remaining Percent Storage 13193 KB 19575 KB 40% democy 3700 KB 19575 KB 40% democy 3700 KB 19575 KB 18% Threads 11 117 9% Sockets 6 122 5% The Descriptors 7 121 5%	EAP Application Management Updated On 09212 pplication Name Installed on Status pplication Name Installed on Status coginTool 2 01 00 09/21/2029 Stated Boop Uninstal coginTool 2 01 00 09/21/2029 Installed Statu Common Status Common Status Common Status S	EAP Application Management       Updated On:09/21/20/29 9/21/31       pplication Management     Updated On:09/21/20/29 9/21/31       pplication Name     Installed on     Status     License       oginTool     2 01 00     09/21/20/29     Stated     Blop     Uninstall     Unneces       License Generator     4.4.0     09/21/20/29     Installed     Start     Uninstall     Installed       B     Securce Information     4.4.0     09/21/20/29     Installed     Start     Uninstall     Installed       B     Securce Information     4.4.0     09/21/20/29     Installed     Start     Uninstall     Installed       B     Securce Information     4.4.0     09/21/20/29     Installed     Start     Uninstall     Installed       B     Securce Name     Amount Used     Remaining     Percent Used     Memory     Memory     3700 KB     16780 KB     10%     Memory     Memory     10%     Memory     Memory     3700 KB     16780 KB     18%     Memory     Seckets     6     122     5%     Tite Descriptors     7     121     6%     Memory     121     5%     Memory     121     5%     Memory     121     5%     Memory     121 <td< td=""></td<>

# **3** Click [Start] for the application to start.

#### If the application does not start

Check the following.

- The required license file has been installed
- There is sufficient [Memory], [Threads], [Sockets] and [File Descriptors] under [Resource Information]

#### When the restart prompt message is displayed

Follow the on-screen instructions to restart the printer.

# **Stopping MEAP Applications**

0XW7-00F

### **1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).

**O**" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

# **2** Click [MEAP Application Management].

🕞 🔻 🔊 http://			- 🔒 🔯	🛧 🗙 🔀 đing			
Favoritas 🛛 🙀 🎦 Suggested Sites 🔹 🛔	👔 Web Siice Gallery 🖛						
Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L	BPIODOC			눱 = 🔟 - 🖻	- 🖶 + E	age +	Safety + Tgols + (
				1	To Rem	ote UI	Login User:1 Log
ervice Management S	ervice						
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement					
stem Management	MEAP Application M	anagement			Updated C	n:09/21/	2029 8:21:31 PM
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on	Status			License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Uni	nstall	Unnecessary
¹² Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Uni	Install	Installed
System Application Management	X						
System Information							
MEAP Application Information	Resource Informatic						
Check License	Resource Name	Amount		Remaining	Percent	Used	_
Change Password	Storage Memory		13193 KB 3700 KB	19575 KB 16780 KB		-	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	117			
Information Management	Sockets		6	122			
D MEAP Application Log	File Descriptors		7	121	5%		
¹⁰ Management	×						
				Cop	yright CANC	N INC. 2	011 All Rights Rese
neap							
-							

**3** Click [Stop] for the application to stop.

Fevorites 🛛 🖕 🌄 Supported Sites 🕶 👔	O Web Stee Gallery -			44 🗙 🔯 Bin			
Service Management Service : LBPX000X : L				8 - B - I		araa 🕶	Şafety - Tgols - 🧃
and an angle and an article - Lar AXAX - L							Login User:1 Log
ervice Management Se	ervice			_			
vice Serial Number:	LI VICC						
MEAP Application Management	AND ADD Application Man						
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application Mar						
stem Management	MEAP Application M	anagement			Updated C	In 09/21	/2029 8:21:31 PM
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on	Status	_		License
Extensed Queters Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop	natall	Unnecessary
Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	[Start] Uni	tetee	Installed
System Application Management		4.4.0	03/2 02023	Instance	aian on		Instanco
System Information	I						
I MEAP Application Information	Resource Information	xn .					
D Check License	Resource Name	Amount		Remaining	Percent	Used	
D Change Password	Storage		13193 KB	19575 K		_	
	Memory		3700 KB	16780 K		_	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads Sockets		11		7 9%		
m MEAP Application Log	File Descriptors		7		2 5%		
Management	I ne bescriptors						
				Co	pyright CANC	NINC.3	2011 All Rights Rese
meap							

When the restart prompt message is displayed Follow the on-screen instructions to restart the printer.

# **Checking the Details of MEAP Applications**

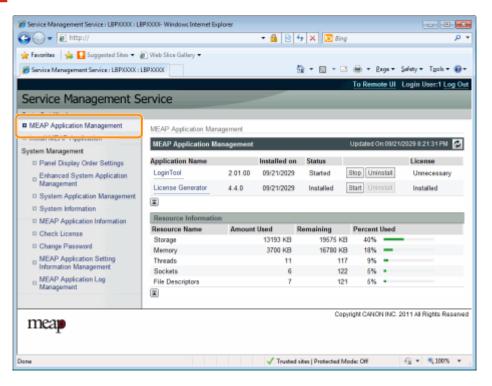
0XW7-00H

Check the details of installed applications.

### Start SMS (Service Management Service).

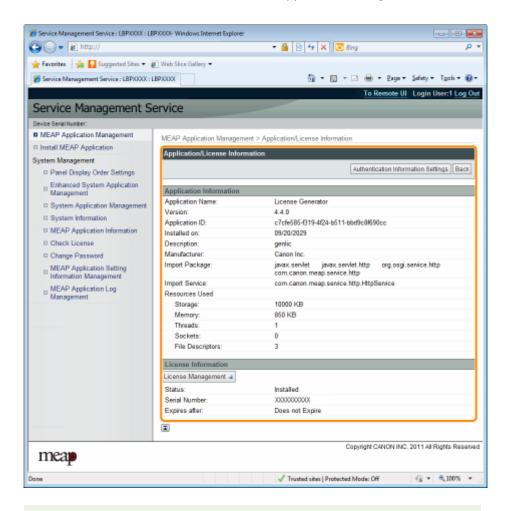
Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

# **2** Click [MEAP Application Management].



## **3** Click the application to check the details.

 $\rightarrow$  [Application/License Information] is displayed on the screen.



#### When [Authentication Information Settings] is displayed

Set the authentication information.

**O**" Setting Authentication Information for MEAP Applications(P. 44) "

# **MEAP Application License Settings**

0XW7-00J

You can add, disable and delete license files for installed applications.

- Adding License Files(P. 32)
- Disabling License Files(P. 35)

Downloading Disabled License
 Files(P. 38)

# Deleting Disabled License Files(P. 41)

#### IMPORTANT

#### **Disabling Licenses**

- You cannot disable a license file if the application is still running.
   " Stopping MEAP Applications(P. 27) "
- When a disabled license file is generated, the status of that license file becomes <Not Installed> and the application becomes unusable.

#### **Downloading and Deleting Licenses**

- You can only download or delete disabled license files.
- Some license files need to be downloaded after they have been disabled.
- Once you have deleted the disabled license file, you cannot download it from the printer again. We recommend downloading and backing it up before deleting it.

#### **Reinstalling License Files**

You can reinstall disabled or downloaded license files in the same printer.

# **Adding License Files**

0XW7-00K

You can install license files for applications that are already installed.

You can also increase counter values and extend terms of validity by adding license files.

### **1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).

C" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

# **2** Click [MEAP Application Management].

Favoritas 🛛 🏤 🚺 Suggested Sites 📼	Web Stee Gallery -			4 🗙 🔀 Bin			
Service Management Service : LBPXXXX :	LBPICCOC			11 • 12 • 1		-	Safety - Tgoh - 👔
				Ĵ.	To Rem	ote UI	Login User:1 Log (
ervice Management S	ervice						
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement					
польствение струкениет	MEAP Application M				Lindated (	w.09/24/	2029 8:21:31 PM 💋
rstern Management	and a separation in				opasso		COLOGE COLO COLOGE COLOGE COLO
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on	010101		_	License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Uni	nstall	Unnecessary
" Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Uni	notall	Installed
System Application Management	X						
System Information	Resource Informatic	-					
MEAP Application Information	Resource Name	Amount	lised	Remaining	Percent	Ibed	
Check License	Storage	Periodal P	13193 KB	19575 K		COPU	
Change Password	Memory		3700 KB	16780 K	8 18%	-	
MEAP Application Setting	Threads		11	11	7 9%		
	Sockets		6	12	2 5%		
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	12	1 5%		
management	×						
				Cal	wight CANC	NINC 2	011 All Rights Reser
meap					Condition coverage		arr rearrighter totaler
incup							

**3** Click the name of the application to which a license file will be added.

			🕂 🗙 🔀 Bing				
Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🌄 Suggested Sites 🔹	🖉 Web Siice Gallery 🕶						
Service Management Service : LBP/000X : 1	LBPIODOC			🗄 • 🖻 • 🖻	🖶 - B	age +	Safety • Tgols •
					To Remo	ote UI	Login User:1 Log
Service Management S	ervice						
evice Serial Number:							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement					
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application Ma				Undated 0	w 09/21	2029 8:21:31 PM
ystem Management		and de la constante					
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed or				License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Unit	natall	Unnecessary
Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Unit	Tetrac	Installed
System Application Management	I						
System Information	Resource Information						
MEAP Application Information	Resource Name	Amount	Used	Remaining	Percent	Used	
Check License	Storage		13193 KB	19575 KB			
Change Password	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KB	18%	-	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	117	9%	-	
-	Sockets		6	122	5%	•	
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	121	6%		
				Copy	right CANO	N INC. 3	2011 All Rights Res
meap							
<b>T</b>							

# **4** Click [License Management].

🕽 🔾 🔻 🔊 http://		- 🔒 🖻 🕂 🗙 🔯 Bing 🖉 🔎
🛊 Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🌄 Suggested Sites 🔹 🧕	Web Sice Gallery 🕶	
👸 Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : LB	87300000	🏠 = 🔯 - 🖬 🖶 = Baga = Safety = Tgola = 🕢
		To Remote UI Login User:1 Log Or
Service Management Se	ervice	
Jevice Serial Number:		
MEAP Application Management	NEAD Application Managama	ent > Application/License Information
Install MEAP Application		
vstem Management	Application/License Inform	ation
		Authentication Information Settings Back
Panel Display Order Settings		
Enhanced System Application Management	Application Information	
System Application Management	Application Name:	License Generator
	Version:	4.4.0
System Information	Application ID:	c7cfe585-f319-4f24-b511-bbd9c8f690cc
MEAP Application Information	Installed on:	09/20/2029
D Check License	Description:	genlic
Change Password	Manufacturer:	Canon Inc.
MEAP Application Setting	Import Package:	javax.servlet javax.servlet.http org.osgi.service.http com.canon.meap.service.http
	Import Service:	com.canon.meap.service.http.HttpService
MEAP Application Log Management	Resources Used	
	Storage:	10000 KB
	Memory:	850 KB
	Threads:	1
	Sockets:	0
	File Descriptors:	3
	License Information	
	License Management .4	
	status:	Installed
	Serial Number:	3000000000
	Expires after:	Does not Expire
	I	
meap		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserve
A.		🗸 Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off 🛛 🍕 💌 💐 100% 💌

# **5** Specify the license file.

(1) Click [Browse], and then select the license file to be added.

(2) Click [Install].

## **6** Confirm the information on the install confirmation page, and then click [Yes].

 $\rightarrow~$  The license file is installed.

**?** If you are adding a license file to an [Over Limit] or [Invalid] application

you may need to restart the application.

Starting/Stopping MEAP Applications(P. 25)

## **Disabling License Files**

0XW7-00L

After you disable a license file, you can download and save it to a computer or delete it.

#### / IMPORTANT

#### **Disabling Licenses**

- You cannot disable a license file if the application is still running.
   " Stopping MEAP Applications(P. 27) "
- When a disabled license file is generated, the status of that license file becomes <Not Installed> and the application becomes unusable.

#### **Reinstalling License Files**

You can reinstall disabled license files in the same printer.

### Start SMS (Service Management Service).

**O**" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

### **2** Click [MEAP Application Management].

🔾 🗸 🔊 http://			- 🔒 🖻	🕂 🗙 🔯 Bing				P
Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🚺 Suggested Sites 👻 🧯	🚺 Web Slice Gallery 🖛							
Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L	BPICOOC			🗄 • 🔯 • 🖻	🖶 = B	age 🕶	Safety • Tg	oh = 🔞
					To Rem	ote UI	Login User	:1 <u>Log</u> 0
ervice Management S	ervice							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement						
mananimer o reppression	MEAP Application M	2			Lindated C	m 09/21	2029 8:21:3	1 PM 🐼
ystem Management								
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on				License	
Enhanced System Application Management	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029		Stop Uni		Unnece	ssary
System Application Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Uni	notall	Installe	d
System Information	X							
II MEAP Application Information	Resource Informatio	a						
D Check License	Resource Name	Amount	Used	Remaining	Percent	Used		
Change Password	Storage		13193 KB	19575 KB	40%	_		
	Memory Threads		3700 KB	16780 KB 117	18%			
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Sockets		6	122				
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	121	6%			
Management	X							
				Com	NAME OF ANO	N INC 3	2011 All Righ	te Rasan
meap				0.000	1910 - 111			
T								

**3** Click the name of the application for which to disable to license file.

### MEAP Application Settings

) - 2 http://				44 🗙 🔀 Bing			
🕈 Favoritas 🛛 🙀 🌄 Suggested Sites 👻 🕯							
Service Management Service : LBP/000X : 1	BPXCCCC			🗄 • 🖻 • 🖻	E	1998 <b>*</b>	Safety ▼ Tgoh ▼ (
					To Remo	ote UI	Login User:1 Log
Service Management S	ervice						
evice Serial Number:							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement					
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application M				Lindshed (	w.08/24	/2029 0:21:31 PM
ystem Management		indgement			opasies o	11.0002	
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed or				License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Unit	natall	Unnecessary
¹⁰ Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Uni	li sta	Installed
System Application Management	I						
System Information	Resource Informatio						
MEAP Application Information	Resource Name	Amount	lland	Remaining	Percent	llead	
Check License	Storage	Periodality	13193 KB	19575 KB		USEU	
Change Password	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KB		-	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	117	9%		
-	Sockets		6	122	5%		
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	121	6%	•	
				Cop	right CANO	N INC.3	2011 All Rights Rese
meap							
T							

## **4** Click [License Management].

Service Management Service   LBPXXXX   LBP	Non minors mone opro-	- 🔒 🕑 🔩 🗙 👿 ðing 🖉
🖌 Favoritas 🛛 🐅 🚺 Suggested Sites 🕶 🙋	Web Sice Gallery -	
Service Management Service : LBP/000X : LI	BPJOCIOK	🏪 = 🔯 = 🗆 🖶 = Baga = Safaty = Tgola = 🚱
		To Remote UI Login User:1 Log Or
Service Management Se	ervice	
evice Serial Number:		
MEAP Application Management	MEAD Andienting Managama	nt > Application/License Information
Install MEAP Application		
ystem Management	Application/License Inform	ation
		Authentication Information Settings Back
Panel Display Order Settings		
Enhanced System Application Management	Application Information	
System Application Management	Application Name:	License Generator
	Version:	4.4.0
System Information	Application ID:	c7cfe685-l319-4f24-b511-bbd9c8l690cc
MEAP Application Information	Installed on:	09/20/2029
Check License	Description:	genlic
Change Password	Manufacturer:	Canon Inc.
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Import Package:	javax.servlet javax.servlet.http org.osgi.senice.http com.canon.meap.senice.http
MEAP Application Log	Import Service:	com.canon.meap.service.http.HttpService
Management	Resources Used	
	Storage:	10000 KB
	Memory:	850 KB
	Threads:	1
	Sockets:	0
	File Descriptors:	3
	License Information	
	License Management .4	
	status:	Installed
	Serial Number:	10000000000
	Expires after:	Does not Expire
	X	
meap		Copyright CANON INC: 2011 All Rights Reserve
ne		√ Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off 🏤 👻 💐 100% 💌

**5** Click [Disable].

### MEAP Application Settings

Service Management Service (LBP/000X) LB		
🕒 🔾 🔻 🔊 http://	🗝 🔒 😥 🌆 🔀 Bing	٩
🚖 Favoritas 🛛 🙀 🚺 Suggested Sites 🔹 🛔	) Web Sice Gallery 🕶	
Service Management Service : LBP/000X : I	BPXXXX 🛐 🕆 🖾 🖶 🕈 Bage + Safet	y - Tgola - 🔞 -
	To Remote UI Logi	n User:1 Log Ou
Service Management S	ervice	
Device Serial Number:		
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Management > Application/License Information > License Management	
Install MEAP Application	Ucense Management	
System Management	Citerise wanagement	
Panel Display Order Settings		Back
Enhanced System Application Management	Install License	
System Application Management	License File Path:	Browse
System Information		Install
MEAP Application Information		
Check License	Image: A state of the state	
Change Password	Disable License File	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management		Disable
<ul> <li>MEAP Application Log Management</li> </ul>		
	Download/Delete Disabled License File	
	It is recommended that you download the disabled license file to your computer before deleting	n.
	Dov	mioad Delete
	I	
meap	Copyright CANON INC. 2011.	All Rights Reserve
Dane	√ Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off 👍	• 🔍 100% •

## 6 Click [Yes].

 $\rightarrow$  The license file is disabled.

## **Downloading Disabled License Files**

0XW7-00R

Download and back up disabled license files to the computer.

#### 🖊 IMPORTANT

#### **Downloading Licenses**

- You can only download disabled license files.
- Some license files need to be downloaded after they have been disabled.

#### **Reinstalling License Files**

You can reinstall downloaded and disabled license files in the same printer.

#### Start SMS (Service Management Service).

" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

### **2** Click [MEAP Application Management].

Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : LBPXXX : LBP	Favoritas 🛛 🙀 🚺 Suggested Sites 👻 🛔	🕑 Web Sice Gallery 🗢						
ervice Management Service  MEAP Application Management  System Application Management  System Information  MEAP Application Information  MEAP Application Information  MEAP Application Setting  MEAP Application Setting  MEAP Application Log  MEAP  MEAP	Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L	BPIODOC			눱 = 🖸 - 🖻	🖶 - B	ige +	Safety + Tgols + 😨
MEAP Application Management       MEAP Application Management         attern Management       MEAP Application Management       Updated On 09/21/2029 8 21:31 PM         application Management       MEAP Application Management       Updated On 09/21/2029 8 21:31 PM         application Management       LoginTool       2 01:00       09/21/2029       Started       Btop       Uninstal       Uninstal       Uninstal       Uninstal       Uninstal       Uninstal       Installed       Started					18	To Remo	ote UI	Login User:1 Log O
MEAP Application Management       MEAP Application Management       Updated On 09/21/2029 8 21:31 PM         Image Panel Display Order Settings       Enhanced System Application Management       Updated On 09/21/2029 8 21:31 PM         Image Panel Display Order Settings       Enhanced System Application Management       Updated On 09/21/2029 8 21:31 PM         Image Panel Display Order Settings       Login Tool       2 01:00       09/21/2029       Started       B/top   Uninstal       Unnecessary         Image Panel Display Order Settings       System Application Management       Login Tool       2 01:00       09/21/2029       Installed on       Started       B/top   Uninstal       Unnecessary         Image Panel Display Order Setting       Installed Imagement       Imagement       Imagement       Imagement       Imagement         Image Password       MEAP Application Setting       Imagement       Imagement       Imagement       Imagement         Image Password       MEAP Application Setting       Threads       11       117       9%       Imagement         Image Password       File Descriptors       7       121       6%       Imagement	ervice Management Se	ervice						
Application Management     MEAP Application Management     MEAP Application Management     MEAP Application Management     MEAP Application Management     Mean Application Management     Mean Application Management     System Information     MEAP Application Management     Charge Password     MEAP Application Setting     Information Management     MEAP Application Setting     Information Information     MEAP Application Setting     Information Management     Societis								
Management     MEMP Application     Management     Updated On OID/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/312/1/2012/2012	MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement					
Panel Display Order Settings     Application Name     Installed on     Status     License       Enhanced System Application Management     LoginTool     2.01.00     09/21/2029     Statud     Btop     Uninstall     Uninecessary       System Application Management     License Generator     4.4.0     09/21/2029     Installed     Btart     Uninstall     Installed       System Information     Executes Information     Executes Information     Executes Information     Executes Information       Check License     Storage     13193 KB     19575 KB     40%     —       Change Password     Memory     3700 KB     16780 KB     18%     —       MEAP Application Nanagement     Socials     6     122     5%     —       MEAP Application Setting Information Management     File Descriptors     7     121     6%		MEAP Application M	anagement			Updated C	n:09/21	/2029 8:21:31 PM 💋
Enhanced System Application Management     LoginTool     2.01.00     09/21/2029     Started     Btop     Uninstatt     Uninsta		Application Name		Installed on	Status			License
Management     License Generator     4.4.0     09/21/2029     Installed     Bitst     United it       System Application Management     System Information       System Information       Check License       Check License       Change Password       MEAP Application Setting Information Management       MEAP Application Log Management       MEAP Application Log       File Descriptors       The Descriptors		LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Uni	nstall	Unnecessary
Bigstem Application Management     E       System Information     Resource Information       Chack License     Resource Name       Chack License     Storage       Chack License     Storage       MEAP Application String Information Management     Threads       MEAP Application String Information Management     Storage       MEAP Application String Information Management     Stockets       MEAP Application Log Management     File Descriptors	Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Uni	Install	Installed
System Information     Resource Information       MEAP Application Information     Resource Name     Amount Used     Remaining     Percent Used       Chack License     Storage     13193 KB     19575 KB     40%       Change Password     Memory     3700 KB     16780 KB     18%       MEAP Application String Information Management     Threads     11     117     9%       MEAP Application Log     File Descriptors     7     121     5%	System Application Management							
Resource Name         Amount Used         Remaining         Percent Used           Check License         Storage         13193 KB         19575 KB         40%           Change Password         Memory         3700 KB         16780 KB         18%           MEAP Application Setting Information Management         Threads         11         117         9%           MEAP Application Log         File Descriptors         7         121         5%	System Information							
Check License         Storage         13193 KB         19575 KB         40%           Change Password         Memory         3700 KB         16780 KB         18%           MEAP Application Setting Information Management         Threads         11         117         9%           MEAP Application Setting Information Management         Sockets         6         122         5%           MEAP Application Cog         File Descriptors         7         121         6%	MEAP Application Information		_				_	
D Change Password         Memory         3700 KB         16780 KB         18%           MEAP Application Setting Information Management         Threads         11         117         9%         -           MEAP Application Log Management         File Descriptors         6         122         5%         -	D Check License		Amoun				Used	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management         Threads         11         117         9%	D Change Password						_	-
MEAP Application Log File Descriptors 7 121 6%							Ξ.	
MEAP Application Log File Descriptors 7 121 6% -	Information Management							
Management	, MEAP Application Log			-				
	¹⁴ Management							
Copyright CANON INC. 2011 AI Rights Res					Copy	right CANO	N INC.:	2011 All Rights Reserve

**3** Click the name of the application for which to download to license file.

### MEAP Application Settings

				🕂 🗙 🔀 Bing			
Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🌄 Suggested Sites 🔹	🖉 Web Siice Gallery 🕶						
Service Management Service : LBP/000X : 1	LBPIODOC			🗄 • 🖻 • 🖻	🖶 - B	age +	Safety • Tgols •
					To Remo	ote UI	Login User:1 Log
Service Management S	ervice						
evice Serial Number:							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement					
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application Ma				Undated 0	w 09/21	2029 8:21:31 PM
ystem Management		and de la constante					
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed or				License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Unit	natall	Unnecessary
Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Unit	Tetrac	Installed
System Application Management	I						
System Information	Resource Information						
MEAP Application Information	Resource Name	Amount	Used	Remaining	Percent	Used	
Check License	Storage		13193 KB	19575 KB			
Change Password	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KB	18%	-	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	117	9%	-	
-	Sockets		6	122	5%	•	
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	121	6%		
				Copy	right CANO	N INC. 3	2011 All Rights Res
meap							
<b>T</b>							

## **4** Click [License Management].

Service Management Service   LBP/000X   LBP		- 🔒 🖻 🕂 🗙 🔽 ðing 🖉
Favorites 🛛 🐅 🚺 Suggested Sites 🔹 🧃	Web Sice Gallery -	
Service Management Service : LBP/000X : L	BPJOCOCK	🏪 = 🔯 = 🗆 🖶 = Baga = Safaty = Tgols = 🚱
		To Remote UI Login User:1 Log O
Service Management Se	ervice	
levice Serial Number:		
MEAP Application Management	MEAD Andienting Managama	ent > Application/License Information
Install MEAP Application		
ystem Management	Application/License Inform	ation
		Authentication Information Settings Back
Panel Display Order Settings		
Enhanced System Application Management	Application Information	
*	Application Name:	License Generator
System Application Management	Version:	4.4.0
System Information	Application ID:	c7cfe685-f319-4f24-b511-bbd9c8f690cc
MEAP Application Information	Installed on:	09/20/2029
Check License	Description:	genlic
Change Password	Manufacturer:	Canon Inc.
MEAP Application Setting	Import Package:	javax.servlet javax.servlet.http org.osgi.senice.http com.canon.meap.senice.http
m MEAP Application Log	Import Service:	com.canon.meap.service.http.HttpService
Management	Resources Used	
	Storage:	10000 KB
	Memory:	850 KB
	Threads:	1
	Sockets:	0
	File Descriptors:	3
	License Information	
	License Management .4	
	status:	Installed
	Serial Number:	2000000000
	Expires after:	Does not Expire
	I	
meap		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserve
ne		√ Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off 🛛 🖓 💌 💐 100% 💌

**5** Click [Download].

Service Management Service   LBP/000X   LB	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
🕒 🔾 🔻 👔 http://	- 🔒 🖻 🕂 🗶 🔯 Bing	9
🚖 Favoritas 🛛 🤹 🌄 Suggested Sites 🔹 🧯	🔊 Web Sice Gallery 🕶	
👸 Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L	BØXXXX 🚔 🕶 🖸 🕶 🖂 🖶 🖷 Safety 🕶 Tgols 🖛	0-
	To Remote UI Login User:1 Lo	ig Ou
Service Management S	ervice	
Device Serial Number:		
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Management > Application/License Information > License Management	
Install MEAP Application	License Management	
System Management		_
Panel Display Order Settings	Ba	ack
Enhanced System Application Management	Install License	
System Application Management	License File Path: Browne	
System Information	Inst	tall
MEAP Application Information		_
D Check License	I	
Change Password	Disable License File	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Dist	ble
MEAP Application Log Management	R .	
	Download/Delete Disabled License File	
	It is recommended that you download the disabled license file to your computer before detering it	ete
	I	
meap	Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Rea	serve
ane	🗸 Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off 🛛 🖓 💌 💐 100%	Ŧ

**6** Follow the on-screen instructions and specify a file storage directory.

 $\rightarrow$  The license file is saved.

## **Deleting Disabled License Files**

#### 0XW7-00S

To uninstall an application, you must first delete the license file.

/ IMPORTANT

### **Deleting Licenses**

- You can only delete disabled license files.
- Once you have deleted the disabled license file, you cannot download it again. We recommend downloading and backing it up before deleting it.

### Start SMS (Service Management Service).

" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

### **2** Click [MEAP Application Management].

🕈 Favoritas 🛛 🍰 🚺 Suggested Sites 👻 🛔							
Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L	BPXCCCC			🕆 • 🖸 • 🖻	(∰ <b>+</b> 8	aga + 1	Safety 🕶 Tgols 🕶 🔞
				ji ji	To Remo	ote UI	Login User:1 Log O
Service Management Se	ervice						
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Mar	agement					
instanting of Approximit	MEAP Application M	2			Lindated (	n:09/21/	2029 8:21:31 PM 🔗
ystem Management					opusedo	11.0222.11	
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed or	n Status			License
D Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Uni	nstall	Unnecessary
Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Uni	Istal	Installed
System Application Management	X						
System Information							
MEAP Application Information	Resource Informatic	_			_		
D Check License	Resource Name	Amount		Remaining	Percent	Used	
D Change Password	Storage		13193 KB	19575 KE		_	
	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KE		-	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	117		-	
	Sockets		6	12			
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	121	5%	•	
	×						
				0.0	whether and		011 All Rights Reserve
meap				Cop	yngni CANO	PETRO 2	UTT AI POINS Reserve

**3** Click the name of the application to which to delete a license file.

### MEAP Application Settings

Favoritas 🛛 🎭 🌄 Suggested Sites 🗸	Web Sice Gallery -						
Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L				🗄 = 🖂 - 🖂	🖶 - R	AC10 -	Safety - Tgols - (
,,						-	Login User:1 Log
Service Management S	ervice						
levice Serial Number:							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement					
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application M	-			Undefed 0	w naize	2029 8 21:31 PM
system Management		anagement			obagina o	ni odne n	
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on				License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Unit	natall	Unnecessary
¹⁰ Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Unit	Istal	Installed
System Application Management	I						
System Information	Resource Informatio						
MEAP Application Information	Resource Name	Amount	lland	Remaining	Percent	llead	
Check License	Storage	Periodana.	13193 KB	19575 KB		0.000	
Change Password	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KB	18%	-	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	117	9%		
-	Sockets		6	122	5%		
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	121	6%		
				Cop	right CANO	N INC. 3	2011 All Rights Rese
meap							
T							

## **4** Click [License Management].

🕽 🔵 🔻 🔊 http://		- 🔒 🖹 4+ 🗙 🔯 8ing 🖉
🗧 Favoritas 🛛 🎭 🌄 Suggested Sites 👻 🙋	Web Silce Gallery 🕶	
🗿 Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : LI	BPJOQOC	🏠 = 🖸 - 🗆 🖶 = Bage = Safety = Tgole = 🚱
		To Remote UI Login User:1 Log O
Service Management Se	ervice	
evice Serial Number:		
MEAP Application Management	MEAD Application Managame	ent > Application/License Information
Install MEAP Application		
ystem Management	Application/License Inform	nation
Panel Display Order Settings		Authentication Information Settings Back
Enhanced System Application Management	Application Information	
System Application Management	Application Name:	License Generator
	Version:	4.4.D
System Information	Application ID:	c7cfe685-l319-4f24-b511-bbd9c8f690cc
MEAP Application Information	Installed on:	09/20/2029
Check License	Description:	genlic
Change Password	Manufacturer:	Canon Inc.
MEAP Application Setting	Import Package:	javax.servlet javax.servlet.http org.osgi.senvice.http com.canon.meap.service.http
MEAP Application Log	Import Service:	com.canon.meap.service.http.HttpService
Management	Resources Used	
	Storage:	10000 KB
	Memory:	850 KB
	Threads:	1
	Sockets:	0
	File Descriptors:	3
	License Information	
	License Management .4	
	Status:	Installed
	Serial Number:	30000000000
	Expires after:	Does not Expire
	I	
meap		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserv
na .		√ Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off 🌾 🔍 🗮 100% 💌

**5** Click [Delete].

🄏 Service Management Service i LBP/000X i LB	P3000- Windows Internet Explorer	
😋 🔾 👻 🔊 http://	🝷 🔒 🖹 😽 🗙 🔟 🐷 Bing	ρ.
🚖 Favoritas 🛛 🎭 🌄 Suggested Sites 🔹 🛔	🕽 Web Stice Gallery 🕶	
Service Management Service : LBPX000X : I	BPXCCCC 📴 🖛 🗹 🕮 🖛 Baga 🕶 Safat	ty • Tgola • 🔞 •
	To Remote UI Log	in User:1 Log Ou
Service Management S	ervice	
Device Serial Number:		
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Management > Application/License Information > License Management	
Install MEAP Application	Ucense Management	
System Management	License Management	
Panel Display Order Settings		Back
Enhanced System Application Management	Install License	
System Application Management	License File Path:	Browse
System Information		Install
MEAP Application Information		
Check License	I	
Change Password	Disable License File	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management		Disable
MEAP Application Log Management		
Management		
	Download/Delete Disabled License File	
	It is recommended that you download the disabled license file to your computer before deleting	g It. wnload Delete
	Ĩ	
meap	Copyright CANON INC: 2011	All Rights Reserve
Done	√ Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off 4	* 🔍 100% *

## 6 Click [Yes].

 $\rightarrow$  The license file is deleted.

💋 Service Mar	agement Service ( LBP/000X ( LBP/0000- Windows Internet Explorer	
00-	👩 http:// 🗾 🔒 🔁 😽 🗙 🔽 Bing	• م
🚖 Favoritas	🎪 🌄 Suggerted Sites 🔹 🔊 Web Siice Gallery 🗢	
🏉 Service Ma	nagement Service : LBPXXXX : LBPXXXXX : LBPXXXXXX : LBPXXXXX : LBPXXXXXX : LBPXXXXXX : LBPXXXXX : LPXXXX : LPXXXX : LPXXXX : LPXXXX : LPXXXXX : LPXXXX : LPXXXXX : LPXXXX : LPXXXXX : LPXXXXX : LPXXXX : LPXXXX : LPXXXXX : LPXXXX : LPXXXXX : LPXXXXXX : LPXXXXXX : LPXXXXXX : LPXXXXXXX : LPXXXXXXX : LPXXXXXXX : LPXXXXXXX : LPXXXXXXX : LPXXXXXXXX : LPXXXXXXXXXX	Safety • Tgoh • 🔞 •
	1	
	Are you sure you want to delate the disabled license file? It is recommended that you download the risabled license file to your computer before delating it.	
	L	
Done	✓ Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off	🖓 👻 🔍 100% 💌 🚲

## Setting Authentication Information for MEAP Applications

0XW7-00U

When processing jobs from applications that do not require operation from the printer, you must first set the authentication information.

1

Start SMS (Service Management Service).

" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

**2** Click [MEAP Application Management].

	Safety • Tgoh • ( Login User:1 <u>Log</u>
smote UI	Login User:1 Log
10-00-00	1/2029 8:21:31 PM
d Ontoai21	1/2029/8/21:31 PM
	License
<b>Uninstall</b>	Unnecessary
Ininstall	Installed
_	
ot line d	
	_
× •	
- 20	
NON INC.	2011 All Rights Rese
PROPERTY.	2011 Air roghis rosse
08955	

**3** Click the name of the application for which to set authentication information.

>  →  A http://			- 🔒 🖻	🕂 🗙 🔀 Bing				2
🖕 Favoritas 🛛 🙀 🌄 Suggested Sites 👻 🛔	👔 Web Siice Gallery 🕶							
🍯 Service Management Service : LBP/000X : L	BPXXXXX			🗄 = 🔯 = 🖻	🖶 - B	age •	Safety + Tgols +	•
					To Remo	ote UI	Login User:1 Lo	g (
Service Management S	ervice							
Device Serial Number:								
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement						
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application M				Lindshed (	w.00/2.1	2029 0 21:31 PM	4
system Management		anagement			opasies o	ni ogoz n		
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed or				License	
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Unit	natall	Unnecessary	t.
¹⁰ Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start. Uni-	nata II.	Installed	
System Application Management	I							
System Information	Resource Informatio							_
MEAP Application Information	Resource Name	Amount	Used	Remaining	Percent	Used		
Check License	Storage	Part of the	13193 KB	19575 KB				
Change Password	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KB	18%	-		
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	117	9%	-		
-	Sockets		6	122				
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	121	6%			
				Cop	right CANO	N INC. 2	011 All Rights Re	sar
mean								
T								

**4** Click [Authentication Information Settings].

🕽 🕞 👻 🔊 http://		- 🔒 🖻 😽 🗙 🐷 Bing 🖉
Favoritas 🛛 🚕 🚺 Suggested Sites 👻 🕷	🗋 Web Siice Gallery 🕶	
Service Management Service : LBPX000X : LI	BPJOGOK	🏠 = 🔯 - 🖂 🖶 = Baga = Safety = Tgols = 😥
		To Remote UI Login User:1 Log O
Service Management Se	ervice	
levice Serial Number:		
MEAP Application Management	MEAD Application Managama	ent > Application/License Information
Install MEAP Application		
system Management	Application/License Inform	ation
		Authentication Information Settings Back
Panel Display Order Settings		
Enhanced System Application Management	Application Information	
	Application Name:	License Generator
System Application Management	Version:	4.4.0
System Information	Application ID:	c7cfe685-f319-4f24-b511-bbd9c8f690cc
MEAP Application Information	Installed on:	09/20/2029
D Check License	Description:	genlic
Change Password	Manufacturer:	Canon Inc.
MEAP Application Setting	Import Package:	javax.servlet javax.servlet.http org.osgi.senvice.http com.canon.meap.service.http
-	Import Service:	com.canon.meap.service.http.HttpService
MEAP Application Log Management	Resources Used	
	Storage:	10000 KB
	Memory:	850 KB
	Threads:	1
	Sockets:	0
	File Descriptors:	3
	License Information	
	License Management .4	
	Status:	Installed
	Serial Number:	2000000000
	Expires after:	Does not Expire
	I	
meap		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserve
n		🗸 Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off 🛛 🍕 💌 🗮 100% 💌

**5** Enter the authentication information.

### If you use department ID management

Enter the department ID and password in the fields marked [Department ID] and [PIN].

### If you do not use department ID management

Enter an arbitrary ID and password in the fields marked [Department ID] and [PIN].

Service Management Service   LBP/000X   LB	PXCOX- Windows Internet Explorer
🚱 🕞 👻 http://	- 🔒 🖻 😽 🗙 🔽 Bing 🛛 🔎 -
🚖 Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🚺 Suggested Sites 💌 🧯	👔 Web Siice Gallery 🕶
💋 Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L	BPXXXX 🔂 = 🖸 = 🖸 = Bage = Safety = Tgoh = 🕢 =
	To Remote UI Login User:1 Log Out
Service Management Service	ervice
Device Serial Number:	
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Management > Application/License Information > Authentication Information Settings
Install MEAP Application	Authentication Information Settings
System Management	Authentication mormation Settings
Panel Display Order Settings	Update Delete Cancel
Enhanced System Application Management	
System Application Management	
System Information	Authentication information is not set.
MEAP Application Information	
Check License	Department ID:
Change Password	PN:
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	R
MEAP Application Log Management	
meap	Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved
Dane	🗸 Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off 🏾 🖓 💌 💐 100% 💌

## **6** Click [Update].

 $\rightarrow$  Authentication information is set.

Bervice Management Service   LBP/000(   LB	P30000- Windows Internet Explo	orer	
🚱 🕞 👻 http://		- 🔒 🖹 🏤 🗙 🔯 Bing	◄ ٩,
🚖 Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🚺 Suggested Sites 🔹	🚺 Web Siice Gallery 🖛		
g Service Management Service : LBPX000X : I	BPJOOOK	🏪 = 🔯 - 🖾 🖶 = Bage	• Safety • Tgols • 🔞 •
		To Remote U	II Login User:1 Log Out
Service Management S	ervice		
Device Serial Number:			
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Manag	gement > Application/License Information > Authentication	Information Settings
Install MEAP Application			
System Management	Authentication Informa	ation Settings	
Panel Display Order Settings			pdate Delete Cancel
Enhanced System Application Management			
System Application Management		Authentication information is not set.	
System Information		Authentication information is not set.	
MEAP Application Information			
Check License	Department ID:	example	
Change Password	PN:		
MEAP Application Setting Information Management			
MEAP Application Log Management			
meap		Copyright CANON IN	C. 2011 All Rights Reserved
Dane		🗸 Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off	

/ IMPORTANT

When cancelling authentication information Click [Delete].

System	n Settings	19
Chan	nging the MEAP Applet Display Order	50
Chec	cking Login Services	52
Setti	ing Enhanced System Applications	54
S	Starting/Stopping Enhanced System Applications	55
	Starting Enhanced System Applications	56
	Stopping Enhanced System Applications	57
I	Installing Enhanced System Applications	58
ι	Uninstalling Enhanced System Applications 6	51
Chec	cking Information	52
C	Checking System Information	53
C	Checking Application Information	55
C	Checking License Files $\epsilon$	56
Chan	nging the SMS Password	57
Delet	ting the MEAP Application Setting Information 6	59
Mana	aging MEAP Application Log Data	71
C	Downloading Log Data	72
0	Deleting Log Data	74

#### 0XW7-00W

The [System Management] menu contains the following items.

🔾 🗸 🖉 http://			- 🔒	≥ + ×	🔁 Bing			P
Favorites   🖕 🚺 Suggested Sites 🕶 🛔	D Web Stee Gellens -							
							Safety - Tgols -	
👸 Service Management Service : LBP0000: LB	\$950500			M. F	1 × 🖂 🖷			_
					<u></u>	To Remote U	I Log Out fro	m SM
Service Management Se	ervice							
Device Serial Number:								
MEAP Application Management	System Manageme	nt > Enhan	ced System Ap	plication Mana	agement			
Install MEAP Application	Enhanced System	n Annlicati	on Manageme	ed.	Und	ated On 09/13/5	029 10:54:23 AN	1
System Management	Cumpaneou alano	n repposed	on manageme					
Panel Display Order Settings	Login Service					_		
Enhanced System Application Management	Application Nam	18	Installed on	Application		Status		
System Application Management	Sample Login Application	3.2.0.6	09/13/2029	5bl596cc-01 b0ac-00e000		Installed	SWITCH Unin	stall
System Application waragement	Default Authentication	6.0.0.11	07/15/2011	e7654b49-30 9d29-c4a5a4		Started	SWITCH Unin	stall
MEAP Application Information	I							
Check License	Other System Ap							_
Change Password	Application Nam	-	Installed	on	Applicatio	n ID	Status	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	x)							
MEAP Application Log	Install Enhanced	l System Ap	plication/Lice	nse				
¹⁰ Management	Enhanced Sy File Path:	stem Applic	ation				Browse	
	License File	Path:					Browse	
							In	stall
	x							
					Capatab	CANON INC. 3	011 All Rights R	atar
meap					Cothingu	Control Info.2	or in Ni Rights K	eperv

[Panel Display Order Settings]	It sets the order MEAP applets are displayed on the operation panel. Changing the MEAP Applet Display Order(P. 50) "
[Enhanced System Application Management]	It displays enhanced system application status and performs settings. You can also set log in service settings. Setting Enhanced System Applications(P. 54) "
[System Application Management]	It displays system application status and performs start/stop operations.
[System Information]	It displays versions and system application information, etc. Checking System Information(P. 63) "
[MEAP Application Information]	It displays the details about MEAP applications. Checking Application Information(P. 65) "
[Check License]	It checks the content of the license file before it is installed. Checking License Files(P. 66) "
[Change Password]	It changes the SMS log in password. O" Changing the SMS Password(P. 67) "
[MEAP Application Setting Information Management]	It deletes the details about MEAP applications. Provide the MEAP Application Setting Information(P. 69) "
[MEAP Application Log Management]	It downloads and deletes log data obtained by MEAP applications. Managing MEAP Application Log Data(P. 71) "

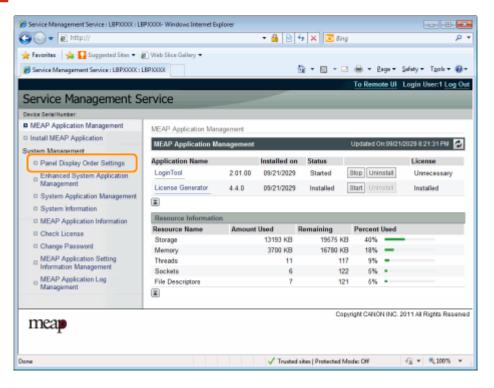
## **Changing the MEAP Applet Display Order**

0XW7-00X

The applet display order changes when you press [Application] key on the control panel.

- Start SMS (Service Management Service).
  - Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

## 2 Click [Panel Display Order Settings].

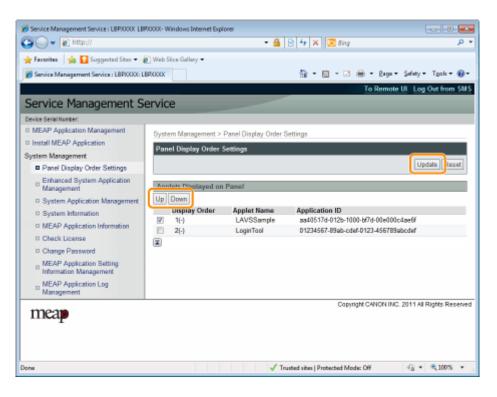


**3** Select the check boxes for the applets whose display order you wish to change.

6 Service Management Service : LBP/000X_LBP	0000 Windows Internet Expl	lorer		
🚱 🕞 👻 💽 http://		- 🔒	🖹 🔄 🛠 🔀 Bing	• م
👷 Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🌄 Suggested Sites 🕶 👸	Web Sice Gallery -			
Service Management Service : LBP/0000: LB			🏠 - 🔯 - 🖂 🖶 - Bay	• Safety • Tgoh • 🔞 •
,				ate UI Log Out from SMS
Service Management Se	nvice			
Device Serial Number:	a vice			_
MEAP Application Management	0 · · · · ·			
Install MEAP Application	System Management >		Settings	
System Management	Panel Display Order	Settings		
Panel Display Order Settings				Update Reset
Enhanced System Application Management	Applets Displayed on	Panel		
System Application Management	Up Down			
System Information	Display Order	Applet Name	Application ID sa40517d-012b-1000-bf7d-00e0	
MEAP Application Information	2 1(-) 2(-)	LAVSSample LoginTool	01234557-89ab-cdef-0123-4557	
D Check License				
Change Password				
MEAP Application Setting Information Management				
<ul> <li>MEAP Application Log Management</li> </ul>				
			Copyright CANON I	NC: 2011 All Rights Reserved
meap				
				0
Done		√ Tr	usted sites   Protected Mode: Off	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

### **4** The display order changes.

- (1) Move the applets up and down by clicking [Up] and [Down].
- (2) Click [Update].



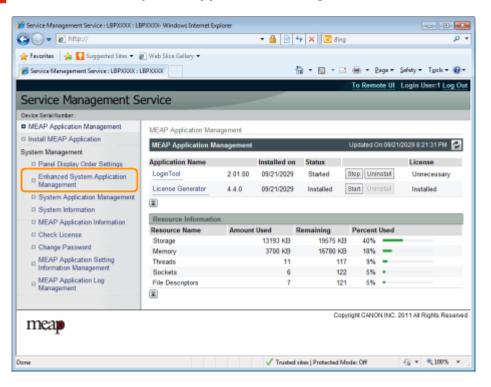
## **Checking Login Services**

Check the login services that perform user authentication.

### Start SMS (Service Management Service).

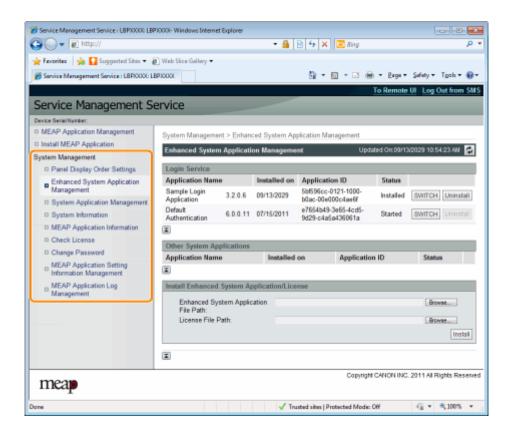
C" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

**2** Click [Enhanced System Application Management].



**3** Check the status of log in service.

0XW7-00Y



## Setting Enhanced System Applications

0XW7-010

They perform the operations of the enhanced system applications that enhance the system applications (the basic applications that make up the MEAP system).

Starting/Stopping Enhanced System Applications(P. 55)

Starting Enhanced System Applications(P. 56)

Stopping Enhanced System Applications(P. 57)

Installing Enhanced System Applications(P. 58)

Uninstalling Enhanced System Applications(P. 61)

## Starting/Stopping Enhanced System Applications

0XW7-011

Starting Enhanced SystemApplications(P. 56)

Stopping Enhanced SystemApplications(P. 57)

## **Starting Enhanced System Applications**

0XW7-012

**1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).

" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

**2** Click [Enhanced System Application Management].

Service Management Service ( LBP)0000 ( LBP	90000- Windows Interne	t Explorer						×
🕒 🔍 👻 http://			- 🔒	2 4 ×	😇 Bing			۰ م
🚖 Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🎧 Suggested Sites 👻 👸	🕻 Web Siice Gallery 🕶							
🍘 Service Management Service : LBP0000: LB	3P30000			🕆 = 🛙	- 🗆 🖶	· · Bage ·	Safety + Tgols +	0-
						To Remote	UI Log Out from	SMS
Service Management Se	ervice							
Device Serial Number:								
MEAP Application Management	System Manageme	nt > Enhan	ed System Ap	plication Mana	gement			
Install MEAP Application	Enhanced System				-	aled Orc09/13	2029 10:54:23 AM	æ
System Management								-
Panel Display Order Settings	Login Service	_	In the Read of the	A section of a	- 10	Cianta a		
Enhanced System Application Management	Application Nam Sample Login Application	a 3.2.0.6	Installed on 09/13/2029	Application 5bf596cc-01 b0ac-00e00	21-1000-	Status	SWITCH Uninsta	1
System Application Management     System Information	Default Authentication	6.0.0.11	07/15/2011	e7654b49-3 9d29-c4a5a	e65-4cd5-	Started	SWITCH Uninsta	11
MEAP Application Information	X							
Check License	Other System Ap	olications						
Change Password	Application Nam	-	Installed	on	Applicatio	n ID	Status	Ξ.
<ul> <li>MEAP Application Setting Information Management</li> </ul>	I							
MEAP Application Log Management	Install Enhanced	System Ap	oplication/Lice	050				
wanagement	Enhanced Sy File Path:	stem Appāc	ation				Browse	
	License File F	Path:					Browse	
							Insta	1
	I							
	-							
meap					Copyright	CANON INC.	2011 All Rights Res	erved
Dane			🗸 Tru	sted sites   Prof	tected Mode:	Off	-∰ ▼ = ₹100%	۰.,

## **3** Click [Start] for Other System Applications, and then start the application.

When the [License Agreement] appears, confirm the information, and then click [I Accept].

## **Stopping Enhanced System Applications**

0XW7-013

**1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).

C" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

**2** Click [Enhanced System Application Management].

6 Service Management Service   LBP2000: LBP	90000- Windows Internet	Explorer						• <b>•</b>
🕒 🗸 🖉 http://			- 🔒	🗟 🕂 🗙	😇 Bing			,Р т
👷 Favorites 🛛 🦕 🚺 Suggested Sites 💌 🌡	🖞 Web Sõce Gallery 🗢							
🏉 Service Management Service : LBPX000: LB	SP XOCKOC			🖞 = 🛛	- 🗆 🖶	- Reger	Safety + Tgob	- 0-
-					- <i>1</i> 4	To Remote	UI Log Out fr	om SMS
Service Management Se	ervice							
Device Serial Number:								_
MEAP Application Management	System Manageme	nt > Enhand	ed System Ap	plication Mana	agement			
Install MEAP Application	Enhanced System	Application	on Manageme	nt	Upda	ded On:09/13	2029 10:54:23 A	M 🔁
System Management								
Panel Display Order Settings     Enhanced System Application	Login Service Application Nam		Installed on	Application	10	Status	_	
Management     System Application     Management	Sample Login Application	3.2.0.6	09/13/2029	5bf596cc-01 b0ac-00e00	21-1000-	installed	SWITCH Uni	install
System Information	Default Authentication	6.0.0.11	07/15/2011	e7654b49-3 9d29-c4a5a		Started	SWITCH	Ilstan
MEAP Application Information	x							
Check License	Other System Ap	plications						
Change Password	Application Name	e	Installed	on	Application	n ID	Status	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	X							
MEAP Application Log	Install Enhanced	System Ap	plication/Lice	0.50				
Management	Enhanced Sy File Path:	stem Applic	ation				Browse	3
	License File F	ath:					Browse	
								install
	I							
	<u>ت</u>							
meap					Copyright	CANON INC.	2011 All Rights	Reserved
Dane			🗸 Tru	isted sites   Prot	tected Mode: (	DHF		0% * .

**3** Click [Stop] for Other System Applications, and then stop the application.

## **Installing Enhanced System Applications**

0XW7-014

**1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).

" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

**2** Click [Enhanced System Application Management].

🖉 🕞 🔻 🔊 http://			- 🔒 😒	🛧 🗙 🔀 Bing			م
🕈 Favoritas 🛛 🙀 🌄 Suggested Sites 👻 🛔	🖞 Web Siice Gallery 🖛						
🖇 Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L	BP30000C			🗄 = 🛛 = 🖻	🖶 = B	laga 🕶 🗎	Safety 🕶 Tgols 🕶 🔞
				11	To Remo	ote UI	Login User:1 Log O
Service Management Se	ervice						
evice Serial Number:							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Mar	agement					
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application M	-			Lindated 0	m 09/24/	2029 8:21:31 PM 💋
ystem Management		a ayened			opulated o	ne vana li	
Denel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed or	n Status			License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Uni	nstall	Unnecessary
Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Unit	nstall	Installed
System Application Management	X						
System Information							
MEAP Application Information	Resource Informatio				_		
D Check License	Resource Name	Amount		Remaining	Percent	Used	
D Change Password	Storage		13193 KB	19575 KB		_	
	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KB			
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	117			
	Sockets		6	122			
D MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	121	0%		
	X						
				Cop	right CANO	NINC.2	011 All Rights Reserv
meap							
T							

## **3** Set [Enhanced System Application File Path] and [License File Path].

Either select the file by clicking [Browse...], or enter the location where the file is stored.

Service Management Service   LBP/0000 LBP	90000- Windows Interne	et Explorer	- 1				
🕒 🔾 🔻 👔 http://			- 🔒	≥ ++ × [	Bing 🗧		P
🚖 Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🌄 Suggested Sites 🔹 🧯	🚺 Web Siice Gallery 🕶						
Service Management Service : LBPX0000: LB	39300000			🗄 = 🛛	- 🖂 🖶	- Baga-	Safety • Tgols • 🔞
						To Remote	UI Log Out from SM
Service Management S	ervice						
Device Serial Number:		-					
MEAP Application Management	System Manageme	nt > Enhan	ed System Ap	alication Mana	tnemen		
Install MEAP Application	Enhanced System					ded OwnBurg	2029 10.54 23 AM 🛃
System Management	Ennanced System	n Applicau	on manageme		opa	alearoncoaona	
Panel Display Order Settings	Login Service						
Enhanced System Application Management	Application Nam	e	Installed on	Application		Status	
System Application Management	Sample Login Application	3.2.0.6	09/13/2029	5bt596cc-012 b0ac-00e000		Installed	SWITCH Uninstall
System Information	Default Authentication	6.0.0.11	07/15/2011	e7654b49-3e 9d29-c4a5a4		Started	SWITCH Uninstall
MEAP Application Information	X						
Check License	Other System Ap	olications					
Change Password	Application Nam		Installed	on	Applicatio	n ID	Status
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	I						
MEAP Application Log	Install Enhanced	System Ap	plication/Lice	0.50			
Management	Enhanced Sy File Path:	stem Appēc	ation				Browse
	License File	Path:					Browse
							Install
	_						
	I						
meap					Copyright	CANON INC.	2011 All Rights Reserv
ane			🗸 Tru	sted sites   Prot	ected Mode:	Off	

[Enhanced System Application File Path]Specify a file with a "jar" extension.[License File Path]Specify a file with a "lic" extension.

### / IMPORTANT

## When specifying a file

Specify both the application file and the license file.

## **4** Click [Install].

🔾 🗸 🖉 http://			- 🔒	🗟 🕂 🗙	🔁 Bing			۶
🗧 Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🌄 Suggested Sites 🕶 🧯	🕅 Web Siice Gallery 🕶							
Service Management Service : LBP0000: LE	SP XOCOC			🗄 = 6	a - 🖂 🖶	- Reger	Safety -	Tgoli 🕶 🍯
					1	To Remote	UI Log	Out from Si
Service Management Se	ervice			_				
evice Serial Number:		_						
MEAP Application Management	System Manageme	nt > Enhan	ed System Ap	acation Man	agement			
Install MEAP Application	Enhanced System					ated On:09/13	2029 10	5103 MI 🗖
ystem Management	Elinanced System	n Applicau	on manageme		opa		NEVES IN	an so that and
D Panel Display Order Settings	Login Service							
Enhanced System Application Management	Application Nam	e	Installed on	Applicatio	n ID	Status		
Management     System Application Management	Sample Login Application	3.2.0.6	09/13/2029	5bf596cc-01 b0ac-00e00		installed	SWITCH	H Uninstall
System Apprication Management	Default Authentication	6.0.0.11	07/15/2011	e7654b49-3 9d29-c4a5a		Started	SWITCH	I Uninstall
MEAP Application Information	X							
Check License	Other System Ap	-						
Change Password	Application Nam		Installed	00	Applicatio	n ID	Stat	145
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	I	ru -			Applicatio		-	
D MEAP Application Log Management	Install Enhanced	System Ap	plication/Lice	050				
Management	Enhanced Sy File Path:	stem Appäc	ation				-01	owse
	License File	Path:					Bo	Install
	I							
meap					Copyright	CANON INC	2011 AU	Rights Reser
DI			J Tru	sted sites   Pro	tected Moder	OFF	-Q +	₹,100% ×

## **5** Confirm the information on the install confirmation page, and then click [Yes].

When the [License Agreement] appears, confirm the information, and then click [I Accept].

 $\rightarrow~$  The installation begins.

## **Uninstalling Enhanced System Applications**

0XW7-015

### 

#### **Deleting License Files**

There is no need to delete license files before uninstalling enhanced system applications.

**1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).

Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

### **2** Click [Enhanced System Application Management].

Service Management Service   LBPX00X   LB	ANN HINNY INCIDE	puo	- 🔒 🖻	👍 🗙 🔯 Bing	9			- 0	ρ
🕈 Favoritas 🛛 🙀 🌄 Suggested Sites 🔹	👔 Web Sice Gallery 🕶								
Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : I	BPIODOC			🗄 = 🔯 = 🖻	1 🖶 = 1	lage +	Safety <del>v</del>	Tgols +	0
					To Rem	ote UI	Login U	lser:1 Lo	g ()
Service Management S	ervice			_					
levice Serial Number:									
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement							
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application M				Updated 0	0m/09/21	2029.8-2	1:31 PM	2
ystem Management					opania				*
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on	010101			Licer		
Enhanced System Application Management	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started		nstall		ecessary	
System Application Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Uni	nstall	Inst	alled	
System Information	x								
MEAP Application Information	Resource Informatio	a							
Check License	Resource Name	Amount		Remaining	Percent	Used			
Change Password	Storage		13193 KB	19575 KE		_			
MEAP Application Setting	Memory Threads		3700 KB	16780 KE					
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Sockets		6	12					
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	12	1 6%				
management	×								
				Con	wright CANC	N INC 1	2011 48 5	lights Res	an-
meap				204	orgin contro			agree rose	
r									
w.			V Trusted	sites   Protected M	lode: Off		- Q +	₹ 100%	*

**3** Click [Uninstall] for the application to uninstall.

[†] Applications with [Uninstall] grayed out cannot be deleted.

## **4** Click [Yes].

 $\rightarrow~$  The uninstall begins.

## **Checking Information**

0XW7-016

Checking System Information(P. 63)

Checking ApplicationInformation(P. 65)

• Checking License Files(P. 66)

## **Checking System Information**

0XW7-017

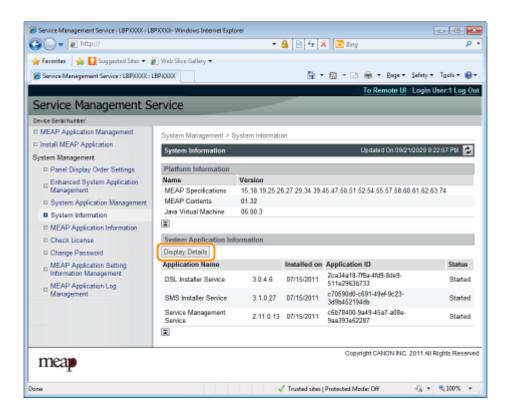
You can check the version information of platforms such as Java virtual machine and version information, date of installation and status of system applications.

- **1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).
  - Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

## **2** Click [System Information].

) 🔾 🔻 🔊 http://		•	â ⊗ <del>4</del> >	🕻 💽 Bing	م		
🛉 Favoritas 🛛 🙀 🚺 Suggested Sites 🔹 🛔	🚺 Web Siice Gallery 🖛						
🙆 Service Management Service : LBPX000X : L	BPJOGOC		- 🗟 -	🔯 - 🖂 🌞 - Baga - Saf	rty = Tgols = 🔞		
				To Remote UI Lo	gin User:1 Log O		
Service Management Se	ervice						
Device Serial Number:							
MEAP Application Management	System Management > !	System Informatio					
Install MEAP Application	System Information			Updated On:09/21/202	10 0-22-07 RM		
System Management	system information			opdated on one rate			
Panel Display Order Settings	Platform Information						
Enhanced System Application	Name	Version					
Management	MEAP Specifications 15.18.19.25.26.27.29.34.39.45.47.50.51.52.54.55.57.58.60.61.62.63.74						
System Application Management	MEAP Contents Java Virtual Machine	01.32					
System Information		06.00.3					
MEAP Application Information	I						
Check License	System Application In	formation					
Change Password	<b>Display Details</b>						
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Application Name		Installed on	Application ID	Status		
	DSL Installer Service	3.0.4.6	07/15/2011	2ca34a18-7f8a-4fd9-8de9- 511e2963b733	Started		
<ul> <li>MEAP Application Log Management</li> </ul>	SMS Installer Service	3.1.0.27	07/15/2011	c70590d0-c691-49ef-9c23- 3d9b452194db	Started		
	Service Management Service	2.11.0.13	07/15/2011	c6b78400-9a49-45a7-a08e- 9aa393e62287	Started		
	I						
meap				Copyright CANON INC. 201	1 All Rights Reserv		

Click [Display Details] to check detailed information.



## **Checking Application Information**

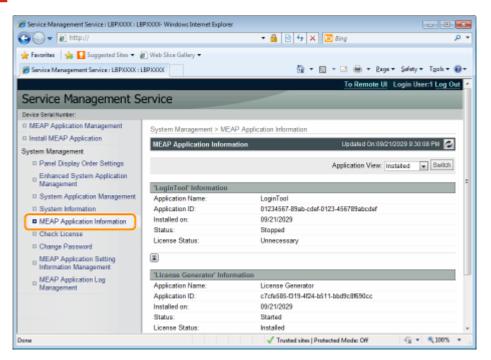
0XW7-018

You can check the information about installed or uninstalled applications (except for system applications).

### Start SMS (Service Management Service).

Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

## 2 Click [MEAP Application Information].



## **3** Information about applications is displayed.

- (1) Select [Installed] or [Uninstalled].
- (2) Click [Switch].

[Installed]	Information about installed applications (except for system applications) is displayed.
[Uninstalled]	Information about uninstalled applications (except for system applications) is displayed.

## **Checking License Files**

0XW7-019

You can check the content of the license file before it is installed.

### **1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).

C" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

## 2 Click [Check License].

6 Service Management Service ( LBP)000X ( LB	P30000-Windows Internet Explorer		
🚱 🕞 🔻 🔊 http://	-	🔒 🖹 😽 🗙 💽 Bing	P *
🚖 Favoritas 🛛 🖕 🚺 Suggested Sites 🔹 🛔	👔 Web Siice Gallery 🕶		
🍯 Service Management Service : LBPX00X : L	BPJOGOC	🏠 • 🔯 • 🖃 🖶 • Baga •	Safety + Tgoh + 🕢 +
		To Remote UI	Login User:1 Log Out
Service Management S	ervice		
Device Serial Number:			
MEAP Application Management	System Management > Check License		
Install MEAP Application	Check License		
System Management			Check
Panel Display Order Settings			
Enhanced System Application Management	License File Path:		Browse
System Application Management			
System Information			
D MEAP Annie Information			
Check License			
Change Password			
MEAP Application Setting Information Management			
MEAP Application Log Management			
meap		Capyright CANON INC.	2011 All Rights Reserved
Done		√ Trusted sites   Protected Mode: Off	-@ ▼ €100% ▼

**3** Either select the file by clicking [Browse], or enter the location where the file is stored.

## **4** Click [Check].

 $\rightarrow~$  The content of the license file is displayed.

## **Changing the SMS Password**

#### 0XW7-01A

#### / IMPORTANT

#### **SMS Password**

- To prevent unauthorized access, we recommend that the administrator change the password before SMS use is begun.
- This password is to prevent unauthorized operation of the printer. Do not let anyone know except the administrator.
- Make sure that you do not forget your password. If you forget your password, you will not be able to use SMS. If this happens, contact your local dealer.

#### Start SMS (Service Management Service).

" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

## **2** Click [Change Password].

Service Management Service : LBPX000X : LB	90000-Windows Internet Explorer	
🕒 🗸 🖉 http://	- 🔒 🖻 🕂 🗙	🛛 💽 Bing 💫 👻
🚖 Favorites 🛛 🙀 🚺 Suggested Sites 💌 🛔	👔 Web Sice Gallery 🗢	
Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L	BPXXXXX 👘 🕶	🖸 = 🖃 🖶 = Baga = Safety = Tgoh = 🚱 =
		To Remote UI Login User:1 Log Out
Service Management S	ervice	
Device Serial Number:		
MEAP Application Management	System Management > Change Password	
Install MEAP Application	Change Password	
System Management		Oburn Quest
Panel Display Order Settings		Change Reset
Enhanced System Application Management	Old Password:	
System Application Management	New Password:	
System Information	Confirm:	
MEAP Application Information	I	
D Check License		
Change Password		
MEAP Appecation Setting Information Management		
MEAP Application Log     Management		
meap		Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved
Dane	√ Trusted sites	Protected Mode: Off 🛛 🖓 💌 🔍 100% 💌 💡

## **3** Set the password.

- (1) Set the password.
- (2) Click [Change].

[†] Enter between 8 and 32 alphanumeric characters (a to z, A to Z, and 0 to 9) for the password.

[Old Password]	Enter the password that is currently used.
[New Password]	Enter the new password.

[Confirm]	Enter the same password again in [New Password].
-----------	--------------------------------------------------

## **Deleting the MEAP Application Setting Information**

0XW7-01C

Deletes the application data.

### **1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).

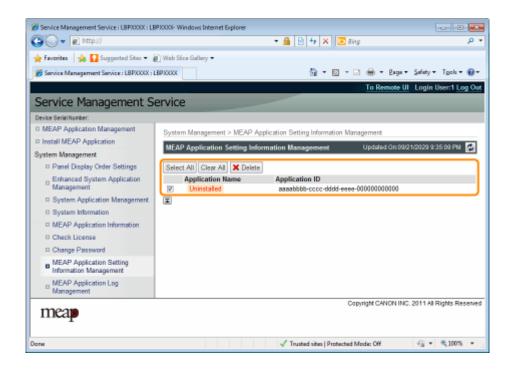
SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

**2** Click [MEAP Application Setting Information Management].

Favoritas   🖕 🚺 Suggested Sites 🕶	🖉 Web Slice Gallery 🗢			49 🗙 🔀 89	-		
Service Management Service : LBPX000X : I	BPIODOX			🗄 = 🛛 = 🕯	2 @ • I	2age +	Safety + Tgols + 🔞
Service Management S	ervice				To Rem	ote UI	Login User:1 Log O
Jevice Serial Number:							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement					
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application M				Lindated (	Dec 00/24	2029 8:21:31 PM 🔗
System Management	мене пересанов в	anagement			optated	01102021	2029021.5TFN
Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed on	Status			License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Started	Stop Uni	install	Unnecessary
¹⁰ Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Uni	nstall	Installed
System Application Management	X						
System Information	Resource Informatic	-					
MEAP Application Information	Resource Name	Amoun	Used	Remaining	Percent	Used	
Check License	Storage		13193 KB	19575 K			
Change Password	Memory		3700 KB	16780 K	38 18%	-	
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	Threads		11	1	17 9%	-	
	Sockets		6		22 5%		
MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	1	21 6%	•	
	X						
				00	pyright CANO	NINC.2	011 All Rights Reserv
meap							
T							

**3** Select the check box for the application whose setting information you wish to delete, and then click [Delete].

Click [Select All] to select all of the applications.



#### 4 Click [Yes].

 $\rightarrow$  The setting information of the application is deleted.

### Managing MEAP Application Log Data

0XW7-01E

It downloads and deletes log data obtained by MEAP applications.

- Downloading Log Data(P. 72)
- Deleting Log Data(P. 74)

### **Downloading Log Data**

0XW7-01F

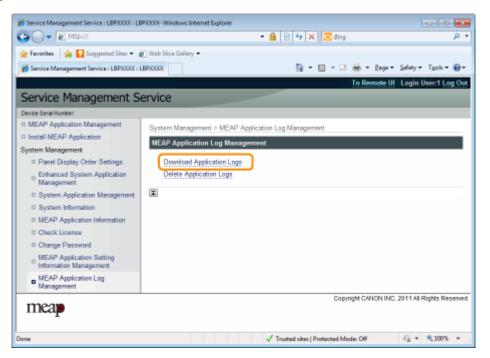
#### **1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).

C" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

**2** Click [MEAP Application Log Management].

• • • http://			* 🇯 🖻	🕂 🗙 🔁 ðing			,
🖡 Favorites 🛛 🎪 🎦 Suggested Sites 🔻 🐇	Web Slice Gallery 🔻						
Service Management Service : LBPXXXX : L	BPJOOIX			💁 = 🛛 - 🖻	🛞 = 1	age + 1	Safety = Tgols = 🕴
					To Rem	ste UI	Login User:1 Log
Service Management Se	ervice						
evice Serial Number:							
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	poement					
Install MEAP Application		-					
ystem Management	MEAP Application M	anagement			oposies o	m 09/21	2029 8:21:31 PM 🕻
D Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed or	1 Status			License
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Stated	Stop Uni	nstall	Unnecessary
Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Unit	Tisten	Installed
System Application Management	I						
© System Information							
I MEAP Application Information	Resource Informatio				_		
Check License	Resource Name	Amount		Remaining	Percent	Used	
Change Password	Storage		13193 KB	19575 KB			
MEAP Application Setting	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KB	14114	_	
Information Management	Threads		11	117			
MEAP Application Log	Sockets		6	122			
Management	File Descriptors		7	121	5%		
	I						
				Cop	right CANO	N INC. 2	011 All Rights Rese
meap							
incep							

**3** Click [Download Application Logs].



#### **4** Follow the on-screen instructions and specify a file storage directory.

 $\rightarrow$  The log file is saved.

### **Deleting Log Data**

0XW7-01H

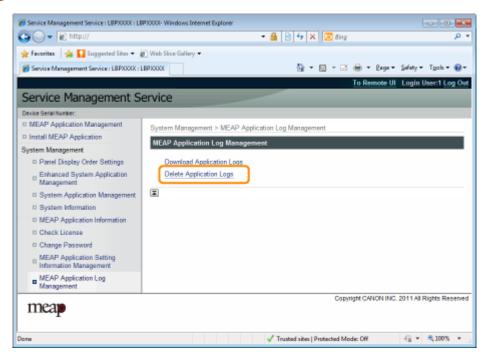
#### **1** Start SMS (Service Management Service).

O" Launching SMS (Log in)(P. 9) "

#### **2** Click [MEAP Application Log Management].

🕥 🔹 🖻 http://			* 🔒 🖻	🆅 🗙 📴 ðing				م
Favorites 🛛 🎪 🎦 Suggested Sites 🔻 🛔	👔 Web Slice Gallery 🔻							
Service Management Service : LBP/0000 : L	BPX00X			🔄 • 🛛 • 🗈	÷ •	age •	Sefety - Tgols -	0
			t		To Rem	ste UI	Login User:1 Log	g C
ervice Management S	ervice							
vice Serial Number:								
MEAP Application Management	MEAP Application Man	agement						
Install MEAP Application	MEAP Application M				Lindalad /	w 00/24	2029 8/21:31 PM	
stem Management	MEAP Application M	anagement			opuaseo o	in vive t	2029/021/31/98	
D Panel Display Order Settings	Application Name		Installed or	Status			License	
Enhanced System Application	LoginTool	2.01.00	09/21/2029	Stated	Stop Uni	nstall	Unnecessary	
Management	License Generator	4.4.0	09/21/2029	Installed	Start Unit	Tetren	Installed	
System Application Management	I							
System information	Resource Informatio							-
D MEAP Application Information	Resource Name	Amount	lked	Remaining	Percent	liked		
Check License	Storage	Children I.	13193 KB	19575 KB				
Change Password	Memory		3700 KB	16780 KB	18%	-		
MEAP Application Setting	Threads		11	117	9%			
	Sockets		6	122	5%			
ID MEAP Application Log Management	File Descriptors		7	121	5%			
management	<b>x</b>							
				Con	right CANO	NINC 2	011 All Rights Res	-
meap								

**3** Click [Delete Application Logs].



### 4 Click [Yes].

 $\rightarrow$  The log data is deleted.

## List of Error Messages (MEAP)

List of Error Messages (MEAP)	77
Errors Relating to the [Login] Page	79
Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Management] Page	81
Errors Relating to the [Install MEAP Application] Page	83
Errors Relating to the [Authentication Information Settings] Page	88
Errors Relating to the [License Management] Page	89
Errors Relating to the [Enhanced System Application Management] Page	91
Errors Relating to the [Check License] and [Change Password] Pages	
Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Setting Information Management] Page	99
Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Log Management] Page	100
Other Errors	101

### List of Error Messages (MEAP)

0XW7-01J

This section describes how to handle error messages that are displayed when logging in to or operating SMS.

The error messages are divided into separate pages. Click the following links and perform the necessary actions.

Errors Relating to the [Login]Page(P. 79)

 Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Management] Page(P. 81)

 Errors Relating to the [Install MEAP Application] Page(P. 83)

Errors Relating to the
 [Authentication Information Settings]
 Page(P. 88)

 Errors Relating to the [License Management] Page(P. 89)

Errors Relating to the [Enhanced
 System Application Management]
 Page(P. 91)

Errors Relating to the [Check
 License] and [Change Password]
 Pages(P. 97)

 Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Setting Information Management] Page(P. 99)

 Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Log Management]
 Page(P. 100)

• Other Errors(P. 101)

### **Errors Relating to the [Login] Page**

#### 0XW7-01K

- < The specified file does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.(P. 79) >
- < The contents of the specified file are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.(P. 79) >
- < The specified switch license file cannot be used for password initialization. Try to specify the file again. (P. 79) >
- < Cannot initialize password because a used switch license file is specified. Try to specify the file again. (P. 79) >
- < Cannot initialize the password because another application is being installed, or the firmware being updated. Please wait a moment and then try again.(P. 79)
- < You do not have permissions to use Service Management Service. Log in with administrator rights.(P. 80) >
- < Cannot login because another user is logged in or logout operations have not been successfully performed. Please wait a moment and then try this operation again.(P. 80) >
- < Error: <Error Details>(P. 80) >

### The specified file does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.

Problem	The file does not exist on the specified path or the file path is incorrect.
Action	Specify the file path correctly.

#### The contents of the specified file are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.

Problem	The specified file is not a switch license file.
Action	Check to make sure that the specified file is a switch license file for password initialization.
Problem	Information is missing from the specified file.
Action	The password cannot be initialized using the specified file. Check the content of the file.

### The specified switch license file cannot be used for password initialization. Try to specify the file again.

Problem	The specified file is not a switch license file for initializing the password.
Action	Specify a switch license file for initializing the password.

## Cannot initialize password because a used switch license file is specified. Try to specify the file again.

Problem	The specified license file has already been installed. License files that have been installed once cannot be installed again.
Action	Since the specified license file cannot be installed, specify another file.

## Cannot initialize the password because another application is being installed, or the firmware being updated.

#### Please wait a moment and then try again.

Problem	Either it is installed in another application outside of SMS, or it cannot initialize the password because the
	firmware is being updated.

Action	Wait until the processing stops before initializing the password.
--------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

## You do not have permissions to use Service Management Service. Log in with administrator rights.

Problem	Only users with administrator rights can log in to SMS with the user name and password that they use for logging in to the printer. The user trying to log in cannot do so because they do not have administrator rights.
Action	Log in again with the user name and password of a user with administrator rights.

## Cannot login because another user is logged in or logout operations have not been successfully performed. Please wait a moment and then try this operation again.

Problem	Cannot log in for a period of time because either another user is logged in or when the user was logged in before, the logout procedure was not performed properly.
Action	If another user is logged in, wait until the user logs out. If another user is not logged in, wait for the lock to be cancelled.

#### Error: <Error Details>

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason. See <error details=""> for details.</error>
Action	If the solutions given in <error details=""> are unclear, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.</error>

### **Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Management]** Page

0XW7-01L

- < Cannot start this application because there is no distributable software in the application. Get a distributable software.(P. 81) >
- < Cannot start this application because the number of bootable applets has exceeded the limit. Start this application • < The name listed in the file for the application and after stopping other applications.(P. 81) >
- < A license is needed to start this application. Try to start it again after installing a license.(P. 81) >
- < Cannot start this application because system resources (memory, threads, sockets, file descriptors, disk space, or screen size) required to start the application may not be available. <Resources>(P. 81) >
- < Cannot uninstall this application because the license file has not been deleted. Uninstall the application after deleting the license in the [License Management] page.(P. 82) >
- the applet name to register with Applet Viewer Service are different. Check the file.(P. 82) >
- < Cannot start this application because application setting information is being processed. Please wait a moment and then try again.(P. 82) >
- < Error: < Error Details>(P. 82) >

#### Cannot start this application because there is no distributable software in the application. Get a distributable software.

Problem	The application cannot be started because it does not contain any redistributable modules.
Action	Contact the application developer.

#### Cannot start this application because the number of bootable applets has exceeded the limit. Start this application after stopping other applications.

Problem	The application that you are attempting to launch contains applets. If the application was launched, the number of applets that would be booted on the system would exceed the limit (five applets), so the application cannot be launched.
Action	First, reduce the number of applets running on the system by stopping an application running on the system which includes an applet, and then restart the application.

#### A license is needed to start this application. Try to start it again after installing a license.

Problem	Cannot start the application because a license file is not installed.
Action	Install the license file, and then restart the application.

#### Cannot start this application because system resources (memory, threads, sockets, file descriptors, disk space, or screen size) required to start the application may not be available. <Resources>

Problem	The application cannot be started because the system resources for opening the application may not be available to be allocated.
Action	Restart this application after stopping other applications. It may be able to start this time.

#### Cannot uninstall this application because the license file has not been deleted. Uninstall the application after deleting the license in the [License Management] page.

Problem	The application cannot be uninstalled because the license file for the application still exists inside the printer.
Action	Uninstall the application after deleting the license on the [License Management] page.

#### The name listed in the file for the application and the applet name to register with Applet Viewer Service are different. Check the file.

Probl	em	The application cannot be started because the applet name the application is trying to register in the Applet Viewer Service differs from the applet name included in the application file.
Actio	on	Since it is necessary to make corrections to the application file, contact the application developer.

## Cannot start this application because application setting information is being processed. Please wait a moment and then try again.

Problem	The application cannot be started because application data is being deleted.
Action	After deletion of application data completes, launch the application again.

#### Error: <Error Details>

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason. See <error details=""> for details.</error>
Action	If the solutions given in <error details=""> are unclear, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.</error>

### **Errors Relating to the [Install MEAP Application] Page**

0XW7-01R

- < The file for the application to install does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.(P. 83) >
- < The file for the license to install does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.(P. 83) >
- < The manifest is not listed in the specified file. Check the file.(P. 84) >
- < The contents of the file for the application to install are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.(P. 84) >
- < The contents of the file for the license to install are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.(P. 84) >
- < The following information is missing in file for the specified application. Check the file. <Missing information>(P. 84) >
- < The following information in the specified application is incorrect. Check the file. <Inaccurate information>(P. 84) >
- < Cannot install this application because a code signing has not been confirmed to be valid. Get a valid code signing. (P. 84) >
- < Cannot install this license because the specified application and license do not correspond. Try to specify a path for the license file again.(P. 85) >
- < The number of applications that can be installed has exceeded the limit. Try to install this application after uninstalling other applications.(P. 85) >
- < Cannot install this license because the number of license file ID logs that can be saved has exceeded the limit. Contact your service representative.(P. 85) >
- < Cannot install because a used license file is specified. Try to specify the file again.(P. 85) >
- < To install the specified application, a license file must be installed at the same time. Specify a license file.(P. 85) >
- < The specified file is a system application. Install the application from the [Enhanced System Application Management] page.(P. 85) >

- < The specified application does not require a license.</li>
   (P. 85) >
- < The specified license does not match this device. Specify an installable license.(P. 86) >
- < The specified application does not support this device.(P. 86) >
- < Cannot install this application because an applet included in the specified application has exceeded the area that can be displayed in the device panel.(P. 86) >
- < The specified file is an update file. Stop the application that you want update and then install the file.(P. 86) >
- < Cannot install the application because the license requirement is different. Uninstall the specified application, and then try to install the application again.(P. 86) >
- < Cannot install this application because storage space has been exceeded. Uninstall other applications and then try to install it again.(P. 86) >
- < Could not cancel installation. Installation has been successfully completed.(P. 86) >
- < This application does not support the MEAP version of the device. Contact your service representative after checking the application version.(P. 87) >
- < The specified application cannot be installed on this device.(P. 87) >
- < The process is canceled because the system has been shut down. Restart the system, and then perform the process again.(P. 87) >
- < Cannot install the application or license because another application is being installed, or the firmware being updated. Please wait a moment and then try again.(P. 87) >
- < Error: <Error Details>(P. 87) >

## The file for the application to install does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.

Problem	The specified file does not exist or the file path is incorrect.
Action	Specify the file path correctly.

### The file for the license to install does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.

Problem	The license file does not exist on the specified path or the file path is incorrect.
Action	Specify the file path correctly.

#### The manifest is not listed in the specified file. Check the file.

Problem	A manifest does not exist for the file specified as the application file.
Action	This application cannot be installed. Contact the application developer.

## The contents of the file for the application to install are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.

Problem	Either the content of the files specified as application files is not correct or information is missing.
Action	This application file cannot be installed. Check the file. If there are no problems with the files, contact the application developer or the application support help desk.

#### The contents of the file for the license to install are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.

Problem	Either the content of the files specified as license files is not correct or information is missing.
Action	This license file cannot be installed. Check the file. If there are no problems with the files, contact the application developer or the application support help desk.

## The following information is missing in file for the specified application. Check the file. <Missing information>

Problem	The application cannot be installed because required information is not included in the application file.
Action	Check the file. If there are no problems with the files, contact the application developer or the application support help desk concerning the <missing information="">.</missing>

#### The following information in the specified application is incorrect. Check the file. <Inaccurate information>

Problem 1	<inaccurate information=""> in the application file cannot be recognized as correct information.</inaccurate>
Action	Contact the application developer or the application support help desk.
Problem 2	If the <inaccurate information=""> is the MEAP Specifications, the application's MEAP specification values and the printer's MEAP specification values do not match.</inaccurate>
Action	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.

## Cannot install this application because a code signing has not been confirmed to be valid. Get a valid code signing.

Problem 1	Cannot confirm that there is a valid code signature inside the application file.
Action	Perform the correct code signing operation for the application.
Problem 2	The file may have been altered.
Action	Contact the application developer.

## Cannot install this license because the specified application and license do not correspond. Try to specify a path for the license file again.

Problem	The application cannot be installed because the specified license file does not correspond to the specified application.
Action	Specify the license file that corresponds to the application.

## The number of applications that can be installed has exceeded the limit. Try to install this application after uninstalling other applications.

Problem	The maximum number of applications that can be installed is eight. You are attempting to install an application that will exceed that number.
Action	You can install it if you first uninstall another installed application (unless it is a system application).

## Cannot install this license because the number of license file ID logs that can be saved has exceeded the limit. Contact your service representative.

Problem	The license file cannot be installed because the number of license file ID information logs contained in the license file exceeds the number that can be saved.
Action	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.

#### Cannot install because a used license file is specified. Try to specify the file again.

Problem	License files that have been installed once cannot be installed again. The specified license file has already been installed.
Action	Since the specified license file cannot be installed, specify another file.

#### To install the specified application, a license file must be installed at the same time. Specify a license file.

Problem	You cannot install the application unless you specify the license file that corresponds to the application at the same time.
Action	Specify the corresponding license file when specifying the application, and then install them.

## The specified file is a system application. Install the application from the [Enhanced System Application Management] page.

Problem	The specified file is a system application. It cannot be installed from this [Install MEAP Application] page.
Action	Install it from the [Enhanced System Application Management] page.

#### The specified application does not require a license.

	An application file and license file were specified, but the specified application file does not require a license file.
Action	Install the application without specifying a license file.

#### The specified license does not match this device. Specify an installable license.

Problem	License files contain the serial number information of printers in which the license file can be installed. The specified license cannot be installed because it does not contain the printer's serial number information.
Action	Specify a license file that matches the printer's serial number.

#### The specified application does not support this device.

Problem	Some applications can only be installed in certain printer models. It cannot be installed in this model.	
Action	Specify an application that supports this printer.	

## Cannot install this application because an applet included in the specified application has exceeded the area that can be displayed in the device panel.

Problem	The application cannot be installed because the display area of an applet included in the application exceeds the area that can be displayed on the operation panel of the printer.
Action	Install an application that contains applets that support this printer.

### The specified file is an update file. Stop the application that you want update and then install the file.

Problem	The specified application file is a file for updating an application which is already installed. It is necessary to stop the application which is to be updated before updating.
Action	Stop the application that you want to update, and then perform the update again.

### Cannot install the application because the license requirement is different. Uninstall the specified application, and then try to install the application again.

Prot		You have tried to upgrade an application which is already installed using a version of the same application with different license requirements.
Act	ion	Upgrade using the same license conditions.

### Cannot install this application because storage space has been exceeded. Uninstall other applications and then try to install it again.

Problem	The application cannot be installed because there is not enough free storage capacity.
Action	Make storage capacity available by uninstalling an application that is not being used.

#### Could not cancel installation. Installation has been successfully completed.

Problem	The [Cancel] button was pressed when the installation operation could not be cancelled.
Action	Disable the license file, download it from the [License Management] page, and then uninstall it.

### This application does not support the MEAP version of the device. Contact your service representative after checking the application version.

Problem	The specified application cannot be installed because it does not support the MEAP version on this printer.
Action	Contact the application developer.

#### The specified application cannot be installed on this device.

Problem	The specified application cannot be installed because there is not enough memory in the printer.
Action	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.

## The process is canceled because the system has been shut down. Restart the system, and then perform the process again.

Problem	The installation could not be completed because it conflicted with a system shutdown.
Action	Restart the printer and perform the install again.

### Cannot install the application or license because another application is being installed, or the firmware being updated. Please wait a moment and then try again.

	Either it is installed in another application outside of SMS, or the application cannot be installed because the firmware has been updated.
Action	Wait until the processing stops before installing the application.

#### Error: < Error Details>

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason. See <error details=""> for details.</error>
Action	If the solutions given in <error details=""> are unclear, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.</error>

### Errors Relating to the [Authentication Information Settings] Page

#### 0XW7-01S

- < Settings are incorrect.(P. 88) >
- < The [Department ID] is incorrect. Enter an integer for the [Department ID].(P. 88) >
- < The [Department ID] is not entered.(P. 88) >

#### Settings are incorrect.

- Check to see if the password is incorrect.
- Enter Dept. ID within 7 digits.
- Check to see if the Department. ID is registered with the device.

- < Could not set authentication information because an error occurred.(P. 88) >
- < Could not delete authentication information because an error occurred.(P. 88) >

Problem	Cannot set authentication information because either the Dept. ID entered does not exist, or the PIN was entered incorrectly.
Action	Enter a Dept. ID and PIN that are registered in the printer.

#### The [Department ID] is incorrect. Enter an integer for the [Department ID].

Problem	The Dept. ID that was entered is a positive integer, but the registered Dept. ID is not a positive integer.
Action	Enter the correct Dept. ID that is registered in the device.

#### The [Department ID] is not entered.

Problem	The Dept. ID is blank.
Action	Specify a Dept. ID.

#### **Could not set authentication information because an error occurred.**

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason, so authentication information could not be set.
Action	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.

#### Could not delete authentication information because an error occurred.

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason, so authentication information could not be deleted.
Action	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.

### **Errors Relating to the [License Management] Page**

0XW7-01U

- < The specified file does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try < The specified license does not match this device. to specify the path again.(P. 89) >
- < The contents of the file for the license to install are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.(P. 89) >
- < Cannot install this license because the specified license does not correspond to this application. Try to specify a path for the license file again.(P. 89) >
- < Cannot install this license because the number of license file ID logs that can be saved has exceeded the limit. Contact your service representative.(P. 89) >
- < Cannot install because a used license file is specified. Try to specify the file again.(P. 89) >

- Specify an installable license.(P. 90) >
- < Could not cancel installation. Installation has been successfully completed.(P. 90) >
- < Cannot install the license because another application is being installed, or the firmware being updated. Please wait a moment and then try again.(P. 90) >
- < Cannot disable the license file because this application has been started. Disable the license file after stopping the application.(P. 90) >
- < Error: <Error Details>(P. 90) >

#### The specified file does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.

Problem	The file does not exist on the specified path or the file path is incorrect.
Action	Specify the file path correctly.

#### The contents of the file for the license to install are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.

Problem	Either the content of the file is not correct or information is missing.
Action	This license file cannot be installed. Contact the application developer.

#### Cannot install this license because the specified license does not correspond to this application. Try to specify a path for the license file again.

Problem	The specified license file does not correspond to the application, so they cannot be installed.
Action	Specify the license file that corresponds to the application. Check to make sure that the manifest file listed inside the license file is correct.

#### Cannot install this license because the number of license file ID logs that can be saved has exceeded the limit. Contact your service representative.

Problem	The license file cannot be installed because the number of license file ID information logs contained in the license file exceeds the number that can be saved.
Action	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.

#### Cannot install because a used license file is specified. Try to specify the file again.

Problem	According to the specifications, a license file which is already installed cannot be installed again. The specified license file has already been installed.
Action	Since the specified license file cannot be installed, specify another file.

#### The specified license does not match this device. Specify an installable license.

Problem	License files contain lists of printers in which they can be installed. The specified license file cannot be installed in this printer.
Action	Specify a license file that can be installed in this printer.

#### Could not cancel installation. Installation has been successfully completed.

Problem	The [Cancel] button was pressed when the installation operation could not be cancelled.
Action	Disable the license file, download it from the [License Management] page, and then uninstall it.

### Cannot install the license because another application is being installed, or the firmware being updated.

#### Please wait a moment and then try again.

Pr	oblem	Either it is installed in another application outside of SMS, or the license file cannot be installed because the firmware has been updated.
A	Action	Wait until the processing stops before installing the license file.

### Cannot disable the license file because this application has been started. Disable the license file after stopping the application.

Problem	You cannot disable a license if the corresponding application is still running.
Action	Stop the application that corresponds to the license before disabling the license.

#### Error: <Error Details>

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason. See <error details=""> for details.</error>
Action	If the solutions given in <error details=""> are unclear, contact the application developer.</error>

### Errors Relating to the [Enhanced System Application Management] Page

0XW7-01W

- < Cannot start this application because there is no distributable software in the application. Get a distributable software.(P. 92) >
- < Cannot start this application because the number of bootable applets has exceeded the limit. Start this application after stopping other applications.(P. 92) >
- < Cannot start this application because system resources (memory, threads, sockets, file descriptors, disk space, or screen size) required to start the application may not be available. <Resources>(P. 92) >
- < The name listed in the file for the application and the applet name to register with Applet Viewer Service are different. Check the file.(P. 92) >
- < The following login services cannot be uninstalled: (P. 92)
  - The currently set login service
  - Login services that will be enabled after the device is restarted
  - Default Authentication login services

The currently set login service can be uninstalled after the device is restarted.>

- < The file for the application to install does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again. (P. 92) >
- < The manifest is not listed in the specified file. Check the file.(P. 93) >
- < The file for the license to install does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.(P. 93) >
- < The contents of the file for the application to install are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.(P. 93)
   >
- < The contents of the file for the license to install are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.(P. 93)
   >
- < Cannot install this application because a code signing has not been confirmed to be valid. Get a valid code signing.(P. 93) >
- < Cannot install this license because the specified application and license do not correspond. Try to specify a path for the license file again.(P. 93) >
- < The specified file is not system application. Check the file.(P. 93) >
- < Cannot install this license because the number of license file ID logs that can be saved has exceeded the limit. Contact your service representative.(P. 94) >
- < Cannot install because a used license file is specified. Try to specify the file again.(P. 94) >

- < To install the specified application, a license file must be installed at the same time. Specify a license file.(P. 94) >
- < The following information in the specified application is incorrect. Check the file. <Inaccurate information>(P. 94)
   >
- < The following information is missing in file for the specified application. Check the file. <Missing information>(P. 94) >
- < The specified application does not support this device.</li>
   (P. 94) >
- < The specified license does not match this device. Specify an installable license.(P. 94) >
- < Cannot install this application because an applet included in the specified application has exceeded the area that can be displayed in the device panel.(P. 95) >
- < The specified file is an update file. Stop the application that you want update and then install the file.(P. 95) >
- < The specified file is an update file for a login service that is currently set. Switch to another login service, restart the device, and then install the file.(P. 95) >
- < Cannot install this application because storage space has been exceeded. Uninstall other applications and then try to install it again.(P. 95) >
- < Could not cancel installation. Installation has been successfully completed.(P. 95) >
- < The process is canceled because the system has been shut down. Restart the system, and then perform the process again.(P. 95) >
- < Cannot install the application or license because another application is being installed, or the firmware being updated. Please wait a moment and then try again. (P. 95) >
- < Error: <Error Details>(P. 96) >

### Cannot start this application because there is no distributable software in the application. Get a distributable software.

Problem	The application cannot be started because it does not contain any redistributable modules.
Action	Contact the application developer.

### Cannot start this application because the number of bootable applets has exceeded the limit. Start this application after stopping other applications.

Problem	The application that you are attempting to launch contains applets. If the application was launched, the number of applets that would be booted on the system would exceed the limit (five applets), so the application cannot be launched.
Action	First, reduce the number of applets running on the system by stopping an application running on the system which includes an applet, and then restart the application.

# Cannot start this application because system resources (memory, threads, sockets, file descriptors, disk space, or screen size) required to start the application may not be available. <Resources>

Problem	The application cannot be started because the system resources for opening the application may not be available to be allocated.
Action	Restart this application after stopping other applications. It may be able to start this time.

#### The name listed in the file for the application and the applet name to register with Applet Viewer Service are different. Check the file.

Problem	The application cannot be started because the applet name the application is trying to register in the Applet Viewer Service differs from the applet name included in the application file.
Action	Since it is necessary to make corrections to the application file, contact the application developer.

#### The following login services cannot be uninstalled:

- The currently set login service
- Login services that will be enabled after the device is restarted
- Default Authentication login services

The currently set login service can be uninstalled after the device is restarted.

Problem	The currently set login service, a login service that will be enabled after restarting the machine, and the Default Authentication login service cannot be uninstalled.
Action	Do not uninstall the currently set login service, a login service that will be enabled after restarting the machine, or the Default Authentication login service. To uninstall the currently set login service, uninstall it after restarting the machine.

## The file for the application to install does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.

Problem	The specified file does not exist or the file path is incorrect.
Action	Specify the file path correctly.

#### The manifest is not listed in the specified file. Check the file.

Problem	A manifest does not exist for the file specified as the application file.
Action	This application cannot be installed. Contact the application developer.

## The file for the license to install does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.

Problem	The specified file does not exist or the file path is incorrect.
Action	Specify the file path correctly.

### The contents of the file for the application to install are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.

Problem	Either the content of the files specified as application files is not correct or information is missing.
Action	This application file cannot be installed. Check the file. If there are no problems with the files, contact the application developer or the application support help desk.

#### The contents of the file for the license to install are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.

Problem	Either the content of the files specified as license files is not correct or information is missing.
Action	This license file cannot be installed. Check the file. If there are no problems with the files, contact the application developer or the application support help desk.

## Cannot install this application because a code signing has not been confirmed to be valid. Get a valid code signing.

Problem 1	Cannot confirm that there is a valid code signature inside the application file.
Action	Perform the correct code signing operation for the application.
Problem 2	The file may have been altered.
Action	Contact the application developer.

### Cannot install this license because the specified application and license do not correspond. Try to specify a path for the license file again.

Problem	The application cannot be installed because the specified license file does not correspond to the specified application.
Action	Specify the license file that corresponds to the application.

#### The specified file is not system application. Check the file.

Problem	The specified file is not system application. It cannot be installed from the [Enhanced System Application Management] page.
Action	Install it from the [Install MEAP Application] page.

## Cannot install this license because the number of license file ID logs that can be saved has exceeded the limit. Contact your service representative.

Problem	The license file cannot be installed because the number of license file ID information logs contained in the license file exceeds the number that can be saved.
Action	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.

#### Cannot install because a used license file is specified. Try to specify the file again.

Problem	License files that have been installed once cannot be installed again. The specified license file has already been installed.
Action	Since the specified license file cannot be installed, specify another file.

#### To install the specified application, a license file must be installed at the same time. Specify a license file.

Problem	You cannot install the application unless you specify the license file that corresponds to the application at the same time.
Action	Specify the corresponding license file when specifying the application, and then install them.

#### The following information in the specified application is incorrect. Check the file. <Inaccurate information>

Problem 1	<inaccurate information=""> in the application file cannot be recognized as correct information.</inaccurate>
Action	Contact the application developer or the application support help desk.
Problem 2	If the <inaccurate information=""> is the MEAP Specifications, the application's MEAP specification values and the printer's MEAP specification values do not match.</inaccurate>
Action	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.

## The following information is missing in file for the specified application. Check the file. <Missing information>

Problem	The application cannot be installed because required information is not included in the application.
Action	Check the file. If there are no problems with the files, contact the application developer or the application support help desk concerning the <missing information="">.</missing>

#### The specified application does not support this device.

Problem	Some applications can only be installed in certain printer models. It cannot be installed in this model.
Action	Specify an application that supports this printer.

#### The specified license does not match this device. Specify an installable license.

Problem	License files contain the serial number information of printers in which the license file can be installed.
	The specified license cannot be installed because it does not contain the printer's serial number
	information.

Action Sp	pecify a license file that matches the serial number of this printer.
-----------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

## Cannot install this application because an applet included in the specified application has exceeded the area that can be displayed in the device panel.

P	Problem	The application cannot be installed because the display area of an applet included in the application exceeds the area that can be displayed on the operation panel of the printer.
	Action	Install an application that contains applets that support this printer.

### The specified file is an update file. Stop the application that you want update and then install the file.

Problem	The specified application file is a file for updating an application which is already installed. It is necessary to stop the application which is to be updated before updating.
Action	Stop the application that you want to update, and then perform the update again.

## The specified file is an update file for a login service that is currently set. Switch to another login service, restart the device, and then install the file.

Pro	oblem	Although the specified application file is an update file for the login service that is currently set, it cannot update a login service that has already started.
A	ction	To install the update file for the login service, start another login service, and then install the update file.

### Cannot install this application because storage space has been exceeded. Uninstall other applications and then try to install it again.

Problem	The application cannot be installed because there is not enough free storage capacity.
Action	Make storage capacity available by uninstalling an application that is not being used.

#### Could not cancel installation. Installation has been successfully completed.

Problem	The [Cancel] button was pressed when the installation operation could not be cancelled.
Action	Disable the license file, download it from the [License Management] page, and then uninstall it.

### The process is canceled because the system has been shut down. Restart the system, and then perform the process again.

Problem	The installation could not be completed because it conflicted with a system shutdown.
Action	Restart the printer and perform the install again.

### Cannot install the application or license because another application is being installed, or the firmware being updated. Please wait a moment and then try again.

Problem	Either it is installed in another application outside of SMS, or the application cannot be installed because the firmware has been updated.
Action	Wait until the processing stops before installing the application.

#### Error: <Error Details>

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason. See <error details=""> for details.</error>
Action	If the solutions given in <error details=""> are unclear, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.</error>

### **Errors Relating to the [Check License] and [Change Password]** Pages

#### 0XW7-01X

- < The specified file does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.(P. 97) >
- < The contents of the specified file are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.(P. 97) >
- < The specified switch license file cannot be used to delete the license file < The new password and password to ID log. Try to specify the path again.(P. 97) >
- < The specified license is already installed. Installed license file information cannot be displayed.(P. 97) >
- < Cannot perform the operation because another application is being installed, or the firmware being updated. Please wait a moment and then try again.(P. 97) >

- < The old password is incorrect.(P. 98) >
- < The new password is incorrect. Enter the password with 8 to 32 single-byte alphanumeric characters.(P. 98) >
- confirm do not match.(P. 98) >
- < Error: <Error Details>(P. 98) >

#### The specified file does not exist or the file path is incorrect. Try to specify the path again.

Problem	The file does not exist on the specified path or the file path is incorrect.
Action	Specify the file path correctly.

#### The contents of the specified file are incorrect or information is missing. Check the file.

Problem 1	The content of the file is not correct. (A file other than a license file was specified.)
Action	Check to make sure that the specified file is a license file.
Problem 2	Information is missing from the file.
Action	Check the content of the file.

#### The specified switch license file cannot be used to delete the license file ID log. Try to specify the path again.

Problem	The specified file is not a switch license file for deleting license file ID logs.
Action	Try specifying the file path for the switch license for deleting license file ID logs.

#### The specified license is already installed. Installed license file information cannot be displayed.

Problem	Information about license files that have already been installed in this printer cannot be displayed.
Action	Specify another license file.

#### Cannot perform the operation because another application is being installed, or the firmware being updated.

#### Please wait a moment and then try again.

Problem	Either it is installed in another application outside of SMS, or the license file information cannot be displayed because the firmware has been updated.
Action	Wait until the processing stops before displaying the license information.

#### The old password is incorrect.

Problem	The text string entered as the current password is different from the current password	
Action	Enter the correct password.	

## The new password is incorrect. Enter the password with 8 to 32 single-byte alphanumeric characters.

Problem	The new password has under 8 characters or more than 33 characters. Illegal characters that cannot used in passwords have been used.	
Action Enter a new password of between 8 and 32 alphanumeric characters (a to z, A to Z, and 0		

#### The new password and password to confirm do not match.

Problem	The password cannot be changed because the new password and the confirmation password do not match.	
Action Enter a new password and the same text string as the confirmation password.		

#### Error: <Error Details>

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason. See <error details=""> for details.</error>	
Action	If the solutions given in <error details=""> are unclear, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or sales representatives.</error>	

### Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Setting Information Management] Page

0XW7-01Y

- < Cannot delete the setting information for the selected applications because it is in use by currently running applications. Stop the following applications, or stop all applications except for login services, and then delete the setting information. <Application Name>(P. 99) >
- < Could not delete MEAP application setting information because an error occurred.(P. 99) >

#### Cannot delete the setting information for the selected applications because it is in use by currently running applications. Stop the following applications, or stop all applications except for login services, and

#### then delete the setting information.

#### <Application Name>

Problem	The application is in one of the following states.	
	• Started	
	• Starting	
	Stopping	
Action	Return to the previous page using the [Back] button, bring the applications corresponding to the error message to other state than "Started," "Starting" or "Stopping," and then try deletion again.	

#### Could not delete MEAP application setting information because an error occurred.

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason, so the setting information could not be deleted.
Action	Return to the previous page using the [Back] button.

### **Errors Relating to the [MEAP Application Log Management]** Page

#### 0XW7-020

- < Cannot download application logs because application logs do not exist. < Could not delete application logs (P. 100) >
  - because an error occurred.(P. 100) >
- < Could not download application logs because an error occurred.(P. 100) >

#### Cannot download application logs because application logs do not exist.

Problem	The application log does not exist.	
Action	Return to the previous page using the [Back] button.	

#### Could not download application logs because an error occurred.

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason, so the log could not be download	
Action	Return to the previous page using the [Back] button.	

#### Could not delete application logs because an error occurred.

Problem	An error has occurred for some reason, so the log could not be delete	
Action	Return to the previous page using the [Back] button.	

### **Other Errors**

0XW7-021

• < Cannot find the specified application. It may have been uninstalled by another user.(P. 101) >

#### Cannot find the specified application. It may have been uninstalled by another user.

Problem	The application for the attempted operation does not exist.
Action	Return to the previous page using the [Back] button.

## Using This Guide

Using This Guide		
Operating Environment of This Guide	104	
Screen Layout of This Guide	105	
Top Page	106	
Topic Page	107	
Site Map	108	
Search Method	109	
Viewing This Guide	110	

### **Using This Guide**

This chapter describes how to use this guide.

Operating Environment of This Guide(P. 104)

- Screen Layout of This Guide(P. 105)
- C Top Page(P. 106)
- **O** Topic Page(P. 107)
- Site Map(P. 108)
- Search Method(P. 109)

#### Viewing This Guide(P. 110)

#### <To find the desired content>

- Selecting between the category icons
   From the top page, select a category icon you want.
   "Top Page(P. 106) "
- Searching from the site map
   On the site map, you can view the list of whole sections of this guide sorted by category. You can
   directly display sections in a category.

   " Site Map(P. 108) "
- Whole text search function
   You can search by keyword in this guide. You can display the desired description from the search
   results by entering a keyword you want to search. This function supports AND search.

   "Search Method(P. 109) "

### **Operating Environment of This Guide**

0XW7-023

You need a Web browser to use this guide. Operation of the following Web browsers is guaranteed.

#### Windows

- Internet Explorer 6.0 or later
- Firefox 2.x or later

#### Mac OS

- Safari 3.x or later
- Firefox 3.x or later

#### 

#### Enabling the script function

Enable the script function for a Web browser before using this guide.

Using This Guide

### **Screen Layout of This Guide**

#### 0XW7-024

This section describes the screen layout of this guide.

The page displayed right after this guide starts is called "Top Page" and the guide description is called "Topic Page" in this section.

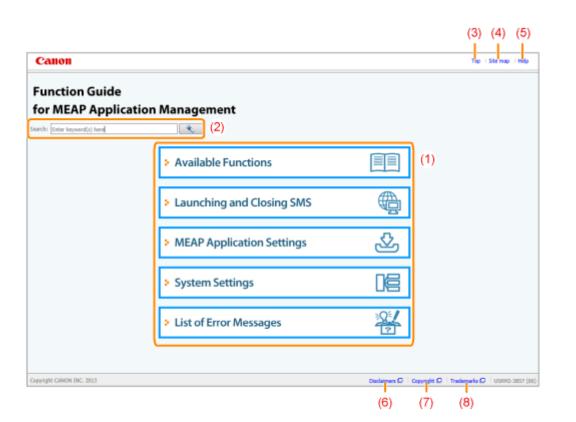
"Site map" is displayed from [Site map] which is located on the upper right of this guide.

The search panel is used to make search through this guide.

The screen layout is different for each page, so click the following links to see the instruction.

- **Top Page(P. 106)**
- Topic Page(P. 107)
- Site Map(P. 108)
- Search Method(P. 109)

# Top Page



### (1) Select from functions

The instructions of each function and operation method are described.

### (2) [Search]

The search panel is displayed by entering keyword(s) and clicking [ 1]. For details, see " **Search Method(P. 109)** ."

## (3) [Top]

The top page of this guide is displayed.

### (4) [Site map]

The entire contents of this guide are displayed.

### (5) [Help]

How to use this guide is displayed.

## (6) [Disclaimers]

The disclaimers are displayed.

### (7) [Copyright]

The information of copyrights is displayed.

### (8) [Trademarks]

The trademarks are displayed.

0XW7-026

# **Topic Page**

#### (4)(5) (6)(7)(8) Canor Top | Stemap | Help Previous | P Next | P Co » Launching and Clas (3)Launching and Closing SMS Log in is required to use SMS. on SHS (P hing SHS (Log in) > Before Launching SMS (Preparation) 9 SMS (Logging Out) > Launching SMS (Log in) > Closing SMS (Logging Out) ☑ NOTE (2) (1)Web Browser Settings The following settings are required. JavaScript must be enabled The use of session cookies must be enabled When a proxy server is used, using the proxy server settings of your Web browser, add the printer to the [Exceptions] (addresses that do not use a proxy) list. Since settings differ depending on the network emironment, consult with your network Launching SMS Multiple users cannot log in to SMS at the same time Automatic SMS Logout While SMS is in use, if it is not accessed for approximately five minutes or mo automatically logged out. If that happens, log in again from the [Login] page. re it times out and the us ers 🛛 🕴 Copyright 🖓 🕴 Trademarks 🖓 (9)

### (1) Chapter contents

This is the list of the contents in the chapter. Clicking each item displays the description in the topic page. Click []] to expand a menu, and click []] to collapse a menu.

Alternatively, click [ 🛨 Expand all ] to expand all menus, and click [ 🔄 Collapse all ] to collapse all menus.

#### (2) Topic page

The descriptions of each item are displayed.

The current location of the displayed topic is displayed at the upper left of the topic page. Click a link to move to a higher level.

### (3) [Chapter] menu

You can select a different chapter from the pull-down menu.

#### (4) [Contents] tab

Click to display the chapter contents panel.

# (5) [Search] tab

Click to display the search panel. For details, see " **Search Method(P. 109)** ."

(6) [ 📢 ]

Click to display or hide the chapter contents panel/search panel.

### (7) [Previous]/[Next]

Click to move to the previous or next topic.

#### (8) [Print this topic]

Prints only the topic page currently displayed.

(9) [Print all]

Prints all the contents in a chapter.

# Site Map

# 0XW7-027

Canon	Top   Site map	1
Site map		
Available Functions	± Next ≇ Go to top of	pe
Launching and Closing SMS	🛫 Previous 🛫 Next 🚡 Go to top of	i pe
Before Launching SH5 (Preparation) Setting Up HTTP Communication		
Launching SHS (Log in)		
Attention (Leunching SMS (Log in))		
Closing SH5 (Logging Out)		
MEAP Application Settings	⊯ Previous 👻 Next 🚡 Go to top of	pe
Installing MEAP Applications Attention (Installing MEAP Applications)		
Uninstalling MEAP Applications		
Starting/Stopping MEAP Applications		
Starting HEAP Applications		
Stopping MEAP Applications		
Checking the Details of MEAP Applications		
MEAP Application License Settings Adding License Files		
Disabling License Files		
Downloading Disabled License Piles		
Deleting Disabled License Files		
Setting Authentication Information for MEAP Applications		
System Settings	± Previous ± Next ∓ Go to top of	pe
Changing the MEAP Applet Display Order		
Checking Login Services		
Setting Enhanced System Applications		
Starting/Stopping Enhanced System Applications		
Starting Enhanced System Applications		_
Cepyright CANON INC. 2013	Disclaimers D Copyright D Trademarks D USRM2-	-

# (1) Whole contents

Shows the all chapters and sections of this guide. Click an item to view the contents.

0XW7-028

# **Search Method**

Canon Too | Site map | Help **Function Guide** for MEAP Application Management (h) Adding License × (1)Top | Ste map | Help Canon 4 Previous | 🖉 Next | 🔟 Print this top Search a Available Functions × Available Functions (3)SMS (Service Management Service) is software that accesses the printer over the network from an existing Web browser, and can install and manage MEAP applications (called "applications" in this document). Since the software (Web server) for using SMS is embedded in the printer, there is no need for any software other than a Web browser If a printer on the network is connected to a computer, it can use SMS. You can perform the following operations using SMS. fies of the SMS plicatio (2)Install P Appli Printe You can check application information from computers on the network You can access the printer via the network and display the status and information of installed applications rs 🖸 🛛 Copyright 🗗 🛛 Tra la Di

### (1) Search

Entering a character string in [Search] on the top page or in the [Keyword] text box on the search panel and then clicking [

The AND search is available in this guide so you can refine the search results by entering two or more keywords. When entering keywords, enter a space between the keywords.

• Example: Adding License (if you want to display pages which include words, "Adding" and "License")

### (2) Search result

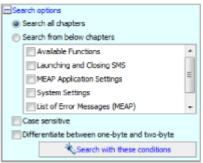
The search results for a keyword are displayed.

If there are more than 10 search results, you can see the other results by clicking [ 💘 ], [ » ], or the

number which is located below the result.

### (3) [Search options]

Click to display the search options.



The search options can be used to specify the chapter to search, case sensitivity, and whether to differentiate between one- and two-byte characters.

Click [Search with these conditions] to search with the specified conditions.

109

# Viewing This Guide

### 0XW7-029

# Symbols Used in This Guide

The following symbols are used in this Guide to mark descriptions of handling restrictions, precautions, and instructions that should be observed for your safety.

## IMPORTANT

Indicates operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the machine correctly, and avoid damage to the machine or property.

Indicates a clarification of an operation, or contains additional explanations for a procedure. Reading these notes is highly recommended.

# Keys and Buttons Used in This Guide

The following are examples of how control panel keys and on-screen buttons are depicted in this guide.

Туре	Depiction in This Guide	Example
Control panel keys	[Key name] keys	[Network] key
Settings displayed on the control panel	<setting display="" in="" name="" shown="" the=""></setting>	<0n>
Buttons on computer operation screen and so on	[Button name and so on]	[OK]

# Screenshots Used in This Guide

The contents of the screenshots used in this guide are the default settings.

Depending on the system configuration, the contents of the screenshots may partly differ.

# Disclaimer

<b>Disclaimer</b>	
-------------------	--

0XW7-02A

The information in this manual is subject to change without notice.

CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THEREOF, WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE OR AGAINST INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PATENT. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, OR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MATERIAL.

# Trademarks

Trademarks
------------

# Trademarks

- "MEAP" is a trademark of CANON Inc., referring to an "application platform" for Canon multifunction and single function printers.
- Apple, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, LocalTalk, Mac, Mac OS, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows Server, and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- This product contains the Universal Font Scaling Technology or UFST[®] under license from Monotype Imaging, Inc. UFST[®] is a trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc. registered in the United States Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain jurisdictions.
- UFST: Copyright[©] 1989 1996, 1997, 2003, 2004, 2008, all rights reserved, by Monotype Imaging Inc.



• Java and all Java based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.



- Adobe, PostScript, and the PostScript logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Copyright[©] 2007 -08 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Protected by U.S. Patents 5,737,599; 5,781,785; 5,819,301; 5,929,866; 5,943,063; 6,073,148; 6,515,763; 6,639,593; 6,754,382; 7,046,403; 7,213,269; 7,242,415; Patents pending in the U.S. and other countries.
- All instances of the name PostScript in the text are references to the PostScript language as defined by Adobe Systems Incorporated unless otherwise stated. The name PostScript also is used as a product trademark for Adobe Systems' implementation of the PostScript language interpreter.
- Except as otherwise stated, any reference to a "PostScript printing device," "PostScript display device," or similar item refers to a printing device, display device or item (respectively) that contains PostScript technology created or licensed by Adobe Systems Incorporated and not to devices or items that purport to be merely compatible with the PostScript language.
- Adobe, the Adobe logo, PostScript, the PostScript logo, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds. Microsoft and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

### Trademarks

- All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
- All other product and brand names are registered trademarks, trademarks or service marks of their respective owners.

This Font Software is licensed under the SIL Open Font License, Version 1.1.

This license is copied below, and is also available with a FAQ at: http://scripts.sil.org/OFL

_____

SIL OPEN FONT LICENSE Version 1.1 - 26 February 2007

_____

#### PREAMBLE

The goals of the Open Font License (OFL) are to stimulate worldwide development of collaborative font projects, to support the font creation efforts of academic and linguistic communities, and to provide a free and open framework in which fonts may be shared and improved in partnership with others.

The OFL allows the licensed fonts to be used, studied, modified and redistributed freely as long as they are not sold by themselves. The fonts, including any derivative works, can be bundled, embedded, redistributed and/or sold with any software provided that any reserved names are not used by derivative works. The fonts and derivatives, however, cannot be released under any other type of license. The requirement for fonts to remain under this license does not apply to any document created using the fonts or their derivatives.

### DEFINITIONS

"Font Software" refers to the set of files released by the Copyright Holder(s) under this license and clearly marked as such. This may include source files, build scripts and documentation.

"Reserved Font Name" refers to any names specified as such after the copyright statement(s).

"Original Version" refers to the collection of Font Software components as distributed by the Copyright Holder(s).

"Modified Version" refers to any derivative made by adding to, deleting, or substituting -- in part or in whole -- any of the components of the Original Version, by changing formats or by porting the Font Software to a new environment.

"Author" refers to any designer, engineer, programmer, technical writer or other person who contributed to the Font Software.

### **PERMISSION & CONDITIONS**

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Font Software, to use, study, copy, merge, embed, modify, redistribute, and sell modified and unmodified copies of the Font Software, subject to the following conditions: 1) Neither the Font Software nor any of its individual components, in Original or Modified Versions, may be sold by itself.

2) Original or Modified Versions of the Font Software may be bundled, redistributed and/or sold with any software, provided that each copy contains the above copyright notice and this license. These can be included either as stand-alone text files, human-readable headers or in the appropriate machine-readable metadata fields within text or binary files as long as those fields can be easily viewed by the user.

3) No Modified Version of the Font Software may use the Reserved Font Name(s) unless explicit written permission is granted by the corresponding Copyright Holder. This restriction only applies to the primary font name as presented to the users.

4) The name(s) of the Copyright Holder(s) or the Author(s) of the Font Software shall not be used to promote, endorse or advertise any Modified Version, except to acknowledge the contribution(s) of the Copyright Holder(s) and the Author(s) or with their explicit written permission.

5) The Font Software, modified or unmodified, in part or in whole, must be distributed entirely under this license, and must not be distributed under any other license. The requirement for fonts to remain under this license does not apply to any document created using the Font Software.

### TERMINATION

This license becomes null and void if any of the above conditions are not met.

### DISCLAIMER

THE FONT SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHT, PATENT, TRADEMARK, OR OTHER RIGHT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE FONT SOFTWARE OR FROM OTHER DEALINGS IN THE FONT SOFTWARE.